

**Tropical diseases : a manual of the diseases of warm climates / by Patrick Manson.**

**Contributors**

Manson, Patrick, Sir, 1844-1922.

**Publication/Creation**

London : Cassell, 1900.

**Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/kk7j6tdh>

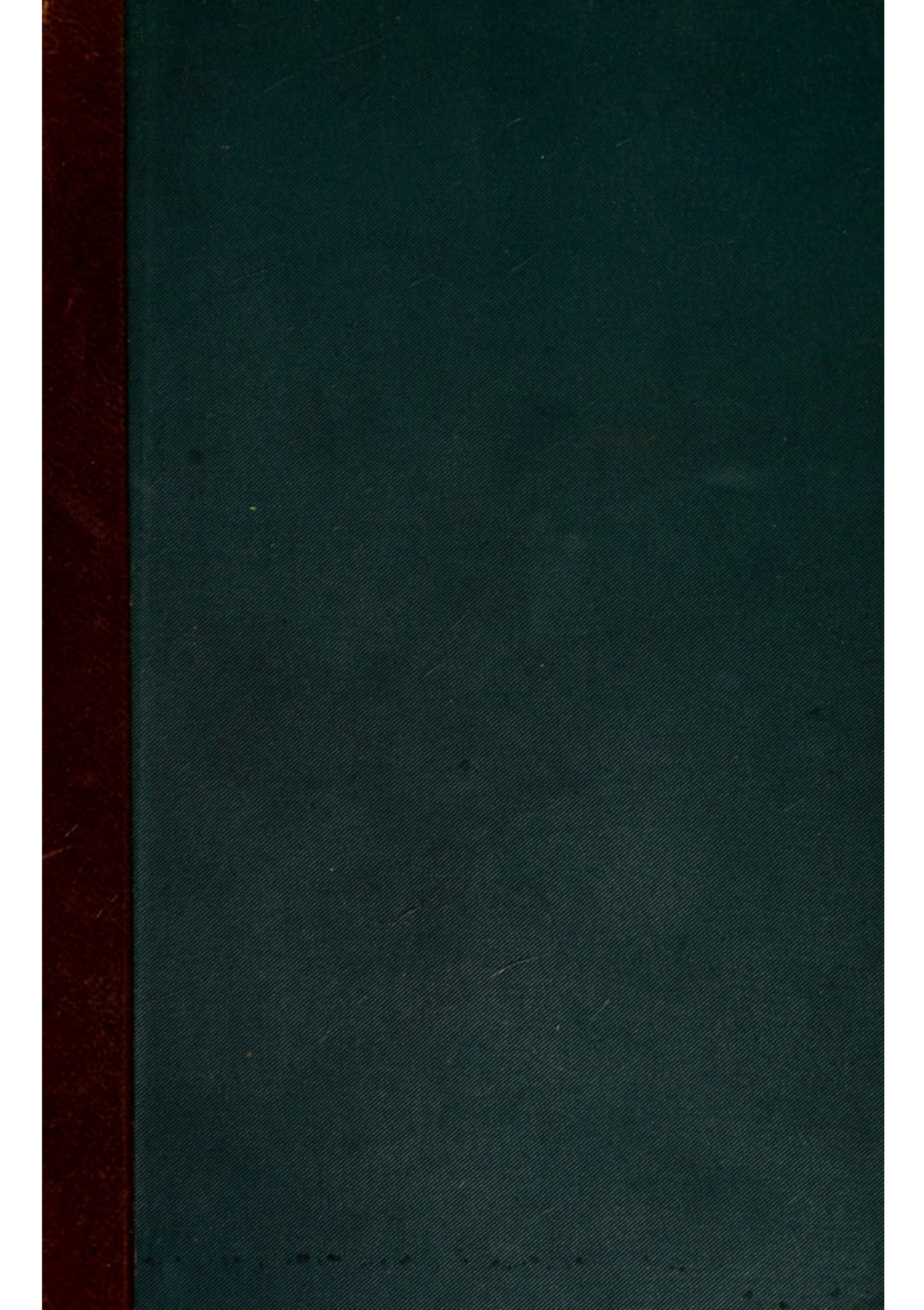
**License and attribution**

Conditions of use: it is possible this item is protected by copyright and/or related rights. You are free to use this item in any way that is permitted by the copyright and related rights legislation that applies to your use. For other uses you need to obtain permission from the rights-holder(s).



Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>









22101935144





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2016

<https://archive.org/details/b28710873>

TROPICAL DISEASES





G. B. Staniswell

Capt. R. A. M. C.



# PLATE I.

Fig. 1.—Parasite of quartan infection. Fig. 2.—Parasite of benign tertian infection. Fig. 3.—Parasite of malignant tertian infection ("æstivo-autumnal"). (Compiled from Thayer and Hewetson.)



# TROPICAL DISEASES

*A Manual of the Diseases of Warm Climates*

BY

PATRICK MANSON

C.M.G., M.D., LL.D. (ABERD.)

*Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians, London; Fellow of the Royal Society; Foreign Associate of the Académie de Médecine, France; Physician to the Seamen's Hospital Society; Lecturer on Tropical Diseases at St. George's Hospital, Charing Cross Hospital Medical Schools  
Lecturer in the London School of Tropical Medicine  
Medical Adviser to the Colonial Office and Crown Agents for the Colonies*

WITH 114 ILLUSTRATIONS AND TWO  
COLOURED PLATES

Revised and Enlarged Edition

CASSELL AND COMPANY, LIMITED

LONDON, PARIS, NEW YORK & MELBOURNE

1900

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED



First Edition *April* 1898.

*Reprinted June 1898, September 1898, 1899.*

Revised Enlarged Edition 1900.

TRO  
RAMC COLL.  
/MAN

## PREFACE.

---

A MANUAL on the diseases of warm climates, of handy size, and yet giving adequate information, has long been a want; for the exigencies of travel and of tropical life are, as a rule, incompatible with big volumes and large libraries. This is the reason for the present work.

While it is hoped that the book may prove of practical service, it makes no pretension to being anything more than an introduction to the important department of medicine of which it treats; in no sense is it put forward as a complete treatise, or as being in this respect comparable to the more elaborate works by Davidson, Scheube, Rho, Laveran, Corre, Roux, and other systematic writers in the same field.

The author avails himself of this opportunity to acknowledge the valuable assistance he has received, in revising the text, from Dr. L. Westenra Sambon and Mr. David Rees, M.R.C.P., L.R.C.P., Superintendent, London School of Tropical Medicine. He would also acknowledge his great obligation to Mr. Richard Muir, Pathological Laboratory, Edinburgh University, for his care and skill in preparing the illustrations.





# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION—THE ÆTIOLOGY OF TROPICAL DISEASES	XV

## SECTION I. FEVERS.

MALARIA . . . . .	1
YELLOW FEVER . . . . .	149
PLAGUE . . . . .	167
DENGUE . . . . .	195
MEDITERRANEAN FEVER . . . . .	206
JAPANESE RIVER FEVER . . . . .	215
NASHA FEVER . . . . .	218
KALA-AZAR . . . . .	219
TROPICAL TYPHOID . . . . .	221
HEAT-STROKE (HEAT-EXHAUSTION, SUN-TRAUMATISM, SIRIASIS) . . . . .	229
UNCLASSED FEVERS . . . . .	244

## SECTION II.

### GENERAL DISEASES OF UNDETERMINED NATURE.

BERIBERI . . . . .	250
EPIDEMIC DROPSY . . . . .	276
NEGRO LETHARGY OR SLEEPING SICKNESS . . . . .	280

## SECTION III.

### ABDOMINAL DISEASES.

CHOLERA . . . . .	287
DYSENTERY . . . . .	318
EPIDEMIC GANGRENOUS RECTITIS . . . . .	348
HILL DIARRHŒA . . . . .	350
SPRUE . . . . .	353

	PAGE
TROPICAL LIVER . . . . .	369
ABSCCESS OF THE LIVER . . . . .	374
INFANTILE BILIARY CIRRHOSIS . . . . .	410
PONOS . . . . .	412

## SECTION IV.

## INFECTIVE GRANULOMATOUS DISEASES.

LEPROSY . . . . .	414
YAWS . . . . .	455
VERRUGA PERUANA . . . . .	468
ULCERATING GRANULOMA OF THE PUDENDA . . . . .	471
ORIENTAL SORE . . . . .	476

## SECTION V.

## ANIMAL PARASITES AND ASSOCIATED DISEASES.

## I. OF THE CIRCULATION AND LYMPHATICS.

FILARIA NOCTURNA . . . . .	482
ABSCCESS . . . . .	509
LYMPHANGITIS AND ELEPHANTOID FEVER . . . . .	510
VARICOSE GROIN GLANDS . . . . .	511
CUTANEOUS LYMPHATIC VARICES . . . . .	513
THICKENED LYMPHATIC TRUNKS . . . . .	513
LYMPH SCROTUM . . . . .	514
CHYLURIA . . . . .	516
FILARIAL ORCHITIS . . . . .	519
ELEPHANTIASIS . . . . .	520
CHYLOUS DROPSY OF THE TUNICA VAGINALIS AND PERITONEUM . . . . .	530
FILARIA DIURNA . . . . .	532
FILARIA DEMARQUAH . . . . .	533
FILARIA OZZARDI . . . . .	534
FILARIA PERSTANS . . . . .	536
FILARIA MAGALHÆSI . . . . .	538
BILHARZIA HÆMATOBIA AND ENDEMIC HÆMATURIA . . . . .	540

## II. OF THE CONNECTIVE TISSUE.

FILARIA MEDINENSIS . . . . .	551
FILARIA LOA . . . . .	559
FILARIA VOLVULUS . . . . .	563
CRAW-CRAW . . . . .	563



## III. OF THE LUNGS.

DISTOMUM RINGERI AND ENDEMIC HÆMOPTYSIS . . . . .	567
---	-----

## IV. OF THE LIVER.

DISTOMUM CONJUNCTUM . . . . .	571
DISTOMUM SINENSE . . . . .	571
PENTASTOMUM CONSTRICTUM . . . . .	573

## V. INTESTINAL PARASITES.

TRICHOCEPHALUS DISPAR . . . . .	578
ASCARIS LUMBRICOIDES . . . . .	578
ANKYLOSTOMUM DUODENALE AND ANKYLOSTOMIASIS . . . . .	581
RHABDONEMA INTESTINALE . . . . .	594
STRONGYLUS SUBTILIS . . . . .	597
AMPHISTOMUM HOMINIS . . . . .	598
DISTOMUM BUSKI <i>v.</i> CRASSUM . . . . .	598
DISTOMUM HETEROPHYES . . . . .	599
TÆNIA NANA . . . . .	600
TÆNIA MADAGASCARIENSIS . . . . .	601
BOTHRIOCEPHALUS MANSONI . . . . .	601
LARVÆ OF DIPTERA . . . . .	602

## SECTION VI.

## SKIN DISEASES.

## I. NON-SPECIFIC.

PRICKLY HEAT . . . . .	604
------------------------	-----

## II. CAUSED BY BACTERIA.

SLOUGHING PHAGEDÆNA . . . . .	606
BOILS . . . . .	609
PEMPHIGUS CONTAGIOSUS . . . . .	611

## III. CAUSED BY VEGETABLE PARASITES.

MYCETOMA OR MADURA FOOT . . . . .	614
DHOBIE ITCH . . . . .	625
TINEA IMBRICATA . . . . .	628
PINTA . . . . .	632
PIEDRA . . . . .	636

## IV. CAUSED BY ANIMALS.

CHIGGER . . . . .	637
MYIASIS . . . . .	641
IXODIASIS . . . . .	644
LEECHES . . . . .	648

---

## SECTION VII.

## LOCAL DISEASES OF UNCERTAIN NATURE.

CLIMATIC BUBO . . . . .	650
GOUNDOU OR ANAKHRE . . . . .	651
AINHUM . . . . .	655

---

INDEX . . . . .	659
-----------------	-----



# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
PLATE I. Fig. 1.—Parasite of Quartan Malaria.	
Fig. 2.—Parasite of Benign Tertian Malaria. Fig.	
3.—Parasite of Malignant Tertian Malaria	<i>Frontispiece</i>
PLATE II. Fig. 1.—Parasite of Pigmented Malignant	
Quotidian. Fig. 2.—Brain Capillaries containing	
Malaria Parasites. Fig. 3.—Pernicious Malaria (spleen)	
Fig. 4.—Pernicious Malaria (liver) . . . . .	<i>To face page 65</i>
<i>Drepanidium ranarum</i> . . . . .	4
<i>Pirosoma bigeminum</i> . . . . .	4
Halteridium . . . . .	5
Evolution of the Benign Tertian Parasite . . . . .	7
Evolution of the Benign Tertian Parasite . . . . .	8
Plehn's Primitive Bodies in Blood Corpuscle . . . . .	10
Malaria Parasite: Flagellated Body . . . . .	11
Malaria Parasite: Flagellated Body and Free Swimming	
Flagellum . . . . .	12
Malaria Parasite: the Crescent Body . . . . .	14
Malaria Parasite: Twin Crescents . . . . .	15
Development of the Crescent Body . . . . .	15
Malaria Parasite: Evolution of the Flagellated Body	
from the Crescent Plasmodium . . . . .	16
Evolution of the Flagellated Body in the Tertian and	
Quartan Parasites . . . . .	18
Earlier Stages of the Evolution of the Crescent Body in	
the Mosquito . . . . .	23
Pigmented Cells from Stomach Wall of Mosquito . . . . .	25
Dissection of Head of Mosquito, showing Poison Apparatus	
<i>Culex pipiens</i> and <i>Anopheles claviger</i> ( <i>maculipennis</i> ) . . . . .	30
Eggs of <i>Anopheles claviger</i> and <i>A. bifurcatus</i> . . . . .	31
Head of Male and Female <i>Culex</i> ; and Larva . . . . .	32
Head of Male and Female <i>Anopheles</i> ; and Larva . . . . .	32
Characteristic Position of <i>Culex</i> . . . . .	33
Characteristic Position of <i>Anopheles</i> . . . . .	33

Microphotogram showing the necessary disposition of Blood Corpuscles in Slides for Examination for the Plasmodium . . . . .	35
Vacuolated and Crenated Blood Corpuscles . . . . .	41
Free Moribund Plasmodia . . . . .	42
Young Tertian Parasite . . . . .	46
Tertian Rosettes . . . . .	47
Chart of Quartan Ague . . . . .	60
Chart of Benign Tertian Ague . . . . .	62
Chart of Malignant Quotidian Infection . . . . .	67
Chart of Malignant Summer-Autumn Tertian . . . . .	68
Temperature Chart of an Attack of Hæmoglobinuric Fever occurring in England ; Infection acquired on the Congo. Recovery . . . . .	80
Temperature Chart of Recurrence of Hæmoglobinuric Fever in same patient shortly after his return to Congoland. Death . . . . .	81
Bacillus of Plague in Chains showing Polar Staining . . . . .	170
Chart of Double Continued Fever . . . . .	247
Beriberi . . . . .	252
Beriberi . . . . .	254
Beriberi . . . . .	256
Congo Negro suffering from Sleeping Sickness . . . . .	283
Transverse Section of Small Vessel in the Brain of a case of Sleeping Sickness, showing Small Cell Infiltration of Perivascular Space . . . . .	285
Cholera Bacillus. Agar cult: twenty-four hours' growth . . . . .	295
<i>Amœba coli</i> . . . . .	331
Apparatus for Operation for Abscess of the Liver . . . . .	405
Nodular Leprosy . . . . .	427
Nerve Leprosy . . . . .	431
Nerve Leprosy: Main-en-Griffe . . . . .	435
<i>Bacillus lepræ</i> . . . . .	437
Yaws . . . . .	458
Ulcerating Granuloma of the Pudenda in the Male . . . . .	472
Ulcerating Granuloma of the Pudenda in the Female . . . . .	473
<i>Filaria nocturna</i> , <i>F. diurna</i> , <i>F. demarquaii</i> , <i>F. ozzardi</i> , <i>F. perstans</i> . . . . .	486
Anatomy of <i>Filaria nocturna</i> . . . . .	487
Structure of Head End of <i>Filaria perstans</i> and of <i>F.</i> <i>nocturna</i> . . . . .	488

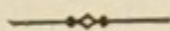


Section of Lung, showing Embryo Filariæ in the Blood-	
vessels . . . . .	491
Filarial Ecdysis . . . . .	492
Filariæ in Thoracic Muscles of Mosquito . . . . .	493, 494, 495
Section of Mosquito, showing Escape of Filaria from the	
Thoracic Muscles . . . . .	496
<i>Filaria nocturna</i> in Head and Proboscis of Mosquito . . . . .	497
Metamorphosis of Filaria in Mosquito . . . . .	498
Parental Form of <i>Filaria bancrofti</i> : Female . . . . .	500
Parental Forms of <i>Filaria bancrofti</i> . . . . .	501
Dissection of the Lymphatics in a Case of Chyluria . . . . .	503
Varicose Groin Glands and Chylocele . . . . .	511
Lymph Scrotum and Varicose Groin Glands . . . . .	515
Elephantiasis of Legs: scrotum and right arm slightly	
affected . . . . .	521
Elephantiasis of the Scrotum: left leg slightly affected . . . . .	523
Diagram of the Anatomy of Elephantiasis of Scrotum . . . . .	524
Diagram showing Operation for Elephantiasis of Scrotum;	
the rubber cord in position . . . . .	526
Elephantiasis of Vulva . . . . .	529
Pedunculated Groin Elephantiasis . . . . .	530
Elephantiasis of Mammæ: left leg and foot also affected. . . . .	531
Tail of adult <i>Filaria perstans</i> . . . . .	538
<i>Bilharzia hæmatobia</i> , male and female . . . . .	541
Ova of <i>Bilharzia</i> . . . . .	542
Free Embryo of <i>Bilharzia</i> . . . . .	542
Guinea Worm . . . . .	552
Section of Guinea Worm . . . . .	553
Embryos of Guinea Worm . . . . .	554
Embryos of Guinea Worm . . . . .	555
Embryos of Guinea Worm in body-cavity of Cyclops . . . . .	556
<i>Filaria loa</i> . . . . .	559
Tail of Male <i>Filaria loa</i> . . . . .	560
Ova of <i>Distomum ringeri</i> in sputum . . . . .	568
<i>Distomum ringeri</i> . . . . .	569
<i>Distomum conjunctum</i> . . . . .	571
<i>Distomum sinense</i> . . . . .	572
<i>Pentastomum constrictum</i> . . . . .	574
<i>Pentastomum constrictum</i> encysted in the Liver . . . . .	574
Ova of <i>Trichocephalus dispar</i> ; of <i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i> ;	
of <i>Ankylostomum duodenale</i> . . . . .	577

	PAGE
<i>Ankylostomum duodenale</i> , male and female . . . . .	582
Male <i>Ankylostomum duodenale</i> . . . . .	583
<i>Rhabdonema intestinale</i> . . . . .	595
<i>Amphistomum hominis</i> . . . . .	598
<i>Distomum buski</i> . . . . .	598
<i>Distomum heterophyes</i> . . . . .	599
<i>Tænia nana</i> . . . . .	600
<i>Bothriocephalus mansonii</i> . . . . .	602
Larvæ of <i>Musca vomitoria</i> . . . . .	603
Mycetoma or "Madura foot" . . . . .	615
Section of a "Madura foot" . . . . .	617
<i>Tinea imbricata</i> . . . . . To face page	629
Fructification of Cryptogamic Epiphytes in Pinta . . . . .	635
Chigger . . . . .	637
Chigger: Impregnated Female . . . . .	638
Chiggers in Sole of Foot . . . . .	639
Chigger Lesions of Hands and Feet . . . . .	640
Screwworm . . . . .	641
Native with <i>Lucilia macellaria</i> in Nostrils and Frontal Sinuses . . . . .	642
<i>Dermatobia noxialis</i> . . . . .	643
Goundou or Anakhre . . . . .	652
Goundou in a West Indian Child . . . . .	653
Ainhum . . . . .	656



# INTRODUCTION.



## THE ÆTIOLOGY OF TROPICAL DISEASES.

THE title which I have elected to give to this work **TROPICAL DISEASES**, is more convenient than accurate. If by "tropical diseases" be meant diseases peculiar to, and confined to, the tropics, then half a dozen pages might have sufficed for their description; for, at most, only two or three comparatively unimportant diseases strictly deserve that title. If, on the other hand, the expression "tropical diseases" be held to include all diseases occurring in the tropics, then the work would require to cover almost the entire range of medicine; for the diseases of temperate climates are also, and in almost every instance, to be found in tropical climates.

I employ the term "tropical" in a meteorological rather than in a geographical sense, meaning by it sustained high atmospheric temperature; and by the term "tropical diseases," I wish to indicate diseases occurring only, or which from one circumstance or another are specially prevalent, in warm climates.

It must not be inferred from this, however, that high atmospheric temperature is the sole and direct cause of the bulk of tropical diseases. The physiological machinery of the human body is so adjusted that great variations of atmospheric temperature can be supported by man with impunity. Indeed, although temperature acts as an important pathogenic factor, it is very rarely that it does so directly. Extreme cold may cause frost-bite; exposure to the sun, sun erythema, sun headache, and symptomatic fever; a



hot atmosphere, heat exhaustion ; prolonged residence in hot moist climates vague, ill-defined conditions of debility ; residence in a dry cool climate a contrary effect ; profuse sweating from heat of climate, prickly heat. But none of these states can with justice be regarded as disease.

This being so, it is natural to ask : In what way do tropical influences affect disease, as they undoubtedly do ; and why should it be that some diseases are peculiar to tropical climates, or are specially prevalent in such climates ?

Speaking generally, the natives of tropical countries are not injuriously affected by the meteorological conditions of the climates they live in, any more than are the inhabitants of more temperate climates ; their physiological activities are attuned by custom and habit to the conditions they were born into. The European, it may be, on his first entering the tropics, and until his machinery has adjusted itself to the altered meteorological circumstances, is liable to slight physiological irregularities, and this more especially if he persist in the dietetic habits appropriate to his native land. A predisposition to certain diseases, and a tendency to degenerative changes, may be brought about in this way ; but acute disease, with active tissue change, is not so caused. In the tropics, as in temperate climates, in the European and in the native alike, nearly all disease is of specific origin. It is in their specific causes that the difference between the diseases of temperate climates and those of tropical climates principally lies.

Modern science has clearly shown that nearly all diseases, directly or indirectly, are caused by germs. It must be confessed that although in many instances these germs have been discovered, in other instances they are yet to find ; nevertheless, their existence in the latter may be confidently postulated.

Germs are organised and living beings, and, like all living things, demand certain physical conditions for their well-being. One of these conditions is a



certain temperature ; another is certain media ; and a third is certain opportunities.

In the majority of instances disease germs are true parasites, and therefore, to keep in existence as species, require to pass from host to host. If, during this passage from host to host, the temperature of the transmitting medium—be it air, water, or food—be too high or too low for the special requirements of the germ in question, that germ dies and ceases to be infective. In this way may be explained the absence from the tropics of a class of directly infectious diseases represented by scarlet fever, and the absence from temperate climates of a similar class of diseases represented by dengue. In the one case, during the short passage from one human being to another, tropical temperature is fatal to the air-borne germ ; in the other the lower temperature of higher latitudes has the same effect.

In another type of disease, of which tropical scaly ringworm (*Tinea imbricata*) is an excellent example, the germ vegetates on the surface of the body, and is thus exposed to the vicissitudes of climate. One of the requirements of the germ referred to is a high atmospheric temperature and a certain degree of moisture. Given these it flourishes ; remove these and it dies out, just as a palm tree or a bird of paradise would die on being transferred to a cold climate.

Many diseases require for their transmission from one individual to another the services of a third and wholly different animal. The propagation and continued existence of a disease of this description will depend, therefore, on the presence of the third animal. If the latter be a tropical species, the disease for whose transmission it is necessary must necessarily be confined to the tropics. The third or transmitting animal operates in one of several ways. Thus in "fly disease," the protozoal organism which is the direct cause of the disease is carried from one animal to another on the mandibles of the tsetse fly. Consequently, unless



the passive rôle of the tsetse fly is intentionally imitated by man, the disease is not found outside what is known as "the fly belt," the geographical limits of which are very circumscribed, depending, among other things, on tropical conditions. Similarly, although on a somewhat different principle, the geographical range of malaria and of filariasis is determined by that of special species of mosquito which ingest and act as intermediate hosts to the respective germs, and, so to speak, prepare them for entrance into their human host. The distribution of a large number of animal parasitic diseases depends in this way on the distribution of the living inoculating agency, as in "fly disease," or of the intermediate hosts, as in malaria and filariasis. When this third animal happens to be a tropical species, the disease it subtends, so to speak, is, in natural conditions, necessarily tropical also.

Certain diseases are common to man and the lower animals. If these latter happen to be tropical species the opportunities for man to contract the common disease are most frequent, or are only found, in the tropics. Such, most probably, are some of the tropical ringworms.

Certain parasites are so organised that before re-entering man they must pass a part of their lives as free organisms in the outer world, where they require a relatively high temperature for their development. Such parasites, therefore, and the diseases they give rise to, must necessarily be tropical or sub-tropical. The *Ankylostomum duodenale* and ankylostomiasis is an instance in point.

There is a class of intoxication diseases which depend on toxins generated by germs whose habitat is the soil, water, or other external media, and whose germs do not enter the human body as a necessary feature in their life-histories, although their toxins may. The yeast plant and its toxin, alcohol, and the disease it causes, alcoholism, is the most familiar example of this. Such, too, are ergotism, pellagra,



and, perhaps, lathyrism. The beriberi germ, its toxin and beriberi, is probably another. These germs require certain temperatures and certain media ; consequently the diseases they produce have a corresponding geographical range. If one of these conditions be a high temperature, the disease, as in the case of beriberi, is a tropical one.

Lastly, I can conceive, and believe, that there is another and less directly-acting set of conditions influencing the distribution of disease, conditions which as yet have been ignored by epidemiologists, but which, it seems to me, must have an important bearing on this subject. Disease germs, their transmitting agencies, or their intermediate hosts, being living organisms, are, during their extracorporeal phases, necessarily competing organisms, and therefore liable to be preyed upon, or otherwise crushed out, by other organisms in the struggle for existence. The malaria parasite is absent in many places in which, apparently, all the conditions favourable for its existence are to be found in perfection. Why is it not found there, seeing that it must certainly have been frequently introduced? I would suggest that in some instances this, and other disease germs, or the organisms subtending them, are kept under by natural enemies which prey on them, just as fishes prey on and keep down water-haunting insects, or as mice do humble-bees. The geographical range of such disease germs, therefore, will depend, not only on the presence of favourable conditions but, also, on the absence of unfavourable ones. Herein lies a vast field for study, and one which, as yet, has not been touched on by epidemiologists.

In these and similar ways the peculiar distribution of tropical diseases is regulated. The more we learn about these diseases the less important in its bearing on their geographical distribution, and as a direct pathogenic agency, becomes the rôle of temperature *per se*, and the more the influence of the tropical fauna.



the passive *rôle* of the tsetse fly is intentionally imitated by man, the disease is not found outside what is known as "the fly belt," the geographical limits of which are very circumscribed, depending, among other things, on tropical conditions. Similarly, although on a somewhat different principle, the geographical range of malaria and of filariasis is determined by that of special species of mosquito which ingest and act as intermediate hosts to the respective germs, and, so to speak, prepare them for entrance into their human host. The distribution of a large number of animal parasitic diseases depends in this way on the distribution of the living inoculating agency, as in "fly disease," or of the intermediate hosts, as in malaria and filariasis. When this third animal happens to be a tropical species, the disease it subtends, so to speak, is, in natural conditions, necessarily tropical also.

Certain diseases are common to man and the lower animals. If these latter happen to be tropical species the opportunities for man to contract the common disease are most frequent, or are only found, in the tropics. Such, most probably, are some of the tropical ringworms.

Certain parasites are so organised that before re-entering man they must pass a part of their lives as free organisms in the outer world, where they require a relatively high temperature for their development. Such parasites, therefore, and the diseases they give rise to, must necessarily be tropical or sub-tropical. The *Ankylostomum duodenale* and ankylostomiasis is an instance in point.

There is a class of intoxication diseases which depend on toxins generated by germs whose habitat is the soil, water, or other external media, and whose germs do not enter the human body as a necessary feature in their life-histories, although their toxins may. The yeast plant and its toxin, alcohol, and the disease it causes, alcoholism, is the most familiar example of this. Such, too, are ergotism, pellagra,



and, perhaps, lathyrism. The beriberi germ, its toxin and beriberi, is probably another. These germs require certain temperatures and certain media ; consequently the diseases they produce have a corresponding geographical range. If one of these conditions be a high temperature, the disease, as in the case of beriberi, is a tropical one.

Lastly, I can conceive, and believe, that there is another and less directly-acting set of conditions influencing the distribution of disease, conditions which as yet have been ignored by epidemiologists, but which, it seems to me, must have an important bearing on this subject. Disease germs, their transmitting agencies, or their intermediate hosts, being living organisms, are, during their extracorporeal phases, necessarily competing organisms, and therefore liable to be preyed upon, or otherwise crushed out, by other organisms in the struggle for existence. The malaria parasite is absent in many places in which, apparently, all the conditions favourable for its existence are to be found in perfection. Why is it not found there, seeing that it must certainly have been frequently introduced? I would suggest that in some instances this, and other disease germs, or the organisms subtending them, are kept under by natural enemies which prey on them, just as fishes prey on and keep down water-haunting insects, or as mice do humble-bees. The geographical range of such disease germs, therefore, will depend, not only on the presence of favourable conditions but, also, on the absence of unfavourable ones. Herein lies a vast field for study, and one which, as yet, has not been touched on by epidemiologists.

In these and similar ways the peculiar distribution of tropical diseases is regulated. The more we learn about these diseases the less important in its bearing on their geographical distribution, and as a direct pathogenic agency, becomes the rôle of temperature *per se*, and the more the influence of the tropical fauna.



It is evident from what has been advanced that the student of medicine must be a naturalist before he can hope to become a scientific epidemiologist, or pathologist, or a capable practitioner. The necessity for this in all departments of medicine is yearly becoming more apparent, but especially so in that section of medicine which relates to tropical disease. This is further accentuated if we reflect that, although we do know something about a few of the tropical diseases and their germs, there must be many more tropical diseases and tropical disease germs about which we know absolutely nothing. Who can doubt that just as the fauna and flora of the tropical world are infinitely richer in species than those of colder climates, so there is a corresponding distribution in the wealth and poverty of pathogenic organisms ; and that many, if not most, of the tropical diseases have yet to be differentiated ? Opportunities and appliances for original pathological study are, from circumstances, too often wanting to the tropical practitioner ; but, in this matter of the ætiology of disease, he certainly enjoys opportunities for original research and discovery far superior in novelty and interest to those at the command of his fellow inquirer in the well-worked field of European and American research.

In the following pages I have included certain cosmopolitan diseases, such as leprosy and plague, diseases which, properly speaking, do not depend in any very special way, or necessarily, on climatic conditions. They have been practically ousted from Europe and the temperate parts of America by the spread of civilisation, and the improved hygiene that has followed in its train ; and are now virtually confined to tropical and sub-tropical countries, where they still survive under those backward social and insanitary conditions which are necessary for their successful propagation, and which are more or less an indirect outcome of tropical climate.



# TROPICAL DISEASES.

---

## SECTION I.—FEVERS.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### MALARIA.

**Definition.**—A protozoal parasite belonging to the Class *Sporozoa*, Order *Hæmamoebida*, whose definitive host is the mosquito, and whose intermediate host is man and, possibly, other vertebrates. In man it inhabits the red blood corpuscles, giving rise to fever—usually of a periodic character, anæmia, enlargement of the spleen, and the deposit of a black pigment in the viscera and elsewhere. Certain of its phases are amenable to quinine.

#### MORPHOLOGY AND LIFE-HISTORY OF THE MALARIA PARASITE.

*Its importance.*—This organism is by far the most important disease agency in tropical pathology. Not only does it give rise to grave and sometimes fatal fevers, but, in consequence of its prevalence, of its anæmiating and debilitating influences, and of its tendency to cause congestion of the abdominal viscera, it undermines the health of millions ; predisposing them to other diseases which it complicates and aggravates ; impairing their powers of resistance and repair ; and otherwise unfitting them for the active business and enjoyment of life. Directly and indirectly it is the principal cause of morbidity and death in the tropics and sub-tropics.

*The Plasmodium malarie the cause of malarial disease.*—It is now certain that the presence and



proliferation in the blood of this parasite, discovered by Laveran in 1880 and conveniently known as the *Plasmodium malariae*\*, is the cause of what was formerly, and is still, known as "malarial disease." The following are the principal reasons for this belief:—

1. The occurrence of the plasmodium in the blood is practically always, sooner or later, associated with the clinical phenomena of malarial infection.

2. Malarial fever throughout, or at one time or another during its course, is invariably associated with the presence of this parasite in the blood.

3. The phases of malarial fevers bear a definite relation to the phases of the life-cycle of the parasite.

4. Those absolutely characteristic features of malarial disease—melanæmia and malarial pigmentation of viscera—are fully accounted for by the melanin-forming property of the plasmodium.

5. Intravenous injection of blood from a case of malarial infection—that is, of blood containing the plasmodium—is generally, after an incubation period of eight to twelve days, followed by an attack of malarial fever, and by the appearance of the plasmodium in the blood of the person injected.

6. The administration of quinine, which brings about the cessation of the clinical symptoms of acute malarial infection, rapidly causes most phases of the plasmodium to disappear from the blood.

7. If, after they have imbibed malarial blood, certain species of mosquitoes be dissected at serial intervals, the evolution of the malaria parasite can be followed in their tissues until, finally, the germs of the parasite can be tracked into the cells and secretion of the veneno-salivary glands of the insect.

\* The malaria parasite is not a plasmodium in the zoological meaning of the word. To this extent the introduction of the name *Plasmodium malariae* is to be regretted. However, of the many names given to the organism this is the one most usually employed; and as it is now in such general use, I have thought it advisable to adopt it, notwithstanding its inaccuracy in a scientific sense.



8. If after a week, or thereby, a similarly-fed mosquito bite a hitherto uninfected man, in many instances, after a few days, that man will exhibit the clinical phenomena of malarial infection and the characteristic parasite in his blood.

The proof of the causal relationship of the parasite to the disease may now, therefore, be said to be complete.

*Necessity for a practical knowledge of the plasmodium.*—For the full understanding of the ætiology and pathology of malaria, apart from the very practical consideration of diagnosis, it is evidently of the first importance that the student should be thoroughly familiar with the life-history of the plasmodium, and with the various appearances it assumes in the human blood. To enable him to acquire this knowledge it is absolutely necessary that he should acquaint himself with, and practise himself in, the art of demonstrating the parasite.

#### MORPHOLOGY AND HISTOLOGY OF PLASMODIUM MALARIÆ.

*Its zoological affinities.*—Zoologically, the plasmodium belongs to the *Sporozoa*. It is closely allied to the *Coccidia*\*, but as it has many peculiar features it has been placed along with similar parasites of the lower animals in a special order variously named *Hæmamœbida*, *Hæmosporidia*, etc. Like the *Coccidia*, for part of its life it is an intracellular parasite, its special habitat, so far as man is concerned, being the red blood corpuscles. Many of the other vertebrata are affected by similar, though specifically distinct, parasites; that of man, so far as known, is special to himself.

\* Recent observations, particularly those of R. Pfeiffer and of Simond (*Ann. de l'Inst. Pasteur*, July 27, 1897), by showing that many coccidia possess a double life-cycle—one adapted for the multiplication of the parasite in the original host (endogenous), and one adapted for its transmission to fresh hosts (exogenous)—have thoroughly established the close relationship, previously merely conjectured, of the plasmodium to this order of *Sporozoa*.



*Endocorpuscular parasites of lower animals.*—The best known of the endocorpuscular parasites of the lower animals are *Drepanidium*, *Pirosoma*, *Proteosoma* and *Halteridium*. From the study of these much light has been thrown on the morphology and life-history of the malaria parasites; the practitioner is therefore strongly recommended to avail himself of the abundant opportunities he is sure to enjoy in the tropics to study the blood parasites named and allied organisms.

*Drepanidium* (Fig. 1), a blood parasite of frogs (*Rana esculenta*), occurs in two forms—an irregularly-shaped endocorpuscular body

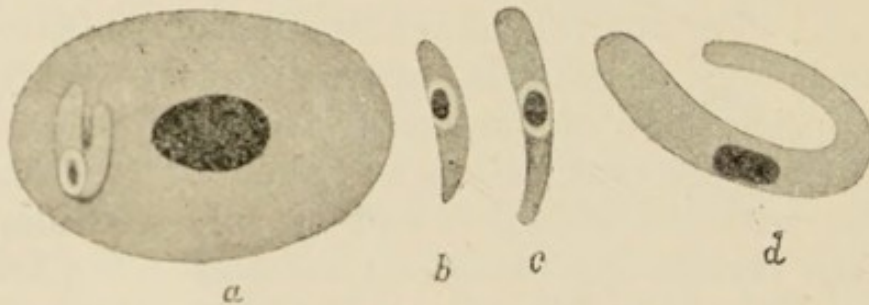


Fig. 1.—*Drepanidium ranarum*. (After Celli.)

a, Intracorporeal form ; b, c, d, free motile forms.

and an endocorpuscular passive vermicule, which may become free and actively motile. Neither form is pigmented.

*Pirosoma bigeminum* (Fig. 2) is the parasitic cause of Texas cattle fever, a very fatal disease of bovines, characterised by hæmoglobinuria. It occurs in the warmer parts of the world and has been specially studied in Texas, Italy, Roumania, South Africa, and Australia. The parasite, which is non-pigmented, is found in the red blood corpuscles as a minute ovoid body usually sharply pointed at one end. It often occurs in pairs, suggesting that it multiplies by binary division. As demonstrated by Smith and Kilborne, *pirosoma* is transferred from host to host by the cattle tick (*Boophilus bovis*). In feeding, the

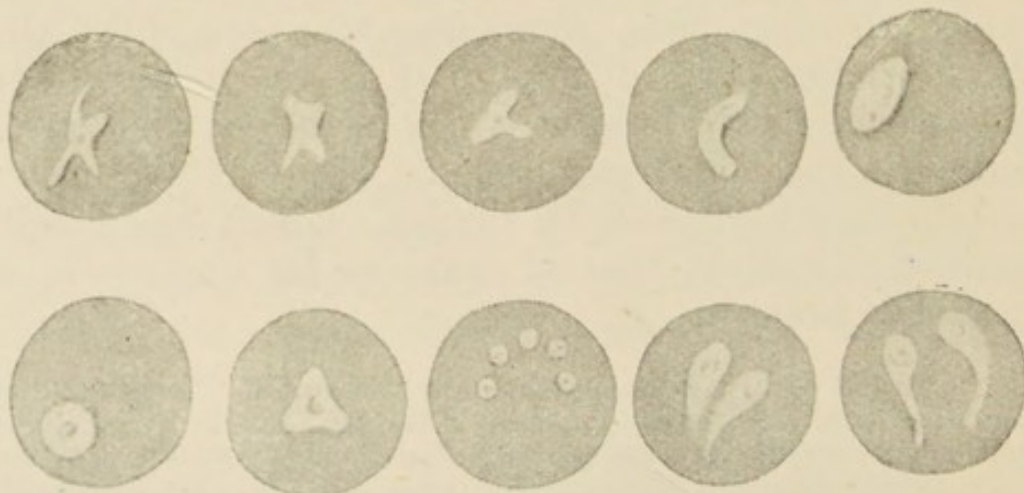


Fig. 2.—*Pirosoma bigeminum*. (After Celli.)

tick swallows the parasite, which then, in some unknown way, infects the eggs of the insect. When the young ticks hatched out



from the infected eggs proceed to feed on a healthy bovine they introduce the parasite and so communicate the disease.

*Proteosoma* and *Halteridium* (Fig. 3) are endocorpuseular parasites of birds, which, in their morphology and life-history, closely resemble the malaria parasites of man. Both are pigmented, both multiply in the vertebrate host by the formation of naked spores, both form flagellates, and probably both have an extracorporeal phase in insects—*proteosoma* in *culex* and *halteridium* in some as

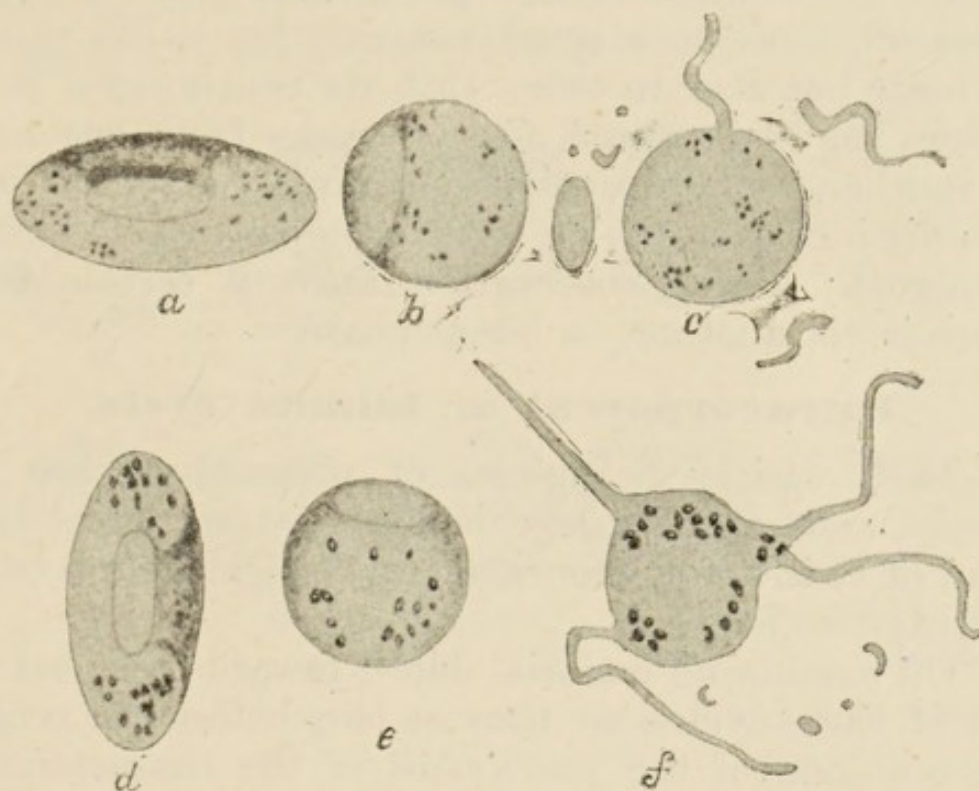


Fig. 3.—*Halteridium*. (After Celli.)

*a, b, c*, Evolution of macrogamete; *c*, fertilisation by microgamete; *d, e, f*, evolution of microgamete (p. 27).

yet unknown species. *Proteosoma* is most conveniently studied in sparrows and finches, *halteridium* in pigeons and doves. The pad of the terminal phalanx of the bird's toe is cleaned with spirit, dried, and deeply pricked with a needle; a droplet of blood is then expressed and mounted in the usual ways. The mature forms of the two parasites are readily distinguished. In *proteosoma*, the parasite as it grows pushes the nucleus towards one pole of the long diameter of the corpuscle, at the same time tilting the nucleus over so as to cause it to lie obliquely; *halteridium* does not displace the nucleus, but spreads along one side of the corpuscle covering slightly and expanding over both ends of the nucleus. Flagellation readily and rapidly occurs in ordinary wet preparations; according to Koch it is best observed in a hanging drop prepared by mixing a trace of the infected bird's blood with bird's blood serum and physiological salt solution. *Halteridium* infection, which apparently is not pathogenetic, persists for many months; *proteosoma* infection is more evanescent and is often associated with dangerous fever. *Halteridium* is not readily, if at all, communicable by inoculation of blood; *proteosoma*, on the contrary, may be so communicated.



Of the human plasmodia there are several varieties, possibly species. The distinctive characteristics of each of these will be detailed farther on. The following brief description is confined to what may be regarded as the generic features common to all.

*Its three phases.*—The plasmodium, like all true parasites, must be adapted not only for a life inside its hosts but also, in order that its continuance as a species may be assured, for a passage from one host to another. Consequently, as regards man, it exhibits two distinct phases—an intracorporeal and an extracorporeal; clinical observation makes it certain that there is yet another—a latent phase.

### **Intracorporeal or human cycle.**

Each variety or species of plasmodium has its special and more or less definite intracorporeal life-span of twenty-four hours, of forty-eight hours, or of seventy-two hours.

On examining malarial blood towards the end of one of these cycles, an hour or two before the occurrence of one of the paroxysms of the characteristic periodic fever it induces, the parasite may be recognised as a pale, somewhat ill-defined disc of protoplasm occupying a larger or smaller area within a proportion of the red blood corpuscles (Fig. 4, *a*). Scattered through this pale body are a number of particles of intensely black or reddish-black pigment—melanin.

By repeating his examinations and making them at short serial intervals, the observer is enabled to ascertain that certain changes systematically occur in this disc of pigmented protoplasm. He will find that after a time the scattered pigment particles collect into little groups, sometimes into radiating lines. These pigment groups subsequently concentrate into one or two larger and more or less central blocks, around which the pale protoplasm of the plasmodium arranges itself in minute segments which finally acquire a globular form and appear as well-



defined spherules — spores (Fig. 4, *b, c, d*). The including blood corpuscle then breaks down and the spores, none of which contain pigment, fall apart and, along with the clump or clumps of melanin, become free in the liquor sanguinis (Fig. 4, *e*). The phagocytes now quickly absorb the melanin and many of the spores. A proportion of the latter, escaping the phagocytes, attach themselves to other

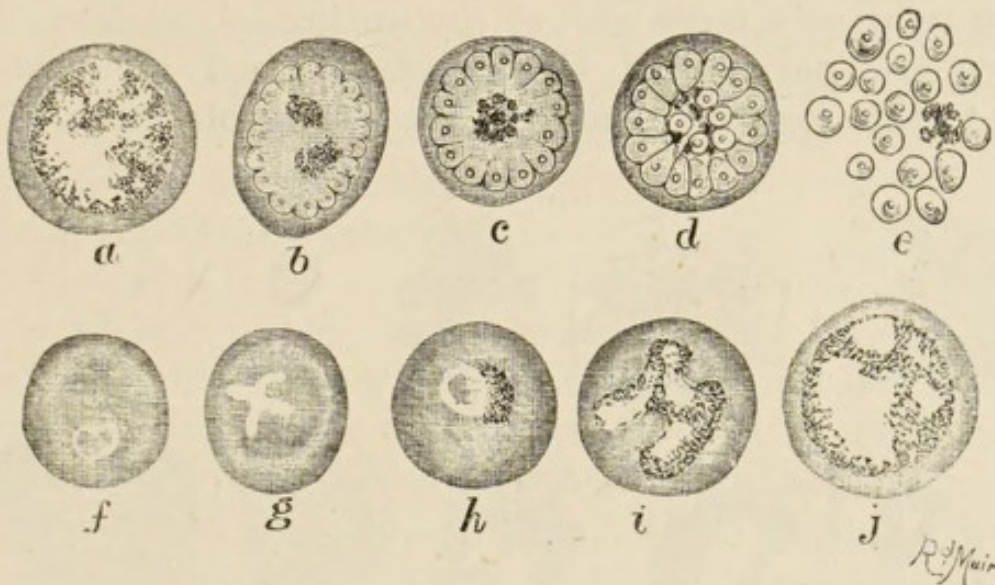


Fig. 4.—Evolution of the benign tertian parasite; unstained. (Compiled from Thayer and Hewetson.)

blood corpuscles which, in some unknown way, they contrive to enter (Fig. 4, *f*). In the interior of these newly infected corpuscles the young parasites exhibit active amœboid movement, shooting out and retracting long pseudopodia, and growing at the expense of the hæmoglobin (Fig. 4, *g*). This substance they assimilate, converting it into the pale protoplasmic material constituting the mass of the parasite, and into the melanin particles (Fig. 4, *h, i*). As the parasite becomes larger its amœboid movements gradually slow down until all motion finally ceases; just before sporulation and completion of the cycle (Fig. 4, *j*), beyond slight translation movement of the pigment particles, the plasmodium is passive.

*Structure of the parasites.*—By staining with methylene blue, the plasmodial spore (Fig. 5, *b, c, d*) is found to consist of a minute, deeply tinted



nucleolus surrounded by an unstained (in its early stage not very apparent) vesicular nucleus, and this again by a somewhat lightly tinted covering of protoplasm. After the spore has entered a blood corpuscle (Fig. 5, *e*), staining shows that the vesicular nucleus has become larger and more distinct, that the protoplasm has increased in bulk, and that the deeply stained nucleus, which is sometimes double, has come to lie eccentrically in the nucleus. On account of the relatively large size of the unstained nucleus, the eccentric position of the deeply stained nucleolus, and the narrow rim of stained protoplasm, the

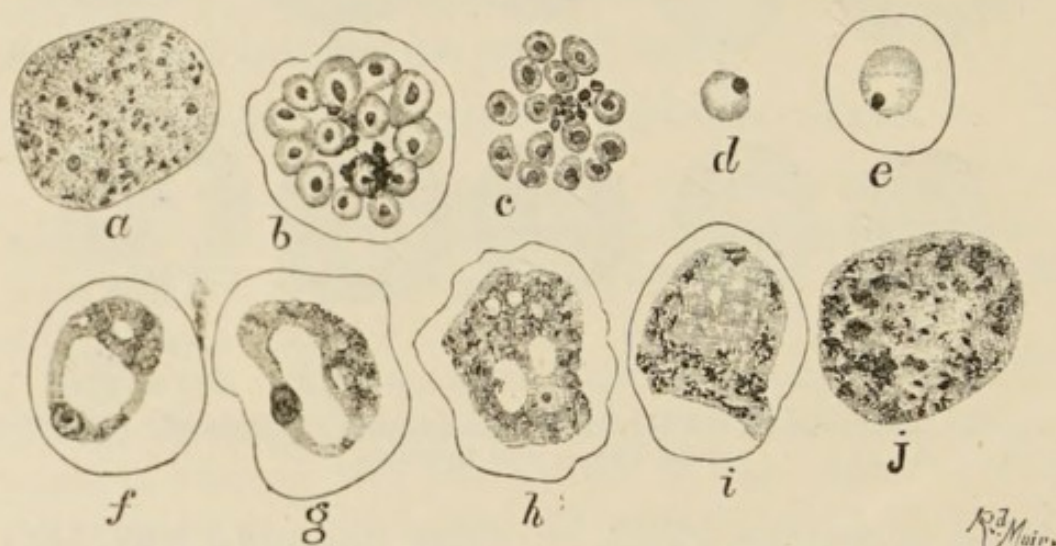


Fig. 5.—Evolution of the benign tertian parasite ; stained with methylene blue. (Compiled from Mannaberg.)

younger parasites look like so many minute blue signet-rings stuck on to the blood corpuscles. As the parasite grows and approaches maturity the nucleolus disperses and the vesicular nucleus becomes less distinct (Fig. 5, *f*, *g*, *h*, *i*); finally, just before sporulation, both nucleus and nucleolus cease to be distinguishable (Fig. 5, *j*, *a*). Apparently at this stage these elements, in some undetermined way, become fragmented and diffused throughout the protoplasm. Later the nuclear elements reappear as numerous, minute, scattered nucleoli; and it is around these that the protoplasm of the segmenting parasite arranges itself to form the spores



(Fig. 5, *b*, *c*). The vesicular nucleus does not usually appear in the spores until after they become free in the liquor sanguinis (Fig. 5, *d*).

The melanin particles, so characteristic of the malaria germ, occur either in dust-like specks, in coarse grains, in short rods, or aggregated into dense clumps. Until the concentration of pigment which precedes sporulation takes place the particles are scattered, being located principally in what, were we to regard the plasmodium as an amœba, might be described as the ectosarc. Apparently so long as the nucleus remains entire the pigment is peripheral; when segmentation occurs in the nucleus the pigment becomes central.

Such is a brief account of the structure and life-cycle of one phase of the plasmodium. From it we may understand how the parasite maintains itself and multiplies inside the human body. It does not explain, however, the two other important features in the life of the plasmodium, which analogy and observation clearly indicate—namely, its latency in, and its life outside, the human body.

**Latent phase.**—It is a well established fact that, concurrently with the subsidence of acute clinical symptoms, the plasmodium may disappear from the general circulation and pass into a latent condition. This it does either spontaneously, or as a result of the administration of quinine. As to the organ or tissue it selects, or as to its appearance and structure during this stage of latency, or as to the exact conditions which cause it once more to resume active, propagating, circulating life, nothing is positively known. This much, however, we do know—namely, that physiological strain or vital depression in the host tends to bring about conditions which break up, and that quinine and vital vigour tend to bring about conditions which favour, latency.

In a paper read before the Berlin Medical Society, May 31, 1898, and translated in the *Journal of Tropical Medicine* (October, December, 1899,



and January, 1900), A. Plehn suggested the idea that the minute colourable specks (Fig. 6) which are detectable in a proportion of the blood corpuscles in certain individuals, and which are familiar enough to everyone accustomed to working with stained speci-



Fig. 6.—  
Plehn's  
primitive  
bodies in  
blood cor-  
puscle.

mens of malarial blood, and, possibly, of non-malarial blood, are really the latent phase of the parasite. Plehn states that in West Africa a condition of anæmia, corresponding in character to that of malaria, often develops in the European soon after his arrival in the country and before the ordinary malaria parasite appears in his blood, and before he has had any attack of fever. In such these specked corpuscles are to be found. Plehn calls then "karyochromatophile granules" or, in allusion to their supposed function, "primitive bodies." He believes they multiply in the blood, destroying and infecting the corpuscles indefinitely until certain conditions (those that provoke malarial fever) occur, when they develop into the amœboid phase of the malaria parasite. After the subsidence of the fever and disappearance of the fever phase of the parasite, the "primitive bodies" continue in the blood as the latent phase of the parasite, and, according to Plehn, form a valuable test of the presence of latent malarial infection. The subject is a promising one and is well worth further study.

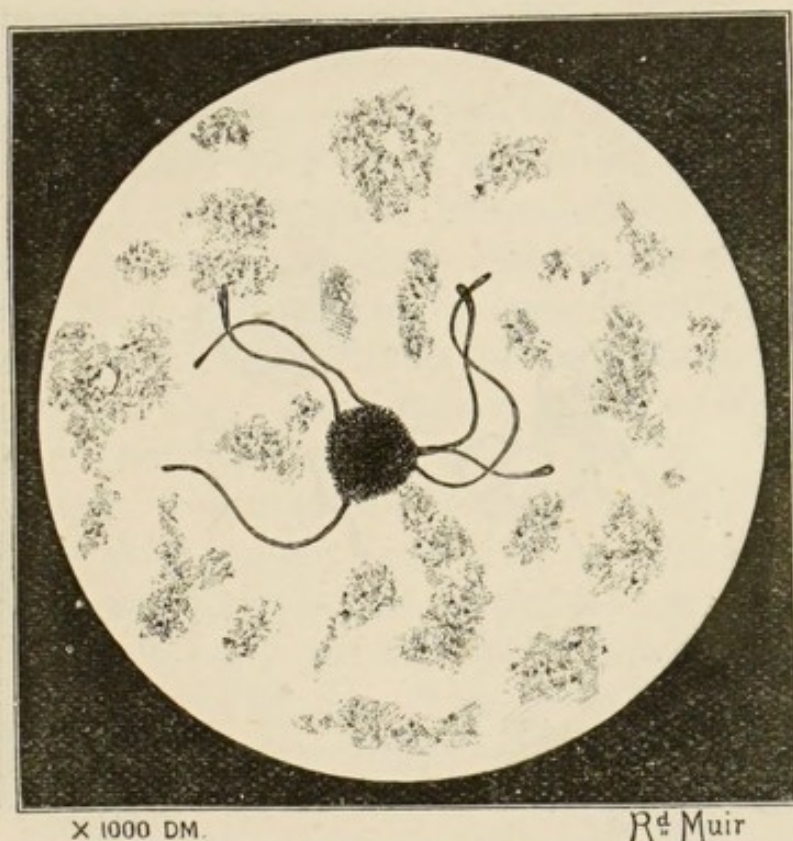
### **Extracorporeal or mosquito cycle.**

As it is unreasonable to suppose that an organism which propagates so actively in the human body has no opportunity, either by passing from one host to another or in other ways, of continuing its species, we are forced to conclude that some provision must exist in the economy of the parasite that enables it to leave and enter successive hosts. The problems suggested by this consideration are: First, how does the malaria parasite leave the human body; second, what is its life when temporarily outside the



human body; and, third, how does the parasite enter the human body?

*The flagellated body.*—When fresh malarial blood is examined some time after it has been mounted it is no unusual thing to see what is known as the “flagellated body”\* (Fig. 7). Varieties of this body



X 1000 DM.

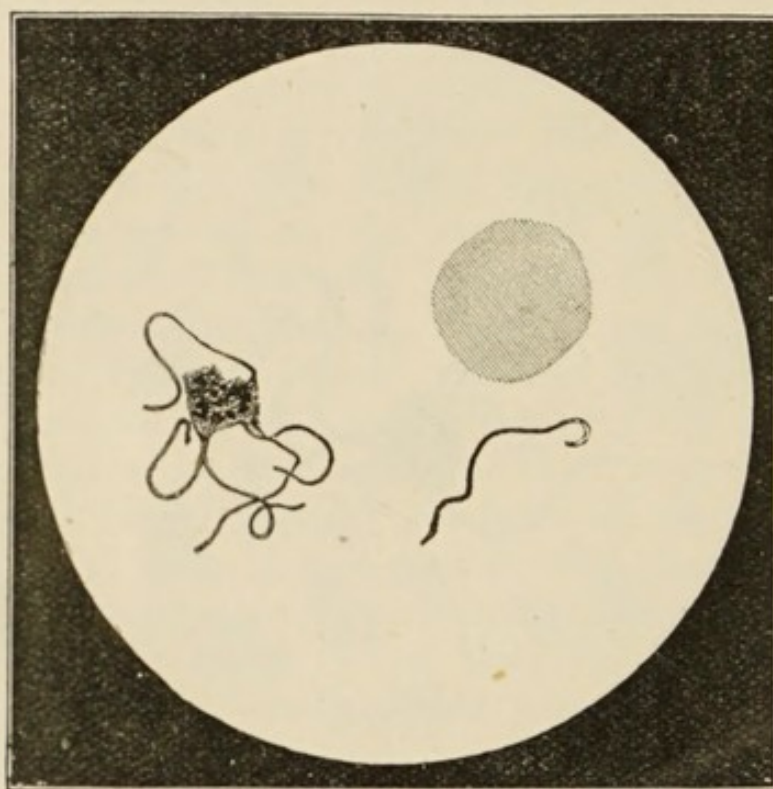
R<sup>d</sup> Muir

Fig. 7.—Malaria parasite: flagellated body; stained.

are found in all forms of plasmodial infection, both in the corresponding parasites of the lower warm-blooded animals as well as in the forms special to man. It is a strange-looking, octopus-like creature with long, actively-moving arms. Though composed of the same materials—namely, colourless protoplasm and dark melanin granules—it differs in many respects from the ordinary parasite, more especially in the fact that it is not intracorpuseular. The long, whip-like arms, numbering from one to six, or even more, are usually designated *flagella*. They are exceedingly

\* The expressions “flagellated body” and “flagellum,” applied to this phase of the malaria parasite, are somewhat misleading. The flagella of the malaria parasite are in no sense analogous to the flagella of the flagellata.

delicate and pliant filaments, difficult to see not only on account of their delicacy but also on account of the rapidity of their movements. Sometimes bulbous at the free extremity, sometimes presenting one or more swellings in their continuity, the flagella are three or four times as long as a blood corpuscle is



× 1000 DM.

R<sup>d</sup> Muir.

Fig. 8.—Malaria parasite : flagellated body and free swimming flagellum.

broad. At first they are attached to the periphery of the pigmented central, more or less spherical, body which is about half the diameter of a red blood corpuscle. The movements of the flagella are so vigorous that they double up and distort temporarily those corpuscles with which they chance to come in contact. Occasionally it may be observed that one or more of the flagella break away from the central sphere and swim free in the blood (Fig. 8), remaining active for a considerable time—several hours perhaps—before finally vanishing. When swimming free in the plasma, and also while still attached to the sphere, the flagellum indulges in three kinds of movements : —(a) an undulatory movement, evidently intended



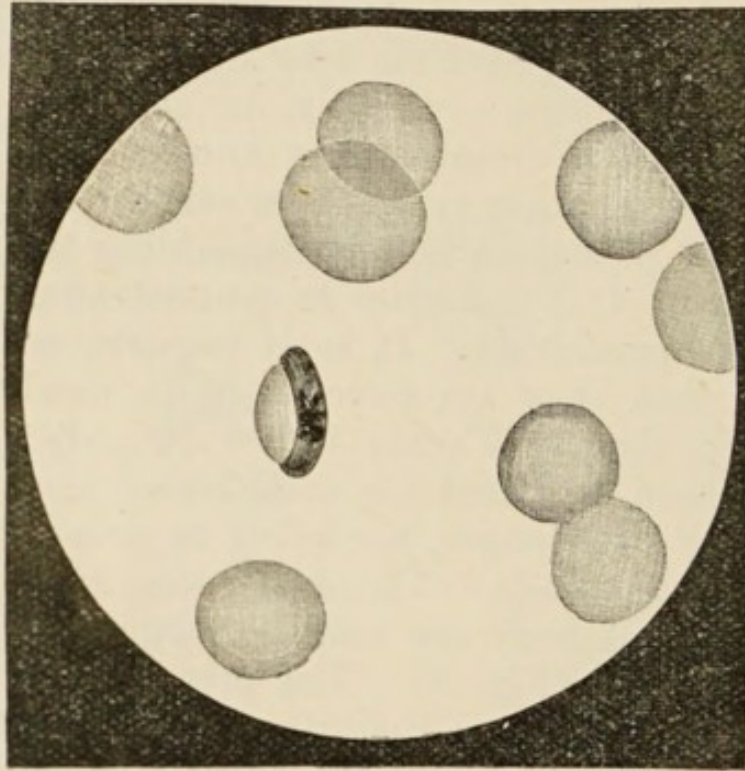
for locomotion; (*b*) a vibratory movement, apparently provoked by contact with a resisting body, as a blood corpuscle; in such circumstances the little filament is sometimes seen to straighten itself out and shiver like a slender rod when struck on the ground; (*c*) a coiling up movement, usually seen just before the flagellum finally ceases to move.

Careful observation shows that the flagellated bodies are developed from two forms of the intra-corpuscular parasite—namely, in certain types of malarial infection from what is known as the “crescent body”; in other types from certain large intra-corpuscular plasmodia closely resembling the mature parasite (Fig. 4, *j*) just prior to concentration of pigment and sporulation. It is of importance to bear in mind that they are never seen in newly drawn blood, and that they come into view only after the slide has been mounted for some time—ten to thirty minutes, or even longer, according to circumstances.

*The crescent body.*—The shape, size, and structure of the crescent body can best be comprehended from the illustration (Fig. 9). The principal features to be noted are its very definite mathematical shape; the probable existence of a delicate limiting membrane; the presence of needle-shaped melanin particles usually about the centre of the parasite, though sometimes nearer one end; and a peculiar bow-like and exceedingly delicate line that, springing from a point somewhat inside the rounded-off tips of the horns of the crescent, bridges its concavity. Manifestly this bow represents the outline of the remains of the blood corpuscle in which the parasite had developed. In many instances, especially in stained specimens, the continuation of the red blood corpuscle can be distinctly traced around the convexity of the crescent. This circumstance—together with the fact that the material included by the bow and also occasionally seen as a delicate, sometimes slightly jagged, rim around the convexity of the crescent, gives the staining reactions of hæmoglobin—



proves that this form of the malaria parasite, like the ordinary amœboid bodies already described, is also intracorpuseular. Slight differences, particularly as regards the sharpness or obtuseness of the horns, occur; but, on the whole, the crescents are very uniform in appearance. Very rarely twin or double



R. Muir.

Fig. 9.—Malaria parasite : the crescent body ; stained. ( $\times 1000$ .)

crescents—that is, two crescents in one corpuscle—are encountered (Fig. 10).

Three types of crescent occur; one in which the pigment is scattered throughout the parasite, one in which the pigment is concentrated, and one in which the protoplasm shows vacuolation and other signs of degeneration. The first, it is believed, are young and immature, the second mature, and the third effete parasites. In the first, the pigment rods sometimes exhibit slight translation as well as vibratory movements; in the two latter the pigment is absolutely quiescent. The first, or younger type of crescent, stains uniformly; but in the second type the staining,



in many instances, is markedly bipolar, a clear, unstained area occupying the middle of each horn, whilst a zone of stained protoplasm occupies the periphery, and a bridge of stained material divides the two horns at the centre of the crescent. By dissolving the melanin particles at the centre of the crescent with weak solution of ammonia, and subsequently staining, a double nucleolus can sometimes be demonstrated just at the central bridge or, in other words, at the point of junction of the two elements of which the crescent appears to be formed. On account of these evidences of a double structure Mannaberg regards the crescent as a syzygium; that is to say, as the result of the conjugation of two

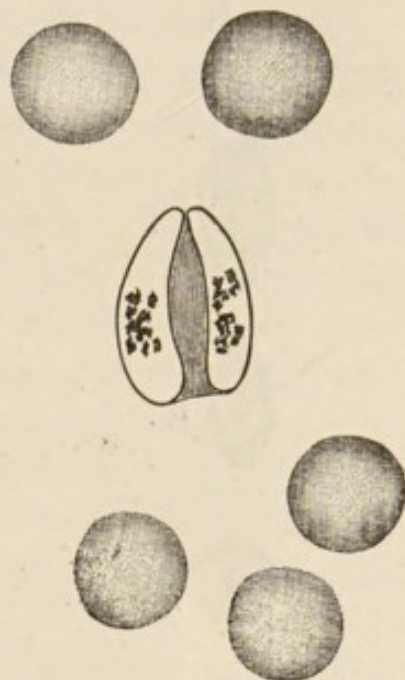


Fig. 10.—Malaria parasite: twin crescents.

amœboid forms in a doubly infected corpuscle, a circumstance which he considers gives a special direction to development and, as in other protozoa, is usually followed by encystment (Fig. 11). Bastianelli affirms that some of the differences in the staining reactions of the crescents depend on their respective sexual characters, to be alluded to presently. He says that the protoplasm of the male crescent stains more deeply, and that the nucleus is larger and carries more chromatin than in the case of the female crescent. The more immature forms of the crescent are said to begin to be recognisable in the spleen and bone marrow about the fourth day after a malarial attack commences. At first, according to Bastianelli and Bignami, they are minute, highly refringent amœboid bodies. They are rarely encountered in peripheral blood; there the



Fig. 11.—Development of the crescent body. (After Mannaberg.)



crescent body does not begin to show itself till it approaches maturity, about a week after the first crop of amœboid parasites associated with the fever paroxysm has appeared.

*Formation of the flagellated body.*—Although there may be some doubt about its mode of origin, it can be

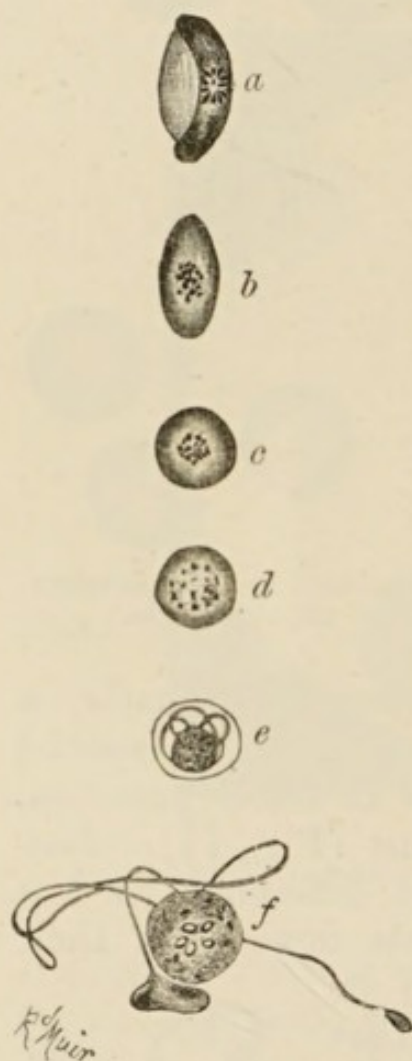


Fig. 12.—Malaria parasite: evolution of the flagellated body from the crescent.

said with confidence that the destiny of the crescent has been determined. This destiny is the formation of the flagellated body and certain spheres belonging to the special type of plasmodial infection in which the crescent occurs (Fig. 12, *b*). Ordinarily, if a number of crescent bodies are kept for a time under observation on the microscope slide, a certain proportion of them will be seen slowly, or more rapidly, to undergo change of shape, gradually becoming converted into squat crescents, then into oval bodies and then into spheres (Fig. 12, *b*, *c*), whilst the remains of the enclosing blood corpuscle fall to pieces or melt away. The remains of the blood corpuscle are often seen as a small, slightly hæmoglobin-tinted sphere lying in contact with or near the parasite. The spheres

so formed are of two types, some having hyaline, others having granular, protoplasm. At first the pigment particles, in the crescent, in the oval body, and in the sphere, are motionless and central—more rarely eccentric. By and by, in many of the spheres these particles tend to arrange themselves as a ring, lying in contact with the inner surface of what may be a very fine, invisible membrane, and occupying



the central third of the sphere and forming, as it were, a small central sphere within the larger sphere. After a time in the hyaline spheres the pigment particles begin—at first slowly and intermittently, afterwards more energetically—to dance about. As the movement of the pigment increases in rapidity and energy the entire sphere seems to partake in the agitation—to quiver, to change form, and to be jerked about as by some unseen force. The pigment particles may now become diffused through the general mass of the sphere (Fig. 12, *d*), or they may not. Whether this does or does not happen, the agitation of the sphere now becoming intense, one or more flagella are suddenly shot out from its periphery and at once begin to indulge in characteristic waving, lashing movements (Fig. 12, *f*)\*. The granular spheres do not project flagella.

In stained preparations it can be shown that the process of exflagellation is preceded by fragmentation of the nucleus, the chromosomes proceeding to the periphery of the sphere and each becoming surrounded by a portion of protoplasm. The flagellum is composed of these two elements drawn out into a thread—a chromatin filament enclosed in a covering of protoplasm. In the granular spheres the minute nucleus remains central surrounded by its circle of pigment rods.

The flagella, if they do not succeed in breaking away as already described, may continue to move for an hour, or even longer—that is if the flagellated body is not engulfed by a phagocyte, an occurrence very frequently witnessed. Finally, they slow down, cease to move, curl up perhaps, and then gradually fade from view. Should the flagella succeed in breaking away, the remains of the flagellated body, consisting of pigment particles included in a small amount of residual protoplasm, tend to assume a somewhat

\* Careful focussing, especially of stained crescent-derived spheres, may sometimes show that for a short time before their eruption the flagella exist preformed inside the limiting membrane of the sphere (Fig. 12, *e*). One can sometimes see a flagellum, in



spherical, passive form, the hitherto violent changes of shape and the movement of the pigment ceasing almost abruptly.

In another variety of plasmodial infection certain bodies (Fig. 13, *a*, *d*), which look like ordinary full-grown intracorpuseular parasites—distinguished by the pigment being active—prior to the formation

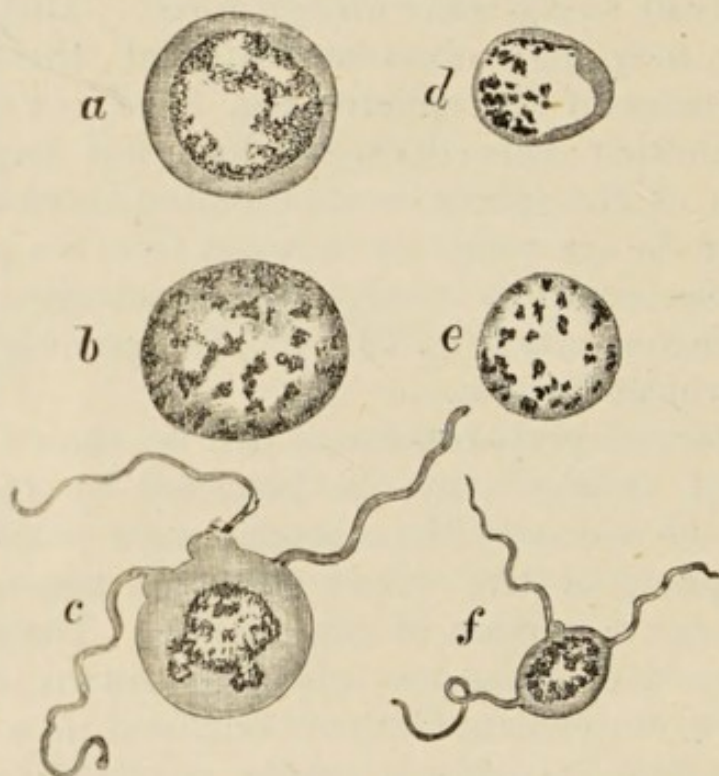


Fig. 13.—Evolution of the flagellated body in the tertian (*a*, *b*, *c*) and quartan (*d*, *e*, *f*) parasites. (Compiled from Thayer and Hewelson.)

of spores, may sometimes be seen to slip out from their enclosing corpuscles (Fig. 13, *b*, *e*). If these escaped plasmodia are watched, in some instances the pigment they contain is seen to indulge in violent dancing movements, the body of the parasite being at the same time agitated and jerked about. Finally, flagella may be suddenly projected from the periphery (Fig. 12, *c*, *f*), very much in the same way as the flagella are projected from the periphery of its efforts to erupt, carry this membrane in front of it and, failing to break through, retract and perhaps renew the effort at another point. Doubtless the agitated movements of the sphere are produced by the efforts made by the flagella to break through this membrane.



the crescent-derived sphere. Manifestly, these large spherical plasmodia and the flagellated bodies arising from them correspond to the crescent-derived sphere and crescent-derived flagellated body.

*Conditions favouring and retarding exflagellation.*  
—Ross has shown that, provided the blood containing the crescent body be prevented from coming in contact with the air, as can be secured by pricking the finger through vaseline, the evolution of the parasite does not proceed. He has further shown that if the droplet of blood is exposed to the air for a minute or two before being mounted on a slide, exflagellation is markedly encouraged. Similarly, Marshall has shown that by mixing the blood with a trace of water exflagellation is also favoured. I find that by combining these methods—namely, exposure to the air with slight aqueous admixture, as by breathing on the slip before applying the cover-glass—it is generally easy to procure quickly, from crescent-containing blood, specimens of the flagellated body. Probably, although I have not experimented with this object in suitable cases, flagellation will be favoured in the non-crescent-forming plasmodia by similar means.

In certain bloods exflagellation is easily procured; in others the opposite is the case. As regards the crescents, doubtless success depends in a measure on the degree of maturity of the parasite, young or effete crescents failing to evolve. There are other conditions affecting the process, however, which are as yet unknown.

#### MOSQUITO-MALARIA THEORY.

**Popular and early views.**—The idea that some relationship exists between the mosquito and malaria has long been entertained, not only by medical men, but also by the inhabitants of malarial countries. In parts of Italy the peasants for centuries have believed that fever is produced by the bite of the mosquito; and, as Koch has pointed out, in German East Africa the natives of the high-



lands declare that when they visit the unhealthy lowlands they are bitten by an insect they call *Mbu* (mosquito), with the result that they get fever which they also call *Mbu*. King and others long ago pointed out how a mosquito-malaria hypothesis could best explain such things as the connection of malaria with swamps and with high atmospheric temperatures; the well-known danger of night exposure in malarial countries; the influence of trees, of an expanse of water, and of altitude on the diffusion of the germ, and many other points. As to how the mosquito intervened they had no reasonable hypothesis to offer. Laveran, Koch, and Pfeiffer suggested the mosquito might stand in the same relation to the malaria parasite as it stood to *Filaria nocturna*; but as to the particular phase of the parasite it subserved, and as to the exact way in which the insect operated, they were silent.

### **A mosquito-malaria theory definitely formulated.**

In 1894\*, and again in 1896, I formulated a definite hypothesis on the subject. Being a parasite, the plasmodium, to keep in existence as a species, must pass from host to host; in other words, must at some time have an extracorporeal life. From the fact that the flagellated body does not come into existence until the blood has left the blood-vessels—that is, is outside the body—I concluded that the function of the flagellum lay outside the human body, and that the flagellated body was the first phase of the extracorporeal life of the malaria parasite. As the plasmodium whilst in the circulation is always enclosed in a blood corpuscle, and is therefore incapable of leaving the body by its own efforts, and as it is never, so far as known, extruded in the excreta, I concluded that it is removed from the circulation by some blood-eating animal, most probably

\* *Brit. Med. Journ.*, December 8th, 1894; "Goulstonian Lectures," *Brit. Med. Journ.*, March 14th, 21st, and 28th, 1896.



by some suctorial insect common in the haunts of malaria. This bloodsucker I believed to be the mosquito, an insect whose habits seemed adapted for such a purpose, and whose distribution conformed to the well-ascertained habits of malaria. Further, basing my opinion on what I had shown to be the fact in the case of *Filaria nocturna* and on the peculiarities of the distribution of malaria, I conjectured that only particular species of mosquito were capable of subserving the particular species of plasmodium.

**Ross's discoveries.**—Working on the lines suggested by this hypothesis, Ross first (1895) demonstrated the fact that when crescent-containing blood is ingested by the mosquito a large proportion of the crescents rapidly proceed to exflagellation and to the shedding of the flagella. In 1897 (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, December 18th, 1897, *Ibid.* February 26th, 1898) he showed that in particular species of mosquito fed on malarial blood, living and growing pigmented malaria parasites are to be found embedded in the stomach wall of the insects. Early in 1898 (as announced by me at the meeting of the British Medical Association, in Edinburgh, in July, 1898), he showed that if a particular species of mosquito be fed on the blood of proteosoma-infected birds, the parasite will enter the stomach wall of the insect, grow and sporulate there, and that the resulting sporozoites will enter the veneno-salivary gland of the insect, and that the insect will now be capable of infecting by its bite other birds. Ross further showed that only particular species of mosquito could subserve proteosoma in this way, and that the particular mosquito in question was not efficient as regards another blood parasite of birds—namely, halteridium—or as regards the malaria parasites of man. Thus by direct observation and by analogy Ross distinctly, and first, proved that the extracorporeal phase of the malaria parasite is passed in particular species of mosquitoes, and, by analogy, that the parasite is transferred from man to man by the mosquito.



**MacCallum's discovery.**—A gap in Ross's observations was filled in by MacCallum, who showed, principally by observations on halteridium (*Lancet*, November 13th, 1897), that the function of the flagellum after it breaks away from the parent sphere is to impregnate (Fig. 3, *c, f*) the granular crescent-derived spheres, which then become transformed into beaked and travelling vermicules. Doubtless, although the process has not been directly observed, it is in virtue of the locomoting and penetrating properties of the travelling vermicule that the malaria parasite is enabled to lodge itself, where Ross first found it, in the stomach wall of the mosquito.

**Confirmation and extension of Ross's work.**—Ross's discoveries were quickly confirmed and elaborated by the Italians, by Daniels, and by Koch. Grassi has shown that several species belonging to the genus *Anopheles*, more particularly *Anopheles claviger*, are the special mosquito hosts of the malaria parasites of man. Step by step he traced the crescent-forming and benign tertian malaria parasites through their mosquito host, finding that in their evolution they closely resembled that which Ross had so successfully demonstrated for proteosoma and had so clearly foreshadowed and partly demonstrated for the malaria parasite of man. In conjunction with Bignami he repeated successfully in man Ross's experiment of conferring plasmodial disease by mosquito bite. Bastianelli, Celli, Dionisi, and others have also succeeded in confirming Ross's statements and in adding to our knowledge of the extracorporeal cycle of the malaria parasite. The mosquito-malaria hypothesis has now, therefore, passed from the region of conjecture to that of fact.

#### THE MALARIA PARASITE IN THE MOSQUITO.

**In the lumen of the stomach : travelling vermicule stage.**—When crescent-containing blood has been ingested by certain species of mosquito belonging to the genus *Anopheles*, those crescents that



are mature and that are not obsolescent are transformed into the two types of sphere already described—hyaline and granular. The hyaline spheres then

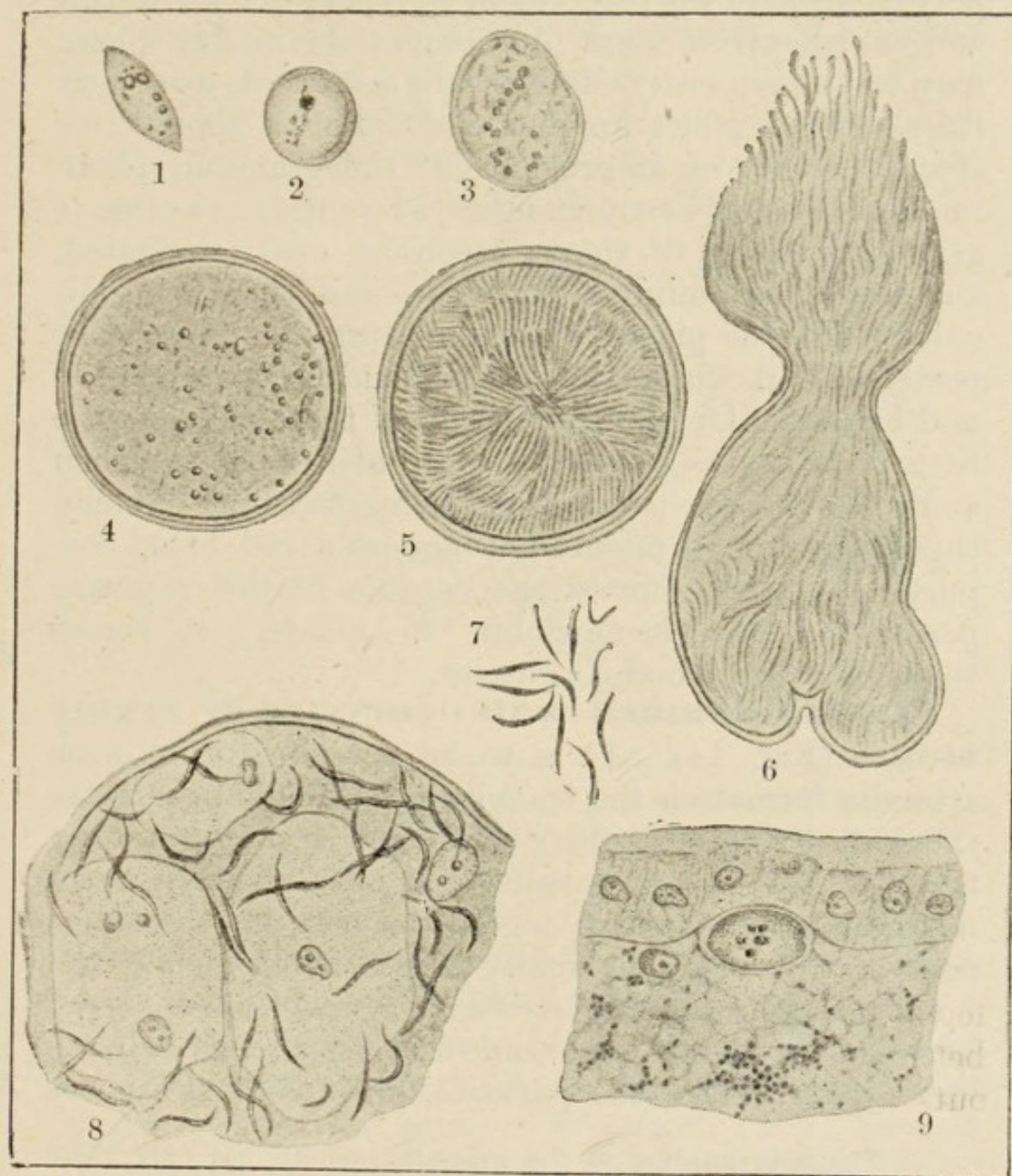


Fig. 14.—Evolution of the crescent parasite in *Anopheles claviger*. (Adapted from Grassi, Bignami, and Bastianelli.)

1 to 6, The parasite as found in the stomach wall; 7, isolated sporozoites; 8, sporozoites in the salivary gland; 9, section of stomach wall showing the parasite *in situ*.

emit their flagella, which, breaking away, approach and seek energetically by butting and boring to enter the granular spheres. At one point on the surface of each of the granular spheres a minute papilla is



projected to meet, as it were, a corresponding attacking flagellum. At this point one of the flagella contrives to enter and, after momentarily causing considerable perturbation in the contents of the sphere, comes to rest and vanishes from view. Although the granular sphere may be subsequently energetically attacked, no second flagellum can effect an entrance. For a short time after this act of impregnation\* the granular sphere undergoes no apparent change. Presently, however, it gradually alters in shape, becoming oval, elongated, and finally assuming a lanceolate and then a vermicular form, the pigment accumulating at the broad or posterior end, whilst the anterior end becomes pointed and hyaline. On the completion of these changes, the little body begins to move about; at first slowly, then more rapidly, the pointed end being in front. Should this travelling vermicule impinge on a red blood corpuscle, it seems to prick the capsule of the corpuscle permitting the hæmoglobin to escape; it passes through white blood corpuscles.

**In the stomach wall : encysted or zygote stage** (Fig. 14).—It is to be presumed that soon after its formation the travelling vermicule penetrates the wall of the mosquito's stomach. Working its way through the layer of cells and the delicate basement membrane which together constitute the inner coat of this organ, it finally lodges itself among the longitudinal and transverse muscular fibres lying between this inner membrane and the equally delicate outer coat. Here the parasite, some thirty-six hours

\* The impregnation of the granular sphere has only twice been witnessed in the case of the malaria parasite of man (MacCallum); but in halteridium of birds it has been observed many times. Koch has seen the vermicule in proteosoma. Analogy, therefore, justifies the inference, so compatible with the other well-ascertained features in the cycles of the intracorporeal parasites of man and the lower animals, that a similar arrangement obtains, as described above, in the hæmamebidae of man. Prof. Grassi showed me sections of the mosquito's stomach in which the travelling vermicules could be seen approaching and actually in contact with the epithelial coat. These preparations were from mosquitoes killed thirty-two hours after feeding on malarial blood.



after the mosquito has fed, may be detected as a minute ( $6\mu$ ) oval or spherical body with a sharp outline and hyaline, or slightly granular, contents in which the melanin particles are plainly visible. It lies between the muscular fibres which, as it grows, it disassociates to a certain extent.

During the next few days the parasite grows rapidly, acquiring a well-defined capsule, and, in consequence of its growth, protruding on the surface of the

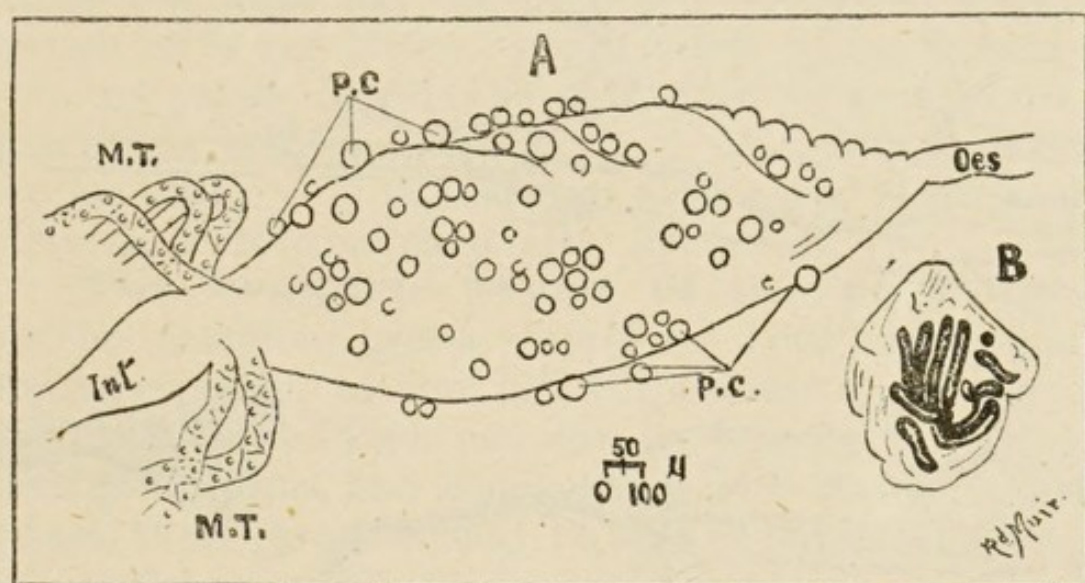


Fig. 15.—A, Stomach, or middle intestine of culex after infection with proteosoma ; M.T., Malpighian tubes ; Int., intestine ; Oes., oesophagus ; P.C., proteosoma zygotes protruding into the body cavity. B, Ruptured zygote capsule containing Ross's "black spores."

stomach like a wart or hernia (Fig. 15, A). Meanwhile, important changes take place in the contents. Nucleus and protoplasm divide into a number of spheres, around which, attached by one end like the spines on a porcupine, a vast number of minute ( $16\mu$ ), slender, spindle-shaped, nucleated bodies are ultimately formed. At a later stage the spherules disappear, leaving the spindles (sporozoites) loose in the capsule which is now packed full of them. In about a week—sooner or later according to atmospheric temperature, which has a great influence on the rate of development of the parasite—the capsule ruptures and collapses, discharging its contents into the body cavity of the mosquito.



**In the veneno-salivary gland: sporozoite or infective stage.**—From the body cavity of the mosquito the spindle-shaped sporozoites pass (probably by way of the blood, for movement of a spontaneous nature has not been observed in them) to the three-lobed veneno-salivary glands lying on each side of the fore part of the thorax

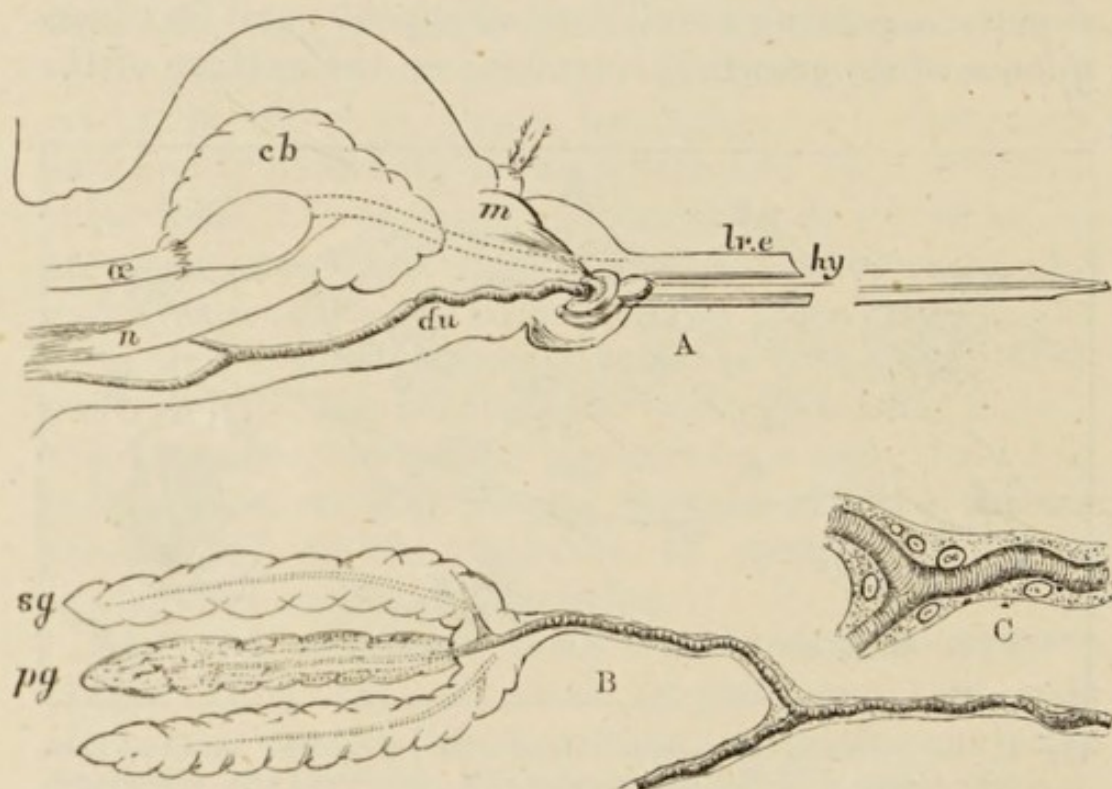


Fig. 16.—Dissection of head of mosquito showing poison apparatus. (After Macloskie.)

A, Median section of head, showing *du*, the veneno-salivary duct, with its insertion in *hy*, the hypopharynx; *cb*, cerebrum; below this is the cerebellum and the pumping enlargement of *æ*, the œsophagus; *lre*, base of labrum-epipharynx; *m*, muscle; *n*, nerve commissure. The other parts have been removed. B, The veneno-salivary duct, showing its bifurcation and the three glands on one of its branches; *pg*, poison gland; *sg*, marks the upper of the two salivary glands. C, The bifurcation of the duct with its nucleated hypodermis.

of the insect (Fig. 16). These glands communicate with the base of the mosquito's proboscis by means of a long duct along the radicles of which the clear, plump cells of the gland are arranged. The sporozoites can be readily recognised in many, though not in all, of the cells, especially in those of the middle lobe, and also free in the ducts. So numerous are they in some of the cells that the appearance they present is suggestive of a bacillus-laden lepra cell.



**Transference to the human host.**—In a limited number of experiments it has been shown that if a mosquito whose veneno-salivary gland contains these sporozoites bites a man, the sporozoites are injected into the man's blood, where they multiply, and where, after eight to ten days, their progeny can be seen as malaria parasites of the type corresponding to those of the man on whom the infecting mosquito had originally fed.

By a large number of experiments, abundantly confirmed, Ross has distinctly proved that if appropriate birds are bitten by mosquitoes whose veneno-salivary glands contain the sporozoites of *proteosoma*, the birds become infected with the parasite and in due course exhibit *proteosoma* in their blood and develop corresponding clinical symptoms.

**The complete cycles of the parasites.**

—The complete cycles, therefore, both intra- and extra-corporeal, of the intracorpuscular blood parasites of man and birds can now be described. Using zoological terms, and commencing with the youngest phase, these parasites may be said to enter the blood corpuscles as *amœbulæ* or *myxopods*. Growing at the expense of the hæmoglobin, they become pigmented and, on reaching maturity, develop either into (a) *sporocytes* (the sporulating body—rosette body), or into (b) *gametocytes* (crescents, spherical body of tertians or quartans).

(a) The *sporocytes*, after concentration of pigment, divide into a number of naked spores, which, on the breaking down of the enveloping blood corpuscle, escape into the blood plasma and enter fresh blood corpuscles as *amœbulæ*; thus completing the *endogenous cycle* and providing for the multiplication of the parasite in the vertebrate host.

(b) The *gametocytes* belong to the *exogenous cycle* passed in the bodies of particular species of mosquito. They are of two kinds: *male* (hyaline spheres) and *female* (granular spheres). The male gametocyte emits several *microgametes* (flagella), one



of which, breaking away, enters and impregnates the single *macrogamete* of which the female gametocytes consist. The product is a *zygote*, which, in virtue of acquired locomoting powers, transfers itself from the lumen to the wall of the middle intestine (stomach) of the mosquito in which it had developed. Here it grows, becomes encysted, and divides into a number of *zygotomeres* and *residual bodies*. The *zygotomeres* become converted into *blastophores* covered with *zygotoblasts* (sporozoites, "germinal rods"—Ross). The *blastophores* next disappear, leaving the cyst packed with the *zygotoblasts*. Finally, the *zygote* ruptures, discharging the *zygotoblasts* into the body cavity of the insect, whence they are transferred to the veneno-salivary gland, in the secretion of which, opportunity offering, they are injected into the blood of an appropriate vertebrate, in whose blood corpuscles they subsequently develop into amœbulæ and so renew the cycle.

**Possibility of yet another extra-corporeal phase.**—So far the story of the life-history of these parasites seems to be complete. There are certain facts, however, which seem to indicate the possibility of yet another phase. Firstly, there are districts in India, Africa, and elsewhere that are practically uninhabited on account of the prevalence and virulence of the local malaria. If man be necessary for the completion of the life-cycle of the parasite, how explain its abundance in such circumstances—that is to say, in the absence of man? Secondly, those engaged in malarious districts on works entailing disturbance of the soil, *e.g.* opening jungle lands, digging canals or foundations, making roads or railways, are particularly prone to contract malaria; yet such operations seem in no way calculated to foster broods of malarial mosquitoes. How account for infection in such circumstances; where, and in what form, is the malaria germ to be found there?

For the first of these difficulties two explanations may be submitted. (*a*) The malaria parasite may be



capable of living in a variety of vertebrate hosts, as we know to be the case with halteridium and proteosoma of birds. It may be that in the malarious districts alluded to the prevalence of such an appropriate vertebrate, together with the presence of an appropriate mosquito, insure the continuance and abundance of the parasites. Support is given to this hypothesis by the recent discovery by Dionisi of three species of intracorpuseular parasites in bats, closely resembling the three malaria parasites of man; and by a similar discovery by Koch in monkeys. Similar parasites have also been found in the ox, lamb, sheep, dog and horse. (b) The malaria parasite may be capable of passing from mosquito to mosquito without the intervention of a vertebrate, either by the penetration of the sporozoite into the mosquito's ova, or by means of a special type of sporozoite. As regards the former, we have some support in the behaviour of the analogous parasite, *Pirosoma bigeminum*, of Texas cattle fever, which gains access to the body of the young tick apparently through the infected ovum. As to the latter, Ross and others have found in a proportion of mosquitoes infected with human, or avian, malaria certain dark brown or black, relatively large, sausage-shaped bodies (Ross's "*black spores*") lying inside the ruptured zygote capsules (Fig. 15, B). The function and nature of these bodies are not apparent. They resist decomposition, and pass through the intestine of mosquito larvæ fed on them unaltered. The frequency of their occurrence, their organisation, and their ability to resist decomposition, suggest that they have a part to play in the life of the parasite. Possibly they are a form of resting spore intended to carry the parasite over adverse times, and may lie in the soil, retaining vitality for an indefinite period.\*

\* Grassi is of opinion—and his preparations support him in this view—that the "black spore" appearance is produced by the deposit of a dark encrusting material on sporozoites which have not escaped from the zygote cyst when it ruptures at maturity. These "black spores" he finds only in ruptured cysts.



In explanation of the second difficulty indicated it has been suggested that the "black spores" just referred to, or perhaps encysted sporozoites, may have been deposited in the soil years before by long-defunct mosquitoes, and that in moving the soil these dormant parasites are set at liberty, and so in air, in

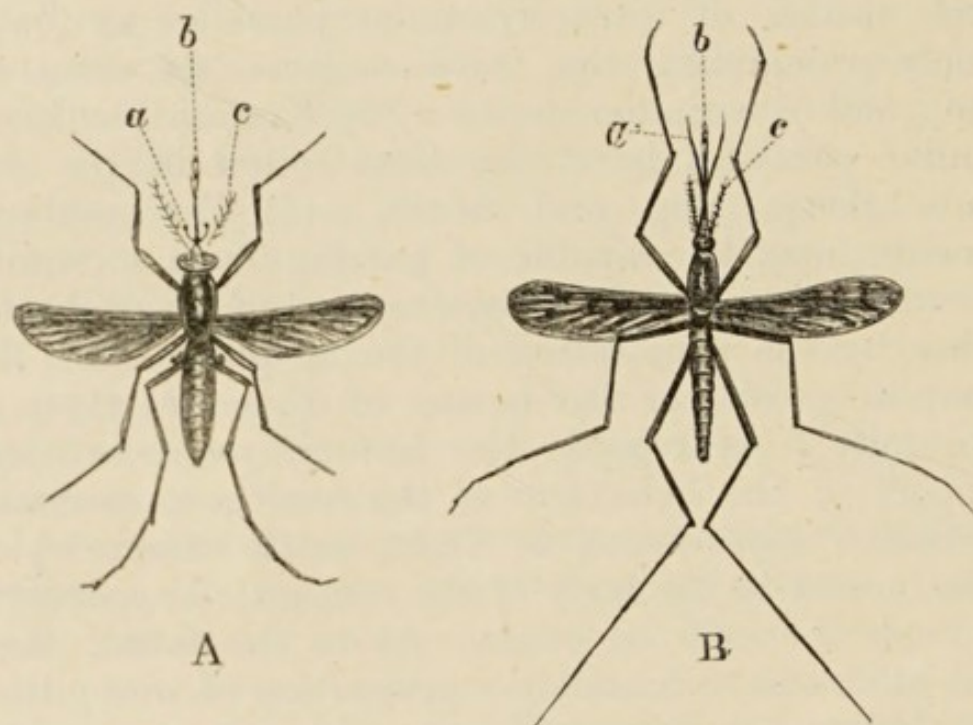


Fig. 17.—A, *Culex pipiens* ♀ ; B, *Anopheles claviger* (*maculipennis*) ♀.  
(After Austen.)

a, palpi ; b, proboscis ; c, antennæ.

water, or otherwise, gain access to the workmen engaged.

Grassi is of opinion that the malaria parasite, under natural conditions, can be acquired by man only through the bite of the mosquito, and that the mosquito can acquire the parasite only by ingesting the blood of a malaria-infected man. He holds that there is no other extracorporeal life than that described ; that there is no authentic instance of malaria being acquired in uninhabited places ; and that in the case of malaria in connection with soil disturbances, it depends on the creation during digging operations of puddles of water in which *Anopheles* breed.



**Malaria-bearing mosquitoes.**—It is manifest that all mosquitoes—of which in Europe there are at least some fifty species—are not capable of acting as hosts to the malaria parasite. European species belong to three genera—namely, *Culex*, *Anopheles*, and *Edes*. Hitherto the parasite has been found only in *Anopheles*; several species of *Culex*, although efficient hosts for proteosoma, have been proved to be ineffective as regards the human parasite. Probably several species, perhaps many, of *Anopheles* are effective hosts. In Italy *Anopheles claviger* (*maculipennis*) is the most important, but *A. pictus*, *A. bifurcatus*, and in India *A. rossii*, have been found to harbour the parasite. It is of practical importance therefore to be able to recognise, if not the species, at least the genus, to which any given mosquito belongs.

#### POINTS OF DISTINCTION BETWEEN CULEX AND ANOPHELES (Fig. 17).

##### CULEX.

*The ova* are generally laid in artificial collections of water about houses, *e.g.* in pitchers, cisterns, etc. They form tiny boat-shaped masses which float on the water like specks of soot.

##### ANOPHELES.

*The ova* are laid in natural collections of water, *e.g.* stagnant pools, paddy-fields, or small, sluggish streams which are free from fish and which preferably contain algæ. They are generally arranged in loosely connected masses of three or four, and attach themselves to sticks, weeds, etc. (Fig. 18).

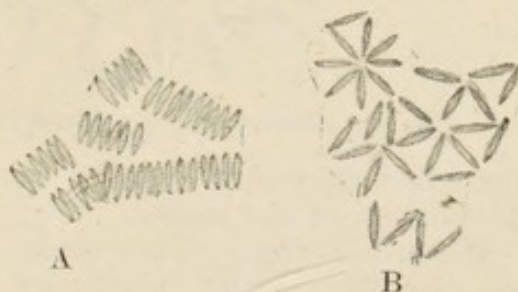


Fig. 18.—A, Eggs of *Anopheles claviger*; B, eggs of *A. bifurcatus*. (After Grassi.)

*Larvæ.*—Are very active, and feed greedily on any animal matter. They come to the surface of water to breathe with head hanging vertically

*Larvæ.*—Are very active, and feed preferably on algæ. They come to the surface of the water to breathe with body lying parallel to the surface.

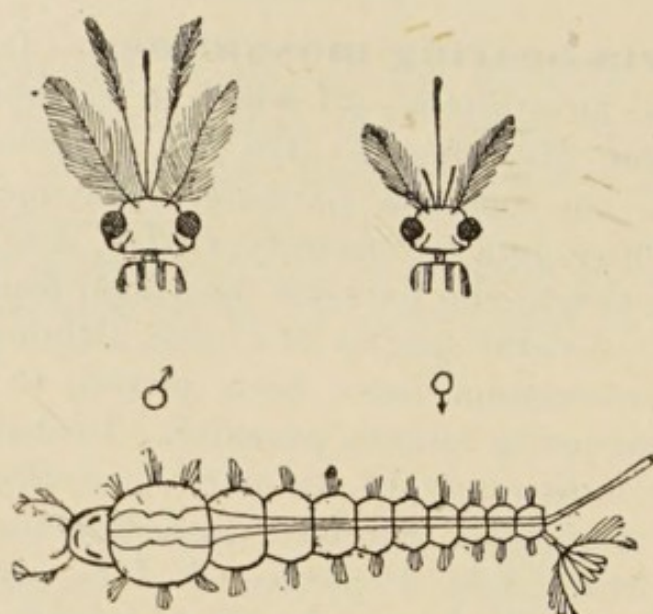


Fig. 19.—*Culex* ♂ : Head of male ; ♀ head of female ; larva.

down ; the air tubes terminating at the caudal extremity in a long respiratory tube determine this attitude. When

The air tubes terminate dorsally near caudal extremity without any respiratory tube. When disturbed they glide away tail

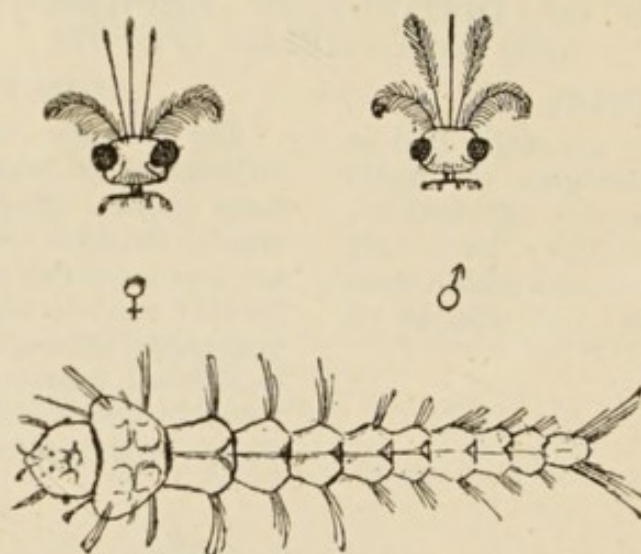


Fig. 20.—*Anopheles* ♀ : Head of female ; ♂ head of male ; larva.

disturbed they sink rapidly to the bottom of the water.

*Mature Insect.*—The male has maxillary palpi nearly as long as the proboscis with five segments. The female has diminutive palpi with three segments (Fig. 19). Most species have unspotted wings.

When at rest on a plane surface, it assumes a position more or less with the axis of its body parallel to the surface (Fig. 21).

first, close to the surface, with a skating kind of movement.

*Mature Insect.*—Both male and female have maxillary palpi nearly as long as the proboscis ; each palp has five segments (Fig. 20). Most species have spotted wings.

When at rest on a plane surface, it assumes a position more or less at right angles to the surface (Fig. 22).



It must be remembered that it is only the female mosquito that sucks blood. The male is a vegetarian.

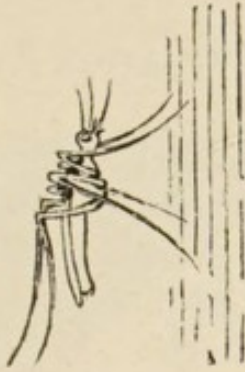


Fig. 21.—Characteristic position of *Culex*. (Ross.)

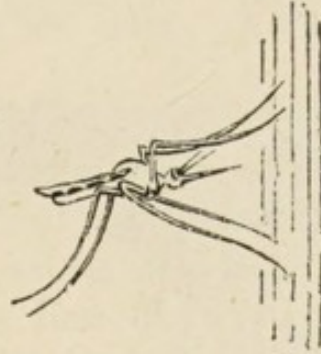


Fig. 22.—Characteristic position of *Anopheles*. (Ross.)

The latter can readily be distinguished from the female by his well-developed feathery antennæ.

## CHAPTER II.

MALARIA : THE MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION OF THE  
BLOOD.

BEFORE commencing the study of malarial blood it is advisable for the beginner to familiarise himself with the microscopical appearances of normal blood, both in fresh and stained preparations. He should learn to recognise the several varieties of leucocyte ; to appreciate differences in colour, size, and shape of the red cells ; to recognise dirt, vacuoles, forms of crenation, and artificially produced appearances. By mastering such details at the outset important sources of fallacy will be avoided, and in the process of self-education a useful knowledge of technique will be acquired. The English-reading student will find the works of Coles or of Cabot of great assistance.

For a thorough appreciation of the principles on which blood examinations for the demonstration and study of the plasmodium should be conducted, it must be borne in mind that the parasite is intra-corpuscular. To see it, therefore, it is necessary, particularly for the beginner, so to dispose the corpuscles in his preparations that a proportion of them shall lie flat on the slide, in a single layer, and presenting their surfaces, and not their edges, to the observer (Fig. 23). It is mainly from ignoring this fundamental principle that so many fail to find the plasmodium.

**Preparation of fluid blood films.**—To secure this disposition of corpuscles in fresh blood the following procedure, the smallest detail of which must be scrupulously carried out, is recommended.

Thoroughly cleanse with alcohol three or four thin cover-glasses and as many slips, and cover them immediately with some convenient vessel so as to protect them from the minutest



particle of floating dust. Cleanse one of the patient's finger-tips with alcohol and dry it. Prick the finger-pad with a clean needle, and wipe away the first drop of blood that exudes. Then gently, with finger and thumb, squeeze the finger-pad and express a second minute droplet of blood; this should be very small—no larger than a pin's-head. Touch the

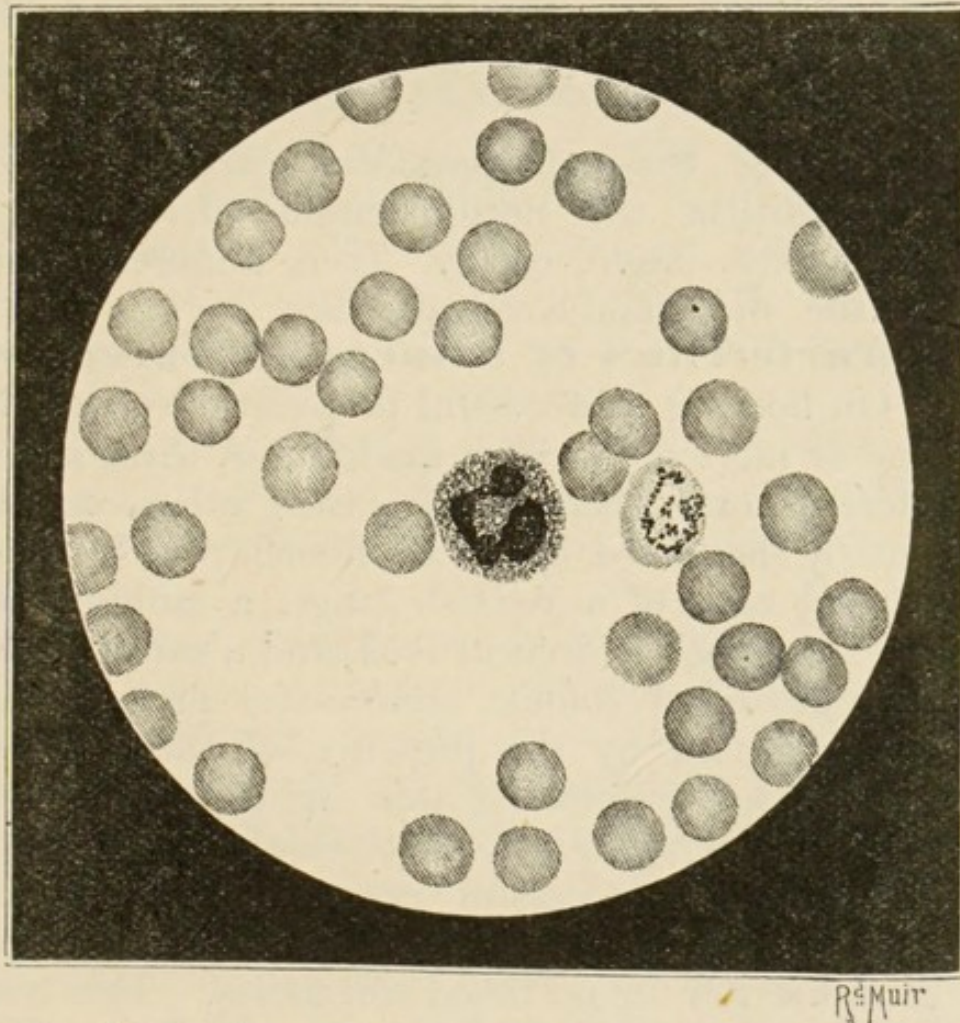


Fig. 23.—Microphotogram showing the necessary disposition of blood corpuscles in slides for examination for the plasmodium. To the right of the white blood corpuscle in the centre of the field a red blood corpuscle three-fourths filled with a tertian (benign) parasite is visible. (From microphotogram by Dr. Cosens.)

droplet lightly with the centre of a cover-glass, taking care that the latter does not come into contact with the skin, and immediately drop the cover-glass on the slide. No pressure should be used to cause the blood to spread out. If glasses and finger are quite clean, the blood will at once run out in a very fine film. It is sometimes more convenient to obtain the blood from the lobe of the ear or, in children, the great toe.

Several preparations should be made, the requisite



blood being obtained by renewed gentle compression of the finger-tip.

After waiting a few minutes to allow the blood to spread out completely between the glasses, it is well to ring the preparations with vaseline. This will effectually stop all movement, all evaporation of the blood, and, consequently, over-compression of the corpuscles, and will thereby greatly facilitate examination.

In making these preparations care should be taken to sterilise the needle employed, otherwise grave accidents might occur. It is unnecessary to sterilise the slides and cover-glasses.

**Characteristics of a successful preparation.**—On holding a successful preparation up to the light, one or more areas, each made up of three zones, the different zones shading into each other, can be made out by the naked eye. Each such area includes a peripheral zone of a reddish tinge, a middle zone having a somewhat iridescent look, and a central zone absolutely devoid of colour. Successful preparations may be recognised by the presence of these zones. Preparations not exhibiting this appearance should be rejected ; it is waste of time to examine them.

On examining successful preparations with the microscope, it will be found that the central zone or area contains few or no blood corpuscles. This zone may be designated the "empty zone." Proceeding outwards from this we come on an area occupied by scattered, isolated, compressed, and much-expanded corpuscles — the "zone of scattered corpuscles." Farther out the corpuscles become more numerous and less expressed (Fig. 23). Gradually, as we trace the slide still farther outwards, the corpuscles are found approximated to each other until, finally, the peripheries of the corpuscles are mostly in touch — the "single-layer zone." Farther out the corpuscles, though still lying flat, are found to overlap each other or are piled one on the top of the other — the "zone of heaped-up corpuscles." Beyond this



zone the corpuscles are arranged in rouleaux—the “zone of rouleaux.” At the extreme margin of the preparation the corpuscles tend to break up and run together so as to form a narrow border of free hæmoglobin, the individual corpuscles, perhaps, being indistinguishable—the “zone of free hæmoglobin.” Each of these zones should be studied, for each carries special information about the plasmodium.

**Microscopical examination.**—The beginner will save time if he gets someone who is familiar with the necessary technique, and with the appearance of the parasite in the blood, to give him one or two lessons. Accuracy and quickness can be acquired only by practice. It is a good plan to practise preparing films from one's own blood.

The examination is best conducted with  $\frac{1}{12}$  of an inch oil immersion lens, a rather low eyepiece, a sub-stage condenser, and not too dazzling an illumination.

It is not always possible to choose, but, if practicable, a case of quartan infection should be selected for examination in the first instance. Failing a quartan, a well-defined benign tertian infection might be chosen. Failing either of these, a long-standing case of recurring malaria with marked cachexia will afford the next best opportunity. It is best to examine the patient's blood just before or at the time of rigor. In quartans and benign tertians, at the time named, there should be little difficulty in discovering large plasmodia; in their case attention is called to the relatively large parasites by the abundance of coarse pigment they contain. In the blood of malarial cachectics with recurring febrile attacks it is generally an easy matter to find crescents and crescent-derived spheres, as this form of the parasite is of considerable size, carries abundance of pigment, and possesses a very definite and striking shape.

When the beginner has learnt to recognise one form of the parasite, he will begin to appreciate what



sort of body he has got to look for ; thereafter he should be able to educate himself, and to pick out the smaller and intermediate forms.

In proceeding to make his first examination of a liquid blood slide, the beginner, in the first instance, should confine his attention to the "single-layer zone." Field after field of this he must pass in review, carefully scrutinising the interior of every blood corpuscle, every leucocyte, and every pigmented body, even though it be not included in a corpuscle. He must not expect to find parasites in every corpuscle, or even in every field ; and he certainly must not expect, as the beginner usually does, to find in every slide the beautifully regular sporulating form or "rosette body," or the weird-looking flagellated body made familiar to us by so many illustrations. Such bodies, though really present somewhere and in some form at one time or another in every case, are among the least common of the many phases of the plasmodium ; they are met with only under very definite and not very constantly encountered conditions, and are not very often seen at an ordinary clinical examination.

In most cases the plasmodium is discovered in the first field or two examined ; but in not a few instances dozens of fields may have to be scrutinised before a single parasite is found. Therefore no examination can be said to be complete, in a negative sense, until at least half an hour has been spent over several suitably prepared slides.

The forms of intra-corpuscular plasmodia most frequently met with have the appearance either of small specks of pale protoplasm, or of larger masses of pale protoplasm containing grains of black pigment. Close watching discovers that the former are endowed with active amœboid movement, and that they continually change shape and position in the affected corpuscles. As these movements are an important test of the parasitic nature of the body sought, they should be carefully looked for. These protoplasmic specks look



like little washed-out smudges of dirty white paint, half hidden by the hæmoglobin; they are sometimes hard to see. Their parasitic nature can readily be determined by their movements; their soft, ill-defined margins; and by the fact that they tend now and again, on first removal from the body, and permanently later, to assume the appearance of tiny white rings which show up very distinctly in the hæmoglobin of the corpuscle. These features readily distinguish them from the sharply defined, clear, motionless vacuole (Fig. 24). The other common forms—the larger or smaller intra-corpuscular pigmented parasites—occupy anywhere from a sixth to nearly the entire area of the affected corpuscles. They are recognised by their pale protoplasm; the black melanin particles sprinkled about or, if towards the period of rigor, concentrated in their interior; and by their more or less active amœboid movements. In quartans and tertians, but especially in the former, sporulating rosette forms are seen occasionally.

*Examination of blood for flagellated bodies.*—When the student has become familiar with these appearances, and has thoroughly seized the fact that the sporulating forms are to be found only, or usually during, just before, or soon after the rigor stage of fever, he should endeavour to follow up the initial steps of the intra-corpuscular or mosquito stage of the parasite. So far as ordinary preparations permit, this phase is best studied in the “zone of heaped-up corpuscles” and in the “zone of rouleaux”; because in these zones the parasite, not being subjected to pressure, has more freedom to undergo its evolutionary change into the flagellated body.

In ordinary quartans and tertians the flagellated body is but seldom encountered. The best time to find them in such cases is said to be during the hot stage of the fever. In cases of crescent infection they are much more frequently met with, as, in this form of malaria, flagellated bodies are more numerous, appear at any time of the clinical cycle,



and persist in the circulation perhaps for several weeks after fever has disappeared.

In most cases of crescent infection the gradual evolution of the flagellated body from crescent through oval and sphere can, with patience, be easily followed.

*Diagnostic value of the "zone of free hæmoglobin."*  
—The zone of free hæmoglobin is of value as enabling the practical observer to pronounce very rapidly on the presence or absence of pigmented parasites in the blood. The relatively large quantity of blood in each field of this zone, and therefore the proportionally large number of parasites in any given field, lends itself to this, as does the fact that the black pigment shows up very distinctly in the homogeneous lake-coloured sheet of free hæmoglobin.

*Phagocytosis and pigmented leucocytes.*—Striking examples of phagocytosis are often witnessed in malarial blood. So soon as a malarial parasite, whether spontaneously or as a result of pressure, escapes from the blood corpuscle in which it had developed, it becomes exceedingly liable to attack by the phagocytes. More especially is this the case with the flagellated organism; this body seems to have a powerful attraction for the phagocytes, which are often seen to travel long distances to attack it.

Pigmented leucocytes—that is to say, leucocytes containing grains or blocks of melanin—are very often encountered; they can best be seen in the single-layer zone during, or shortly after, fever. Leucocytes may sometimes be observed to swallow the pigmented centre of the broken-up sporulating bodies. Often they derive their pigment from the remains of some sphere or flagellated body which they may have engulfed subsequently to the preparation of the slide. In peripheral blood the phagocytes are rarely, if ever, seen to attack the plasmodium so long as the parasite is inside a blood corpuscle.

Both the mono- and the poly-nucleated leucocytes may contain malarial pigment. Great care, however



must be exercised in drawing conclusions from the discovery of black material in these bodies ; in imperfectly cleaned slides, fragments of dirt, which the leucocytes rapidly take up, are apt to mislead.

*Pigmented lymphocytes.*—According to Metschnikoff, the lymphocyte has no phagocytic action in malaria. This observation I believe to be correct. Several writers, however, have described and figured what they regard as malarial pigment in the lymphocyte. This, I am convinced, is founded on an error in interpretation, and has arisen from ignorance of the fact that in all bloods, healthy and malarial alike, from 20 to 50 per cent. of the small mono-nucleated lymphocytes contain, lying in the narrow zone of cytoplasm, one or two minute round dots of intensely black material optically indistinguishable from malarial melanin. I am not aware that this appearance has been described hitherto, but multiplied observation has convinced me of the accuracy of my statement. The discovery, therefore, of what looks like a speck of intensely black pigment in the lymphocytes must not be regarded as evidence of malarial infection.

*Diagnosis of vacuoles.*—The beginner may have a difficulty in determining whether certain appearances in the corpuscles are vacuoles, or whether they

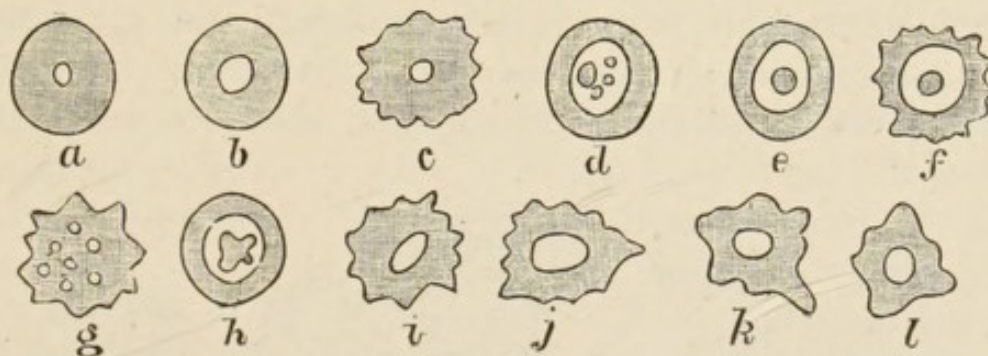


Fig. 24.—Vacuolated and crenated blood corpuscles. (After Laveran and Blanchard.)

*a, b, c.* Blood corpuscles with central vacuoles, *c* is crenated ; *d, e, f, h,* blood corpuscles with central vacuole containing fragmented hæmoglobin. Sometimes minute eye-shaped vacuoles with a speck of hæmoglobin in the centre are met with, and are apt to be taken for parasites. *g,* crenated blood corpuscles with several vacuoles, or it may be, crenations out of focus ; *i, j, k, l,* deformed blood corpuscles with central lacunæ.



are parasites. The following hints may help him to a correct decision. Vacuoles (Fig. 24, *a, b, c, d, e, f, h, i, j, k, l*) are well defined, clear, and have sharp edges; they may change form slightly, but they have no true amœboid movement, carry no pigment and, of course, do not stain. Intra-corpuseular plasmodia, on the contrary, are dim and, as a rule, ill-defined; they have soft, shaded-off edges; possess amœboid movements; when large they carry grains of pigment; and, of course, they take the appropriate stains. It is hardly necessary to indicate the points of diagnosis from leucocytes, or from cupped, folded, or crenated (Fig. 24, *c, f, g, i, j, k, l*) corpuscles.

*Moribund and fragmented plasmodia.*—Moribund—it may be fragmented—free parasites (Fig. 25) are often a source of confusion to the beginner. Their nature is frequently misunderstood; they are sometimes erroneously termed “sterile bodies,” an expression at one time frequently applied to the crescent-derived spheres (gametocytes). They are, in fact, mechanically-freed parasites expressed from blood corpuscles by the compression to which the blood is subjected between slip and cover-glass. The longer blood is on the slide—particularly if evaporation be not prevented by vaseline ringing of the cover-glass—the more closely will the cover-glass approximate to the slip, the greater will be the pressure on, and consequent thinning and spreading out of, blood corpuscles and parasites, and the greater the liability to damage of these very delicate

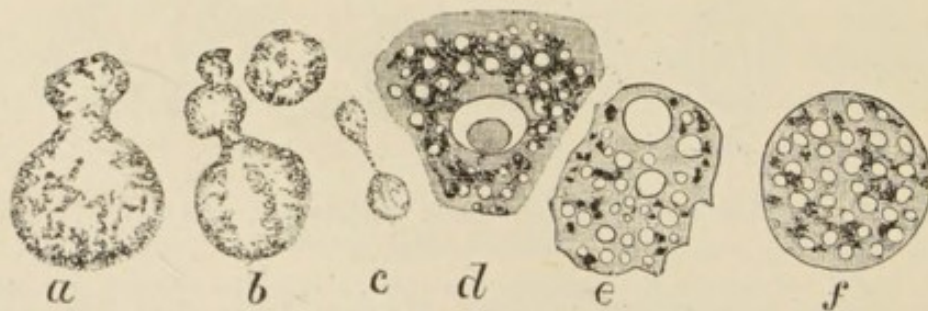


Fig. 25.—Free moribund plasmodia.

*a, b, c*, Compressed and fragmenting escaped parasites; *d, e, f*, the same vacuolating. (Compiled from Thayer and Hewetson.)



bodies. Frequently the artificially-freed parasites are broken into small fragments. The entire, as well as the fragmented, plasmodia on becoming free in the liquor sanguinis tend to assume a spherical or disc-like form ; at the same time the protoplasm of which they are composed seems to become diffuent, and the pigment is resolved into a number of minute dust-like particles possessing active, brownian movement. Some of these spherical or disc-shaped bodies with dancing pigment particles are really crescent-derived spheres. These are parasites which have escaped from corpuscles in a normal way, but which have become arrested in their evolution in consequence of the abnormal conditions in which they find themselves placed *in vitro* ; others are the remains of flagellated bodies, the flagella having broken away.

*The plasmodium as a means of diagnosis.*—All of these multiform appearances the student must learn to recognise and interpret. Skill in this is merely a matter of time, practice, and reflection. Given these, the student should not only be able to diagnose by the microscope malarial infection, but he should also be able to recognise the type of any particular infection, the period of the fever cycle, and, it may be, the severity of the case. For diagnosis in malaria, therefore, skill in the microscopic examination of the blood is of the utmost value, and no pains should be spared by the practitioner in malarious countries to acquire it. In acute untreated malaria the plasmodium may be detected practically in every case. Thus Thayer and Hewetson—excepting in two or three instances where the patient's blood was examined only during convalescence—in 616 cases found the plasmodium in every instance. The best Italian and German authorities are equally emphatic on this point. Personally, I can assert that since I became familiar with the subject I have never failed to find the parasite in any acute untreated malarial case I have had a proper opportunity of examining. Whenever



in a case of acute disease, supposed to be malarial, I have failed to do so, the case has turned out to be of quite another nature.

*Bearing of quinine on microscopical diagnosis.*—It is of little use to examine the blood for the intra-corporeal forms of the plasmodium after full doses of quinine have been taken; the drug rapidly brings about the disappearance of this phase of the parasite. The crescent or extra-corporeal phase is not affected by drugs, and may be found in suitable cases for days after the patient is cinchonised.

**On staining malarial blood.**—As a general rule, the beginner should work only with unstained preparations of fresh liquid blood. To the unpractised staining is full of pitfalls. In such circumstances it must not be relied on for purposes of responsible diagnosis. For the study of the morphology of the plasmodium, staining is of real value; moreover, some such method must be employed should permanent preparations be desired, or should it be inconvenient to make an immediate examination of the blood. The English reader will find full details of a variety of methods in Mannaberg's (Sydenham Soc.) and in Thayer and Hewetson's monographs (Johns Hopkins Hospital Reports, Vol. V.); here only one or two of the many methods can be described.

*Preparing the film.*—The following method I strongly recommend:—

Cleanse with alcohol a dozen or more slips, and place them side by side in a row near the patient. Prepare half a dozen strips ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  by  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch) of smooth, uncrinkled guttapercha tissue, or of tissue or cigarette paper. Prick the patient's finger or, if preferred, the lobe of his ear. When a minute droplet of blood has welled out, take one of the strips of guttapercha or of paper, and apply it to the exuded blood so that it touches the drop about  $\frac{2}{3}$  inch from one end of the strip. Immediately lay the charged strip, blood surface downwards, on one of the slips; after waiting a second or two, until it is seen that the blood has spread out, draw the strip, holding it by the uncharged end, along the glass. Or, as has been



described by Dr. Neil Macleod, the blood may be taken up on the edge of a strip of stout note-paper and spread on slip or cover-glass by drawing the paper, held at an angle, along the face of the glass. In any of these ways a number of fine films of blood, with beautifully regular and suitably disposed corpuscles, may be secured in a few minutes.

Or the film may be prepared by taking the blood up on one cover-glass on which another is immediately superposed; when the blood has spread out the glasses are glided apart, two pairs of forceps being used for the purpose.

However spread, after the blood has dried, whenever it is desired to stain it, either at once or at any future and more convenient time, it should be fixed by dropping on the slip a little absolute alcohol and ether in equal parts, or absolute alcohol alone. Cover-glass films may be dropped into a small wide-mouth bottle containing the fixing agent, or they may be fixed by passing them through the flame (not a good method), or by placing them for some hours (1 to 3) in a warm dry chamber at a temperature of 105° to 120° Cent. When alcohol is used, after ten to thirty minutes or longer, it is dried off.

#### STAINS.

*Borax-methylene blue.*—A drop or two of aqueous solution of borax- (5 per cent.) methylene blue (2 per cent.) is spread on the film. After thirty seconds or less the slide is thoroughly washed in water, dried with filter paper and afterwards by gently warming it over the spirit lamp. Finally, xylol balsam and a cover-glass are applied.

*Loeffler's methylene blue.*—Concentrated alcoholic solution of methylene blue 30 parts, solution of caustic potash ( $\frac{1}{10000}$ ) 100 parts. Stain for thirty seconds, wash in water, dry and mount.

*Carbol thionin.*—Saturated alcoholic (60°) solution of thionin 20 parts, watery solution (2 per cent.) of carbolic acid 100 parts. The mixture should be kept at least a fortnight before use. Stain for five minutes, wash and mount.

*Romanowsky's method.*—This is an excellent though somewhat unmanageable stain. In successful preparations the nucleolus of the parasite is stained bright red. It also is a good stain for the chromatin material of the flagella. Cover-glass films are fixed by heat—110° Cent. for one hour. They are then immediately floated for over two hours on a freshly prepared mixture of saturated watery solution of methylene blue 2 parts, watery solution of eosin (1 per cent.) 5 parts, washed in water, dried and mounted. The precipitate formed by the mixture must not be filtered out.

*Jenner's stain.*—This method has the advantage of dispensing with a separate fixing agent, the alcohol in which the stain is dissolved acting as such; when successful, it gives



excellent results. Special care must be taken that there is no trace of alkali or acid on the glass on which the film is spread; it must, therefore, be washed in distilled water and stood in absolute alcohol. The stain is made by dissolving Grüber's water, soluble eosin (yellow shade), and medicinal methylene blue in pure *absolute* methylic alcohol which must be free from acetone and other impurities; the solutions are then mixed in the proportions of 125 parts of  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. solution of the eosin and 100 parts of  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. solution of the methylene blue. Or the compound body formed by the eosin and methylene blue in this mixture may be purchased in the dry state and subsequently dissolved in absolute methylic alcohol. To use the stain a few drops are poured on the blood film and covered to prevent evaporation and precipitation. In three minutes or a little longer the stain is rapidly poured off, and afterwards the film is washed in *distilled* water from five to ten seconds until it assumes a pink colour. It is then dried high over the flame, or in the air, and mounted in xylol balsam. The red discs are terra-cotta-coloured, the nuclei of the white corpuscles blue, the platelets mauve, the granules of the polymorpho-nuclear cells and myelocytes red, the granules of the basophils a dark violet, and the malaria or other parasites blue.

On examining with a twelfth immersion lens slides prepared with methylene blue or thionin alone,

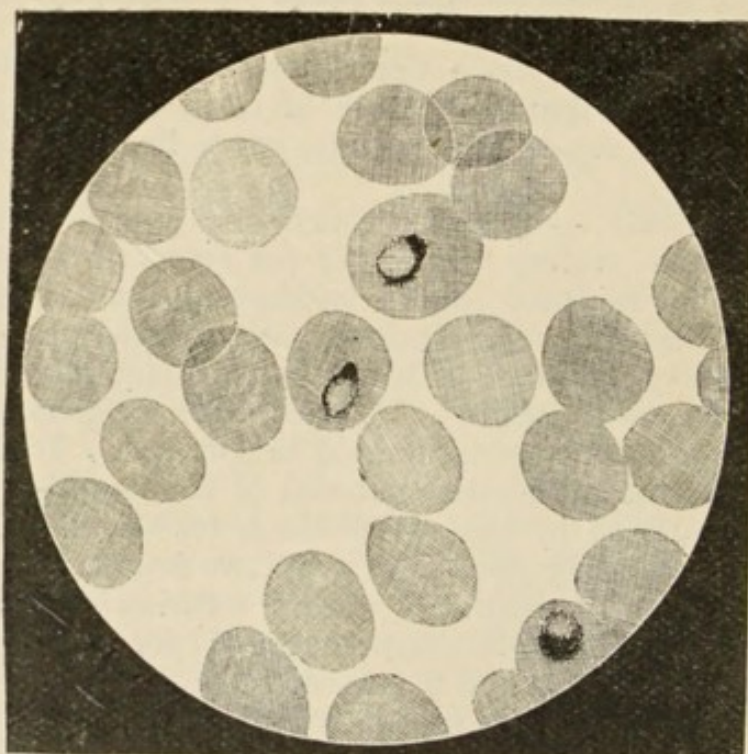


Fig. 26.—Young tertian parasite; stained with methylene blue. ( $\times 1000$ .)



the nuclei of the white corpuscles are seen to be very deeply stained, the protoplasm of the white corpuscles is very lightly stained, whilst the parasites are stained an intermediate tint, and show up sharply enough in the faintly tinted red blood corpuscles (Figs. 9, 23, 26, 27). Contrast staining with eosin is uncertain in its results in methylene blue preparations; even

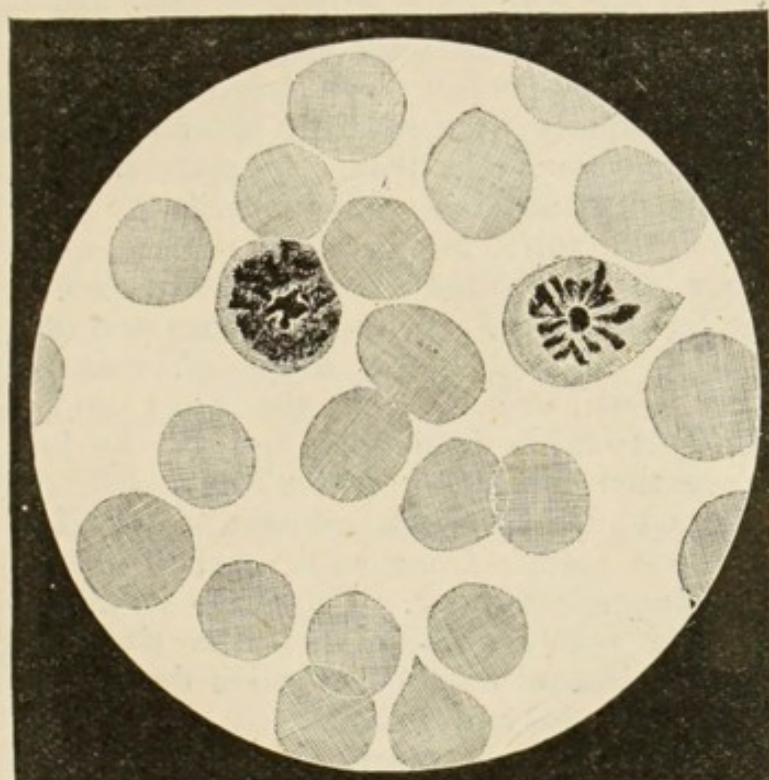


Fig. 27.—Tertian rosettes; stained with methylene blue. ( $\times 1000$ .)

in practised hands good preparations are the exception. For ordinary purposes I do not recommend it; it is superfluous, troublesome, and unreliable.

Methylene blue preparations are apt to fade.

*Hæmatoxylin and eosin.*—Ehrlich's acid hæmatoxylin, or strong solution of hæmalum, five minutes; weak eosin half a minute; wash in tap water and then in distilled water; dry and mount in xylol balsam. This is an easily carried out and effective method for obtaining less intensely stained but more permanent preparations.

*Staining the flagellated body.*—A sheet of thick blotting-paper, having rows of oblong holes (1 inch by  $\frac{2}{3}$  inch) cut out in it, is prepared; it is slightly but sufficiently moistened with water and laid smoothly on a sheet of window glass.

A patient, in whose blood the crescent form of the parasite abounds, is selected. His finger is pricked and a



droplet of blood, the size of a large pin's head, is expressed. A clean microscope slip is then breathed on once, and the droplet of blood immediately taken up by lightly touching it with the centre of the breathed-on surface of the slip. The blood is now rapidly and somewhat unevenly spread out with the needle so as to cover an area of about  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch by  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch. The slip is immediately inverted over one of the blotting-paper cells and pressed down sufficiently to secure thorough apposition of the slip of paper without, at the same time, bringing the blood into contact either with the moistened paper forming the wall, or with the glass forming the floor of what is now a very perfect moist chamber. The rest of the paper cells are rapidly covered with blood-charged slips prepared in the same way. In from a quarter to three-quarters of an hour the slips are removed and dried by gently warming them over the spirit lamp—blood surface away from the flame. When dry the films are fixed with absolute alcohol, a few drops being poured on each. After ten minutes the alcohol is dried off, and a few drops of weak acetic acid (10 to 20 per cent.) are laid on the films and left there long enough thoroughly to dissolve out all the hæmoglobin. The slides are then washed in water and dried. They may now be stained with various re-agents. So far, I have obtained the best results from weak carbol-fuchsine (20 per cent.) and prolonged staining. The stain is dropped on the slip and covered with a watch-glass; after six to eight hours it is washed off (warm water), the slide dried, and a cover-glass applied with xylol balsam.

The staining, though sufficiently intense, is fairly transparent. If the preparations are stained by Romanowsky's method the nuclear elements in the flagella are well brought out.

Most of the slides will show numbers of spheres and several or many well-stained flagellated bodies (Figs. 7 and 8). Very few crescents remain untransformed. If the slips are removed and dried in from five to ten minutes after being placed on the blotting-paper cells, only crescents, ovals, and spheres will be found; if they are left for three-quarters of an hour to an hour, free flagella, and what Ross calls "spent pigment," may also be found, the latter sometimes enclosed in phagocytes. Occasionally flagellated bodies are found partially included in phagocytes.



## CHAPTER III.

### CLASSIFICATION AND DESCRIPTION OF THE MALARIAL PARASITES AND THEIR ASSOCIATED FEVERS.

It may be asserted in a general way that the different clinical types of malarial disease are associated with different and corresponding types of plasmodia. As to whether these different types of plasmodia are mere varieties, or whether they are distinct species, the evidence, so far, is insufficient to warrant a definite conclusion.

The point is by no means easily settled; nor is it likely to be decided until we are in possession of more detailed information about the mosquito phase of the organism, and on the relationship of the various parasites to various species of mosquito.

#### **Principles of classification of parasites.**

—Meanwhile, the varieties or possible species of plasmodia have been classified according to:—

1. The duration of their respective life-cycles inside the human body.
2. Their morphological characters.
3. The clinical phenomena they give rise to.
4. The results of inoculation experiments.

It may be said that, so far as these tests go, there is evidence either of plurality of species or of the existence of very stable varieties. That is to say, a particular clinical type of malarial disease is associated with a parasite of more or less definite morphological form and intra-corporeal life-cycle,



characters which are maintained when the parasite has been inoculated experimentally.

In the treatment of this subject the classification suggested by Mannaberg will be followed, a classification based principally on the investigations of Golgi, Marchiafava, Bignami, Celli, Grassi and other Italians, as well as on his own most excellent work.

The forms of the malaria parasite and of the diseases they give rise to may be divided into two comprehensive groups—the benign and the malignant. A principal morphological distinction between these two groups is that whereas the benign parasites never form crescent bodies, the malignant parasites form crescents. In the former the extra-corporeal flagellated phase is evolved from what appears to have been an ordinary full-grown intra-corporeal plasmodium; in the latter the flagellated phase is evolved from crescent-derived spheres. A principal clinical difference between the two is that whereas the benign parasite rarely or never gives rise to pernicious attacks, the malignant parasite may, and frequently does, give rise to such attacks. Herein lies an important practical diagnostic point, one which only the microscope can render available.

The benign parasites are of two kinds: One, having a cycle of seventy-two hours, causing a fever recurring every three days—quartan ague; the other, with a cycle of forty-eight hours, causing a fever recurring every two days—tertian ague.

The malignant parasite has three forms, perhaps more\*:—A pigmented parasite of forty-eight hours' cycle; a pigmented parasite of approximately twenty-four hours' cycle; and an unpigmented parasite, also approximately of twenty-four hours' cycle.

\* Many authorities refuse to recognise more than one species of malignant parasite, the differences in length of cycle and pigmentation described in the text being regarded merely as variations depending on circumstances, and not as specific differences.



We may arrange them thus\* :—

Benign	{ Quartan Tertian }	Do not form crescents.
Malignant	{ Quotidian—pigmented Quotidian—unpigmented Tertian }	Form crescents.

**Clinical classification.**—Formerly, classification being based entirely on clinical phenomena, malarial diseases were divided into quotidian, tertian and quartan intermittents or agues, and remittents; but since it has been found that what was designated remittent fever is produced by quartan, tertian, and quotidian parasites—the fact of intermittency or remittency being more or less a matter of accident—it

\* I have not attempted to give in the text any of the zoological names applied by various writers to the different known species of *Hæmamaeba* in man and animals. The following classification of species and grouping of names by Ross will be found of use by the student of the confusing literature of the subject :—

FAMILY : HÆMAMÆBIDÆ, WASIELEWSKI.

**Genus 1.**—*Hæmamaeba*, Grassi and Feletti. The mature gametocytes are similar in form to the mature sporocytes before the spores have been differentiated.

Species 1.—*Hæmamaeba danilewskii*, Grassi and Feletti. Syn. : *Laverania danilewskii*, Grassi and Feletti, in part; *Halteridium danilewskii*, Labbé, etc. Several varieties—possibly distinct species. Parasites of pigeons, jays, crows.

Species 2.—*Hæmamaeba relictæ*, Grassi and Feletti. Syn. : *Hæmamaeba relictæ*, *H. subpræcox* + *H. subimmaculata*, Grassi and Feletti; *Proteosoma grassii*, Labbé, etc. Parasite of sparrows, larks, etc.

Species 3.—*Hæmamaeba malaricæ*, Grassi and Feletti. Syn. : *Hæmamaeba laverani*, Labbé, in part. Parasite of quartan fever in man.

Species 4.—*Hæmamaeba vivax*, Grassi and Feletti. Syn. : *Hæmamaeba laverani*, Labbé, in part. Parasite of tertian fever of man.

**Genus 2.**—*Hæmomenas*, gen. nov. Syn. : *Laverania*, in part + *Hæmamaeba*, in part, Grassi and Feletti. The gametocytes have a special form (crescentic).

Species.—*Hæmomenas præcox*, Grassi and Feletti. Syn. : *Hæmamaeba præcox* + *H. immaculata* + *Laverania malaricæ*, Grassi and Feletti; *Hæmamaeba laverani*, Labbé, in part, etc. Several varieties—possibly distinct species. Parasite of the irregular, remittent, pernicious or æstivo-autumnal fever of man.



has been considered advisable to expunge the term remittent fever as indicative of a distinct species of plasmodium disease. Any one of the five kinds of parasites enumerated may cause what was known as remittent fever. The intermittency or remittency of any given fever depends, in great measure, on the simultaneousness or the reverse of the maturation of the swarm of parasites giving rise to it. If all the parasites present are of nearly the same age, they mature approximately simultaneously, and we have an intermittent; if they are of different ages, they mature at different times scattered over the twenty-four hours; and we have what was known as a remittent. Further, two generations of tertian parasites maturing on successive days will produce a quotidian fever, *Tertiana duplex*; two generations of quartan parasites maturing on successive days will produce fever fits on two successive days followed by one day of freedom, *Quartana duplex*; three generations of quartan parasites will produce what clinically appears to be a quotidian fever, but in reality is a *Quartana triplex*.

**Present classification not final.** — The classification adopted must not be accepted as final; at best it is merely provisional. In actual practice it may be hard, often impossible, to bring the cases met with into exact line with such an arrangement. Moreover, as this classification is based principally on observations made in a very limited district, principally in Italy, and principally on Roman fevers, it may not apply to the entire malarial world. That it lies on a substratum of fact there can be no doubt; nor can there be much doubt that it has in many particulars a general application to malarial disease as found all over the world. Still, judging from clinical facts, there seems ground for believing that there are other species or varieties of the plasmodium besides those described by the Italians, and that the list here given will have to be enlarged or recast in the future. Men with



extensive experience of malarial disease in their own persons tell us that they can discriminate by their sensations and symptoms between the fevers of different localities. Analogy would incline us to believe that clinical differences of this sort depend on differences in the causal parasites. How very different, for example, are the hæmoglobinuric fevers of Africa and the bilious remittents of India. Is it not probable that they depend on specifically distinct parasites or, at least, on more or less definite varieties?

#### CLINICAL PHENOMENA OF MALARIAL FEVER.

Before proceeding with a description of the various plasmodia and their associated fevers, there are certain generalities which, to save repetition, had better be mentioned here.

**Intermittent fever or ague.**—Every typical malarial fever is made up of a series of pyrexial attacks which recur at definite intervals of twenty-four, forty-eight, or seventy-two hours. Each attack consists of a stage of rigor, a stage of heat, and a stage of sweating; these are followed by a period, “the interval,” of apyrexia—actual or relative. The duration and intensity of the constituent stages vary considerably. On the whole, they observe a certain proportion to each other; the more pronounced the rigor, the higher the fever, and the more profuse the sweating. Such attacks, with well-marked intervals of apyrexia, are designated intermittent fevers or agues. The expression “ague” is by many applied only to intermittents having a pronounced rigor stage.

*Premonitory stage.*—Before rigor sets in, and sometimes for several days before the actual disease declares itself, there may or there may not be a premonitory stage marked by lassitude, a desire to stretch the limbs and to yawn, aching of the bones, headache, anorexia, perhaps vomiting, perhaps a feeling as of cold water trickling down the back. If the thermometer be used, it will be found that body-



temperature has begun to rise, it may be some two or three hours before the other and more striking symptoms which ensue set in.

*Cold stage.*—When rigor sets in the feeling of cold spreads all over the body, becoming so intense that the teeth chatter and the patient shivers and shakes from head to foot. He seeks to cover himself with all the wraps he can lay hands on. Vomiting may become distressing. The features are pinched, the skin is blue and cold-looking, the fingers are shrivelled. But the feeling of cold is entirely subjective ; if the temperature be taken, it is found to be already several degrees above normal, and to be rapidly mounting. In young children it is not at all unusual to have a convulsive seizure at this stage ; a fact that has to be borne in mind, as it is very apt to lead to ideas of epilepsy.

*Hot stage.*—After a time the shivering gradually abates, giving place to, or alternating with, waves of warmth and, before long, to persisting feelings of intense heat and febrile distress. The wraps, which before were so eagerly hugged, are now tossed off ; the face becomes flushed ; the pulse is rapid, full, and bounding ; headache may be intense ; vomiting frequent ; respiration hurried ; the skin dry and burning ; the thermometer mounting to  $104^{\circ}$ ,  $105^{\circ}$ ,  $106^{\circ}$ , or even higher.

*Sweating stage.*—After one or more hours of acute distress the patient breaks out into a profuse perspiration, the sweat literally running off him and saturating his clothes and bedding. With the appearance of diaphoresis the fever rapidly declines ; headache, vomiting, thirst, and febrile distress giving place to a feeling of relief and tranquillity. By the time the sweating has ceased the patient may feel quite well ; a little languid, perhaps, but able to go about his usual occupation. The bodily temperature is now often sub-normal, and may remain so until the approach of the next fit one, two, or three days later.



*Duration of the fit.*—The duration of an ague fit and of its constituent stages is very variable. On an average it may be put at six to ten hours; the cold stage occupying about an hour, the hot stage from three to four hours, the sweating stage from two to four hours.

*The urine in ague.*—During the cold stage the urine is often limpid and abundant, and is passed frequently; but during the hot and sweating stages it is scanty, loaded, sometimes albuminous. The amount of urea is increased, particularly during the cold stage; and so are the chlorides. The phosphates, on the contrary, diminished during the rigor and hot stages, are increased during defervescence. The augmentation in the excretion of urea commences several hours before the subjective symptoms of the attack begin, attains its maximum towards the end of rigor, and decreases during the hot and sweating stages although still continuing above the normal standard. The excretion of carbonic acid follows a corresponding course. Dr. Sydney Ringer was the first to point out the interesting fact that, although the return of fever may be prevented by the administration of quinine, yet, for a time, a periodic increase in the excretion of urea occurs on the days on which the fever fit was due. The urine is often deeply coloured, giving with nitric acid the play of colour characteristic of bile pigment, or the brown colour described by Gübler as “hæmapheic.” Glycosuria does occur, but is by no means common.

*The spleen during the fit.*—The spleen becomes enlarged to a greater or less extent during rigor. The swelling disappears at first in the interval, but tends to become more or less of a chronic feature if the attacks recur frequently, more especially if they are associated with pronounced cachexia.

*Period of the day at which ague commences.*—Two-thirds of agues come off between midnight and midday. This is a fact to remember in diagnosis; especially when we have to face the possibility of



recurrent pyrexial attacks being dependent on such conditions as liver abscess, tuberculosis, and septic states—conditions, be it remarked, in which febrile recurrence takes place almost invariably during the afternoon or evening.

**Atypical agues.** — Cases are frequently met with in which all of the above symptoms are very much toned down ; in which, perhaps, a periodically recurring feeling of coldness followed by languor, or a slight headache, or a slight rise of temperature, are the only symptoms indicating the presence of the malaria parasite in the blood. In some fevers, and these by no means the least dangerous, the subjective symptoms may at first be of so mild a character that the patient is able to go about his duties with a body-temperature of  $103^{\circ}$  or  $104^{\circ}$  ; he may have no severe rigor, no headache, no severe gastric symptoms, no acute febrile distress of a disabling character. Some of the African fevers—so liable to assume suddenly a pernicious character—are of this nature. On the other hand, notwithstanding a comparatively slight rise of temperature, headache, languor, vomiting, may be extremely distressing. There is an infinite variety in this respect. Evidently the toxin—if toxin there be—of the plasmodium is far from being a simple body ; probably, like tuberculin, it contains several ingredients arranged in different proportions in the several varieties of the parasite. Doubtless, also, the degree of infection, various combinations of the varieties of plasmodia, and individual idiosyncrasy play a part in determining the intensity and character of the reaction of the body to the plasmodium.

**Terms employed.** — Acute malarial attacks which recur daily are called *quotidian ague* ; if they recur every second day they are called *tertian ague* ; if every third day, they are called *quartan ague*. As a rule, the attacks tend to occur about the same time every day. In some cases the time of recurrence becomes earlier each day ; such fevers are



said to *anticipate*. Or they may occur at a later hour, in which case they are said to *postpone*. When the individual paroxysms are prolonged, so that one attack has not concluded before the next commences, the fever fits are said to be *subintrans*. When the fit is prolonged and periodicity is marked by only a slight fall of temperature, a slight sweating, a slight feeling of chilliness, the fever is said to *remit*—to be a *remittent*. Sometimes there is no remission ; such a fever is said to be *continued*. It occasionally happens that two distinct pyrexial attacks come off the same day ; such a fever is said to be *double*. All sorts of blendings of malignant infections, benign tertians, and quartans occur ; in such the infection is said to be a *mixed infection*.

**Relation of the phenomena of the fever fit to the stages of the parasite.** — All the differences and peculiarities in the clinical phenomena of a malarial attack, as indicated by the foregoing terms, complicated and hard to interpret in many cases though they be, are, it is believed, directly correlated to the phases of the intra-corporeal life of the plasmodium ; this organism is, in fact, the key to their interpretation. As already mentioned, as the time of rigor approaches the pigment of the parasite, hitherto scattered throughout the substance of the little animal, becomes concentrated, and the sporulating body develops. Shortly before and during rigor, and as a direct cause of rigor, these sporulating bodies are breaking up and, presumably, liberating their toxins. At the end of rigor, during the hot, and during the sweating stages, the young parasites of the new generation, the small intra-corporeal bodies, and the leucocytes carrying the pigment liberated at the breaking up of the sporulating bodies are in evidence, and the toxins liberated at the same time are being eliminated. During the interval the intra-corporeal parasites grow, become pigmented, and prepare for maturation. From the fact that parasites are present in the blood during



apyrexia, and often in great abundance, it is evident that it is not the mere presence of the parasite in the blood corpuscle that causes the fever; most likely the pyrogenic agency is some toxin which is liberated when the sporulating parasite breaks up and becomes free in the liquor sanguinis. Consequently, we find that in remittent and continued types of malarial fevers sporulating plasmodia may be met with at all stages of the fever; and, conversely, that when plasmodia are met with at all stages of development the associated fever is probably remittent, irregular, or more or less continued in type.

The foregoing are generalities which apply to all the types of malarial fever.

#### QUARTAN INFECTION.

**The parasite.**—The parasite of quartan fever (Plate I., Fig. 1) has a cycle of seventy-two hours. At its earliest stages of epi-corpuscular and of early unpigmented intra-corpuscular life it takes the form of a small, roundish, clear speck (Plate I., Fig. 1, *a*), showing up somewhat distinctly against the hæmoglobin of the invaded corpuscle. At this stage, as contrasted with the other varieties of plasmodia, it is further distinguished by the feebleness of its amœboid movement. Later, as soon as it becomes pigmented (Plate I., Fig. 1, *b, c, d, e, f*), all amœboid movement ceases. Relatively to the other plasmodia, the pigment carried by the quartan is large in amount and coarse in grain, sometimes forming short rods. The sporulating parasite (Plate I., Fig. 1, *g, h*) is made up of eight to ten elements arranged daisy fashion and, usually, very symmetrically around the now centrally placed and massive block of very black pigment. About the centre in each of the spherical or pear-shaped spores, which are slightly rough in outline, a shining nucleolus can usually be readily made out. The quartan parasite, never forming crescents,



derives its flagellated form from what looks like an ordinary large intra-corpuscular pigmented parasite (Plate I., Fig. 1, *i*) that has escaped from the red corpuscle in which it had developed. It may be recognised sometimes by the very active movement of the pigment granules. This phase, rarely seen, occurs almost exclusively during the pyrexial stage of the cycle. Further, the quartan parasite does not, as does that next to be described—the tertian parasite—cause marked enlargement of the blood corpuscle in which it lies. When mature it completely fills the normal-sized corpuscle, scarcely a rim of hæmoglobin being visible (Plate I., Fig. 1, *e*); so that it sometimes looks at this stage as if it were a free and independent body floating about in the liquor sanguinis.\* All quartan parasites do not proceed to spore formation, or flagellation; some are said to degenerate into the peculiar clear, dropsical-looking spheres filled with dancing particles (Plate I., Fig. 1, *i*), which form a striking feature in certain malarial bloods. A considerable proportion of these free, dropsical-looking bodies with active pigment are probably male gametocytes which, after being placed on the microscope slide, and after escaping from corpuscles, have failed to project flagella; others, doubtless, are granular female gametocytes. The failure to exflagellate, in many instances, is probably not normal, but an effect of mechanical disturbance from pressure of the cover-glass, or of other circumstances inherent to the artificial conditions under which we necessarily observe these bodies. In more normal conditions, as in the mosquito, exflagellation may be more frequently effected.

The “daisy”—as it is sometimes called—or sporocyte form of the quartan parasite is more frequently seen in the peripheral blood than is the corresponding phase of the other malarial parasites. For this

\* In malarial blood the corpuscles are apt to vary in size as in other anæmic conditions. A quartan parasite in a megalocyte may therefore simulate a tertian.



reason, and because of the easy visibility of the parasite at all its stages owing to its size and to the large amount of pigment it carries, and because the entire intra-corporeal cycle is completed in the peripheral blood, the quartan is the best form of plasmodium for the beginner to study.

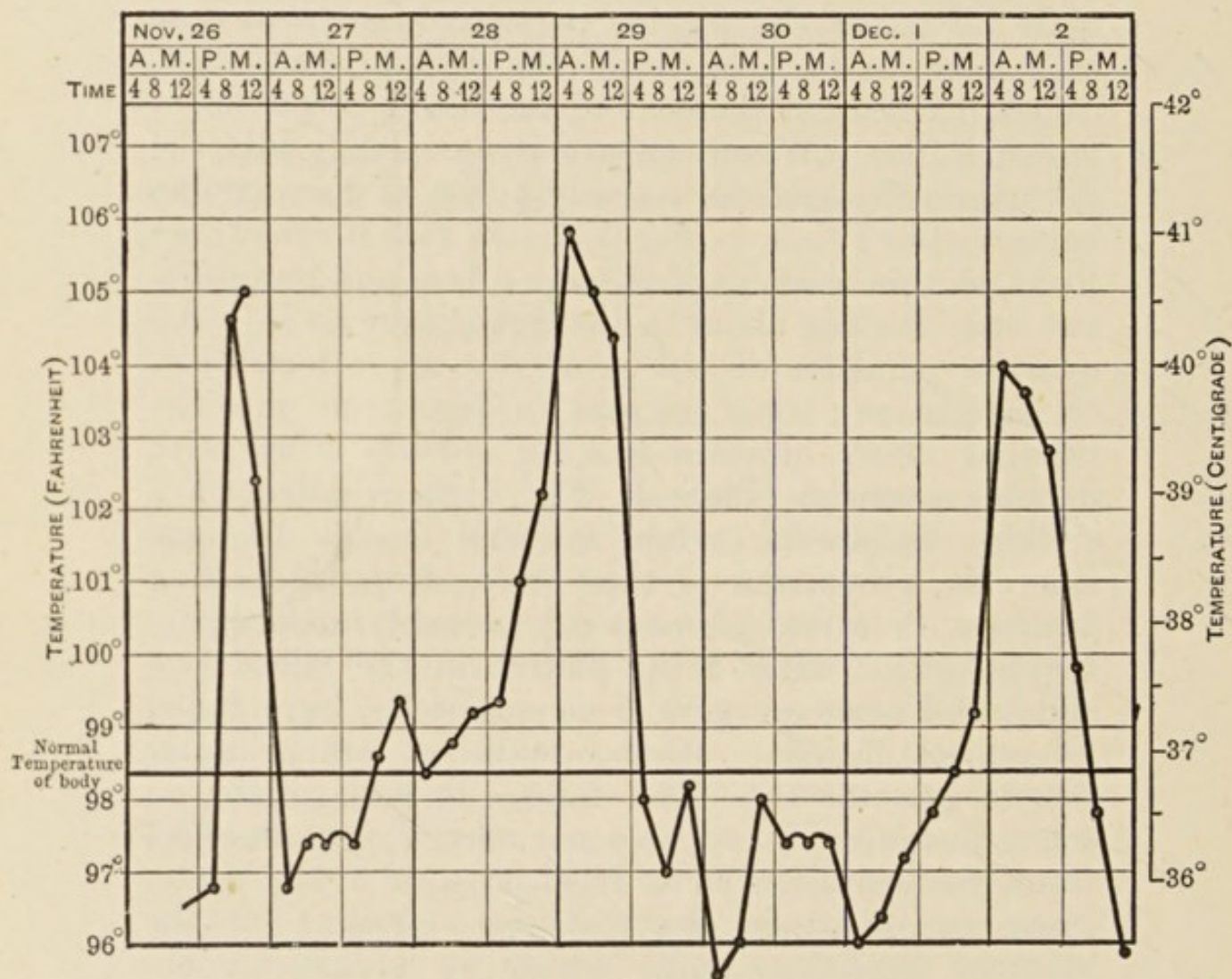


Fig. 28.—Chart of quartan ague.

**Geographical distribution.**—The fever which the quartan parasite gives rise to—single, double, or treble quartan ague—is, relatively, much more common in temperate latitudes than in the tropics. Formerly it was common enough in England; it is still far from rare in the malarious districts of north and mid-Europe and, doubtless, elsewhere under similar climatic and telluric conditions. But, as we proceed south, it becomes, relatively to the other forms of



malaria, rarer. In the tropics in some highly malarious places it is unknown. Thus in a paper read at the Calcutta Medical Congress of 1894, Dr. Crombie mentions that in his large experience he rarely saw quartan ague. As his experience applied particularly to Calcutta and its environs, it may not hold for the whole of India; in fact, Ross (*Ind. Med. Gaz.*, Feb., 1896) and others state that the quartan parasite is common enough in Madras and elsewhere in India. I have seen it in blood films from Mauritius; Ross mentions it as occurring in Sierra Leone. Doubtless it occurs in limited districts throughout the tropics. The general statement, however, that quartan ague is more a disease of the temperate zones than of the tropics, probably expresses the truth.

**The fever.**—The ague fit in quartan is generally smart while it lasts, and well defined as regards its constituent stages (Fig. 28). It does not tend so markedly, as is the case with the other malarial infections, to the rapid development of cachexia. Although the individual attacks are very amenable to quinine, the infection appears to be of a more persistent nature than that of tertian malaria; attacks therefore are prone to recur during several years.

#### BENIGN TERTIAN INFECTION (SPRING TERTIAN OF THE ITALIANS).

**The parasite.**—The early stage of the benign tertian parasite (Plate I., Fig. 2) resembles that of the quartan inasmuch as it consists of a small pale speck on, or in, the invaded red blood corpuscle (Plate I., Fig. 2, *a*); it differs in exhibiting very much greater amœboid activity, changing its form and location in the corpuscle incessantly, besides pushing out and retracting pseudopodia (Plate I., Fig. 2, *b*). This amœboid activity persists during growth and the acquisition of pigment, though in a progressively diminishing degree; it gives rise to great and rapidly







of the healthy ones ; and nearly always, if the plasmodium is of any magnitude, the rim of hæmoglobin surrounding the parasite has a "washed-out" look, sometimes being almost colourless.

In the tertian parasite when segmentation is completed the resulting body, instead of the very symmetrical, daisy-like figure of the quartan, resembles rather a cluster of grapes in some more or less central part of which one or two masses of black pigment have accumulated among the berries (Plate I., Fig. 2, *h* ; also, Figs. 1 and 2, *b*). The little spores forming the cluster—fifteen to twenty-six in number—are smaller, smoother, and more spherical than those of the quartan parasite ; seldom, in the unstained condition, exhibiting their nucleoli. I believe that in natural, uncompressed conditions the tertian rosette, or sporocyte, tends to pass from the disc form, impressed on it originally by the shape of the corpuscle, to something more approaching a globular form.

In benign tertian the flagellated body is formed in the same way as in the quartan parasite—that is, from an escaped intra-corpuscular pigmented body (Plate I., Fig. 2, *j*). It is seen particularly, just as in the case of the quartan infection, usually after and not infrequently about the time of rigor.

**Geographical distribution.**—The benign tertian parasite, probably the commonest form of plasmodium, occurs in temperate and tropical latitudes alike. It is often found as a double infection, and is, perhaps, the most frequent cause of quotidian as well as of tertian agues.

**The fever.**—The fever it gives rise to, except in the matter of the spacing, which is one of forty-eight hours, resembles that caused by the quartan parasite (Fig. 29).

MALIGNANT INFECTIONS (ÆSTIVO-AUTUMNAL OF THE  
ITALIANS, TROPICAL OF KOCH).

Many authorities refuse to recognise more than one species of crescent-forming parasite. On the



other hand, carefully-conducted observations, both microscopical and clinical, seem to indicate a plurality of species. I shall follow the latter view.

The three parasites (Plate I., Fig. 3, and Plate II., Fig. 1) described by the Italian pathologists in connection with malignant malarial infection, although often associated together as well as with the benign parasites, are each of them occasionally found in what might be termed a pure culture. From a study of such cases the morphological and distinguishing characters of the different species, and their special pathological effects, have been more or less satisfactorily made out. Although much remains to be done, enough is already known to enable us, in a measure, to differentiate the parasites from each other as well as from the benign plasmodia, and to justify their being placed in a group by themselves.

*Characters possessed in common by the malignant parasites.*—One notable feature in regard to them is that they are very much smaller than the benign parasites. The earlier unpigmented phase, owing partly to minuteness, partly to its forming but a thin and very transparent amœba in the hæmoglobin, is hard to see. When first mounted on the slide the amœboid movements are very active (Plate I., Fig. 3, *d*). In a short time this subsides somewhat, and then the little parasites tend to assume a more passive condition and to arrange themselves as tiny, though very definite and easily recognised, rather bright, colourless rings (Plate I., Fig. 3, *a, b, c, e*). Sometimes these rings may revert to the amœboid condition, and this, perhaps, for several times in succession; ultimately the ring form becomes permanent. Multiple infection of individual corpuscles (Plate I., Fig. 3, *g*) is often encountered, and this much more frequently than in the benign infections; doubtless this is owing to the prodigious number of parasites which, in malignant infections, are sometimes present in the circulation. As development advances, the plasmodium-infected corpuscles seem to be filtered out by the capillaries







FIG. 1.

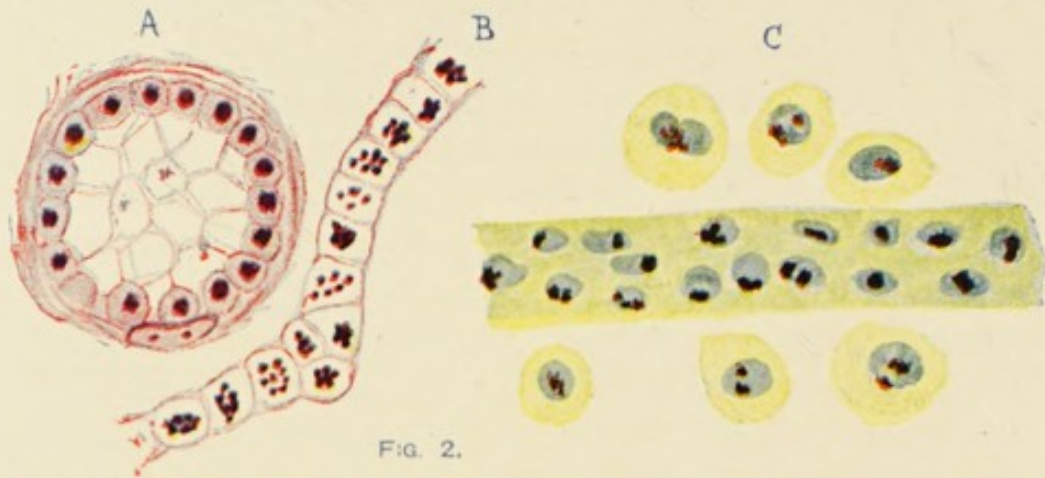


FIG. 2.

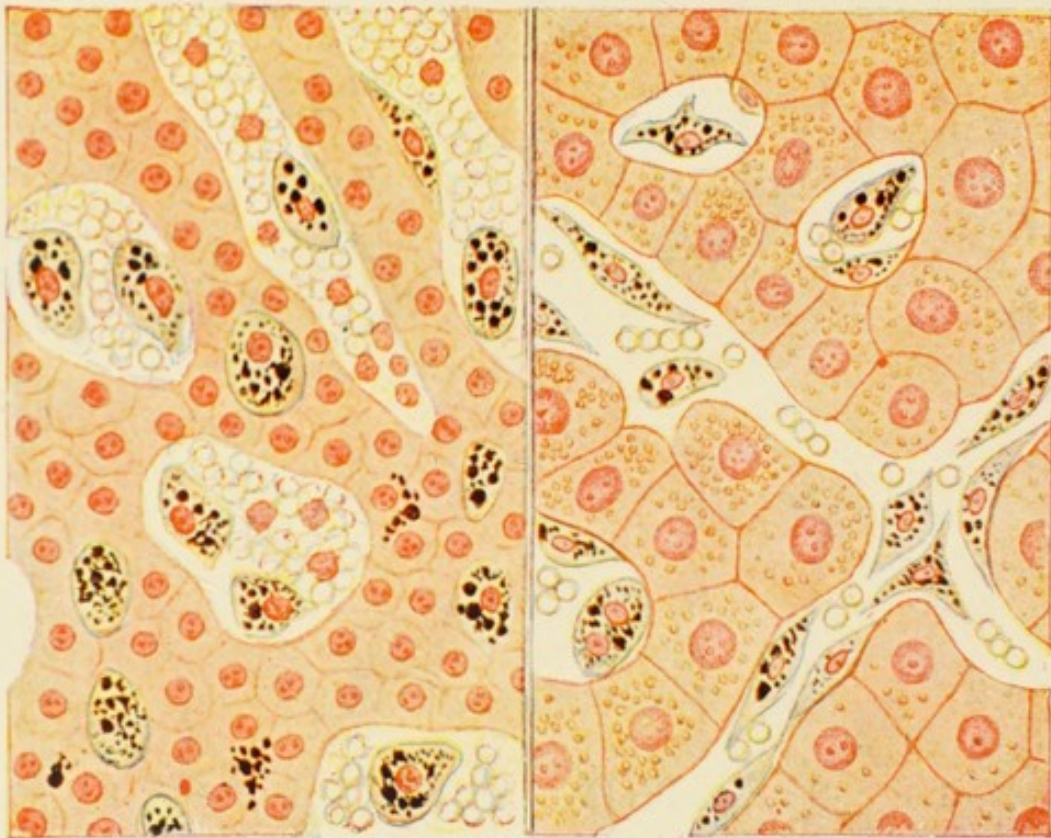


FIG. 3.

FIG. 4.

## PLATE II.

Fig. 1.—Parasites of the pigmented malignant quotidian (*Marchiafava and Bignami*). Fig. 2.—Brain capillaries containing malaria parasites. A, transverse section; the blood corpuscles at periphery invaded by unpigmented parasites; B, vessel filled with sporulating unpigmented parasites; C, blood corpuscles in capillary, and others free in the brain substance, each containing small pigmented parasites (*Mannaberg*). Fig. 3.—Pernicious malaria (spleen). Fig. 4.—Pernicious malaria (liver). (*Kelsch and Kiener*.)



and small arteries (Plate II., Fig. 2, A, B, C) of the deeper viscera and of the bone marrow ; so that even in severe infections the pigmented stage is by no means proportionately represented by, or even frequently encountered in, finger blood, the sporulating stage (Plate I., Fig. 3, *i, j*) still less so. To find numerous examples of the more advanced stages of these parasites it is necessary to aspirate splenic blood, or to search in fatal cases in the deeper viscera, or in the bone marrow immediately after death. Owing to this absence of the more advanced forms from the peripheral circulation, the duration of the life span of these parasites is difficult to fix ; probably it varies between twenty-four and forty-eight hours, being not very constant even in the same type.

*"Brassy bodies."*—The malignant parasite frequently leads to a peculiar shrivelling of the invaded corpuscle, resulting in the formation of a crenated, or folded, very dark corpuscle. This dark, irregularly-shaped corpuscle the Italians, from its colour, have designated "*brassy body*" (Plate I., Fig. 3, *e*). In the interior of these dark, shrivelled corpuscles the parasite can generally be made out as a minute, pale ring.

*The crescent body characteristic.*—Most distinctive feature of all, the malignant parasites alone form crescent bodies.

*Time when crescents appear ; not a fever form.*—It is to be remarked that these crescent bodies are not to be seen at the very commencement of an infection. A week usually elapses between the first appearance in the peripheral blood of the small, intra-corpuscular plasmodia and the first appearance of the crescent bodies. Once the latter begin to appear they generally tend to increase in number during a few days. They may persist, though after a time in decreasing numbers, in the circulation for one, two, or three weeks after the small, fever-causing intra-corpuscular plasmodia and their associated fever have disappeared, whether spontaneously or in consequence



of the administration of quinine. Although when given early in an infection quinine may prevent the appearance of crescents, yet, once formed, this drug has apparently no influence on these bodies nor on their capacity for exflagellation. The crescent body does not cause fever. Its presence is usually associated with marked cachexia.

It is a remarkable fact that in many of the worst types of tropical malaria—as that of tropical Africa—crescents are few in number, and in some instances cannot by ordinary examination be found. A. Plehn states that during a period of two years in Africa he only once saw the flagellated body. On the other hand, when we meet with these African infections in England, crescents and flagellated bodies are nearly always encountered, and often in great abundance; at all events, this is my experience.

*Characters of the fever.*—It is found that the fevers these parasites give rise to are apt to be very irregular in their course. The rigor stage is relatively less marked, the pyrexial stage is more prolonged, and is often characterised by a tendency to adynamic conditions, vomiting, intestinal catarrh, pains in the limbs, anorexia, severe headache, depression. After apparent recovery from the fever there is a great proneness to relapse at more or less definite intervals of from eight to fourteen days. Such fevers are accompanied by rapid destruction of corpuscles, and are usually followed by marked cachexia. At any time in their course pernicious symptoms of the gravest character may declare themselves.

#### MALIGNANT QUOTIDIAN INFECTIONS.

**The parasite.**—The parasite of these infections is of two kinds, very generally in association, the pigmented (Plate II., Fig. 1) and the unpigmented. In both the cycle is approximately one of twenty-four hours; in both the young parasites exhibit very active movements, and tend to assume the ring form.



Before sporulation they grow so as to occupy from one-fifth to one-third only of the corpuscle. Both form little heaps of from six to eight very minute spores.

In the unpigmented parasite pigment is never seen unless in the crescent phase; in this phase, however, pigment is never absent. In the pigmented

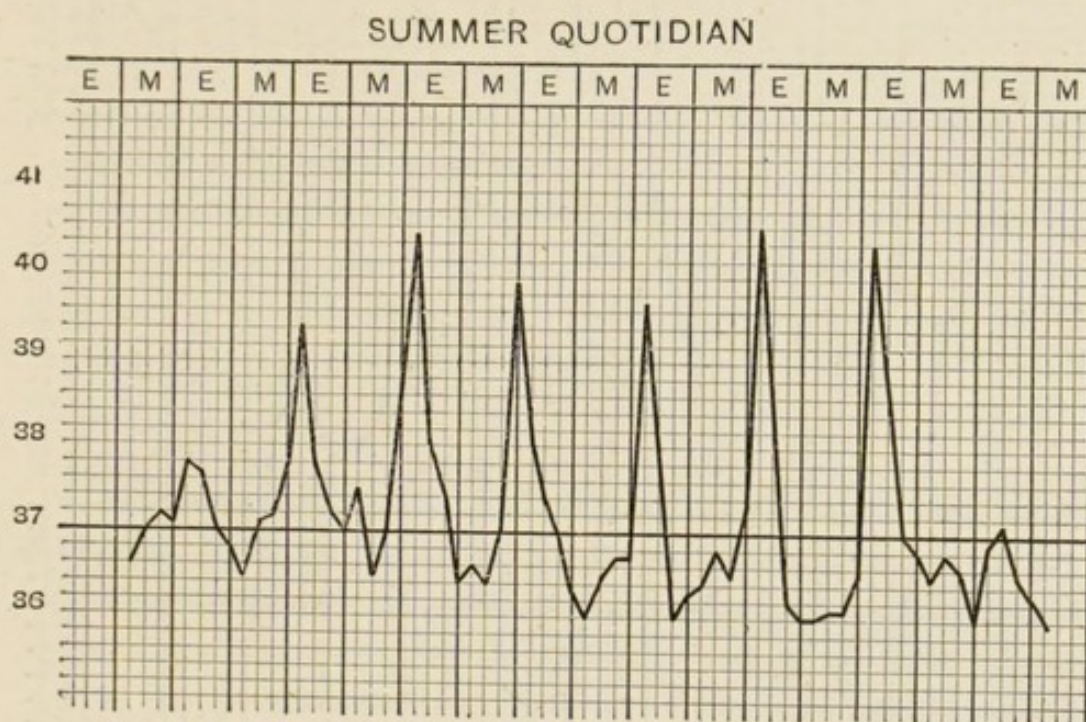


Fig. 30.—Chart of malignant quotidian infection.

parasite there is a considerable amount of fine pigment which at the sporulating stage—rarely seen in peripheral blood—collects in the usual way into one or two more or less central clumps.

**The fever.**—The fever is such as just described, a typhoid-like depression being generally a prominent feature in well-marked cases (Fig. 30).

#### MALIGNANT TERTIAN INFECTION.

**The parasite.**—This, the usual parasite (Plate I., Fig. 3) of malignant infection, is, in many respects, like that of ordinary benign tertian, only smaller, attaining when mature from a half to two-thirds the size of the corpuscle it occupies. The infected blood-corpuscle may be altered in colour in the direction of



being either darker or lighter ; sometimes it shrinks, or it may become a "brassy body." The segments of the rarely encountered mature sporulating parasite number usually ten or twelve, and are arranged along

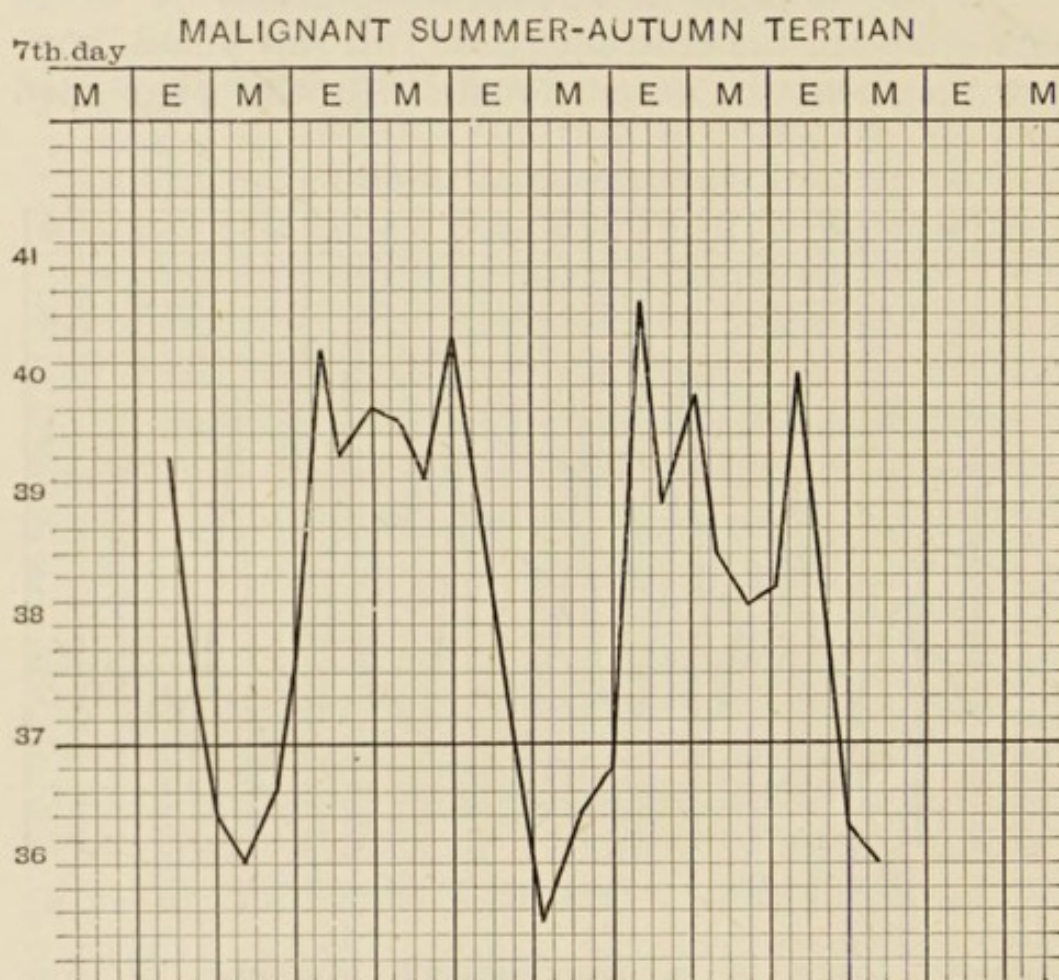


Fig. 31.—Chart of malignant summer-autumn tertian.

with the associated clump or clumps of pigment in an irregular heap. The crescent is also, of course, a distinguishing feature of the infection.

**The fever.**—The associated symptoms are, in many respects, very different from those caused by the benign tertian parasite. In the first place, though rigor is not so marked, the hot stage lasts longer—often exceeding twenty-four hours ; in fact, the tendency for the successive paroxysms to overlap, to become subintra, is very marked. Moreover, where the intermissions are distinct, as Marchiafava and Bignami point out, the crisis is unlike that of ordinary tertian. There is what is called a double



crisis; that is to say, when the fever has attained its apparent fastigium there is a drop of one or more degrees of temperature—the “false crisis,” to be followed by a fresh rise, which is then followed by the true crisis. This peculiar phenomenon the writers referred to attribute to the presence of two swarms of parasites, one of which matures somewhat later than the other (Fig. 31).

The tendency to the development of pernicious symptoms, to the production of cachexia, and to relapse is similar to what occurs in the case of the malignant quotidian infections.

**Geographical distribution.**—All these malignant parasites are confined to the warmer regions of the earth, and to the more intensely malarial districts in these. In the sub-tropical zones they occur as first infections only in late summer or early autumn; hence the name “æstivo-autumnal.”

**Microscopical examinations in malignant fevers.**—In malignant infections the pigmented fever-causing forms of the parasite are not very frequently met with in peripheral blood. When found, and when it is observed that the pigment has become concentrated, it is a sure indication that a paroxysm is impending. On the occurrence of rigor, and at least during the earlier stages of the paroxysm, many small unpigmented plasmodia, sometimes exhibiting active amœboid movement, sometimes appearing as rings, will be found in finger blood; but towards the end of fever these unpigmented plasmodia often diminish in number, and all evidence of parasitic infection may even disappear from the blood till the approach or incidence of the next paroxysm. Crescents and pigmented leucocytes may be numerous in the intervals of absence of the intracorpuseular parasites. The segmenting forms of the malignant parasite are best found by aspirating the spleen with a hypodermic needle—hardly a justifiable procedure unless in very exceptional circumstances; only very occasionally are they encountered in peripheral blood.



CLINICAL FORMS OF BENIGN AND PERNICIOUS  
MALARIAL FEVERS.

**General statements.**—The foregoing account, so far as it goes, and so far as it relates to the clinical manifestations produced by uncomplicated and typical infections, is true enough. But, as there may be an infinite variety as regards the number of the parasites present, individual susceptibility, concurrence of several species of plasmodia (mixed infection being far from uncommon), or of several generations of the same species of plasmodium maturing at different times, there may be a corresponding variety in the clinical manifestations.

In more temperate climates, and in the winter and spring seasons of warmer latitudes, malarial fevers are usually distinct intermittents. Fresh infections occurring in these places and seasons, so far as the subject has been studied, are found to be produced by the benign tertian and quartan parasites, and are, therefore, of little danger. Relapses, however, of malignant infections originally contracted during the hot weather may occur during the cold season—in fact, are far from uncommon.

First attacks, though produced by one of the benign parasites, may assume the characters of a remittent; generally, in temperate latitudes, they are frank intermittents. First attacks of malignant malaria, although they may in a few instances be intermittent, are in the majority of cases remittent in type; so are the attacks resulting from extensive reinforcement by fresh parasites (through fresh infection) of the old stock which a fever subject may carry about him in a latent condition. The first attack experienced by a newcomer to a highly malarious district with a hot climate is, therefore, generally remittent and severe.

It is neither necessary nor desirable to attempt to describe in detail the infinite variety malarial attacks assume. It would be impossible in a limited space to



do so ; and, if done, the result would amount only to an uninteresting and unprofitable ringing of the changes on rigor, pyrexia, diaphoresis, bilious vomiting, bilious diarrhœa, constipation, catarrhal gastritis, headache, bone-ache, prostration, and so forth. The picture would be further confused by the fact that the natural procession of events is generally, nowadays, broken in on by the action of quinine, the use of which is almost universal with Europeans in the tropics ; so that it is difficult to say how any given malarial fever would develop, or how it would terminate, if left alone. Sometimes in the case of natives of tropical countries, who may not always command a few grains of quinine, such fevers pass into a typhoid state, with dry brown tongue, sordes in the mouth, muttering delirium, and may terminate in collapse and death. In others, untreated remittents and intermittents gradually subside spontaneously in the course of a week or fortnight ; or the remittent may merge into an intermittent which, in the course of weeks or months, subsides for a time, to recur every now and again at longer or shorter intervals. These recurrences may take place at fairly definite intervals ; “long interval fevers” the Italians have named them. Kelsch and Kiener allowed certain remittents in Europeans to run their course unchecked by quinine ; they found that in ten or twelve days the fever gradually expended itself. Under favourable hygienic conditions the plasmodium and the associated fever frequently disappear together spontaneously. Occasionally the fever forms of the parasite may be present in the blood for days on end without causing acute clinical symptoms.

#### REMITTENT TYPES.

**Bilious remittent.**—One type of fever, known as bilious remittent, has long been recognised on account of the bilious vomiting, gastric distress, sometimes bilious diarrhœa, sometimes constipation, which accompany the recurring exacerbations. It is further



distinguished by the pronounced icteric or, rather, reddish yellow or saffron tint of skin and scleræ; a tint derived, probably, not from absorption of bile, as in obstructive jaundice, but from modified hæmoglobin (hæmaphein) free in the blood or deposited in the derma. These bilious remittents are very common in the more highly malarious districts of Africa, America, the West Indies, India and, in fact, in all tropical countries. They are not specially nor directly dangerous in themselves, but they result usually in profound anæmia, and are often but the prelude to chronic malarial saturation, bad health and invaliding.

**Typhoid remittent.**—A modification of the bilious remittent—what Kelsch and Kiener call “typhoid remittent”—is very much more grave as affecting life than the simple bilious remittent. In the typhoid remittent, typhoid symptoms—such as low delirium, prostration, dry tongue, swelling of spleen and liver, subsultus tendinum, marked melanæmia—are superadded to the usual symptoms. Though recovery is the rule, a considerable proportion of such attacks proves fatal.

**Adynamic remittent.**—The same writers class by themselves a set of cases they call “adynamic remittent”; cases which are characterised by fatuousness, restlessness, nervous depression, intense muscular and cardiac debility, profound and rapid blood deterioration, icterus, leucocytosis, melanæmia, liability to syncope, occasionally hæmoglobinuria, liability to hæmorrhages, and a marked tendency to local gangrene.

Tubercle, syphilis, renal disease, or alcoholism will often be found as factors in determining the two latter types of fever.

#### PERNICIOUS ATTACKS.

Many writers have drawn attention to what are called pernicious attacks or pernicious symptoms—the French neatly designate them “accès pernicieux”—a series of phenomena, the possibility of the appear-



ance of which, not only in the course of remittents but in the course of what is seemingly only an ordinary paroxysm of intermittent fever, should never be lost sight of by the practitioner in tropical climates. These "*accès pernicious*" may supervene in apparently mild cases and carry off the patient with horrifying suddenness—as suddenly as an attack of malignant cholera. The wary practitioner is always on the look-out for them, and is always prepared with measures to meet them promptly when they threaten.

Pernicious attacks are roughly classified into cerebral and algide. The cerebral are divisible into hyperpyrexial, comatose, convulsive, paralytic, and so forth; the algide into syncopal, choleriform, dysenteric, hæmoglobinuric, etc.

#### CEREBRAL FORMS.

**Hyperpyrexial.**—There can be little doubt that many of the cases of sudden death from hyperpyrexia and coma, usually credited to what has been called "*ardent fever*" or to "*heat apoplexy*," are really malarial. If careful inquiry be made into the antecedents of many of these cases, a history of mild intermittent will often be elicited; or it will be found that the patient had been living in some highly malarious locality.

In the course of what seemed to be an ordinary malarial attack the body-temperature instead of stopping at  $104^{\circ}$  or  $105^{\circ}$  Fahr., may continue to rise and, passing  $107^{\circ}$ , rapidly mount to  $110^{\circ}$  or even to  $112^{\circ}$ . The patient after a brief stage of wild maniacal, or, perhaps, muttering delirium, becomes rapidly unconscious, then comatose, and dies within a few hours, or perhaps within an hour, of the onset of the pernicious symptoms.

**Comatose.**—Or the patient, without hyperpyrexia, the thermometer perhaps not rising above  $104^{\circ}$ , or even lower, may lapse into coma. The coma may pass away with crisis of sweating; on the other



TABLE OF DIAGNOSTIC POINTS IN QUININE AND MALARIAL AMBLYOPIA.

QUININE AMBLYOPIA.	MALARIAL AMBLYOPIA.
<p><i>History.</i>—Quinine taken in large doses, not less than thirty grains.</p> <p><i>Onset.</i>—Sudden, accompanied by deafness; both eyes are affected.</p> <p><i>Pupils.</i>—Widely dilated, and whilst loss of vision continues they do not react to light.</p> <p><i>Vision.</i>—Completely lost for a time.</p> <p><i>Ophthalmoscopic appearances.</i>—A white haze over fundus; cherry-red spot at macula; optic disc pale; retinal vessels markedly constricted.</p> <p><i>Termination.</i>—Usually some permanent defect in the field of vision or in colour vision. Central vision recovers first, optic disc is unusually white, and retinal vessels small.</p> <p><i>Treatment.</i>—Stop quinine. Amyl nitrite has been recommended to induce dilatation of retinal vessels.</p>	<p><i>History.</i>—Quinine may have been taken, but not necessarily in large doses.</p> <p><i>Onset.</i>—Not usually sudden, but it may be so, if hæmorrhage has occurred in the macular region. There is no deafness, and both eyes are not necessarily affected.</p> <p><i>Pupils.</i>—React to light.</p> <p><i>Vision.</i>—Never completely lost.</p> <p><i>Ophthalmoscopic appearances.</i>—There is optic neuritis; optic disc is of characteristic greyish red colour; retinal hæmorrhages, and sometimes vitreous opacities.</p> <p><i>Termination.</i>—Some cases recover completely, in others greater or less permanent defect of vision remains.</p> <p><i>Treatment.</i>—Give quinine.</p>



hand, an asthenic condition may set in, and death from collapse supervene.

**Other cerebral forms.**—Besides these hyperpyretic and comatose conditions, other forms of cerebral attack may occur in the course of malarial fevers. Thus there may be *sudden delirium* ending in coma and, perhaps, death; *convulsive seizures* of an epileptic or of a tetanic character, with or without delirium or coma; various *forms of apoplectic-like* conditions and of *paralysis*, complicated it may be with *aphasia*. Seizures of this description, if not fatal, may eventuate in *permanent psychical disturbances*.

*Embolism of cerebral capillaries.*—These cerebral attacks are now explained, and it appears to me correctly explained, by the supposition, founded on actual *post-mortem* observation, that they depend on embolism by the malaria parasite of the capillaries of the various nerve centres (Plate II., Fig. 2) involved; in hyperpyrexia, the thermic centres; in aphasia, Broca's convolution; and so on. By microscopical examination of properly prepared sections of the brain in fatal cases, such a plugging of the vessels can generally be readily observed. The earlier students of malarial melanæmia had remarked the presence of pigment in the cerebral capillaries in many cases of this description, and attributed the associated symptoms to thrombosis by the pigment.

**Malarial amblyopia.**—In rare instances a comatose pernicious attack eventuates in blindness. The amblyopia is usually transient, lasting for an hour or two only. On the other hand, it may be persistent; in which case, according to Poncet, optic neuritis, peripapillary œdema, extravasation of leucocytes, plugging of retinal and choroidal vessels by parasites or pigmented leucocytes and consequent multiple hæmorrhages, may be found in the fundus. If the hæmorrhages are minute they are discoverable by the microscope only. These fundus changes differ from those in quinine amblyopia. In the latter,



depending on retinal anæmia from toxic spasm of the arterioles, the amblyopia is more persistent ; the discs are white and the vessels shrunken ; there are no inflammatory symptoms ; and central vision is the first to recover.

#### ALGIDE FORMS.

The algide forms of pernicious attack, as indicated by the name, are characterised by collapse, extreme coldness of the surface of the body, and a tendency to fatal syncope. These symptoms usually coexist with elevated axillary and rectal temperature.

**Gastric form.**—This may be associated with, and in a measure dependent on, acute catarrhal dyspeptic trouble. It is accompanied by severe epigastric distress, tender retracted abdomen, and incessant vomiting.

**Choleraic form.**—Malarial attacks are sometimes accompanied by choleraic symptoms. The stools suddenly become loose, profuse and numerous. They are not generally so profuse or colourless as the rice-water discharge which pours from the patient in true cholera ; they retain a certain amount of biliary colouring, and may be mucoid or even bloody. As in cholera, the serous drain may lead to cramps in the limbs, loss of voice, pinched features, washer-woman's fingers, almost complete suppression of urine and, perhaps, to fatal collapse. Such attacks are very deceptive, and may be mistaken for true cholera. The high axillary temperature if present ; a history perhaps of recent ague fits ; the subsequent rapid disappearance of choleraic symptoms on the appearance of the hot and sweating stages ; the colour of the stools and other collateral circumstances usually suffice for diagnosis, particularly if they are supplemented by a microscopical examination of the blood. Although not usual, recurrence of the choleraic symptoms may take place at the next fever period. A dangerous type of malarial fever prevalent in the Punjab is often ushered in by such symptoms ;



without the microscope its true nature may be hard to recognise.

**Dysenteric form.**—Another form of pernicious attack is characterised by the sudden appearance of dysenteric symptoms, perhaps by hæmorrhage from the bowel or elsewhere. The possibility of a suddenly developed dysentery being of malarial origin must therefore be kept in view; particularly if in what appears to be ordinary dysentery axillary temperature is found to be abnormally high. In every case of dysentery of this kind examination of the blood should be made before the usual treatment for that disease is instituted—a treatment which, in the probably adynamic state of the patient, might very well prove fatal.

**Syncopal form.**—In the preceding types of algide pernicious malarial attack the dangerous symptoms show themselves in the rigor stage of the fever. There is yet another form in which the danger appears to depend on an exaggeration of the symptom usually hailed as bringing relief and, for the time, freedom from danger. Thus the sweating of the stage of defervescence may be excessive and cause collapse which, if the patient rise up suddenly or make an undue effort, may lead to fatal syncope. Weak and cachectic patients, therefore, should be warned of this possibility, and not be permitted to rise suddenly or to exert themselves in any way during the defervescence of an ague.

The *pathology* of these various forms of algidity is in all likelihood of a very mixed character. In the gastric, choleraic, and dysenteric types there is probably an accumulation of plasmodia in the vessels of the intestinal mucosa; such accumulations of parasites have been described. In those attacks in which profuse sweating is the dangerous element, the diaphoresis may be regarded, at all events in part, as symptomatic of excessive blood destruction—of what is, in reality, equivalent to a sudden and extensive hæmorrhage; or it may be that it is only an excessive reaction to



the malarial toxin. The dangerous syncope attending all types of algidity is secondary, and merely an expression of collapse.

A practical experience of these suddenly developed pernicious fevers of the tropics teaches that we should never make light of any malarial attack ; particularly if it be of a mild irregular character and imperfectly controlled by quinine, and if small parasites, or the crescent form, be present. The practitioner should be on the alert for any danger signal—mental aberration, restlessness, peculiarity in behaviour, alteration in knee reflexes, and other indications of grave implication of the nervous system. It further teaches that the subjects of such fevers should be particularly careful to guard against chills, fatigue, insufficient and unwholesome food, and all causes of physiological depression. The subjects of African hæmoglobinuric fever, to be presently described, must exercise special caution in these respects, not relaxing their care for months after return to a cold climate. There seems to be hardly any disease in which chills, wettings, etc., determine attacks so readily as in hæmoglobinuric fever. If possible, anyone who has suffered from this disease ought not to return to Africa.

### HÆMOGLOBINURIC FEVER.

There is one form of what is believed to be malarial infection which, though fatally common in certain countries, and though possessing very alarming and distinctive symptoms, has only comparatively recently been differentiated and studied. I refer to bilious hæmoglobinuric fever, sometimes erroneously called “ hæmaturic fever,” sometimes “ blackwater fever.”

It is characterised by pyrexia, which is ushered in with rigor, bilious vomiting, with icterus and hæmoglobinuria, and with a diminution in the quantity of urine. These symptoms, in greater or less degree, are practically never absent ; occasionally, however,



in what might be called abortive attacks, the bilious vomiting may not occur and the other symptoms may be mild in character.

This most dangerous disease prevails especially in the more malarial districts of tropical Africa. It was first described by French naval surgeons stationed at Nosibé, a French settlement off the north-west coast of Madagascar. Subsequently it was found to have a more extensive distribution, and to be common, as mentioned, in many parts of tropical Africa. It is also found in the hotter regions of America, in the West India islands, in parts of the Eastern peninsula and archipelago, in the south of China, in Assam, and in some districts of India. Until quite recently, strange to say, no Indian writer had mentioned hæmoglobinuria as a feature in the pyretology of Hindustan or of the East. The disease occurs, but is rare, in South Europe; cases are sometimes met with in Greece, Italy, and Sardinia. Possibly it has been overlooked in many places.

There may be another explanation for the singular silence on the subject of hæmoglobinuric fever of the classical writers on Indian diseases; they may have confounded it with bilious remittent. It is difficult to believe, however, that the large number of acute observers who have studied Indian diseases so carefully, and for so many years, could have systematically overlooked this striking disease. Possibly, therefore, it is of recent introduction into India. Such an idea is countenanced by the fact that certain medical men practising in Africa, good observers, declare that this form of malaria is of comparatively recent introduction there; and, moreover, that it is yearly becoming more common in that continent. There is another remarkable fact about hæmoglobinuric fever, which would lead us to believe that it is dependent on a form of the malarial parasite, or, possibly, of a species of parasite, peculiar to itself; and this is, that in its recurrences hæmoglobinuric fever often retains its peculiar characteristics for



months after the patient has left the endemic area in which the germ was originally acquired. Those who have suffered from it in Africa are liable, not

only to malarial attacks of the ordinary kind, but also to a recurrence of hæmoglobinuric symptoms, and that for some little time, at least up to five months, after their return to Europe: they may even die of it. I know of five fatal cases of the kind which occurred recently in Great Britain, four in England and one in Scotland. The first attack may occur in Europe. Such a case I saw lately; the patient, although he had fever in Africa, had no hæmoglobinuric symptoms until three months after his return to England.

The European resident in tropical Africa regards three, or four, or more attacks of malarial fever as a regular feature in his *annus medicus*. Some of these attacks are of little gravity; others may be severe and inconvenient.

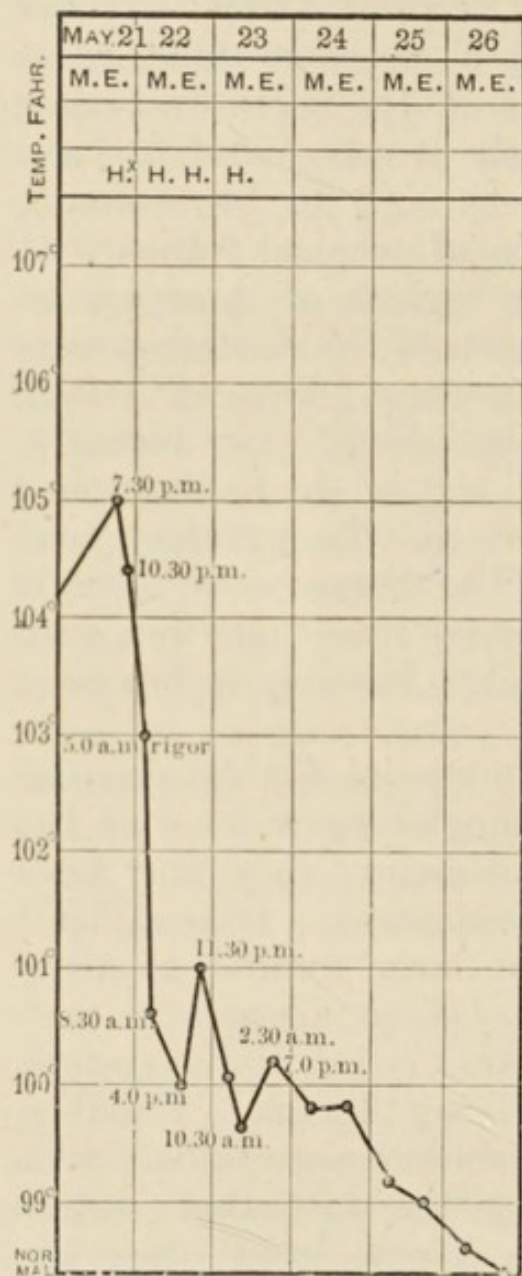


Fig. 32.—Temperature chart of an attack of hæmoglobinuric fever occurring in England; infection acquired on the Congo. Recovery.

H, indicates hæmoglobinuria.

On the whole, these attacks are not very much dreaded. When hæmoglobinuric symptoms declare themselves, however, such fevers are invariably regarded, and very properly so, with the utmost



apprehension; for not only are they dangerous in themselves—at least one in every three or four proving fatal—but, even if recovered from, they leave the patient intensely anæmic, with damaged kidneys perhaps, and strongly predisposed to a recurrence of similar attacks, in one of which he will probably succumb.

Hæmoglobinuric fever is not very common during the first year of residence in Africa, though, in rare instances, it does occur even as early as the second or third month. It is usually after a year or two of malarial saturation, and after many attacks of an ordinary character, that it shows itself.

It would appear from statistics prepared from certain returns regarding the white employees of the Congo Free State, and from the evidence collated by other writers, that the third year of residence is the one most liable to this disease. Longer residence with immunity seems to imply in the European special resisting powers as against the diseases of Africa, and special suitability for the African climate. On the other hand, many think

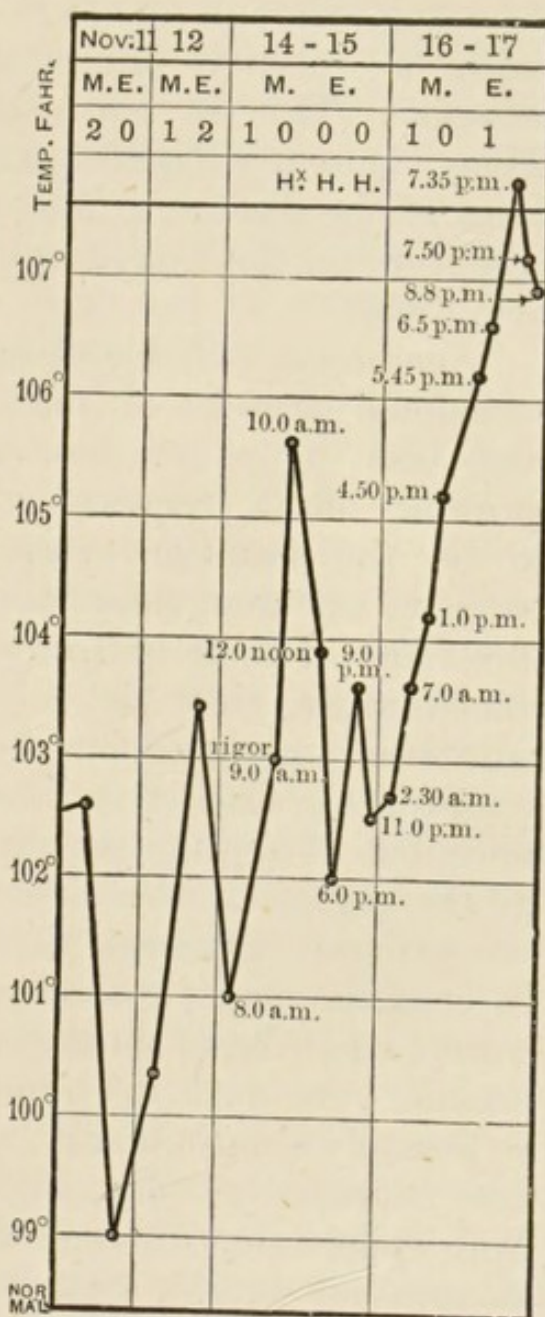


Fig. 33.—Temperature chart of recurrence of hæmoglobinuric fever in same patient (Fig. 32) shortly after his return to Congoland. Death.

H, indicates hæmoglobinuria.



that length of residence has no influence as regards blackwater fever; they think that the susceptible get it whether in robust or indifferent health, whether newly arrived or long resident. Native Africans, though subject enough to intermittents, enjoy a relative immunity from hæmoglobinuric attacks. This is not absolute, however; Easmon, Eyles, Quartey-Papafio, and others, have recorded cases of the disease in natives. Many of the Chinese labourers on the Congo railway died of hæmoglobinuric fever.

*Symptoms.*—A European, who has been subject to occasional attacks of malarial fever which hitherto had been more or less successfully controlled by quinine, has a recurrence of what at first appears to be the familiar symptoms, although frequently patients say that these early symptoms are not quite like those of their ordinary fevers. A slight, or a more considerable rigor is followed by intermitting, or remitting, or irregular fever, with marked bilious symptoms. Earlier or later in the attack he becomes conscious of aching, perhaps severe pain, in the loins, in the region of the liver, and over the bladder; in exceptional instances these local pains are absent. In consequence of a somewhat urgent desire he passes water, when he is astonished to see that his urine has become very dark in colour, perhaps malaga-coloured, or possibly almost black. The fever continues, though not necessarily very high. Very likely he suffers from epigastric pain and distress, bilious vomiting to an unusual extent, and, it may be, bilious diarrhœa; or he may be constipated. The pain in the loins and the liver-ache continue, and the urine becomes darker and darker. By-and-by the sufferer breaks into a profuse sweat and the fever gradually subsides. (Fig. 32.) The urine, which hitherto had been somewhat scanty, now flows more freely; and, after passing through various paling shades, from dark brown to sherry red, becomes once more natural in appearance. Coincidentally with the appearance of the dark colour



in the urine, or even before this has been remarked, the skin and scleræ rapidly acquire a deep saffron-yellow tint. This icteric condition persists and even deepens during the progress of the fever, continuing for several days to be a striking feature in the symptoms. When the fever subsides, the patient is conscious of a feeling of intense weakness from which he recovers but slowly. Fever may recur next day, or for several days; or it may cease; or it may be remittent, or almost continued in type. The hæmoglobinuria may recur with each rise of temperature; or there may be only one or two outbursts.

In the more severe forms of hæmoglobinuric fever there is usually a very great amount of bilious vomiting, of intense epigastric distress, and of severe liver- and loin-ache. The urine may continue copious and very dark in colour; or, continuing hæmoglobinous, it may gradually get more and more scanty, acquiring a gummy consistence, a few drops only being passed at a time. Finally it may be completely suppressed.

In severe cases death is the rule. It appears to be brought about in one of three or four ways. The fever may assume the typho-adynamic type; or suddenly developed pernicious cerebral, hyperpyrexial (Fig. 33), or algide symptoms may supervene. In other cases the symptoms may be like those consequent on sudden and profuse hæmorrhage—jactitation, sweating, sighing, syncope. Or it may be that suppression of urine, persisting for several days, terminates, as cases of suppression usually do, in sudden syncope or convulsions and coma. Or nephritis may ensue and the patient die from uræmic trouble three or four weeks after all signs of hæmoglobinuria and fever have disappeared.

Recently I saw in London a case in which the fatal issue appeared to have been brought about by persistent hiccough, hepatitis and vomiting of blood.

Such is a brief and imperfect sketch of the symptoms of this, the most important of the African fevers. It is a disease, which, as this continent



becomes more opened up and more frequented by Europeans, is bound to occupy a greater amount of attention from medical writers than it has hitherto done.

*The urine.*—If the characteristic dark brown, generally acid, urine of a hæmoglobinuric case be stood for some time in a urine glass, it will separate into two well-marked layers: an upper of a clear though very dark port-wine tint, and a lower—perhaps amounting to one-half or one-third of the entire bulk—of a somewhat brownish grey colour, and consisting of a sediment in which an enormous number of hyaline and hæmoglobin tube casts are to be found, together with a large quantity of brownish granular material. Epithelium is also met with; but blood corpuscles may be entirely absent, or very few in number. With the hæmoglobin there is also an escape of the serum-globulin of the blood, for the urine turns almost solid on boiling; and for some days after it has regained a normal appearance the urine will still contain albumin, though in gradually diminishing amount. Spectroscopic examination gives the characteristic bands of hæmoglobin, sometimes those of methæmoglobin.

*The kidneys.*—If the kidneys of a fatal case are examined at an early stage of the disease, they are seen to be enlarged and congested, the tubules blocked with hæmoglobin infarcts, the cells laden with yellow pigment grains, and the capillaries most probably with black malarial pigment. If the case survive for three or four weeks and then die of uræmia, the appearances are those of large white kidney.

*The liver* is enlarged, soft, of a dark yellow colour. Microscopically it reveals evidence of cloudy swelling with a large amount of yellow pigment in the liver cells. Melanin may or may not be present.

*The parasite.*—The parasitology of hæmoglobinuric fever has not been worked at sufficiently to justify an expression of opinion as to its exact nature. Plasmodia have been found in the blood and organs;



but their specific characters, in many instances, have not been accurately determined, further than that, as a rule, they are small, non-pigmented, and rarely sporulate in the peripheral blood, belonging, doubtless, to some form of the crescent-forming malignant type. In one instance, slides from which came under my notice, a mixed infection of small parasites and benign tertian parasites, the latter predominating, was present. Considering the peculiar clinical manifestations, and the facts of geographical distribution, it seems not unlikely that the parasite of hæmoglobinuric fever is specifically different from the malaria parasites usually met with in Europe and, perhaps, in India. Sambon's suggestion that it may be allied to *Pirosoma bigeminum* of the hæmoglobinuric fever of cattle deserves consideration. It by no means follows that any given parasite found in the blood of a hæmoglobinuric case is the cause of the disease. Thus we must expect that the ordinary malaria parasites may be met with, and, indeed, are likely to be met with, in a population so universally infected with malaria, as that of the unhealthy regions of Africa; and this more especially if the patient's resistance is lowered by some other and concurrent infection. The conclusion, so apt to be jumped at, that such malaria parasites are the cause of the concurrent disease, is not justified on this evidence alone.

It is a striking fact that the malaria parasites, which may be present before and at the outset of a hæmoglobinuric attack, generally disappear from the blood during the progress of the hæmoglobinuria, and that without quinine; and, further, that a hæmoglobinuria may terminate for good a chronic malarial infection. Hæmoglobinuria or, rather, the sudden destruction of all the parasite-infected corpuscles, and consequently of the included parasites, would seem therefore to be a method of spontaneous cure of a malarial infection.



## TABULAR STATEMENT OF THE CHARACTER-

*Modified from*

	DURATION OF DEVELOP- MENT.	MOVEMENT.	PIGMENTATION.	MAXIMUM SIZE.	FORM OF SPORE FORMATION.
1. Benign quartan para- site	72 hours	Slight move- ment in the im- mature forms	Coarse grains; little or no movement	The size of a red blood corpuscle	Daisy form; the single spores rough- ish, with dis- tinct nucle- olus
2. Benign ter- tian parasite	48 hours; or less in an- ticipating types	Active amœboid movement in the immature and also in the middle - aged forms	Fine granules; in immature forms; often in the larger actively swarming	Size of a red blood corpuscle, sometimes even larger	Sunflower or grape - like; single spores small, round; nucleolus rarely seen
3. Malignant pigmented quotidian parasite	24 hours	The unpig- mented imma- ture form very actively amœ- boid; less active when pigment accu- mulates	Very fine; later coalesces in one or two clumps; does not swarm	$\frac{1}{4}$ - $\frac{1}{3}$ the size of a red blood corpuscle	Irregularly formed heap
4. Malignant unpigmented quotidian parasite	24 hours or less	Very active amœboid move- ment	None	$\frac{1}{8}$ - $\frac{1}{4}$ the size of a red blood corpuscle	Star - shaped, or in irregu- lar heaps
5. Malignant tertian para- site	48 hours	Active; the movement re- mains present in the pig- mented bodies	Moderately fine; often shows oscil- latory move- ment	$\frac{1}{4}$ - $\frac{3}{8}$ the size of a red blood corpuscle	Irregular heaps



ISTICS OF THE VARIOUS PARASITES.

*Mannaberg.*

NUMBER OF SPORES.	CRES- CENTIC BODIES.	ALTERATIONS IN THE INFESTED BLOOD CORPUSCLES.	RELATIVE NUM- BER OF PARA- SITES SEEN IN PERIPHERAL AND VISCERAL BLOOD RESPECTIVELY.	INFLUENCE OF QUININE.	LIABILITY TO REAPPEARANCE OF PARASITE AFTER LEAVING INFECTIVE REGIONS.
6-12	None	The red blood corpuscles are little discoloured, and do not alter their size	Parasites seen in peripheral circulation throughout the whole cycle, and in as great numbers as in visceral blood	Causes disappearance of parasite readily	Liability persists for a very long period
15-20 (often less)	None	The red blood corpuscles are often hypertrophied, and lose colour it may be completely	Parasites seen in peripheral blood throughout the whole cycle, but not in such large numbers as in visceral blood	Causes disappearance of parasite readily	Liability persists for long period
6-8 (even more)	Present	The red blood corpuscles shrink often, and are then either darker - stained (copper colour) or may be completely decolourised	An enormously greater number of parasites are found in internal organs as compared with peripheral blood — the latter part of the cycle takes place in internal organs only	Causes disappearance of parasite less readily	After a few months less liability to recurrence
6-8	Present	The red blood corpuscles shrink frequently, and are darkly stained	Ditto	Ditto	Ditto
10-12, rarely 15-16	Present	The red blood corpuscles shrink frequently; they are darkly stained, or may be perfectly colourless	Ditto	Ditto	Ditto



## CHAPTER IV.

## MALARIA : MORBID ANATOMY AND PATHOLOGY.

**The blood in malaria.**—As the plasmodium is a blood parasite we naturally expect that the primary effect of its presence will be exercised on, and manifested in, the blood ; and as the parasite lives in and at the expense of the corpuscles, destroying a certain proportion of them—in fact, all those attacked—we look, in the first instance, for a corresponding diminution in the number of these corpuscles—an oligocythæmia.

*Oligocythæmia.*—Accordingly, when in malarial disease we come to measure accurately the corpuscular richness of the blood, we do find a decided oligocythæmia ; and, not only this, but we find a degree of oligocythæmia greatly in excess of anything we might expect, or which can be accounted for by, or is in correspondence with, the proportion of corpuscles attacked and directly consumed by the plasmodium, judging by what we see in finger blood—peripheral blood. If, for example, every hundredth corpuscle contains a parasite we might look for something like a quotidian, tertian, or quartan 1 per cent. reduction in the total number of blood corpuscles ; if every twentieth corpuscle contains a parasite—a very high and unusual proportion—we might look for a similarly-timed 5 per cent. reduction.

Now this is an amount of hæmolysis which should be easily compensated by the latent physiological hæmogenetic margin, and which one would not expect to show itself as a definite anæmia, or to show itself only after the recurring drain had been kept up for some considerable time. But what are the clinical



facts? One or two paroxysms only, of some malarial fevers, may be immediately followed by an anæmia so pronounced as to be discernible to the eye in the intense pallor of the skin and visible mucous surfaces. On counting the corpuscles in such a case we note a regular drop in their number of from 5 to 10 per cent. per paroxysm. Often after a single paroxysm of some pernicious fever as many as half a million, or even one million, corpuscles per c.mm. drop out of the normal five millions; and this reduction may go on, as paroxysm follows paroxysm, until the corpuscular richness has fallen to one million, or even less.

*Diminished hæmoglobin value of corpuscles.*—Not only is there in many, in fact in most, cases of malarial disease a pronounced oligocythæmia, but there is, in addition, a marked diminution in the hæmoglobin value of the surviving corpuscles; it may fall 10, 20, or even as much as 50 per cent.

*Diminished amount of blood.*—And not only is there this marked diminution in the proportion of the corpuscles to the bulk of the blood and in their hæmoglobin value, but there is, furthermore, in all malarial conditions of any considerable standing, a marked diminution in the volume of blood. Thus it comes that at the *post-mortem* examination of such a case we do not always meet with that congestion of the organs which is so usual a feature in most specific fevers. On the contrary, although in quite recent cases visceral congestion may be marked enough, if a malarial fever has been of any considerable duration, the venous system, with the exception of that appertaining to the spleen, liver and portal system generally, may be markedly empty. And thus it is that often, when we would make a preparation of blood from the living malarial patient, we may find that not only is the blood lakey, thin, and watery, but that it does not flow freely from the pricked finger.

*Destruction and reparation of blood in first attacks*



*and in relapses.*—There appears to be no very definite or manifest law governing the degree, progress, and quality of the anæmia of malarial disease. On the whole, and as rough general rules, it may be laid down that in any given case the anæmia is in proportion to the severity of the febrile attacks; that, although the loss of corpuscles following first attacks is usually very marked, this loss is rapidly made good; that, although in relapses the loss of corpuscles is less than in first attacks, the tendency to reparation is also less.

**Morbid anatomy: Macroscopic.**—If the body of a patient who has died in the course of an acute attack of malarial disease be dissected, certain appearances are generally found. In the first place, and invariably, the *spleen* is enlarged—often very much enlarged; its surface is dark—black sometimes; what is called pigmented. On section, the gland tissue is also found to be dark. Generally the parenchyma of the organ is so much softened as to be almost diffuent, so that the tarry pulp can sometimes be washed away by quite a gentle stream of water. The *liver*, too, is softened, congested, enlarged, and pigmented. The vessels of the *pia mater and brain cortex* are full, and the grey matter may present a peculiar leaden hue. The *marrow* of the spongy bones, such as the sternum and the bodies of the vertebræ, is also dark and congested; and a similar state of pigmentation and perhaps congestion may be discovered in the *lungs, alimentary canal, and kidneys*.

**Microscopic: Malarial pigmentation.**—The pigmentation referred to is pathognomonic of malaria. On submitting malarial blood from any part of the body to microscopical examination, it will be found to contain grains of black pigment. Particularly is this the case with blood from the organs just mentioned; their microscopical sections will show (Plate II., Figs. 2, 3, 4), more or less thickly distributed in the blood, and within the cells of the endothelium of the arterioles and capillaries, minute grains, or



actual blocks, of the same intensely black substance. For the most part these pigment grains are enclosed in leucocyte-like bodies which are either clinging to the walls or lying loose in the lumen of the vessels. Here and there the pigmented bodies may be so aggregated together that they form veritable thrombi and occlude the vessels. It is possible that many of these bodies are not pigmented leucocytes, but are really dead and breaking-down parasites; for if the preparations were made within two or three hours of death—that is to say, when the tissues were quite fresh—it may be possible to see that the capillaries of some of the organs are full not only of pigment but also of plasmodia, a very large proportion of the blood corpuscles containing parasites. Particularly is this the case with the spleen and bone marrow; often, too, with the brain, liver, epiploön, and intestinal mucosa. The spleen and bone marrow are further distinguished from the other organs mentioned by the position in which the pigments occurs in them. In all organs the pigment is found in the blood-vessels, but only in these two organs is it found in the cells of the parenchyma as well, and outside and away from the blood-vessels. This extravascular pigment is either free, or it lies in the large cells characteristic of these organs, or in the small cells of the parenchyma.

*Nature and source of malarial pigment.*—What is this black pigment which is so generally diffused throughout the circulation, and which is so specially abundant in the spleen and bone marrow? In colour, in structure, and in chemical reaction it corresponds exactly with the pigment already described as forming so prominent a feature in the malaria parasite itself. Like this, it is insoluble even in strong acids; it is altered by potash, and is entirely and rapidly dissolved by ammonium sulphide. It may occur as minute dust-like grains, or as coarser particles, or as agglomerations of these into irregular, mamillated lumps. So far as the circulation is concerned, such a pigment is found in no other disease whatever. As



an extravascular pathological product it is found in certain melanotic tumours; but only in the cells of the tumour, never in the blood-vessels. Pigments of several kinds are found in old blood clots; such pigments are manifestly different from that of malaria, and yield very different chemical reactions. Intravascular black pigment, therefore, is absolutely pathognomonic of malaria.\* Because of its physical characters, and of the circumstances in which it occurs, it may with confidence be regarded as the specific product of the malaria parasite itself.

*Source of the pigment in the pigmented leucocyte.*—If further evidence be required of the identity of the intraparasitic pigment and that found in the tissues, it will be supplied by a study of the fate of the pigment grains and clumps set free in the blood on the breaking up of the sporulating plasmodium.

If malarial blood, drawn during the rigor and early stages of acute attacks, and even at other times, be examined, leucocytes carrying grains or even blocks of black pigment will be encountered frequently. If the observer be fortunate and persevering he will sometimes actually see whence this pigment is derived; he may even detect the leucocytes in the act of taking it up. He may see the pigment set free in the liquor sanguinis by the falling to pieces of a sporulating plasmodium; and he may then see a phagocyte creep across the field of the microscope and slowly engulf the little block. This undoubtedly is a principal source of the pigment in the leucocytes. Other, though possibly less important, sources, are the effete crescent bodies, and, especially in the large cells of the spleen, necrosed parasite-containing red blood corpuscles.

*Phagocytosis in the spleen.*—The evidence of phagocytosis in the spleen in malaria is very remarkable. Not only are large and small masses of pigment

\* The pigment-like dot occurring in a large proportion of the lymphocytes, even in normal blood (see p. 41), must not be confounded with malarial pigment.



included in the macrophages, in the smaller cells, and in the endothelium, but entire blood corpuscles—sometimes as many as eight or nine, mostly containing parasites—besides free parasites, free pigment, and fragmented hæmoglobin are frequently to be seen in one and the same phagocyte. Sometimes one pigment-laden phagocyte may be seen included in another phagocyte, and these perhaps in a third.

*Blood of the splenic vein and liver.*—Of all the vessels of the body the splenic vein is that in which malarial pigment is most abundant; whereas in other vessels it is found to be included in ordinary leucocytes, in this vessel it is included, not only in the leucocytes, but also in certain large white cells identical with those occurring in the spleen, and, doubtless, of splenic origin also. Similar cells may be found in the capillaries of the liver, rarely, however, in the blood beyond this organ; that is to say, they are filtered out by the liver from the blood carried to it by the splenic vein. An additional reason for the abundance of pigment in the splenic vein is, that not only is the spleen the physiological destination of many of the pigment-laden leucocytes and effete parasite-infested corpuscles, but it is likewise a favourite nursery for the plasmodium. In fact, the parasite is present in this organ in greater profusion than elsewhere. Hence it is that the splenic vein, coming direct from a rich breeding- and dumping-ground for the plasmodium, contains a large number of pigment-laden leucocytes.

*Extravascular pigment.*—In the early stages of malarial disease, except in the case of the spleen and bone marrow, the pigment is entirely confined to the lumen of the vessels and to their endothelium. But if we examine tissues from a case which has died at a late period of the disease, the pigment may then be found, not only in the endothelium, but also in the walls of the vessels, and even in the perivascular lymph spaces whence, it may be inferred, it is subsequently carried to the lymphatic glands to be finally dealt with and broken up. As encouraging



this view about the ultimate fate of the malaria pigment, Kelsch has pointed out the significant fact that the lymphatic glands in the hilum of the liver are always markedly pigmented in old-standing malarials; a fact evidently referable to the disposal of the large quantities of pigment which, as we have seen, the liver filters out, more especially from the splenic portion of the portal circulation.

*These facts explain malarial pigmentation and oligocythæmia.*—The facts just mentioned explain not only the origin and nature of malarial pigmentation, but also, in part at least, the oligocythæmia of the malarial state, which, as pointed out, is only partially accounted for by the destruction of corpuscles by the plasmodium in the general circulation as represented by finger blood. They show that what is seen in finger blood does not represent anything like the aggregate mortality going on among the corpuscles from direct destruction by the plasmodium. The principal part of the malarial drama is played out in the spleen, liver, bone marrow, brain, etc., and not in the general circulation. What is seen in finger blood is but an overflow, as it were, of the greater drama going forward in the viscera.

**The yellow pigment.**—Although the black pigment is so prominent a feature in malaria, it is not the only pigment of a pathological nature originating in the action of the plasmodium on the blood cells. The black pigment is a pathognomonic and interesting feature; but, apart from this, it does not appear to be of any really very great pathological importance. It does not seem to act as a poison, or irritant, or as a cause of degeneration of tissue, any more than a few grains of lampblack would, if so much. It is otherwise, however, with the pigment which Kelsch and Kiener have so carefully described, and which they call the "pigment ochre."

If the tissues of a patient who has recently died from a pernicious malarial attack are examined with a high power, there will be found (Plate II., Figs. 3, 4),



in addition to the black pigment already described as lying in the vessels, another pigment—a yellow pigment—incorporated as little granules, or even as larger grains, in the protoplasm of the cells constituting the parenchyma of most of the organs and tissues of the body.

*The yellow pigment not peculiar to malaria.*—This pigment is not peculiar to malaria. It is found in other diseases and conditions, particularly in those associated with extensive and rapid liberation of hæmoglobin from the blood corpuscles. Thus it is found in paroxysmal hæmoglobinuria, in pernicious anæmia, in extensive burns, in poisoning by pyrogallie acid, potassium chlorate, arseniate of hydrogen and many other toxic agents. It has peculiar chemical properties, being equally insoluble in acids, in alkalies, and in alcohol. At first, when freshly deposited, it gives no evidence, under the usual micro-chemical tests, of containing iron; after it has been in the tissues for some time it appears to be altered in character in this respect, and it then gives a ferrous reaction with ammonium sulphide, and with the double cyanide of iron and potassium.

*Polycholia and hæmoglobinæmia.*—Under ordinary conditions of physiological waste the products of the effete blood corpuscles are converted into bile pigment, and so got rid of. Up to a certain degree of pathological hæmoglobinæmia the liver can deal in a similar way with free hæmoglobin; so it comes about that, when this substance is free in the blood in unusual abundance, the secretion and flow of bile become correspondingly increased. If this flow of bile be excessive it gives rise to what are called “bilious symptoms”—bilious vomiting, bilious diarrhœa; symptoms which are so common in malarial disease, particularly in that variety known as “bilious remittent.” Thus polycholia is a constant and often urgent feature in most malarial fevers, and is good evidence that in malarial infections there is a surcharge of the blood with free hæmoglobin. It is not



improbable, although this point is disputed, that the yellowness of the skin and scleræ observed in these fevers is due to tinting by free hæmoglobin, to a hæmoglobinaemia in fact, and not, as is popularly believed, to biliousness or cholæmia from bile absorption.

*The yellow pigment is deposited in excessive hæmoglobinaemia.*—As in those other conditions referred to as being attended by rapid hæmolysis, in severe malarial fevers in which there is great and sudden liberation of hæmoglobin which the liver cannot at once deal with, pending its transformation into bile pigment the liberated hæmoglobin is taken up by the protoplasm of the cells of the different tissues and organs of the body and precipitated in them in a slightly altered form ; it is stored up in fact, waiting to be worked off as bile pigment by the, for the time being, overtaxed liver. The yellow pigment, the “pigment ochre” of Kelsch and Kiener, is, in all probability, this precipitated hæmoglobin.

*Great excess of hæmoglobinaemia results in hæmoglobinuria.*—Should the liberation of hæmoglobin go beyond this, be too great and too suddenly effected for the excretory powers of the liver and the storage capacity of the tissues, then the hæmoglobin, little altered in composition, seeks a more speedy way of escape by the kidneys, and hæmoglobinuria is produced. This is what is found in ordinary paroxysmal hæmoglobinuria, and in toxic hæmoglobinuria ; and in this way we may account for the peculiar features of that most dangerous type of malarial poisoning, “bilious hæmoglobinuric fever.”

*Hæmoglobinaemia : how produced.*—How, it may be asked, does the malarial parasite give rise to hæmoglobinaemia ? The enormous quantities of hæmoglobin free in the blood, deposited in the tissues, escaping in the urine, or elaborated as bile pigment, surely cannot be derived solely from the remains of the corpuscles invaded by the parasite ; for these invaded corpuscles are almost entirely



eaten up, and the hæmoglobin they once contained has been nearly entirely assimilated by the parasite and transformed into its proper tissue and into melanin.

It has already been pointed out that hæmoglobinometric observations show that in the surviving and non-infected corpuscles there is a pronounced deficiency of hæmoglobin. May it not be that part at least of the free hæmoglobin is derived from these corpuscles? May it not be that at a particular stage in all malarial fevers, at the stage of rigor (which, as has been explained, corresponds in time to the breaking down of the sporulated plasmodium), there is a sudden liberation of some hæmoglobin-dissolving substance which hitherto had subserved the parasite during its growth as a sort of digestive agent, aiding it in the assimilation of the contents of the blood corpuscle? May it not be that on the breaking down of the sporulating plasmodium this substance is set free in the circulation, and that, being there, retaining its digestive properties, it continues to act as a hæmoglobin solvent, and so dissolves out a proportion of the hæmoglobin from the otherwise healthy corpuscles?

*Size and shape of the blood corpuscles.*—On the whole, as in most anæmic conditions, in malaria the corpuscles are larger than normal—particularly those attacked by the parasite, especially the tertian parasite. Occasionally we come across genuine megalo-cytes; and, not infrequently, certain very minute, darkly-coloured spherical corpuscles, which may be nucleated and of embryonic type. There may also be marked irregularity of outline in many of the corpuscles, and an indisposition to form rouleaux.

*Poikilocytosis in hæmoglobinuric fever.*—The most striking display of blood destruction by the malarial poison is to be seen in cases of hæmoglobinuric fever during the early stage. I once had an opportunity of examining the blood in such a case. There did not seem to be a sound corpuscle in the patient's body;



nearly all were mis-shapen, tailed, buckled, shrivelled, or otherwise deformed; microcytes, megalocytes, and pallid ghost-like corpuscles were present in abundance in every field. In this case the hæmoglobin was pouring from the kidneys; the albuminous urine was the colour of porter, and deposited a copious dark brown sediment of slightly altered hæmoglobin.

*The leucocytes in malaria.*—Although the leucocytes, especially the large mono-nuclear and poly-nuclear, play a very important part in the malaria drama, hitherto their numbers and varieties in this infection have not been sufficiently studied. In mild attacks their numbers, as observed in peripheral blood, decrease somewhat, both relatively to the red corpuscles and absolutely. Possibly this decrease may be accounted for by the tendency the pigment-laden leucocytes exhibit to carry their burden to the spleen and other internal organs, so that the decrease is only an apparent one. Dr. J. S. Billings, who has given attention to the leucocytes in a limited number of cases of malaria, reports that the diminution in their numbers is striking. In benign tertians and quartans their maximum is attained, he says, two or three hours after the onset of chill. From this time there is a progressive diminution until the minimum is reached at the end of the paroxysm and when temperature has become subnormal. After this the number rises somewhat, and during the interval occupies a position midway between the maximum and minimum. The large mono-nuclear elements are, as a rule, greatly increased, both absolutely and relatively. With regard to the leucocytes in that type of fever which is caused by the crescent-forming small parasites, it is impossible, he says, to arrive at so definite a conclusion as in the benign tertian cases. In the former type of case there appears to be a slight diminution in the number of leucocytes towards the end of the attacks, a diminution which is made good during the interval. Curiously enough, in certain severe pernicious attacks there is a decided



increase of the leucocytes in the peripheral blood—sometimes an enormous increase, a positive leucocytosis, the normal 8,000 per c.mm. rising to 10,000 or even to 30,000, the proportion to red corpuscles rising from 1 to 300 to 1 to 70.

*The hæmatoblasts in malaria.*—As regards the hæmatoblasts, Hayem has shown that the number of these bodies somewhat declines during an acute malarial attack, to rise very considerably above the normal standard during the succeeding days of apyrexia. This apyrexial multiplication he calls the “*crise hématoblastique*,” and he conjectures that its occurrence is associated with the regeneration of the red corpuscles, so much reduced in number and deteriorated in quality during the attacks.

**The cause of fever and periodicity in malaria.**—The fever caused by the malaria parasite and associated with the changes in the blood and tissues just described, is characterised by clinical features which, when typically manifested, clearly differentiate it from all other fevers. These features are, more especially, periodicity and intermission. Questions which suggest themselves in this connection are: What is the immediate cause of the fever in malaria? What is the reason for the remarkable intermissions and peculiar, almost mathematical, periodicity which these fevers exhibit?

*Febrogenetic agent.*—In all malarial attacks this periodicity tends to become, and in most attacks actually is, quotidian, tertian, or quartan in type. If we study the parasites associated with these various types we find that they, too, as has been fully described already, have a corresponding periodicity. We have also seen that the commencement of the fever in each case corresponds with the breaking up of the sporulating form of the parasite concerned. This last is an important point; for, doubtless, when this breaking up takes place, besides the pigment set free, other residual matters—not so striking optically, it is true, as the pigment, but none the less real—probably



are liberated; a hæmoglobin solvent, for example, as I have suggested. Whether it be this hæmoglobin solvent, or whether it be some other substance, which is the pyrogenetic agent, I believe that some toxin, hitherto enclosed in the body of the parasite, or in the infected corpuscle, escapes into the blood at the moment of sporulation; a pyrogenetic substance allied to the toxins of many of the pathogenic bacteria and to those of some animal parasites such as hydatids, bothriocephalus, and dracunculus. The fact that this toxin is liberated periodically accounts for the periodicity of the fever, as its successful elimination does for the intermission. Celli has made several experiments with a view to demonstrate the presence of such a toxin in malarial blood. He injected large quantities of blood serum from malarial patients, obtained at the onset of a paroxysm, into children, adults and animals, but got no marked febrile reaction. Possibly the amount of serum employed, although considerable, was insufficient. We know that the malaria parasite may propagate actively in the blood, but unless it be present in adequate numbers fever does not show itself. It is with this hypothetical malaria toxin as with other poisons: to get the specific effect the dose must be adequate.

**Theory of periodicity.**—The periodicity of the clinical phenomena is accounted for by the periodicity of the parasite. How are we to account for the periodicity of the parasite? It is true that it has a life of twenty-four hours, or of a multiple of twenty-four hours; but why should the individual parasites of the countless swarm all conspire to mature at or about the same time? That they do so—not perhaps exactly at the same moment, but within a very short time of each other—is a fact, and it is one which can be easily demonstrated. If we wish to see the sporulating forms of the plasmodium in a pure intermittent, it is practically useless to look for them in the blood during the later stages of fever, or during the interval, or during any time but just before,



during, or soon after rigor. If we wish to see the early and unpigmented forms, we must look for them during the later stage of rigor or the earlier part of the stage of pyrexia. And so with the other stages of the parasite; each has its appropriate relationship to the fever cycle. How is this simultaneity in the development of the individuals constituting the swarm of parasites to be accounted for?

*Life-span of the parasite subject to variation.*—It has already been hinted that the parasites do not all attain maturity at exactly the same moment; some ripen and break up a little earlier, some a little later. That the cycle for the individual parasite is not exactly and necessarily one of twenty-four hours, or of a multiple of twenty-four hours, is also certain; for it is a well-ascertained fact that fevers may “anticipate” or “postpone”—that is to say, come on a little earlier or a little later in the day. Of course this means that the parasites “anticipate” or “postpone.” Why in such cases should the parasites all anticipate together, or all postpone together; why should they all conspire to live either a little shorter, or a little longer; why should the swarm keep together, as it were? And, if the duration of the life of the individual parasite be thus subject to a certain degree of variation, why should not some of them mature a little earlier and others a little later; and so gradually, in the course of a few days, some of the different individuals constituting the swarm come to be maturing at every hour of the twenty-four, and thus every intermittent become a continued fever? In the answer to these questions seems to lie an explanation of malarial periodicity.

*Influence of physiological rhythm on malarial periodicity.*—My belief is, that malarial periodicity does not wholly depend on the more or less definite life-span of the parasite, but that it depends, in part, on the well-known quotidian periodicity in the rhythm of the physiological processes of the human body.

*Rhythmical immunity.*—In all animals, including



man, there exists a certain innate physiological protective influence *quâ* the malarial as well as other parasites. As regards malaria, in most animals this protecting power is absolute—always sufficient, for no vertebrate animal, except man, so far as we know at present, is subject to malaria. But in the case of man this immunity is not quite absolute in every individual and at all times; although, as experience shows, in some men it is complete, and in many, with time, an increasing degree of protective power is gradually acquired. Thus in highly malarious countries the newcomer's first attack of fever is generally of the remittent or continued type; that is to say, the swarm of parasites is able to mature during a large part of the twenty-four hours, the protective power being inoperative, or insufficient, for a considerable period, or for the entire circle of the day. But in the progress of a remittent malarial fever, even when untreated, the remissions tend to become intermissions—that is to say, the space of time during which the protective power of the body is insufficient tends to become contracted, although not altogether bridged over. As the physiological rhythm of the body is diurnal, the spacing of the fever to which this recurring susceptibility exposes the body is also diurnal. Should a proportion of the parasites in virtue of the variability which, as we have seen, they possess, mature earlier or later than this period of unprotection, they are destroyed by the still present or developing protective power, and the fever does not become continued. So it comes about that it is only the progeny of those parasites arriving at maturity during the rhythmically daily recurring insufficiently protected period which survive. In this way I seek to explain the phenomenon of malarial periodicity.

*Spontaneous recovery.*—That there is a protective power in the human body against the plasmodium is certain, otherwise spontaneous recovery from malarial infection could not take place. Such spontaneous recovery is no unusual occurrence. A patient is



attacked with typical malarial fever. He is admitted to a well-appointed hospital. Plasmodia are found in his blood. He is kept without quinine. For one or two periods the fever comes off at the usual hour, and the parasites go through their typical course. But one day the parasites are seen to be fewer, and the next attack of fever is milder; thereafter fever does not recur again, and the plasmodia gradually and spontaneously disappear from the blood.

The only things that could be credited with the cure in such a case are the rest, the warmth, the good food, and the other favourable hygienic conditions of hospital life. The tonic influence of these things favours the rehabilitation of the self-defending physiological element of the body, and raises its amount, quality and duration to such a standard of sufficiency that it is enabled to keep the multiplication of the plasmodium in check during the entire twenty-four hours. This defensive element may be, in part at least, no other than the phagocyte, which we have already seen to be an active agent in attacking and destroying the plasmodial spores on the breaking up of the mature parasites.

It is possible, therefore, that the intermittency observed in malarial fevers in great measure arises from two causes, the more or less fixed life-span of the plasmodium, and the recurring diurnal deficiency or debility of a protective, plasmodium-destroying agency inherent in the human body. It might be urged that though such an explanation may be applicable to quotidian periodicity, it could not apply to tertian or quartan periodicity. This cannot be admitted. If there be a regular quotidian occurrence of susceptibility to the malaria germ, this susceptibility must be existent on the second and third day as well as on the first; therefore a tertian parasite, on maturing, will encounter it on the second day, and a quartan on the third, just as certainly as if they were daily maturing quotidian plasmodia.



*Practical lessons from the hypothesis advanced.*—This hypothesis may be a wrong one. But although it may be wrong, it will not be without its use if it impress the importance of placing malarial patients under tonic influences as an aid to specific treatment; and, on the other hand, of protecting the subject of malarial recurrences from debilitating influences. For just as tonic influences may suffice to cure a fever, so, in many malarias, depressing influences, as a wetting, a surfeit, over-fatigue, anxiety, grief, in fact physiological strains of any description, are sufficient to provoke relapse of fever—presumably by debilitating or, for the time, abolishing the protecting physiological element which holds in check the latent but not quite extinct plasmodium.



## CHAPTER V.

## MALARIA : MALARIAL CACHEXIA.

**Definition.**—Malarial cachexia is the term applied to a group of conditions, more or less chronic, the result of an antecedent attack of severe malarial fever, or of a succession of such attacks, or of prolonged exposure to malarial influences.

**Symptoms.**—The leading symptoms are those of a special kind of anæmia, characterised objectively by a peculiar earthy sallowness of skin, somewhat yellow sclerotics, enlargement of the spleen and—in the early stages at all events—of the liver. Usually the subject of this cachexia is liable to frequent attacks of an irregular type of fever, particularly after exposure or fatigue, or, in fact, after any unusual physiological strain.

*Malarial cachexia without fever.*—It should be mentioned, however, that fever is not a necessary antecedent or accompaniment of malarial cachexia. In highly malarious countries it is not unusual to see typical examples of this condition in which fever had never been a feature, or, at all events, had been of so mild a character as not to have seriously attracted attention, or may have occurred in childhood and been forgotten.

*Enlarged spleen.*—In such countries a large proportion of the population have enormously enlarged spleens. The traveller cannot fail to be struck by the number of people he sees with big bellies and spindle shanks ; by their languid and depressed air ; their sallow, dry, rough, unhealthy-looking skins. In many malarial cachectics the skin pigmentation is remarkably dark ; patches of almost black pigmentation are also sometimes discoverable on the tongue



and palate.\* It is said that in some intensely malarial places children are occasionally born with enlarged spleens, as if the malarial poison had already affected them *in utero*. I cannot personally vouch for this, but I have often seen very young children with bellies enormously protuberant from distended spleen. According to Scheube, de Freytag and Van der Elst observed in 1873 and 1878 in Atchin that all the children born were affected at the time of birth with malarial cachexia, and that most of them died in a few months. Bein and Kohlstock found malaria parasites in the blood of the four-months-old child of a malarial mother, born some time after the arrival of the latter in a non-malarial district. On the other hand, Bignami failed to find malarial parasites, malarial pigmentation, or other sign of paludism in the fœtus of a woman who died of a pernicious malarial attack. Bignami therefore holds that the plasmodium does not pass from the maternal to the fetal circulation.

*Delayed development.* — In some instances of malarial cachexia of early development the general growth of the body is stunted and puberty retarded. I have seen a malarial cachectic who, although twenty-five or twenty-six years of age, had the stature and sexual development of a child of eleven or twelve. Abortion and sterility are common effects of malarial cachexia, which, in this and in other and more direct ways, becomes a potent agent in repressing population.

*Acquired tolerance of the malarial toxin.* — In many of these instances, although the state of cachexia has attained an excessive degree, ague, or, in fact, fever of any kind, has never been a prominent symptom. It would seem that the body can become accustomed to the fever-producing toxin of the malarial parasite, much in the same way that it may become accustomed to opium and many other

\* Observations in India tend to show that this condition, melanoglossia, is racial and not pathological (*Indian Medical Gazette*, 1897).



organic poisons, both animal and vegetable. I have watched for three weeks the rhythmical development of a tertian parasite in a sailor who, although previously the subject of frequent attacks of ague, was quite free from fever during the period I had him under close observation. Just as in those habituated to the use of opium, a full dose of the drug, which in the unhabituated would produce profound or even fatal narcosis, acts merely as a gentle stimulant; so in those constantly exposed to malaria from infancy the poison sometimes fails to act as a febrifuge. And, to continue the comparison, just as the habitual use of opium produces a species of chronic poisoning or cachexia without narcosis, so the habitual presence of the malaria toxin may produce its peculiar cachexia without giving rise to fever. As a rule, however, particularly in the case of Europeans forced to reside in highly malarious countries, attacks of fever are of frequent occurrence in malarial cachectics.

*Malarial neuroses and skin affections.*—Superadded to the febrile attacks, and to the associated anæmia, we may meet in cachectics with a variety of functional troubles. One characteristic of most of these functional troubles is the periodicity they generally observe. Thus we may have quotidian, tertian, or quartan neuralgias, gastralgias, vomiting, diarrhœa, headaches, attacks of palpitation, of sneezing, and so forth. Besides these, skin eruptions—such as herpes, erythema nodosum, patches of lichen planus, eczema, urticaria, etc.—exhibiting a periodic liability to exacerbations and an amenability to quinine, have often been noted in malarial conditions.

*Herpetic eruptions* are very common in malarial attacks. According to Powell (*Brit. Journ. of Dermatology*, September, 1897), in Assam the appearance of a patch of herpes somewhere about the body is regarded as an infallible sign that the attack of fever is over for the time being.

*Hæmorrhages.*—In high degrees of cachexia hæmorrhages of various kinds are apt to occur—



epistaxis, hæmoptysis, hæmatemesis, melæna, retinal hæmorrhages, purpura, occasionally hæmaturia or hæmoglobinuria. In such patients trifling operations—tooth extraction, for example—may prove a dangerous matter. I have seen in malarial cachectics hæmorrhages from the latter cause which were very difficult to control; care must therefore be exercised in advising and in performing even the slightest operations in this class of patient.

*Intestinal and pulmonary affections.*—In addition to the troubles mentioned, we find that the subjects of malarial cachexia are apt to be dyspeptic; to suffer from irregularities in the action of the bowels; to suffer from morning diarrhœa, at first of dark bilious, and later, perhaps, of pale, copious and frothy stools. They are also very liable to a low and highly fatal form of pneumonia.

*Cachexia associated with functional and with organic lesion.*—There may be said to be two degrees or kinds of malarial cachexia. In one there is merely anæmia with congestion of the portal system; this may be quickly recovered from on the patient being removed from endemic malarial influences and subjected to specific and proper treatment. In the other there is, in addition to anæmia, organic disease of the abdominal viscera—of the liver, spleen, and kidneys—the outcome of long-standing congestion of these organs. These tissue-changes not only keep up the anæmia, in spite of removal from malarial influences, but, in the long run, inevitably progress to a fatal issue.

**Pathology and pathological anatomy.**—The pathology of malarial cachexia is virtually, in the first instance, that of acute malarial disease. There is blood destruction by the direct action of the malaria parasite and of its toxins, eventuating in oligocythæmia and in the deposit of melanin and altered hæmoglobin (yellow pigment) in the tissues; the activity of the process leading to congestion ending in organic changes in liver, spleen, kidney, and probably in the bone marrow.



*Splenic enlargement.*—The spleen may become so enlarged under repeated attacks of the congestion attending a succession of fever fits, or in consequence of a less active and perhaps feverless hæmolysis, that it may come to weigh many pounds, and so to increase in bulk as to occupy nearly the entire abdomen. The capsule of the gland, particularly on its convex surface, is thickened and, perhaps, the seat of fibrous patches, or even of adhesions to neighbouring organs. Many of the trabeculæ forming the framework of the gland become greatly hypertrophied. On section, the tissues of such a spleen are found to be moderately firm, and usually of a reddish brown colour; but when death happens soon after or during a febrile attack, the section of the gland shows a dark surface from deposit of black pigment, the pulp at the same time being softened. Perhaps from over-distension some of the vessels in the interior of the gland give way, and then there is a breaking down of the spleen pulp in patches, the remains of splenic tissue floating about in the extravasated blood. Microscopic inspection of these hypertrophied spleens, especially during fever, shows the black and ochre pigments in the situations already indicated.

*Splenic tumour in a district is indicative of endemic malaria.*—There are practical points in connection with malarial spleen which deserve mention. The prevalence, or relative absence of, these enlarged spleens or “ague cakes,” as they are sometimes called, in the native population is an excellent rough indication of the salubrity, as regards malaria, of any particular district. Wherever they are common the district is malarious and therefore unhealthy, perhaps to Europeans deadly, and should be looked upon as extremely unfavourable for camping or residential purposes.

*Liability to rupture of splenic tumours.*—Another practical point is that these enlarged spleens are easily ruptured by a blow on the belly. In hot and malarious countries many a coolie goes about



doing his work although he has a spleen in his abdomen nearly twice the size of his head, which might be easily ruptured. This is a fact to be remembered in administering even mild corporal punishment to natives of malarious countries. Europeans have more than once been tried for manslaughter in consequence of neglecting it. Owing to this liability to rupture, the subjects of splenic enlargement must not be allowed to play at violent games, as football or even cricket, or at any game in which the diseased organ is exposed to a blow. Apart from direct violence, an enlarged spleen may rupture spontaneously owing to sudden accession in size in the course of a fever fit.

Splenic ruptures are, of course, generally fatal. It sometimes happens that the presence of adhesions limits and restrains the hæmorrhage; localised hæmorrhages of this description may, in time, lead to splenic abscess.

*Hepatic enlargement.*—Like the spleen, the liver in malarial cachectics becomes enlarged during accessions of fever. Under the influence of a succession of acute attacks, hepatic congestion may gradually acquire a more or less permanent character. After death from such fevers the capsule of the liver is found to be tense; on section, the highly vascular tissue of the organ is seen to be reddish brown or almost black, according to the degree and kind of pigmentation. If this stage of congestion be long maintained, it tends to bring about various kinds and degrees of chronic hepatitis with hypertrophy of the intralobular connective tissue, and in time leads to hypertrophic, or to different forms of atrophic, cirrhosis. Thus irremediable organic diseases of the liver, portal obstruction, and ascites may ensue.

*Siderosis.*—It is in livers of this description that a form of what is called *siderosis* is produced—a condition resulting from chemical changes undergone by the yellow pigment with which the various cells of the organ are charged. It has already been stated that,



when first deposited, this pigment gives no ferrous reaction with ammonium sulphide, or with the double cyanide of iron and potassium; and that, as the deposit becomes older, chemical changes ensue, resulting in the elaboration of a form of iron which will then yield the characteristic black colour with the former, and blue colour with the latter reagent. Treated with ammonium sulphide sections of liver, and also of spleen, kidney, and other ochre-pigment-charged tissues from chronic malarias, may turn almost black to the naked eye or, at all events, exhibit abundance of blackened pigment on being placed under the microscope. In such sections it is seen that the ochre pigment is no longer in minute grains, as when first deposited, but in blocks and globules as large as, or even larger than, blood corpuscles. This pigment is, of course, something quite apart from the parasite-derived melanin deposited in the same organs.

*Practical considerations.*—Certain clinical facts about malarial hepatic congestion and malarial hepatitis are of importance. (1) Such conditions do not tend to terminate in suppuration; (2) they are almost invariably associated with splenic enlargement. These are important facts to recollect when it becomes a question of the diagnosis of malarial hepatitis from abscess of the liver. Another important fact to remember is that recent malarial enlargement of the liver is usually curable, depending as a rule on simple congestion; whereas old-standing malarial hepatic enlargement is usually incurable, depending, as it usually does, on hypertrophy of the connective tissue and a cirrhotic condition of the organ.

*Malaria a cause of nephritis.*—Changes similar to those found in the liver in the course of, and in consequence of, malarial disease occur in the kidney; in time they result in confirmed Bright's disease. Hence, probably, the frequency of Bright's disease in some highly malarious climates. In the *British Guiana Medical Annual*, Dr. Daniels mentions that in 926 *post-mortem* examinations in the hospital at



Georgetown, Demerara, a highly malarial district, he found evidence of disease of the kidneys in no fewer than 228.

*Cardiac degeneration.*—As a consequence of defective nutrition from prolonged anæmia and recurring fever, the muscular tissue of the heart of chronic malarials may degenerate, the ventricles dilate, and, in time, the lower extremities become œdematous.

*Other sequelæ.*—Dysenteric conditions, forms of diarrhœa, low forms of pneumonia readily set up by chill and prone to terminate in abscess of the lung or to become associated with empyema, extensive sloughing phagedæna, and other forms of gangrene such as noma, or pernicious fever, may supervene at any time and rapidly carry off the subject of advanced malarial cachexia.

It is probable that splenic leukæmia is in some instances a remote effect of malaria.

Tubercular and syphilitic disease not infrequently concur with malaria; in fact, the latter may powerfully predispose to local manifestations of either of the two former and *vice versâ*, a complication as to which the practitioner must be on his guard.



## CHAPTER VI.

## MALARIA : ÆTIOLOGY.

## CIRCUMSTANCES FAVOURING INFECTION.

IN considering the ætiology of malaria two things must be carefully distinguished : (1) the circumstances leading to the invasion of the human body by the malaria parasite ; (2) the circumstances determining the clinical manifestation of such an invasion. In the mosquito-malaria theory, now thoroughly established, we have the key to the first of these. Whatever favours the presence and increase of the malaria-bearing species of mosquito tends to the increase of malaria, and *vice versâ* ; whatever favours the access of these particular insects, and the parasites which have passed into them, to the human body favours the acquisition of malaria.

It must not be forgotten that the malaria parasite, after giving rise to fever within a few days of its original invasion of the human body, tends to pass into a latent condition from which it wakes up into clinical activity again only after longer or shorter intervals ; further, that in rare instances the clinical evidence of a successful malarial invasion is delayed for months or, perhaps, for years. Consequently, the particular circumstances in which any given malarial attack declares itself are not necessarily those which led to the acquisition of the original infection. Therefore, in regard to the ætiology of malaria, fevers of first invasion have a significance very different from that pertaining to relapses or recurrences.

*Geographical range.*—The geographical range of malaria is very great ; it extends in the Northern



hemisphere from the Arctic Circle to the Equator, and in the Southern probably as widely. Malaria is not uniformly distributed throughout this vast area. It occurs in limited endemic foci which tend, speaking generally, to be more numerous and larger as the Equator is approached.

*Influence of latitude and season.*—In colder latitudes the association of malaria with swamps is marked; in warmer latitudes this association is much less exclusive and apparent. In colder latitudes the type of disease is milder; in warmer latitudes it is apt to be more severe. In certain warm countries, however, as the Argentine and many of the islands of the South Pacific, malaria is entirely absent, or mild and rare. In colder latitudes it is active only during the summer or early autumn; in warmer latitudes it is perennial, certain seasons—usually, though not invariably, the warmer—being more malarial than others.

*Influence of local conditions.*—The strip of flat, waterlogged country lying along the foot of mountain ranges, the deltas of large rivers, the pool-dotted beds of dried-up streams, areas of country which have fallen out of cultivation, recently deforested lands, are, in many instances, notoriously malarial. Well-drained uplands and carefully cultivated districts, as a rule, are healthy. There are instances, nevertheless, of elevated, arid, and sandy plains which are intensely malarial. Towns are much less malarial than villages or the open country.

*Ship malaria.*—Although several instances are on record of outbreaks of what was reputed to be malaria on shipboard on the open sea, many epidemiologists refuse to accept the diagnosis as to the nature of these outbreaks, and maintain that malaria is never contracted away from the land.\* Mosquitoes haunt

\* If it be the case that the malaria germ can be conveyed in water, it is conceivable that a ship's company may become infected by this means, and without direct exposure to telluric influences. I know of at least one instance of well-authenticated (microscopically) malaria occurring at sea which appeared to have been



ships for some time after the latter leave port. If they are infected with the malaria parasite, either when they first enter the ship or should they ingest the parasite after coming on board, they might very well communicate malaria.

*Endemic and epidemic fluctuations.*—From time to time malaria extends beyond its endemic foci, spreading in epidemic form over large tracts of what is usually healthy country. There are a few well-authenticated instances of countries (Mauritius, Réunion\*) which, although previously exempt, subsequently became endemically malarial; and there are many instances of countries previously malarial which afterwards, especially under the influence of cultivation and drainage, became salubrious.

These circumstances evidently have reference to the distribution of species of malarial mosquitoes. Mosquitoes, like other insects, occasionally under specially favourable conditions, increase enormously in numbers and spread out in every direction. New species, which may belong to the malaria-bearing kinds, may be introduced into places where they formerly did not exist, just as *Culex ciliaris* has been introduced into Australia. I believe a mosquito capable of subserving the malaria parasite was introduced in this way in the early 'sixties into Mauritius, an island whose fauna and flora had been hitherto very peculiar and special. In this way, we can conceive, arose the great epidemic of malaria in that island and its present endemic insalubrity. A similar misfortune may very well happen to the South Pacific islands in the near future.

*Atmospheric temperature.*—One of the most important conditions necessary for the elaboration of

contracted in this way. If the malaria germ can be conveyed in water, the water must quickly cease to be infective; that is, the germ cannot live in water for more than a day or two. Hence, though a ship is supplied with water which might be dangerous to-day, if kept for a week the same water may be wholesome enough.

\* Davidson, "Geographical Pathology."



the extracorporeal phase of the malaria germ is a sustained average temperature of at least 60° Fahr.

*Altitude.*—Altitude *per se* has, apparently, no influence on malaria. It is the decrease in temperature, usually implied by an increase in altitude, that is the real determining circumstance in bringing about a diminution in the prevalence of malaria in uplands. In the tropics an elevation of six or seven thousand feet may not secure immunity from malaria unless there be, at the same time, a corresponding and sufficient lowering of temperature. In Italy there are many malarious spots high up among the hills; the same is the case in India and elsewhere in those elevated valleys which are also narrow, imperfectly ventilated, and imperfectly drained.

*Moisture.*—Another important condition for the production of malaria is the presence of water. In the Sahara there is no malaria unless in the oases; in many of these it is rife—in Biskra, for example. A large expanse of water is not favourable to malaria. The mosquito thrives best in small pools where there are no fish to prey on their larvæ, and where the surface is not agitated by winds. One such puddle near a house may suffice to render that house unhealthy.

*Decomposing vegetable matter.*—It is customary to add yet another condition as being necessary for the existence of malaria, namely, the presence in the soil of a notable amount of decomposing organic matter, particularly vegetable matter. But that this is not an indispensable condition is proved by the fact that there are many almost barren spots in which malaria abounds.

*Other conditions necessary.*—The concurrence of these conditions, high temperature and moisture, even though associated with abundant vegetation, is not sufficient to generate or support malaria; for there are many places in the world—the Argentine and the islands of the South Pacific, for example—in which high temperature, moisture, and decaying vegetable matter are present, but in which malaria is almost



unknown. Manifestly there are other and more complicated conditions which are equally indispensable, and which must concur with heat and moisture in order to secure the presence of malaria-bearing mosquitoes. What these conditions are it is as yet impossible to say.

*Influence of subsoil moisture.*—The state of the subsoil as regards moisture appears to have considerable influence on its malaria-producing properties. Short of general overflow, the higher the subsoil water the greater the chance of a given locality supplying places for mosquitoes and therefore of proving malarious. Hence arises marked liability to epidemics of malaria on the subsidence of extensive floods; and hence the danger attending the raising of the level of the subsoil water by irrigation works, canals, embankments, and other engineering works.

*Influence of rainfall.*—As regards the relation of the prevalence of malaria to rainfall there have been too many generalisations based on the limited experience of one or two districts. Thus, it is often said that the most malarious time of the year is at the end of the rains, when the soil is beginning to dry up. A wider view of the subject shows that, though applying to some places, this statement does not apply to all. There are localities where the fever curve is highest before the setting in of the rains. In some places, particularly in those that are low-lying, flat, and swampy, fevers of first invasion disappear almost entirely when the country becomes flooded. This apparent want of a universal and definite relationship of fever curve to rainfall indicates that the conditions determining the prevalence of malaria are highly complex, and that they are not by any means merely a matter of heat, moisture, and vegetation. In some places much rain will scour out the mosquito pools; in other places it will just fill them. The key to the explanation of the varying relation of malaria to rainfall lies in the influence of the latter on the local mosquito pools.



*Influence of winds and atmospheric diffusion.*—It has been said that the wind can carry the malaria germ great distances, roll it along the ground like thistle-down, and even force it to ascend high mountains. It is very doubtful, however, if the malarial mosquito can be transported, in this way, very far from its native pool. The mosquito does not ascend more than a few feet from the ground, and in high winds, or even in draughts of air, such as that from a punkah, immediately seeks shelter. It is certain that some thousand or fifteen hundred yards of water between a ship and a malarious coast suffice to secure immunity to the crew. The circumstances of the notorious Walcheren expedition prove this. A similar distance on land from a malaria source is probably approximately as effective. The diffusion of malaria by winds is probably extremely restricted. Inside a city may be quite healthy, whilst outside the walls the country may be pestilential. One village may be sickly, whilst a neighbouring village may be healthy. Surely, if winds transport the malarial germ for any distance from its source, there would not be so great a difference in the relative salubrity of urban and suburban localities, nor of neighbouring houses and villages. Neither does the malaria germ ascend to any great height above the ground. Acting on the empirical observation of this fact, the peasants in many unhealthy spots in Italy and Greece secure a remarkable degree of immunity by passing the night, during the fever season, on platforms raised on poles a few mètres above the ground. It seems safe, therefore, to conclude that the horizontal and vertical diffusion of the malaria germ, that is to say, mosquito, are very restricted.

*Influence of trees, houses, and lodging.*—The intervention of a belt of trees between a malarial swamp and a village is said to protect from malaria the houses on the leeward side of the trees. The trees may filter out the mosquitoes by affording them protection from winds. Open windows and doors, by



giving ready access to mosquitoes, are sources of danger in malarial countries. For the same reason sleeping on the ground, on the ground floor, or unprotected by a mosquito curtain, is dangerous.

*Time of day in relation to infection.*—Evidently, in conformity with the habits of the mosquito, the time just before sunrise and just after sunset, and the night, have the reputation of being the most dangerous as regards liability to contract the infection. To those actually engaged in the work, the risk from earth disturbance seems at times to extend throughout the twenty-four hours.

*Disturbance of the soil.*—It has often been observed that in malarious countries, so long as the soil remains undisturbed, agues and the severer forms of fever are comparatively rare ; but so soon as building, road-making, and other operations implying soil disturbance commence, then severe malarial fevers appear. After a time, and when these operations in the progress of events have concluded, and the broken surface of the soil has, so to speak, skinned over again, the place becomes once more comparatively healthy. The medical history of Hong Kong may be cited in illustration of this fact. At the commencement of the occupation of this island by the British, for a short time it was healthy enough. Then, on its cession being completed, and when barracks and houses were being built and roads laid out, it became excessively unhealthy, the soldiers dying by the hundred of pernicious fevers. In time the sickness and mortality gradually decreased ; and now, so far as malaria is concerned, the city of Victoria is healthy. But, even at the present day, wherever in the outskirts in the course of the construction of houses, roads, forts, and similar works, soil is turned up, fever—often of a most pernicious type—is nearly sure to break out among those engaged in the works. I cite the case of Hong Kong ; but there are dozens of other instances which might be quoted, and which are quite as apposite and



convincing as to the danger of disturbing the soil in malarious localities, particularly during the warm season. As already mentioned, it is difficult to explain these facts on the supposition that the only way by which malaria can be acquired is through the bite of the mosquito. The circumstances rather suggest that there is some other way by which it gets access to the human tissues, some resting phase that it assumes in unfavourable conditions, as on the death of the mosquito. Possibly Ross's "black spores" have reference to this condition.

#### CIRCUMSTANCES FAVOURING THE CLINICAL MANIFESTATION OF MALARIAL INVASION.

As a rule, a successful infection declares itself within a week or ten days. As with other infections, certain individuals resist invasion by the malaria parasite for a longer or shorter period. A very few appear to be permanently immune. Everything tending to cause physiological depression favours susceptibility and acute manifestations.

*Influence of meteorological conditions on relapse.*—A malarial subject while in the mild climate of the tropics may keep in fair health; but when, as is so often the case with sailors and others returning to England, he is plunged into the stormy winter of the North, is exposed to cold, and has long watches and fatiguing work, very probably latent malaria will become active and ague follow. This is a common experience with malarials from the tropics. It is almost the rule with people coming from the West Coast of Africa. Stanley says that so long as he and his companions were ascending the Congo, the wind being with them and therefore not much felt, they did not have fever; but that on descending the stream, a strong breeze blowing in their faces and chilling them, they constantly had attacks. The physiological depression and disturbances caused by the cold wind paralysed the self-protecting power of the body, and



permitted the hitherto latent plasmodia to get the upper hand. And so it is found, in the highly malarial districts of tropical Africa, that houses perched on elevated and windy situations are not so healthy as those on lower and, therefore, less exposed and more sheltered ground. This latter fact must not be interpreted as showing that wind causes or carries malaria. The wind merely acts as a cause of physiological strain, of chills; it acts just in the same way as fatigue, hunger, a wetting, disease, fear, excesses, or depressing emotions are found to do.

*Sex, age, occupation.*—Sex, *per se*, seems to have no particular influence as regards liability to, or severity of, malarial attacks. Neither has occupation; although, of course, those engaged in tilling and working the soil are more exposed to malaria, and therefore more subject to its manifestations, than the townsman or the sailor. Malarial attacks are more severe, more common, and much more dangerous in young children than in adults.

*Malaria a communicable disease.*—Malaria is certainly not directly communicable, in the sense that such diseases as small-pox or measles are. It can be communicated directly only by injection of malarial blood. But there can now no longer be any doubt that a malarial patient introduced into a community, provided suitable mosquitoes are present, is a source of danger. If mosquitoes of the proper species bite such a patient—say in the wards of a hospital, in a jail, a house, or a camp—and a week later bite someone else, that second individual may become infected, and ten days later may be seized with malarial fever.

*Study of the mosquito indispensable.*—Whether it be that under certain conditions malaria may be acquired by the inhalation or imbibition of the spores of the parasite, or whether it be that it can only be acquired through the bite of the mosquito, certain it is that this insect is a principal and indispensable agent in diffusing the germ. Full knowledge, therefore,



of all that concerns the ætiology of the disease will only be attained when we have full knowledge of the various species of mosquito capable of subserving the germ, of certain vertebrates which may be capable of taking the place of man in the malarial cycle, of their geographical distribution, of their habits, and of their enemies. As yet this knowledge is but beginning. When we have said that the malaria parasite is subserved by several species of *Anopheles*, and that these species are of nocturnal habit, we have enumerated the principal items of existing knowledge on the subject. Whether certain species of *Culex* may not be efficient hosts for the plasmodium, as they certainly are for *Proteosoma* and *Filaria nocturna*, can as yet neither be affirmed nor denied. Studies in this field are being actively carried on, so that in a very few years important additions to our knowledge of great practical value may be confidently looked for.

#### ACCLIMATISATION.

*Personal acclimatisation.*—Is there such a thing as acclimatisation as regards malaria? The answer to this is, "Yes and No." It would seem that those who have resided many years in a malarious district are less liable to severe remittents but more liable to mild agues. As already mentioned, the first attack of malarial fever is generally remittent and severe in character; subsequent attacks are generally frankly intermittent. Old febricitants are more liable to pernicious attacks of an adynamic type than the recently infected: notably to hæmoglobinuric fever. Trifling causes, such as do not provoke fever in the fresh arrival, are often sufficient to bring on an ague fit in the old resident. The new arrival in the tropics does not think much of exposing himself to the sun, the rain, and the wind; but the old resident is very chary about going out without his sun-hat and white umbrella. The latter wears flannel, and changes his clothes after exercise; he is careful not to cool off



too rapidly by sitting in a draught ; he will not sit down in wet clothes. The newcomer may look on these precautions against chill as signs of effeminacy. They are not so, however ; experience has taught the old resident that neglect of them means an attack of fever and a week off work. The newcomer takes a cold bath ; the old resident takes a warm one. The newcomer sits up late, eats and drinks and smokes as in Europe ; the old resident goes to bed betimes, and eats and drinks and smokes in moderation. By-and-by, sharp lessons teach the newcomer to respect the sun and the rain and the wind, to clothe with a view to avoiding chill, and to live temperately. This is an education all pass through in malarial countries. Acclimatisation, to a great extent, means experience—education ; not simply an unconscious adaptation of the physiology of the individual, but an intelligent adaptation of his habits.

*Racial and individual differences of susceptibility.*  
—Nevertheless, there can be no doubt that, for some occult reason, certain races and certain individuals are less susceptible to malarial influences than others. A very few individuals are absolutely immune and can live in intensely malarial places with impunity. It is a well-established fact that the negro in Africa, although he does get fever, yet he does not get it so frequently nor so severely as the European ; even although the latter, from his hygienic ways of living, is of the two much the less exposed to infection. The Chinese, the Malays, and some other dark-skinned races also appear to enjoy a comparative immunity—an immunity considerably less pronounced, however, than that enjoyed by the African and West Indian negro. There is some evidence to show that even the individual European, if he survive the process, may after many years, through frequent infection, attain immunity ; this, however, does not appear to be transmitted. The inhabitants of the malarious districts of Italy, Corsica, Greece, Turkey, and other South European countries have



inherited no marked immunity from malaria in virtue of the thousands of years during which their ancestors lived in malarious districts. But they have inherited experience, and many of them know how to keep clear of the infection they cannot overcome; this probably is, in great measure, the extent of their acclimatisation and apparent acquired immunity.



## CHAPTER VII.

## MALARIA: DIAGNOSIS.

THERE is a marked tendency to regard and diagnose all fevers occurring in tropical countries, or in individuals who have returned from tropical countries, as malarial. Such slovenliness in diagnosis must be strenuously avoided by the tropical practitioner. It is apt to become a habit which, sooner or later, is bound to have disastrous consequences.

**The three diagnostic signs of malaria.—**

The diagnosis of malarial disease, if all the means at our disposal be employed, is usually not a difficult matter. Formerly, periodicity and the effect of quinine were the tests principally relied on. They are very fallible. Nowadays, in all doubtful and serious cases, it behoves the practitioner to have recourse to the only infallible test—the microscopic examination of the blood. When such an examination yields a positive result, when the plasmodium in any of its forms, or its product—malarial melanin—either free in the liquor sanguinis or enclosed in leucocytes, is found, the diagnosis of malaria is securely established. Negative results from a single microscopical examination are not so trustworthy as positive; but if the practitioner has experience, and if he has the opportunity to make his examinations at suitable times and in a case untreated by quinine, they too are conclusive.

The **quinine test** is generally conclusive in intermittents and in the various larval forms of malaria, but the more severe types of remittents are often singularly resistant to the drug. Time may not be available in which to test such cases with quinine. They may be cases of a threatening nature



in which a speedy diagnosis is of the first importance. In such cases the microscope is the only trustworthy diagnostic agent.

**Periodicity in diagnosis.**—Periodicity at times is a trustworthy enough clinical test for malarial disease. *Tertian and quartan periodicity occur only in malarial disease*; when either is thoroughly established, its presence is almost conclusive as to the case being malarial. But it is otherwise as regards the significance of quotidian periodicity. Quotidian periodicity we find in greater or less degree in nearly all fevers, particularly in fevers associated with suppuration. In hectic conditions, quite unconnected with malaria, one often sees a quotidian afternoon rigor, followed by hot, dry skin, and a temperature rising even to 103° or 104° Fabr., the febrile movement concluding with a profuse diaphoresis and complete morning apyrexia.

*Periodicity of fever in liver abscess; diagnosis from malaria.*—Particularly is this the case in suppuration connected with the liver—a condition peculiarly liable to occur and to cause confusion in tropical practice. Simulation of malarial fever by hepatic abscess is very common; it is a pitfall into which the inexperienced tropical practitioner often tumbles. In consequence, we find that, at one time or another, most liver abscess cases are drenched with quinine, on the supposition that the associated fever is malarial. There are several points, even apart from an examination of the blood, which, if duly considered, will avert this blunder.

In hepatic abscess, although the liver is enlarged, the spleen is not necessarily so; splenic enlargement, though an occasional, is not a usual feature in liver abscess. In malarial fever, if the liver be enlarged the spleen is still more so and can usually be felt extending well beyond the costal margin. In hepatic abscess the fever occurs generally, though not invariably, in the late afternoon or evening; the patient may perspire profusely, independently of fever lysis,



at any time of the day or night—very generally whenever he chances to fall asleep. In malarial fever the paroxysm may, and generally does, occur earlier in the day; there is no marked tendency to sweating unless at the defervescence of the fever. In hepatic abscess a history of dysentery is nearly always obtainable if carefully inquired for. If fever be distinctly tertian or quartan in type it is not hepatic. In all doubtful cases the blood must be examined once or oftener, the rigor stage or early hot stage being selected for the examination, and the examination being made before administration of quinine. Occasionally cases are met with in which there is a history of malarial infection and, in addition to this, a history of dysentery, and the liver and spleen are both enlarged. In such cases diagnosis may be impossible without the microscope and the aspirator.

**Diagnosis of hæmoglobinuric from yellow fever.**—The diagnosis of hæmoglobinuric from yellow fever sometimes comes up as a practical point. Apart from a blood examination, the following considerations will aid to a correct conclusion.

From the outset hæmoglobinuric fever is asthenic in type; yellow fever, on the contrary, has sthenic features to commence with—violent headache, congested conjunctiva, flushed face, etc. In hæmoglobinuric fever the liver and spleen are enlarged, often painful; the vomiting is bilious, rarely bloody; the yellowness of the skin concurs in point of time with the hæmoglobinuria, and is an initial symptom. In yellow fever there is early and increasing albuminuria, sometimes hæmaturia; there is no true hæmoglobinuria, no enlargement and tenderness of the liver and spleen of a marked character; there is epigastric tenderness and burning; often vomiting of clear acid mucus, but not of large quantities of bile as in malarial affections; black vomit and yellowness of skin are late and not necessary features. Yellow fever is endemic only in certain limited areas, tends to



occur as an epidemic, and attacks newcomers much more frequently than old residents. Hæmoglobinuric fever has a more extensive distribution, is sporadic, and is more especially a disease of older residents.

**Diagnosis of bilious remittent from yellow fever.**—In bilious remittent the icteric tinting of the skin is an earlier feature ; albuminuria is rare, and not marked ; temperature is maintained high for many days, not subsiding in three or four days as in yellow fever ; the vomiting is profuse and bilious ; the pulse does not become phenomenally slow as in yellow fever ; in the initial stage the eyes are not congested and shining to the same degree ; and, of course, the plasmodium is to be found in the blood.

**Cerebro-spinal meningitis** may simulate malarial fever ; but the occurrence of rigidity of the muscles of the neck should put the physician on his guard, and lead him in such a case to search the blood and inquire for other diagnostic symptoms.

**Diagnosis from other types of paroxysmal fevers.**—Urethral fever is often mistaken for ague ; so is the fever attending the passage of gall-stones ; so is the fever associated with pyelitis and surgical kidney ; so is lymphangitis, particularly that form of lymphangitis associated with elephantiasis and other filarial diseases ; so is Mediterranean fever ; so is that form of post-malarial fever which is attended with enlarged liver and spleen and with anæmia, but which is not associated with the presence of parasites in the blood, and is not amenable to quinine ; so are the fevers associated with tuberculous disease, with ulcerative endocarditis, with some types of pernicious anæmia, with splenic leucocythæmia, especially with visceral syphilis, with rapidly-growing sarcoma, with forms of hysteria, and with many obscure and ill-defined conditions. The use of the microscope must not be neglected in such cases if there be the slightest doubt as to their exact nature.

**Typhoid fever.**—Without the microscope it is sometimes impossible to diagnose typhoid types of



malarial fever from genuine enteric. In both there may be diarrhœa or constipation; in both there may be splenic enlargement; in both there may be typhoid tongue, delirium, and the entire range of typhoid symptoms. As a matter of fact, until recent years all typhoid in India was regarded and treated as malarial fever—malarial remittent—and, doubtless, often with disastrous results. In circumstances where Widal's serum test can be used it is an invaluable supplement to microscopical examination of the blood.

**Typho-malarial fever.**—One important fact in connection with the diagnosis of typhoid in malaria must ever be kept in mind. In individuals who have previously been subjected to malarial influences and who, perhaps, have suffered at one time from well-marked malarial fever, the oncoming of typhoid is often preceded by three or four paroxysms exactly like those of ordinary ague. This may occur even when the patient has been for several years in a non-malarial country, as England. In such cases quinine is usually given early in the attack; its failure to check the disease should lead to careful prognosis and the avoidance of too active purgation. Similarly, well marked malarial-like fluctuations of temperature and the appearance of the plasmodium in the blood in the course of a continued fever do not exclude typhoid. These cases are probably typho-malarial, and have to be treated as such—as typhoid with a malarial complication.

**Necessity for microscopical examination of blood in pernicious attacks.**—Without the microscope it is sometimes impossible to diagnose, in time to direct treatment, pernicious comatose malarial attacks from heat-stroke or, if algide in character, from ordinary apoplexy; malarial dysentery, which must be treated with quinine, from ordinary dysentery, which must be treated with ipecac., or with the sulphates; algide malarial attacks, from cholera; certain types of malarial fever occurring, as it is very apt to do, in the puerperal state, from puerperal fever;



malarial pneumonia, from croupous pneumonia; malaria aphasia, from the aphasia of organic brain disease; and so on.

It is manifest that the revelations of the microscope have enhanced our powers of diagnosis in malarial affections enormously, and, therefore, our powers of treatment. Every doubtful case must be tested by it. In many forms of malarial disease, if life is to be saved, action must be prompt, decisive, energetic and based on accurate diagnosis. The diagnosis of ordinary agues may be postponed for a day or two without much danger, and be diagnosed correctly enough without the microscope; but every now and again a pernicious attack is sprung upon the practitioner, the nature of which he must be able to recognise at once, and recognise with confidence. When the plasmodium is seen in the blood, it is surely known that there is a malarial element in the case and that quinine is indicated. Confidence in directing treatment is a great matter. It cannot, therefore, be too strongly urged on the tropical practitioner to avail himself of every opportunity to gain experience in the use of the microscope in blood examinations, and to take care to have a suitable instrument in working order and available at a moment's notice. The practical difficulties in carrying out this recommendation are insignificant in comparison with the importance of the results. With practice, five minutes usually suffice to effect a positive microscopical diagnosis of malaria.



## CHAPTER VIII.

## MALARIA : TREATMENT.

**Quinine.**—Many drugs have been employed in the treatment of malarial disease, and many drugs have some influence on it; all sink into insignificance in comparison with quinine. In serious cases, to use any drug to the exclusion of quinine is culpable trifling. Therefore, so soon as a diagnosis of malaria has been arrived at, unless there be some very manifest contra-indication, the first duty of the practitioner is to set about giving quinine. There are many ways of exhibiting the drug; however given, care must be taken that it is given in such a way that there can be no mistake about its being absorbed. If the patient for any reason, such as inability to swallow or persistent vomiting, cannot take quinine by the mouth, and the existing condition be grave, it may be injected by the rectum; but if the circumstances of the case are such that a rapid action of the drug is imperative, it must be injected at once subcutaneously, or into a vein.

*When and in what dose to give quinine in ordinary cases.*—During a paroxysm of ordinary intermittent fever it is better, before giving quinine, to wait until the rigor and hot stages are over and the patient is beginning to perspire. A fever fit, once begun, cannot be cut short by quinine, and to give quinine during the early stages aggravates the headache and general distress; but so soon as the skin is moist and the temperature begins to fall, the sooner the drug is commenced the better. Ten grains, preferably in solution, should be administered at the commencement of sweating, and thereafter five



grains every six or eight hours for the next two or three days. This is almost a certain cure. The quinine may not always prevent the next succeeding fit, but it nearly always diminishes its severity. In 99 cases out of 100 the second following attack does not develop.

When giving quinine it is well to administer an aperient and to keep the patient in bed; in ordinary cases neither aperient nor rest in bed is absolutely necessary. In cachectics, however, and in all obstinate cases, both are invaluable adjuvants. On the complete subsidence of fever, iron, or iron and arsenic, should be exhibited; and, with a view to prevent relapses, one or two full doses of quinine—five to fifteen grains—should be taken at intervals of from five to seven days for six weeks or thereabouts.

My practice in the treatment of ordinary malarial fevers is to give quinine for two or three days in the doses mentioned, and then to prescribe arsenic and iron in pill or solution. At the same time, with a view to prevent recurrence of fever, I direct the patient, particularly if I have found the crescent form of the parasite in the blood—for such cases are prone to relapse, to leave off the tonic one day a week (to give precision to my directions I generally mention Sunday), and on that day to take a mild saline, sulphate of soda or Carlsbad salts, in the morning, and three five-grain doses of quinine during the day. The iron and arsenic may be taken for a fortnight at a time, and, after an interval of a week, for another fortnight. The weekly aperient and three doses of quinine had better be kept up for six weeks or two months or longer.

*Dose of quinine: toxic effects.*—There is great difference of opinion and practice about the dose of quinine. Some give thirty grains at a dose, some give three. The former, in my opinion, is too large a dose for ordinary cases, the latter too small. It must never be lost sight of that occasionally quinine in large doses produces alarming effects; not singing



of the ears and visual disturbances merely, but actual deafness and even amblyopia, both of which may prove very persistent and occasionally permanent. It may also produce profound cardiac depression and gastric disturbance, and even death from syncope. Urticaria is another, and not very uncommon, effect of even small doses of quinine; some cannot take it on this account, and prefer to endure the disease rather than suffer the intolerable irritation induced by the remedy. I believe that nothing is gained by excessive doses; in ordinary circumstances, thirty grains spread over two or three days is usually amply sufficient to check an intermittent.

For children under one year half a grain for a dose suffices; for older children the dose must be increased proportionately to age and strength.

If a supposed ague resist the doses of quinine mentioned, it is advisable to revise the diagnosis.

*Quinine in pregnancy.*—Care should be exercised in giving quinine to pregnant females, for undoubtedly it sometimes causes miscarriage. The fact of pregnancy, however, must not debar the use of the drug altogether; only, in such circumstances, it should be given in the minimum dose likely to be effectual, say three grains repeated every eight hours for two days. A pregnant woman will run more risk of miscarriage and to her health from repeated ague fits than she will from a reasonable dose of quinine.

*Quinine in the puerperal state.*—It is a wise precaution in malarious countries to give a few five-grain doses of quinine during labour or soon after. The puerperal state seems to have the effect, as any other shock or physiological strain might, of waking up the slumbering plasmodium. A dose or two of quinine in these circumstances does no harm, and may, by choking off a threatening fever, avert suffering and anxiety, not to mention danger.

*Form in which to administer quinine.*—Quinine is best given in solution, and probably the hydro-



chlorate, as containing a larger proportion of the alkaloid than the sulphate, is the best salt. Some, under the impression that hydrobromic acid prevents the ringing of the ears attending the free use of the drug, prefer this to dilute sulphuric acid as a solvent for the ordinary sulphate. When the tongue is fairly clean and digestion not altogether in abeyance, the quinine may be given in freshly prepared pill, in tabloid form, in cachet, or enclosed in cigarette paper; but in serious cases, particularly where the tongue is foul and digestion enfeebled, pills and tabloids are not to be trusted to. *In these circumstances they are apt to pass through the bowels and to appear in the bedpan unaltered.* In grave cases this occurrence must not be risked.

*Milk as a menstruum for quinine.*—If the taste of the drug be very much objected to, a good plan is to give it in powder in a tablespoonful of milk after the patient has previously lubricated the mouth with a morsel of bread and butter. Given in this way the bitter taste of the drug is not perceived. This is by far the best way of getting children to take quinine.

*Hypodermic injection of quinine.*—In any type of fever if vomiting is persistent, if the brain is affected, or if the patient is insensible and cannot or will not swallow, recourse must be had to the hypodermic injection of quinine. In all cases in which life is in imminent danger, and in which the earliest possible action of the drug is of importance, it must be given hypodermically or, rather, intramuscularly. This method is sometimes a painful one, and may be attended with some risk of abscess; in the circumstances, such possibilities count for little. The most suitable readily procurable salt for hypodermic injection is the hydrochlorate, or, better, the acid hydrochlorate (5 parts, water 10 parts), which is soluble in less than its own weight of water. The hydrobromate is equally soluble. If neither of these salts can be procured, the sulphate may be used, solution



being effected by adding half its weight of tartaric acid.\* Ten to fifteen grains dissolved in sterilised water would be a full hypodermic dose; in grave cases this dose should be given three times in the twenty-four hours. The needle should be driven well home, either deep in the subcutaneous connective tissue or, better, into the muscles of the gluteal or scapular region, the skin being previously carefully cleansed. The solution must be freshly prepared and boiled, and the syringe and needle thoroughly sterilised. In the malignant fevers of Rome as much as a drachm of quinine, divided into three or four doses, is sometimes administered in this way in the course of twenty-four hours.†

Benson (*Trans. First Indian Med. Cong.*), speaking from an experience of 1,390 cases, says that the

\* The more serviceable salts of quinine, of which the bichlorate of quinine and urea is one of the best, can now be procured in tabloid form specially prepared for hypodermic injection. These tabloids are much better than solutions, which cannot be kept for any length of time without risk of fouling.

† SOLUBILITY AND EQUIVALENT VALUE OF SALTS OF QUININE.

Name of Salt.	Percentage of the Alkaloid in the Salt.	Solubility in Cold Water.	Amount Equivalent in Value to One of Quinine Sulphate.
Sulphate ... ..	73·5 %	In 800 parts	1·00
Hydrochlorate ... ..	81·8 %	„ 40 „	·9
*Bihydrochlorate ... ..	72·0 %	„ 1 „	1·02
Hydrobromate ... ..	76·6 %	„ 45 „	·96
*Bihydrobromate ... ..	60·0 %	„ 7 „	1·23
Bisulphate ... ..	59·1 %	„ 11 „	1·24
Phosphate ... ..	76·2 %	„ 420 „	·96
Valerianate ... ..	73·0 %	„ 110 „	1·01
*Lactate ... ..	78·2 %	„ 10 „	·94
Salicylate ... ..	70·1 %	„ 225 „	1·05
*Hydrochloro-Sulphate ... ..	74·3 %	„ 2 „	·99
Arseniate ... ..	69·4 %	slightly soluble	1·06
Tannate ... ..	20·0 %	„ „	3·67
*Bichl. of Q. and Urea			

\* These are suitable for hypodermic injections.



hypodermic injection of quinine is by far the most effectual, as well as most economical, way of treating malarial fevers. He used the sulphate dissolved in water with the aid of hydrochloric acid, the strength of the solution being fifteen grains to the drachm ; of this he injected twenty minims between the scapulæ, or into the outer surface of the arm. In 614 consecutive cases so treated not a single untoward accident occurred, one injection usually sufficing. Dr. George Watt mentions a case of eight years' standing, which had been treated unsuccessfully by quinine in the usual way, and which was promptly cured by hypodermic injections. Benson also succeeded in the same way in obstinate cases.

*Precautions.*—It may be well to mention, not with the idea of deterring the practitioner from using the drug in this way, but to impress upon him the necessity for care in keeping instruments and solutions aseptic, that tetanus has sometimes followed the hypodermic injection of quinine. In these unfortunate cases it was not the quinine that caused the tetanus ; it was the tetanus bacillus, and this tetanus bacillus was introduced either on a dirty needle or in a fouled solution. Tetanus is an exceedingly common disease in some tropical countries. In Western Africa, for example, a large proportion of wounds, no matter how trifling as wounds they may be, if they are fouled by earth or dirt result in tetanus. The French in Senegambia have found this to their cost. A gentleman who had travelled much in Congoland told me that certain tribes poison their arrows by simply dipping the tips in a particular kind of mud. A wound from these arrows is nearly sure to cause tetanus. In many tropical countries, so general and so extensive is the distribution of the tetanus bacillus that trismus neonatorum is a principal cause of the excessive infant mortality. Every precaution must therefore be taken to ensure that the little instrument, which is so potent in saving life, may not by carelessness be turned into an instrument of death.



Quinine may also be given by enema. It is readily absorbed if given in this way if the bowel be not too irritable.

*Intravenous injection of quinine.*—In cases of pernicious comatose remittent in which it is of importance to obtain a rapid and powerful action of the drug, Bacelli recommends the intravenous injection of the following solution: Hydrochlorate of quinine 1 gramme, sodium chloride 75 centigrammes, distilled water 10 grammes. This solution he has employed in these desperate cases with much success, injecting directly into a vein five to seven grammes at a time; he states that whereas with hypodermic injection the mortality in such cases mounted to 17 per cent., with intravenous injection it was reduced to 6 per cent.

*Warburg's tincture.*—A very effective medium for giving quinine, and one of high repute in many places, is Warburg's tincture. This contains, besides quinine, a number of drugs, many of them doubtless inert, although some of them certainly possess valuable therapeutic properties. Experience has shown that the combination is really a good one, and that Warburg's tincture sometimes succeeds where quinine alone fails or acts too slowly. It generally proves a powerful sudorific. The dose is half an ounce, and is repeated after two or three hours. The action appears to be somewhat similar to that of the antipyretics now in vogue—antipyrin, phenacetin, etc.—drugs which, when given in combination with quinine in the routine treatment of malarial fevers, although they have no curative properties, sometimes contribute very markedly to the relief of headache and febrile distress. They must be used with great caution in adynamic cases. At the present time these drugs are much abused in many malarial countries.

**Mode of action of quinine.**—In what way quinine acts has not yet been satisfactorily explained. Some, reasoning from the toxic influence this drug exerts on many kinds of free amœba, say that it acts in



malaria in the same way—that is, as a direct poison to the plasmodium. Others maintain that it acts in stimulating the phagocytes, the natural enemies of the parasite. Some experimentalists allege, on the other hand, that it paralyses the white corpuscles. That quinine does not kill all blood protozoa is certain, for it has no effect on the hæmocytozoa of birds and reptiles, or on the trypanosoma of surra. Certain it is that in man, with the exception of the crescent body, it usually quickly causes the plasmodium to disappear from the general circulation. It is said by some to be most effective against the free spores of the malarial parasite and the very young intracorpuseular forms, but inoperative against the more mature plasmodia; hence they advocate giving it early in the plasmodial cycle. Others, on the contrary, maintain that it is operative only on the large intracorpuseular forms, and therefore advocate its use at a late stage of the cycle. It does not appear to have any effect on the crescent bodies, or to interfere with their evolution into flagellated organisms. As stated, I have seen in the blood crescents and flagellated bodies three weeks after the cure of a malarial fever by full doses of the drug continued for a fortnight.

Strange to say, quinine, especially in small doses, seems sometimes to wake up latent malaria and to bring about an ague fit. The same may be said of a course of mineral waters, of hydropathic treatment, and of sea-bathing.

**Treatment of bilious remittent.**—In bilious remittent and other severe forms of malarial fever one must not, as in a simple intermittent, wait for the remission before giving quinine. To wait for remission or sweating used to be the practice; it was said that to give quinine at any other time was wrong, and that something terrible would happen if the superstition were ignored. *In all grave fevers a full dose, ten or fifteen grains, should be at once administered.* The parasite cannot be attacked too



soon. It is desirable to have the bowels freely opened; quinine is said to act better then. It is a mistake, however, to delay the administration of the specific pending the action of the aperient. If an aperient be indicated, it should be given along with the quinine. Five or ten grains of calomel is the best. Thereafter the quinine, in five-grain doses, should be repeated every three or six hours until fever has subsided. If there be much bilious vomiting an emetic of ipecac. or repeated draughts of hot water will clear the stomach and perhaps, after a time, enable it to retain the quinine. The drug is sometimes more readily retained if given in chloroform water. Mustard poultices to the epigastrium, small hypodermic injections of morphia, ice pills, sips of very hot water, effervescing mixtures, champagne, one- or two-drop doses of tincture of iodine, are each of them on occasions aids in stopping vomiting. If these measures fail, and if the vomiting is so frequent and so severe that the dose is immediately rejected, and if there is no diarrhœa, it is advisable to clear out the rectum with an injection of warm water and, when the action of this has concluded, to throw up an enema of thirty grains of quinine in three ounces of water with a few drops of acid to aid solution; at the same time, five or ten grains of calomel may be given by the mouth. So soon as the stomach has quieted down, quinine may be given again by the mouth.

**Treatment of hyperpyrexia.**—Hyperpyrexia must be promptly met by prolonged immersion in the cold bath, rectal injections of iced water, ice bags to the head, etc. At the same time quinine must be injected hypodermically, or into a vein, in full doses, and repeated every three hours until thirty or forty grains have been given. Prompt action in these cases is of the first importance, and may save life. If temperature be kept down for three or four hours the quinine gets time to act on the parasites crowding the intracranial vessels; but if temperature be allowed to mount and to remain high the patient is destroyed



before the specific has a chance. The cold bath, therefore, is absolutely necessary. In such circumstances, antipyrin and similar antipyretics are worse than useless. Good rules are to prepare to give the cold bath if the axillary temperature reach  $106^{\circ}$ , and to remove from the bath when rectal temperature has fallen to  $102^{\circ}$  Fahr. Although the temperature has been reduced by this means, thermometrical observations must be continued at short intervals, say every two hours; directly it begins to rise again, say to  $102^{\circ}$ – $103^{\circ}$ , the patient should be placed in the bath again; this must be repeated as often as necessary. Patients who have suffered from a hyperpyrexial attack should be invalided home.

**Treatment of algide and dysenteric attacks.** — Algide and dysenteric attacks demand quinine combined with a little opium. If dysenteric symptoms persist, ipecac., or the aperient sulphates in full doses and opium must also be given.

**Treatment of hæmoglobinuric fever.** — Hæmoglobinuric fever is most resistant to quinine. Some practitioners of experience recommend the exhibition of the drug in heroic doses, giving it every two hours in divided doses to the extent of 120 grains a day; this they keep up till convalescence is established. On the other hand, hæmoglobinuria may come on while the patient is cinchonised; indeed, some writers of experience—the Plehns, Koch, and others—declare that quinine conduces to and even causes hæmoglobinuria. After trying it in these cases, and carefully comparing the results of treatment both with and without quinine, these authorities abandoned its use. So long as the hæmoglobinuria continued they treated the case symptomatically, cautiously resuming the specific if the case merged into and concluded as a simple intermittent. There can be no doubt that in large doses quinine exercises a certain amount of destructive action on the blood corpuscles, rendering their hæmoglobin unstable. When, therefore, its toxic influence is superadded to



that of the malarial poison, it may be that it supplies the little that is required to determine an extensive liberation of hæmoglobin, which, had the quinine been withheld, might not have taken place. Bastianelli (*Ann. di Med.*, Anno ii., Fasc. 11) lays down the following sensible rules as to the use of quinine in hæmoglobinuric fever:—(a) If hæmoglobinuria occurs during a malarial paroxysm and parasites are found in the blood, quinine should be given. (b) If parasites are not found in the blood, quinine should not be given. (c) If quinine has been already given before the hæmoglobinuria has appeared and no parasites are found, its use should be suspended; but if parasites persist it should be continued.

*Calomel* in large doses—20 to 30 grains—is a favourite remedy with some for hæmoglobinuric fever. It has been systematically used in Africa in these cases. I have heard of it being given there by the teaspoonful. I know of cases which recovered perfectly without a grain of calomel or of quinine. Severe stomatitis may arise from the former; it should therefore be employed with great caution.

Quennec has advocated the administration of small doses of *chloroform* in hæmoglobinuric fever. His formula is chloroform 4 grammes, powdered gum q.s., sweetened water 250 grammes: of this a tablespoonful is given every ten minutes until a certain degree of chloroform intoxication is produced. Thereafter the effect is kept up by enemata of chloral. In twenty-two successive cases he had no death.

*Tannic acid* is another drug which enjoys a certain reputation in the treatment of malarial fevers which have resisted quinine, and especially in hæmoglobinuric fever. It is given, well diluted, in fifteen-grain doses every two hours for four or five times, the dosing being repeated on the third and sixth days to the extent of two doses each day.

*Salicylate of soda* is a remedy much used by some medical men in West Africa at the present time, and, it is said, with good results.



*Transfusion of blood* has been successfully practised in high degrees of anæmia in some of these cases. *Oxygen* inhalations are indicated, but are rarely practicable.

*Precautions.*—Patients who are suffering from or are threatened with hæmoglobinuria, or who have had this disease before, on the slightest indication of fever should go to bed at once, keep their skins warm and scrupulously protected from draughts, and take plenty of warm fluid; if parasites are present in the blood, moderate doses—five grains—of quinine every three or four hours (hypodermically by preference), and a large dose of calomel should be given. Those who have once suffered from hæmoglobinuric fever must at all times avoid, above everything, getting wet, or chilled, or over-fatigued, and all other causes of physiological depression. Sitting down to cool off in clothes wet from perspiration or from any other cause is most dangerous. When the urine tends to be suppressed, diuretics must not be given with the idea of stimulating the kidneys. In these circumstances hot fomentations should be applied to the loins, plenty of bland diluents administered, and an exclusive milk diet ordered until all albumin has disappeared from the urine. This is the only rational and safe systematic treatment of the hæmoglobinuric phase of malarial fever. Antipyretics, as antipyrin and phenacetin, are dangerous.

**Other drugs in malaria.**—During the continuation of a fever I have never seen much, if any, good from arsenic. The place of arsenic is not as a substitute for quinine during fever but as a blood restorer after fever. I have heard of cases of obstinate ague cured by half-drachm doses of liquor arsenicalis. I have never myself ventured on these heroic doses. I have never seen benefit, in any way approaching that derived from quinine, from methylene blue, carbolic acid, iodine, anarcotine, analgen, phenocol, parthenium, ailanthus, chiretta, eucalyptus, or any of the many drugs which from time to time



have, on very limited experience, been recommended in malaria. In those cases, however, in which from some peculiar idiosyncrasy the patient is unable to take quinine, it may be necessary to have recourse to some of these drugs. Methylene blue in doses of two to three grains, and pushed until the urine becomes deeply tinged or signs of kidney irritation appear, enjoys a certain reputation in America and in Germany. Anarcotine was at one time, during a quinine famine, extensively and successfully employed in India; the dose is from one to three grains (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, Aug. 17th, 1895). Phenocol hydrochloride, in ten-grain doses, administered five, three, and two hours before the expected paroxysm, has been used with advantage in Italy, and is said to have succeeded in some instances in which quinine had failed. The tannin treatment, already alluded to, might also be tried in obstinate cases where quinine had failed or could not be taken. A grain of capsicum with five grains of quinine is said to succeed sometimes where quinine alone fails. I have given this pill, but how much the capsicum contributed to the cure I cannot say. I cannot say I have ever seen an ordinary uncomplicated ague resist quinine properly given. There can be little doubt, however, that in rare cases it does fail, and that it is more efficient against the benign tertian and the quartan than against the malignant parasites. It does not prevent relapse, however, even in the non-malignant infections. Euchinin, lately introduced, is said to have all the therapeutic virtues of quinine with none of the bitter taste. The dose is the same as for quinine. It should be of value in the treatment of children.

**Treatment of splenic tumour and malarial cachexia.**—The enlarged spleen of malarial cachexia is best treated by counter-irritation (linimentum iodi, or ung. hydrarg. biniodid.) and saline aperients, combined with quinine, arsenic, and iron. Hepatic enlargement and abdominal congestion arising from malarial disease of long standing generally derive much benefit



from a course of Kissingen or of Carlsbad water—the former preferably if anæmia is marked. Cachectics should leave the malarial centre where they are being poisoned and spend at least one year in Europe. They must be careful to clothe warmly, especially on first entering colder latitudes; to keep lightly employed both in body and mind; to avoid over-fatigue, constipation, exposure to a very hot sun, high winds, rain; to live temperately, and generally to follow the dictates of common sense. A residence in a dry, cool, sunny climate, or a sea voyage, is an admirable restorative in malarial cachexia.

**Food and drink in malaria.**—The food in malarial fevers ought to be light and principally fluid. Effervescing mixture often helps to clean the tongue and settle the stomach. Lemon decoction (made by boiling for half an hour a sliced lemon, including skin and seeds, in a pint and a half of water, straining, diluting, and sweetening) is much relished in remittents, and may be taken systematically by all malarials with advantage. Fresh lemonade, fresh lime juice, weak cold tea, and iced water sipped, are all of them much appreciated by these patients. During convalescence the quality of the food should be gradually improved and, if necessary, supplemented by wine or bitter ale.

#### PROPHYLAXIS.

The basis of malaria prophylaxis is the fact that particular species of mosquitoes are indispensable for the propagation of the germ. Practical measures, therefore, have for their object the extermination of these insects, or, failing this, the prevention of their bites. War need not be waged against all mosquitoes; our present knowledge seems to indicate that only *Anopheles* has to be considered. As the members of this genus are easily recognised, and as they are somewhat fastidious in their habits, their extermination in limited areas is by no means a hopeless task.



**Drainage, cultivation and flooding.**—Experience has shown that much can be done to free a locality of malaria. Drainage and cultivation where the land will repay the expenditure, permanent and complete flooding where it will not and where such flooding is possible, proper paving of unhealthy towns, and the filling in of stagnant, swampy pools; these—in other words, all measures calculated to keep down mosquitoes—are the more important things to be striven for in attempting the sanitation of malarious districts. In England, in Holland, in France, in Algeria, in America, and in many other places, enormous tracts of country, which formerly were useless and pestilential, have been rendered healthy and productive by such means.

In carrying out extensive public works care should be exercised to provide good subsoil drainage in connection with irrigation, to provide efficient drainage to carry off superfluous water *before* introducing a larger water supply into a town previously inadequately watered, and to avoid interfering with the natural drainage of a district in constructing railways and so forth. To do anything that may raise the level of the subsoil water in potentially malarial districts is most dangerous.

**Location of dwelling-houses.** — The inhabitants of malarious districts ought to live in villages or towns with well-paved streets and courts, going out to cultivate their fields during the day, but returning to sleep in the town before nightfall. Houses should be placed, if possible, on high and dry situations, a clay soil being avoided. It is unwise in countries such as Africa, where nearly all Europeans suffer from chronic malarial poisoning, to place dwelling-houses in exposed situations, or where high winds are apt to produce chills and consequent fever relapses. For the same reason, in elevated situations, houses should be well sheltered by trees planted at some distance from the premises, or by higher ground. In the neighbourhood of houses the felling of natural



grass should, if possible, be preserved, or, if it be disturbed, replaced immediately, or the exposed soil covered with rammed clay or cement. It is unwise to have flower-beds or vegetable gardens near bedroom windows, or to allow water from bath-rooms or cook-houses to flow over the ground in the vicinity of the house, or to keep water unchanged in tubs or water-butts for mosquitoes to breed in. Pools and puddles of stagnant water should be filled up and turfed. Ponds should be stocked with fish, as fish tend to keep down mosquitoes by preying on their larvæ. The neighbourhood of swamps is to be avoided. A few ounces of petroleum thrown on the surface of a pond will prevent mosquitoes from depositing their eggs on the water, and will asphyxiate their larvæ; the petroleum requires to be renewed from time to time. There are many simple precautions of this sort which will occur to every prudent man, and which, in malarious countries, he should take care to have carried out.

**The cultivation of trees and plants.—**

Much was expected at one time from the cultivation of eucalypti of different species—particularly *Eucalyptus globulus*—as a means of suppressing malaria. Specific virtues were attributed to its balsamic exhalations. These hopes have not been fulfilled in every case; but, undoubtedly, the effect of this rapidly-growing tree in drying the soil, or, perhaps, in keeping away mosquitoes, which are said to object to the peculiar aroma given off by the leaves, is of use in some localities. The same may be said of the cultivation of the sunflower, chrysanthemum, kiri tree, and other plants. Possibly they too influence insect life, and do good in this way also.

*Disturbance of the soil.*—The soil must not be disturbed during the sickly season. Workmen so engaged must not sleep near their work.

*Native experience to be consulted.*—It is unwise to build where the natives say the neighbourhood is unhealthy; natives generally know such places.



Neither, if it can be possibly avoided, should a stay be made where the natives are anæmic and have enlarged spleens—a sure indication of an unhealthy district. Water from wells of bad repute, or swamp water, should be avoided, or boiled. We do not know for certain that malaria can be conveyed in water; but it is certain that the natives of many countries think it can, and, as their opinions in such matters are founded on the experience of generations, they should not be ignored.

*Other precautions.*—Visits to notoriously unhealthy localities should be avoided in the evening and early morning. In such places sleeping on or close to the ground is dangerous. Bedrooms, therefore, should be situated in an upper storey, and dwelling-rooms be well raised on piles or arches above the ground. Common sense tells us that campaigns and journeys in malarious districts should be conducted and concluded during the healthy season, if there be one. *Mosquito nets must invariably be used*; many travellers attest their value, so plainly indicated by recent discoveries. The body should be covered up during sleep, and every precaution (as fires, eucalyptus boughs, etc.) that circumstances permit should be employed to keep mosquitoes away.

The subjects of malarial infection are dangerous to their companions; they should, therefore, be avoided or, if this is impracticable, compelled to sleep under efficient mosquito nets. It will prove a truly economical procedure to supply natives liberally with quinine; this should go hand in hand with other steps that may be taken to render a place salubrious.

#### **Quinine and arsenic as prophylactics.**—

A great deal has been written about the prophylactic use of arsenic and quinine in malaria. Opinions are very much divided on the subject. Most deny that arsenic possesses any prophylactic power whatever. Duncan, after an exhaustive study of the recorded evidences, and after extensive and carefully conducted experiments made by himself on large



bodies of troops, concludes that arsenic has no prophylactic virtue whatever ; but that quinine, in a daily dose of three to five grains, lessens the fever admissions by one-half. He therefore strongly advocates the systematic use of the latter drug in all campaigns involving a sojourn in malarious districts. In this he is backed by the opinion of many medical men of experience. Corre, although he admits the prophylactic power of quinine against ordinary malarial fever, says it has no influence in preventing pernicious fevers. Other authorities, on the contrary, state that those who take quinine systematically, though liable to mild fevers to some extent, enjoy immunity from pernicious attacks. On the whole, the evidence is distinctly in favour of the systematic and daily employment of a prophylactic dose of quinine, three to five grains. Methylene blue, given systematically, appears to have a distinctly prophylactic action, and is well spoken of by Celli and others in this respect.

**Other prophylactics.** — Tea, coffee, and very small doses of alcohol are also decidedly of service ; but they should be used in strict moderation, the last being taken only after the work of the day is over, and when there is no longer any necessity for going out in the sun. Crudeli speaks highly of lemon decoction (made as already described, page 144) as a prophylactic ; its use can do no harm, and it is a pleasant, slightly tonic, and slightly aperient beverage, well suited as a drink in hot climates. The decoction made from one lemon may be taken daily in divided doses.



## CHAPTER IX.

## YELLOW FEVER.

**Definition.**—An acute, specific, very fatal febrile disease occurring epidemically, or as an endemic, within a peculiarly limited geographical area. It is characterised by a definite course consisting of an initial stage of a sthenic nature, rapidly followed by an adynamic condition in which such evidences of blood destruction as black vomit, albuminuria, and hæmogenous jaundice are liable to occur.

**Geographical distribution.**—Of all the important zymotic diseases yellow fever has the most restricted geographical range. Its centre is the West Indies, whence it spreads north to the United States and Mexico; south to the Brazils and, at times, as far as Buenos Ayres and Monte Video; west to Central America, and across the Isthmus of Panama to the Pacific coast, along which it extends north to the Gulf of California and south to Peru. It occurs also, in the epidemic form, on the west coast of Africa. Whether it is endemic there, it is impossible to say. Neither is it now possible to determine from existing records whether it was originally an African or a West Indian disease.

Yellow fever has been imported frequently into Portugal and Spain, and once, from the latter, into Italy. Although a good many died in these visitations, the disease has never obtained a permanent footing in Europe. Cases have occurred in seaport towns in France and England—Brest and Swansea, for example; these little epidemics, however, have invariably rapidly died out.

In several of the West India islands yellow fever



is endemic. It is always to be found in Havana. Formerly the Brazils enjoyed an absolute immunity; but ever since 1849, when yellow fever was introduced for the first time into Bahia by a ship from New Orleans, it has been practically endemic in the large cities. At Rio de Janeiro, although in some years the cases are few, it is never entirely absent. In such places as New Orleans, Charleston, Monte Video, and Buenos Ayres, although now and again epidemics of great severity break out, several years may pass without its appearing. Some of these epidemic visitations bring a heavy death-bill; thus in New Orleans, in 1853, 7,970 people died of yellow fever, in 1867, 3,093; in Rio, in 1850, it claimed 4,160 victims, in 1852, 1,943, and in 1886, 1,397. In Havana the annual mortality from this cause ranges from 500 to 1,600 or over.

**Ætiology.**—*Peculiar limitation.*—The reasons for the peculiar geographical limitation of yellow fever are but partially understood. A principal reason undoubtedly is that yellow fever belongs to a somewhat restricted class of diseases which, though communicable, are not directly so through immediate atmospheric conduction from sick to sound; diseases whose germs do not pass quickly from the sick to the healthy, like those of scarlatina or small-pox, but have first, apparently, to undergo extracorporeally developmental changes that enable them to attack, and to live in, the human body again. Cholera is, perhaps, another such disease; beriberi is probably another; and so, in a sense, is malaria, and all affections whose germs require an intermediary host or an intermediary nidus. Such diseases, seeing that their propagation demands an additional condition—the extracorporeal state or medium—must, *cæteris paribus*, necessarily be more difficult to acquire, must spread more slowly and be more restricted geographically, than the ordinary directly infectious diseases.

*Influence of atmospheric temperature.*—Another reason for the restriction of the endemic area of



yellow fever lies in the fact that either the germ is killed, or the extracorporeal nidus is in some way rendered unsuitable by low atmospheric temperatures. For its development in epidemic form, yellow fever requires a temperature of over 75° Fahr. It ceases to extend its area when the thermometer sinks below this point, and it stops abruptly as an epidemic when the freezing-point is reached; although—as proved by the recurrence of the disease two years in succession in one of the Spanish epidemics, and that without a fresh introduction—the vitality of the germ may not be extinguished and killed outright by frost. Dampness favours yellow fever; it is therefore most prone to occur during the rainy season.

*Conditions of soil required.*—Further, it is not every spot that affords the conditions demanded by the germ. It would appear that an admixture of animal matter must enter into the composition of the nidus; decomposing vegetable matter does not suffice.

Unless all of these conditions concur, yellow fever will not establish itself in a locality; consequently, the area of the disease is a restricted one.

*Usually a sea-coast disease.*—The favourite haunts of yellow fever are the sea-coast towns (more especially the sea front where the sewage discharges), the banks of rivers, and flat delta country. Rarely does it pass far inland, or ascend high ground. Still, there are many exceptions to these general rules; for it has been found far inland, and at a considerable elevation (São Paulo, Brazil, 2,500 feet; Newcastle, Jamaica, 3,000–4,000 feet; Cuzco, Peru, 9,000–10,000 feet). Villages are seldom affected; nor does the disease readily spread if introduced into rural localities. In spreading inland it follows the lines of communication—railways, canals, navigable rivers.

*A ship disease.*—As in the case of beriberi, the somewhat limited conditions found on board ship supply the requirements demanded by the germ of yellow fever. Ship epidemics are common occur-



rences. Its ideal haunt, however, is the low-lying, hot, squalid districts in the neighbourhood of the wharfs and docks of large seaport towns. It is believed that the germ is often introduced on board ship in washing decks with harbour water, a custom which in many yellow fever ports is discontinued.

*A place disease.*—Yellow fever, therefore, is a place disease, like malaria or beriberi. If the patient is removed to a hitherto unaffected spot, his attendants and neighbours will not contract the disease, unless the spot itself first become infected. The occurrence of this place infection will depend on whether the particular locality affords a suitable nidus for the germs which escape from, or are brought by, the patient. If the locality supplies these conditions, then, for the time being, the disease will spread and become epidemic; if the locality does not supply these conditions, then the disease will not spread. It is safe, therefore, to visit a yellow fever patient if he is lodged outside the endemic area; but it is never safe for the susceptible to visit the endemic area, whether they come into direct contact with the sick or not.

Nott has pointed out that yellow fever occurring in a many-storeyed building attacks especially those living on the ground floor. It picks out particular localities, houses, and streets, apparently in the most capricious way.

*Portability of the germ in fomites and merchandise.*—That the germ may remain for a considerable time potentially infective in fomites, clothes, merchandise, etc., and in wooden structures (ships), is an established fact. Thus Strain (*Journ. of Trop. Med.*, April, 1899) saw cases in São Paulo in which the infection was acquired from unpacking a box of clothes which had lain at Santos for some time and had been damaged there by damp and sea water. The epidemic of 1893 in the same city he traces to certain cases of machinery which had lain for some months at Santos. On opening the cases the packing straw was found to



be damp. Four of the people in the house where the cases were opened got yellow fever within a few days.

*Immunity acquired by prolonged residence or by a previous attack.*—A curious fact about yellow fever is that the natives of, and those who have lived for a long time in, the endemic area are practically exempt from the disease ; or, if they are attacked, the disease is usually of a very mild type. It is also said that if the native quits the endemic area his immunity decreases in proportion to the length of time he remains away ; so that after long absence, on his return to the endemic area, he may be attacked just as an ordinary visitor might be. Further, those who enter the endemic area for the first time are the most susceptible, the susceptibility decreasing with length of residence. It is probable, therefore, that at such places as Rio the endemicity of the disease is kept up by the continual influx of foreign and, therefore, susceptible visitors. One attack of yellow fever is almost invariably protective against a recurrence. It is sometimes affirmed that the relative immunity of the creole is the result of an attack of yellow fever in childhood.

*Race as influencing susceptibility.* — Another curious fact is that the negro is little liable to yellow fever, and that when he gets it the attack is usually mild. The yellow-skinned races are more susceptible than the negro, but less so than the European. It is also said that the susceptibility of the European increases in proportion to the height of the latitude of his native place ; that is, a Norwegian will be more susceptible than a Frenchman, and a Frenchman more than an Italian or Spaniard.

*Incubation period.* — The incubation period of yellow fever rarely exceeds four or five days ; it may be much shorter—under twenty-four hours. The limits, according to Bérenger-Féraud, are one to fifteen days in the temperate zones, one to thirty days in the tropics. Occasionally it happens that the disease breaks out in a ship after she has been several



weeks at sea, having had no communication with the land or with another ship in the meantime. It must not, however, be inferred from this that the incubation period is to be reckoned in weeks. The ship itself, the cargo, or timbers, or the clothes of the crew, were infected in port; but the crew had not, until long afterwards, caught the infection from the particular part of the ship in which the virus had been brewing or latent. The ship was infected for weeks, but not the crew. Exactly the same thing happens in the case of ship beriberi.

**The germ.**—A great many attempts have been made to discover the germ or virus of yellow fever, and a corresponding variety of organisms has been described. One of the best known and, at one time, most talked about, was the *Cryptococcus zanthogenicus* which Dr. Freire, of Brazil, proclaimed as the true cause. He even went the length of practising protective inoculations by cultures of this organism, prepared on the Pasteurian system of attenuation.

Dr. Finlay, of Havana, who regards the mosquito as a principal agent in the diffusion of yellow fever, claims for another organism—the *Tetragenus febris flava*—the distinction of being the true virus. He practised inoculations by the bites of mosquitoes previously fed on yellow fever patients, and claims that as the virulence of an attack depends on the number of infected mosquitoes biting the inoculated, by reducing the number of bites a mild yet protective attack can be harmlessly induced.

At the instigation of the Government of the United States, these and other organisms were rigidly investigated by Sternberg, whose standing as a bacteriologist, and whose judicial cast of mind eminently qualified him for forming a trustworthy judgment. His verdict on these, and many similar organisms for which pathogenic claims have been advanced, was unfavourable.

Sanarelli (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, July 3rd, 1897), whose record as a bacteriologist gives great weight to his



statements, claims to have found the germ in a highly pleomorphic, very minute bacterium, which he has named *Bacillus icteroides*. It has rounded ends, and occurs for the most part in pairs in the cultures and in small groups in the tissues. It measures from two- to four-thousandths of a millimetre in length, and is two or three times longer than broad. It is actively motile; flagella can be demonstrated. Agar-agar cultures incubated at 37° C. for twelve hours, and for a like period at room temperature, show a characteristic growth, the centre of the colony being flat, transparent and bluish, the periphery prominent and quite opaque; it is said to resemble a drop of sealing-wax. It is a facultative anaërobe. It grows best at 37° C.; if kept for a few hours at zero it becomes non-virulent to animals. It gives the clump reaction with diluted serum of a yellow fever patient. It is pathogenic to monkeys, rabbits, guinea-pigs, mice and rats. It is present in small numbers in the blood and tissues, especially the liver, and almost invariably in association with streptococci, staphylococci, and *Bacillus coli*. It is not found in the contents of the alimentary canal. It is easily stained, and grows readily and characteristically in the usual media. Injected into animals, it proves exceedingly toxic, giving rise to symptoms and lesions resembling those of yellow fever. Filtered cultures injected into five men produced typical yellow fever, including hæmorrhage, icterus, anuria, delirium, collapse, and, as steatosis of the liver and nephritis are mentioned—conditions which can only be ascertained *post-mortem*—presumably death. Important practical points in the biology of the bacillus are: It strongly resists drying; it dies in water at 60° C.; it is killed by seven hours' exposure to the sun; it lives a long time in sea water; the development of moulds on a culture favours the bacillus. Sanarelli has prepared a serum from horses immunised by intensive treatment with this bacterium carried on continuously for many months (fourteen), for which he claims pre-



ventive as well as curative powers. The statistics he gives are encouraging. It is premature, however, to pronounce decisively on the value of Sanarelli's discovery, for whilst the commissioners (Wasdin and Gedding) detailed by the United States marine authorities to report on the subject, state (July 10, 1899) that *Bacillus icteroides* is the cause of yellow fever, other investigators have arrived at an opposite conclusion. Sternberg, to whose opinion much weight must be attached, holds that, so far, the evidence for or against this bacterium is inconclusive.

**Symptoms.**—There is the same variety in the initial symptoms of yellow fever as in the other specific fevers. There may be sudden rigor supervening in the midst of apparent health; there may be only slight chills; or there may be a period of premonitory malaise leading up to the more pronounced symptoms. When fairly started, the procession of events is rapid.

Roughly speaking, and provided there are no complications, an attack of yellow fever is divisible into three stages: 1, The initial fever; 2, "the period of calm," as it is called; and 3, in severe cases, the period of reaction.

The initial fever lasts usually from three to four days. The maximum temperature is generally attained within the first twenty-four hours, or by the second day, and, in a case of medium severity, may rise to about  $103^{\circ}$  or  $104^{\circ}$  Fahr. During the three or four succeeding days the mercury slowly sinks to  $98^{\circ}$  or  $99^{\circ}$  Fahr., the diurnal fluctuations being seldom more than half to one degree. It occasionally happens that high temperature is maintained for two or three days, and also that the maximum is not attained till the third day; as a rule, the thermometer behaves as described, the maximum being reached within a few hours of the onset of the disease.

With, or soon after, the initial chill or rigor severe headache sets in and is generally a prominent feature. For the most part the pain is concentrated



about the forehead, in the circumorbital region, and in the eyeballs themselves. In many cases it is associated with intolerance of light.

Loin pain is another very distressing symptom ; it may amount to positive agony. The legs, too, ache excessively—particularly the calves, knees, and ankles ; they feel as if broken.

The face is flushed and swollen ; the eyes are shining, injected, and ferrety ; the skin is dry ; and, what with pain and febrile distress, the patient rapidly passes into a very miserable condition. He is restless and continually tossing about.

At first the pulse ranges from 100 to 120 per minute, and is full and strong ; but, as the disease progresses, it loses its sthenic character, gradually falling in force and frequency until at the “period of calm” it becomes remarkably slow and compressible, beating perhaps only thirty or forty times per minute.

At the outset the tongue is not very dirty, but it soon acquires a white coating on the dorsum, the edges remaining clean. It is not so swollen and flabby as in malarial fever ; on the contrary, it is often small and pointed throughout the disease. This is regarded as an important diagnostic mark ; taken along with the progressive diminution in the strength and frequency of the pulse, and the peculiar behaviour of the temperature, it is nearly conclusive as to the disease being yellow fever. Later, the tongue dries, and, at the same time, thirst becomes intolerable. The palate is congested and swollen ; the gums may also swell and bleed.

The congested appearance of the face at the onset of the disease tends to subside ; so that by the time the asthenic stage is reached, the features may have become shrunken and small, the eye sunken, and the eyelids discoloured by ecchymoses.

In some cases the skin is hot and dry throughout ; in others it may be bedewed with perspiration from time to time ; or the sweating may be constant, especially so if collapse occur.



By the third day the scleræ assume a yellowish tinge, and very often the skin acquires the yellow colour from which the disease derives its name. It must be understood, however, that it is not every case that presents this colour of skin; in some it is entirely absent, but if carefully looked for there is always some icterus of the scleræ present. The yellow tinge generally shows about the end of the first stage, deepening in intensity as the case advances, and remaining apparent for a considerable time after convalescence has become established. It ranges in depth from a light saffron tint to a deep mahogany brown. In fatal cases it is always present; not necessarily during life, but invariably after death. The skin is said to emit a peculiar odour like gun washings, or, as Jackson puts it, like the smell of a fish market.

Petechial, erythematous, papular and other eruptions may show themselves in different cases; but in yellow fever there is no characteristic eruption.

An important feature, from the diagnostic as well as from the prognostic point of view, is the appearance, in some cases almost from the outset of the disease, of albumin in the urine, together with a tendency to suppression. In mild cases these features may be little marked; but in severe cases, particularly during the stage of depression, the urine may fall to a few ounces, and be loaded with albumin to the extent of one-half or even two-thirds. The more pronounced these symptoms, the graver is the prognosis. Urea and uric acid are very much diminished, the former in severe cases falling to 1.5 gramme to the litre. The urine is almost invariably acid. Bile pigments show themselves towards the end of the disease; their appearance is regarded as a favourable omen. Hæmorrhage from kidneys or urinary tract is not uncommon.

Delirium may occur, but is not an invariable feature. Usually, after the initial stage of restlessness and acute suffering, the patient becomes torpid, and perhaps taciturn. In bad cases coma, subsultus, etc.,



may gradually supervene, the temperature rising as death approaches and even after death.

At the outset the bowels are confined. In the second stage, diarrhœa, perhaps of black material resembling the vomit, may supervene; or there may be actual hæmorrhage of bright red blood from the bowel.

The well-known *black vomit*—always a grave symptom, but fortunately not by any means an invariable one—forms one of the most striking features of this disease. In the earlier stages of the fever vomiting of bilious matters is a common occurrence. This may subside, or, after a time, give place to a coffee-ground vomit which gradually deepens in colour until it becomes uniformly black. On microscopic examination the vomited material is found to consist of broken-down blood corpuscles and altered hæmoglobin suspended in a yellowish mucoid fluid. This material is, doubtless, in the main derived from blood transuded through the walls of the capillaries of the mucous membrane of the stomach. It is intensely acid. Though the black vomit may not always be seen in fatal cases during life, it is invariably found in the stomach on *post-mortem* examination.

Sometimes pure blood is thrown up from the stomach; similar passive hæmorrhages may take place from almost any part of the body—from eyes, ears, nose, mouth, bladder, uterus, and so on.

Death may occur during the early acute stage, being preceded by a rapid rise of temperature.

In mild cases the “period of calm,” which sets in after the subsidence of the initial fever, may last for several days before convalescence is established. In such, recovery once begun is usually very rapid; in a week from the beginning of the disease the patient may be about again. In severe cases, however, the period of calm is followed by a third stage, the stage of reaction, in which the temperature again rises, though not to so high a point as in the initial fever, and a sort of remitting fever of an adynamic type keeps on for several days or weeks.



This secondary fever is prolonged, more especially if there is any complication such as abscess, boils, parotitis, buboes, hepatitis, and so forth. The icterus is now very pronounced; black vomit may recur, or appear for the first time; perhaps a profuse diarrhœa ends in collapse; or the urine may be suppressed, stupor, coma, and other nervous symptoms ensuing and very often ending in death. In other instances the secondary fever terminates in a crisis of sweating and a prolonged convalescence.

Relapse may occur at any time up to two or three weeks after the subsidence of the initial fever. It is specially prone to occur if the patient has been guilty of any dietetic imprudence during the period of calm—a period at which the appetite may return to some extent. Relapses are very dangerous.

**Prognosis and mortality.**—The prognosis in yellow fever is good if the temperature during the initial fever does not exceed  $103^{\circ}$  to  $105^{\circ}$  Fahr. It is better for women (although if pregnant, abortion is almost invariable) and children than for men; better for old residents than for newcomers; worst of all for the intemperate. According to a table of 269 carefully-observed cases given by Sternberg, there were no deaths in 44 cases in which the temperature did not rise over  $103^{\circ}$ ; *per contra*, in 22 cases in which the thermometer rose over  $106^{\circ}$  there were no recoveries. Of 36 in which the temperature rose to between  $105^{\circ}$  and  $106^{\circ}$ , 22 died; of 80 with maximum temperatures between  $104^{\circ}$  and  $105^{\circ}$ , 24 died; and of 87 in which it ranged between  $103^{\circ}$  and  $104^{\circ}$ , only 6 died. The mean mortality in the whole 269 cases was 27.7 per cent. This may be taken as a fairly representative mortality in yellow fever among the unacclimatised, something between twenty-five and thirty per cent., although in some epidemics it has risen as high as fifty or even eighty per cent. of those attacked. Among the permanent inhabitants of the endemic districts the case mortality is very much lower—seven to ten per cent. During epidemics



abortive and ambulatory cases occur ; in these, icterus and other characteristic symptoms are often absent. Such cases may be hard to diagnose from febricula or mild malarial attacks. In them the mortality is nil. Some epidemics are particularly mild. In the same epidemic the cases may vary in severity from time to time.

**Pathological anatomy.**—Depending probably on hæmoglobin diffused in the liquor sanguinis and tissues, and not on biliary pigment, the yellow colour of the skin is most marked in the dependent parts of the cadaver, especially in those parts which are subjected to pressure. Petechiæ are common in the skin ; more considerable extravasations of blood may be found in the muscles. The brain and meninges are hyperæmic. The brain tissue may be studded with minute hæmorrhagic effusions ; like the other tissues of the body, it is stained a lighter or deeper yellow. The blood in the vessels of the general circulation is not firmly coagulated. The blood corpuscles appear to be normal, although there can be little doubt that there is in this disease a liberation of hæmoglobin, arising, possibly, from destruction of a proportion of the corpuscles. An important fact, as explaining the liability to passive hæmorrhages, is the existence of a fatty degeneration of the capillaries and smaller blood-vessels. The stomach, as stated, always contains more or less black material, such as may have been vomited during life. Here and there in its mucous membrane are arborescent patches of congestion and ecchymoses. Observers are not agreed as to the nature of this congestion, as to whether it is passive or inflammatory. Sternberg says there is evidence in the increase of leucocytes in the submucosa of a slight inflammatory action. The small intestine may contain a dark, acid material similar to that in the stomach, and doubtless coming from the same source. Like that of the stomach, the mucous membrane of the intestine shows patchy arborescent injection.



As compared with other fevers, the liver is characteristically affected in yellow fever. As a rule, if death have occurred at the later stages, this organ is somewhat exsanguine, friable, and presents a yellowish colour from profound fatty changes in the cells. Occasionally, though rarely, it may be hyperæmic and dark. Here and there throughout the gland the cells—particularly those about the periphery of the lobules—on microscopical examination are found to contain globules and grains of fat. The nuclei in some instances, as well as the protoplasm of the cells, show fatty changes. This profound fatty degeneration of the liver cells is well marked in the great majority of cases.

The kidneys are affected with parenchymatous nephritis. Hæmorrhagic foci under the capsule and in the cortex are common. The renal epithelium shows cloudy swelling passing on to fatty degeneration and desquamation. The tubules, here and there, are filled with infarcts, either of an albuminoid material or of *débris* of desquamated epithelium, corresponding with the numerous casts which can be discovered in the albuminous urine.

**Diagnosis.**—This subject of the diagnosis of yellow fever has already been treated of under “Malaria” (pp. 127-8), to which the reader is referred. Practically, the only two diseases with which yellow fever may be confounded are bilious remittent and bilious hæmoglobinuric fever. The clump reaction which is said to occur on the addition of diluted serum of yellow fever patient with a culture of *B. icteroides* should be a valuable aid to diagnosis when cultures are available.

**Treatment.**—Formerly, a much more active treatment than that in vogue at the present day was the fashion for yellow fever. It is now recognised that, as with most specific fevers, the treatment is more a matter of nursing than of drugs.

Experience has shown that a smart purgative at the very onset of the disease is beneficial. With



many castor oil is the favourite drug, but to be of service it has to be given in very large doses—two to four ounces. Others use calomel; or calomel combined with quinine—twenty grains of each. Others, again, prefer a saline. The purgative, whichever be selected, must not be repeated, or, for that matter, given at all if the patient is not seen until after the second day of the disease.

Hot mustard pediluvia, frequently repeated during the first twenty-four hours, the patient and bath being enveloped in a blanket, are in constant use in yellow fever epidemics. They are said to relieve the cerebral congestion and the intense headache. Very hot baths, with subsequent blanketing and sinapisms to the epigastrium, are also said to have a similarly favourable influence on the congestion of the stomach, which is, undoubtedly, another constant feature of the disease. For high fever antipyretic drugs, cold baths, iced injections, cold sponging and the like may be carefully employed. In view of the asthenic nature of the disease, the less depressing measures should be preferred.

Vomiting may be treated with sinapisms and ice pills, or with small doses of cocaine. Morphia is dangerous, and must be avoided. For black vomit, frequently repeated doses of perchloride of iron, ergotine injections, acetate of lead, and other styptics have been recommended. For restlessness, phenacetin or antipyrin is used. When the skin is dry, the urine scanty, and the loins ache excessively, Sternberg recommends pilocarpine.

After the fourth or fifth day the flagging circulation demands stimulants of some sort. Iced champagne, hock, or teaspoonful doses of brandy given every half hour, may tide the patient over the period of collapse. Great care, however, should be exercised in the use of these things; if they seem to increase the vomiting and the irritability of the stomach, they must be stopped at once.

The feeding is an important matter. So long as



there is fever the patient has no appetite ; during this time—that is, for the first two or three days—he is better without food. When the fever subsides appetite may return, and a craving for nourishment become more or less urgent ; the greatest care, however, must be exercised about gratifying this untimely appetite. Only the blandest foods, and these only in very small quantities, should be allowed—such as spoonfuls of iced milk or chicken tea. Gradually the quantities may be increased ; but, even when convalescence is established, solid food must be partaken of very sparingly, and it must be of the simplest and most digestible description. Indiscretion in eating is a fruitful cause of relapse in yellow fever ; and it must be borne in mind that in this disease relapse is exceedingly dangerous. Nutrition may be aided by nutrient enemata.

**The Sternberg treatment.**—Sternberg has introduced a system of treatment by alkalies which promises well. It is directed principally to counteracting the hyperacidity of the gastric and intestinal contents—always a marked feature in yellow fever. His prescription is 150 grains of sodium bicarbonate and one-third of a grain of mercury perchloride in a quart of water ; of this an ounce and a half is given every hour. This, he claims, not only neutralises the acidity of the intestinal contents but increases the flow of urine, the perchloride of mercury tending to check fermentative change in the alimentary canal. Of 301 whites treated in this way only 7·3 per cent. died, and of seventy-two blacks all recovered. Other encouraging figures have been adduced as to the efficacy of this line of treatment, which is certainly deserving of further and more extended trial.

**Prophylaxis.**—During epidemic visitations or during exacerbations of endemic yellow fever, the unacclimatised should, if possible, immediately quit the implicated zone. Above all, the slums and low-lying districts of the town should be shunned ; these places should not even be visited ; or, if visits have



to be made to them, these visits should be as brief as possible and not made during the night. The susceptible should avoid sleeping in the lower storeys of their houses, and pay great attention to their general health, carefully avoiding all causes of physiological depression or disturbance. Sailors must not be allowed on shore.

In every country subject to visitations of this disease the sanitary condition of the towns should be most carefully attended to. Experience has shown that nothing invites yellow fever so surely as filth and overcrowding. Ships should not be allowed to clear from infected ports, nor to enter non-infected ports, during the warm season, without adequate inspection. If yellow fever is found on board, the cases should be isolated in a proper quarantine hospital, the ship thoroughly disinfected, and the crew prevented for at least five days from communicating with the shore, or until every risk of conveying infection has passed away. The destruction of all fomites is imperative. Clothes, books, and so forth must be rigidly and thoroughly disinfected, and every feasible means employed to prevent the formation of fresh foci of disease around the patients. In the event of the disease appearing in a locality which is not habitually a yellow fever centre, the most economical plan of dealing with the threatened danger is for the authorities promptly to remove the entire population of the neighbourhood, with the exception of the insusceptible and those in attendance on the sick, and to place the deported population before dispersion in a ten days' quarantine camp. Meanwhile, the infected area must be rigidly isolated. In this way it has been found possible to prevent the spread of the disease.

In the event of yellow fever breaking out in the crew of a man-of-war, the cases, if possible, should be sent ashore, and the ship hurried north or south into cold weather, every sanitary precaution being employed meanwhile.



Sanarelli's serum (p. 155), both as regards treatment and prophylaxis, must be considered as being still *sub judice*.

There is an important matter in connection with this disease, which, in the near future, ought to be made a subject for international consideration, and that is the prevention of the spread of yellow fever to Asia, the Eastern Archipelago, Polynesia, and East Africa. It has spread in the past to Europe; this is a comparatively unimportant matter, as the climatic and hygienic conditions in that continent are not favourable to the extension of the disease. It is otherwise, it is to be feared, in this respect with Asia. Fortunately, yellow fever, so far as known, has never appeared in the crowded, filthy cities of the East; but should it ever be introduced, the favourable climatic conditions and the surpassing filth everywhere present there will enable it to spread like wildfire. The probable reason of its non-introduction into Asia is that the trade route from the West Indies to China and India has hitherto not been a direct one, but has passed by a long circuit either to the north or to the south. When a Central American canal has been constructed, as it most likely will be, and at no distant date, then there will be direct and rapid communication between the present yellow fever centres and Asia. With this more direct and more rapid communication there will arise a corresponding risk of spreading yellow fever into a huge section of tropical humanity which has hitherto enjoyed exemption from one of the deadliest diseases afflicting mankind. Let us hope that before the Central American canal is opened this important matter will not be lost sight of, and that due care will be exercised that America does not reciprocate the introduction of cholera from Asia by a return gift of yellow fever.



## CHAPTER X.

## BUBONIC PLAGUE.

**Definition.**—Plague is a specific, inoculable, and otherwise communicable epidemic disease common to man and many of the lower animals. It is characterised by fever, the development of buboes, a rapid course, a very high mortality, and the presence of a specific bacterium in the lymphatic glands, viscera, and blood.

**Geographical distribution.**—Though not necessarily confined to such, in modern times plague, like leprosy, has become practically a disease of warm climates. The hygienic conditions which advancing civilisation has brought in its train have forced back these two diseases from Europe, where, at one time, they were even more prevalent than they are in their tropical and subtropical haunts at the present day. They are typical examples of that large group of acute and chronic germ diseases whose spread depends on social and hygienic, rather than on climatic, conditions, and more especially on filth and overcrowding; conditions which nowadays are found, to an extent and an intensity sufficient to ensure the endemic prevalence or epidemic extension of these diseases, for the most part only in warm countries.

It is difficult to say what the *pestis* of the ancients may have been. Probably in many instances it was bubonic plague; doubtless the term was sometimes applied to other epidemic sicknesses attended with a large mortality.

The descriptions which have come down to us of these old-world epidemics are too vague for recognition. According to Hirsch, the first recognisable description of what is now understood by plague



refers to its occurrence in Libya, Egypt, and Syria about the end of the third and the beginning of the second century before the Christian era. The next authentic account, and the first as regards Europe, refers to the great epidemic known as the plague of Justinian, which, in A.D. 542, starting from Egypt, spread to Europe and all over the Roman Empire; and which, lasting for fifty or sixty years, wrought the most frightful devastation wherever it reached, depopulating the towns and turning the country into a desert. From that time until 1841, when plague appeared for the last time in Constantinople, it recurred again and again in different parts of Europe, though latterly only in the south-eastern parts of the continent and in areas becoming gradually more circumscribed. In 1878-79 a small epidemic, which speedily died out, broke out in the Russian province of Astrakhan. With the latter exception and the present, as yet limited, epidemic in Oporto, Europe has long enjoyed exemption from this worst of epidemic diseases. The plague visited England for the last time in 1664-79, when, in 1664-65, upwards of 70,000 perished of the 460,000 inhabitants of the London of that day.

Egypt, in former times the favourite haunt of the disease, until 1899 has been exempt since 1844, although several epidemics have since the latter date occurred in its neighbourhood—in Tripoli (Benghasi) in 1856, in 1859, and in 1874; and on the Red Sea coast of Arabia (Assir) from 1853 to the present time. It is said to be endemic in Uganda and in the hinterland of German East Africa (Koch). Many epidemics have occurred in Mesopotamia (last in 1892), in Turkestan (last in 1892), in India, in China, and in Mongolia.

In India there have been several outbreaks during the current century, but they have been of a localised rather than of a general character. One, beginning in Cutch in 1815, spread to Scinde and Gujerat, and continued to 1821. Epidemics have also occurred in



Kumaon and Gharwal on the southern slopes of the Himalayas in 1824, 1834-37, 1846-53, 1876, and 1884; also at Hansi in Delhi, 1828-29. In 1836 it appeared at Bareilly, Rohilkund, and at Pali in Rajputana, spreading to Jodhpore and to Marwar, and continuing till 1838. Probably plague is always present in some part of India, especially among the rude hill-peoples. In 1896 it appeared at Bombay and, possibly, in Calcutta, having been imported to the former city most likely from Hong Kong.

It is now known that plague has been endemic in the south-west of China, in the province of Yunnan, for many years. There it was seen by Rocher and others in 1878 and afterwards. It was particularly active in 1871-73, after the great Mahomedan rebellion. From Yunnan, probably following the trade route, it spread to Pakhoi on the Gulf of Tonquin, a severe epidemic occurring in 1883 in that and in neighbouring towns (Lowry, *Chinese Imp. Mar. Cust. Gaz., Med. Rep.* 25 *et seq.*). In 1894 it had extended to Canton (Rennie, *Chinese Imp. Mar. Cust. Gaz., Med. Rep.* No. 48), where it killed, it is estimated, 60,000 in a population of 1,500,000 (?). Later in the spring of the same year it broke out in the English colony of Hong Kong, subsequently spreading to Macao, Swatow, Amoy, Foochow, Formosa, and probably to many other places in the southern provinces of the Chinese empire, where, in one place after another, considering the wretched hygienic conditions and the poverty of the inhabitants, it is safe to prophesy that plague will continue epidemic for many years to come. Recently it has broken out in Mauritius, Madagascar, and at Delagoa Bay, and a few cases are reported as occurring in Australia.

Until its recent appearance at Santos, Brazil, and in the Argentine, plague had never been seen in America.

**Ætiology.**—*The micro-organism.*—The proofs are now complete that the specific cause of plague is the *cocco-bacillus* which was first discovered by Kitasato,



and afterwards by Yersin, during the Hong Kong epidemic in 1894. This microbe occurs in great profusion in the characteristic buboes—generally in pure culture, but towards the later stages often associated with the streptococci and staphylococci of suppuration. The same bacterium is also present, and in great abundance, in the spleen, intestines, lungs, kidneys, liver, and other viscera, and also,

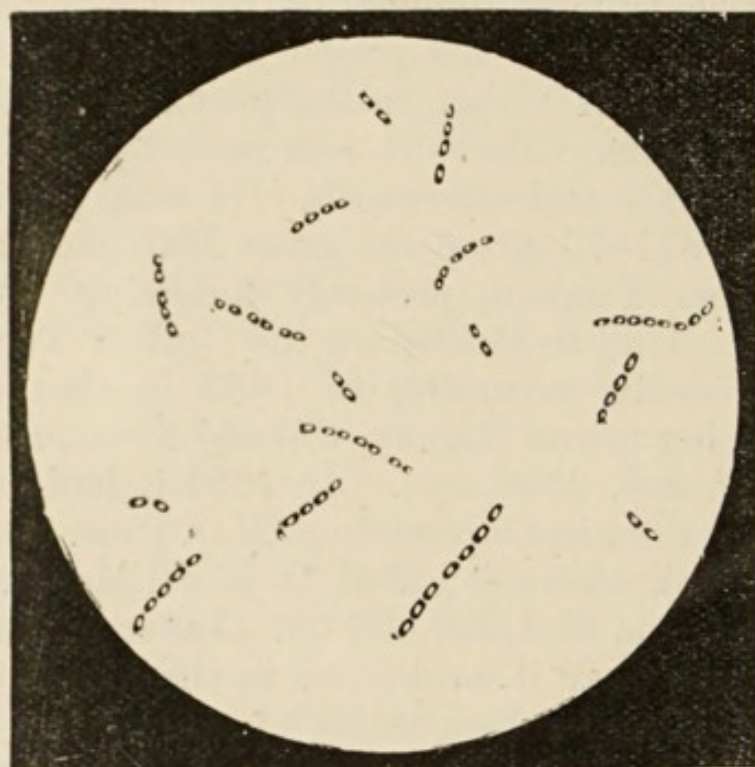


Fig. 34.—Bacillus of plague in chains showing polar staining. From a young culture in bouillon. ( $\times 1000$ .) (Muir and Ritchie.)

though in smaller numbers, in the blood of advanced septicæmic cases, and in the sputum in enormous numbers in the pneumonic type of the disease. In the latter, though easily detected by cultivation, the bacillus may be hard to find by direct observation. Towards the termination of rapidly fatal cases it becomes more abundant in the blood, and may be readily observed there with the microscope.

The plague bacterium (Fig. 34), as seen in smearings or scrapings from the pulp of the buboes, or from any of the inflamed lymphatic glands, or



from the viscera, is a short, thick cocco-bacillus very like that of chicken cholera. It has rounded ends, and, according to Kitasato, is actively motile. Gordon says it has one terminal flagellum. A capsule, according to the same observer, or the appearance of a capsule, can generally be made out, especially in those bacilli which are present in the blood. The bacillus is readily stained by aniline dyes, the extremities taking on a deeper colour than the interpoler part. Those occurring in the blood are shorter than those found in the glands, and, according to Aoyama, are stainable by Gram's method, whereas the bacilli of the glands are larger and are decolourised by this process.

*Culture characters.*—When sown on blood serum and kept at body temperature, in from twenty-four to forty-eight hours an abundant, moist, yellowish-grey growth is formed without liquefaction of the culture medium. On agar, but better on glycerine agar, the growths have a greyish-white appearance. In agar plate cultures they show a bluish translucence, the individual colonies being circular, with slightly irregular contours and a moist surface. Young colonies are glass-like, but older colonies are thick at the centre and more opaque. Stab cultures show after one or two days a fine dust-like line of growth. According to Yersin, when sown on gelatine the bacillus gives rise to white transparent colonies which, when examined in reflected light, present iridescent borders. In bouillon the cultures present a characteristic appearance; the liquid remains clear whilst a granular deposit takes place on the sides and bottom of the tube. Examined with the microscope, these various cultures show chains of a short bacillus, presenting here and there large bulbous swellings. In gelatine the bacilli sometimes form fine threads, sometimes thick bundles made up of many laterally agglomerated bacteria.

The most favourable temperature for culture is from 36° Cent. to 39° Cent.

The bacillus, according to Kitasato, does not form spores.

*Experimental plague.*—Intentional and unintentional experiments have proved or, rather, made probable, the inoculability of plague in man. Whyte, in 1802, communicated the disease to himself and died of it. At Cairo, in 1835, two condemned criminals



were inoculated from the blood of plague patients; they contracted the disease but recovered. The value of these experiments, as proving inoculability, is somewhat invalidated by the circumstance that they were made in the presence of an epidemic of the disease; ordinary methods of infection cannot be said, therefore, to have been absolutely excluded. For the same reason the cases of Aoyama and his assistant, who were believed to have contracted the disease from dissection wounds, cannot be held as proving that plague is inoculable in man. The recent deplorable accident in a Vienna laboratory, by which fatal plague was acquired, in what way is not exactly known, from manipulations with plague cultures, goes far to complete the little that was wanting in the chain of evidence that this disease is caused by the introduction of the specific bacillus into the human body. The unintentional experiment, in this instance at all events, was not vitiated by having been made in the presence of a plague epidemic.

There is no reason for supposing that man differs in this respect from the lower animals, many of which are exceedingly susceptible to inoculation. Pigeons survive, but mice, rats, guinea-pigs, and rabbits are invariably killed if successfully inoculated from the buboes\* of plague patients; and present on dissection characteristic lesions with numerous bacilli in the lymphatic glands, blood, spleen, and other viscera. Guinea-pigs die in from two to five days after inoculation, mice in from one to three days. Sheep and swine are feebly, if at all, susceptible (Lowson). Monkeys readily take the disease.

In the case of the guinea-pig, within a few hours of the introduction of the virus a considerable amount of œdema is already apparent around the puncture, and the adjacent gland is perceptibly

\* The pus from a bubo is not always infective. Inoculation made with such may fail. Apparently the bacteria of suppuration may kill the *Bacillus pestis*.



swollen. At the end of twenty-four hours the animal is very ill; its coat is rough and staring, and it refuses food. Presently it falls on its side and becomes convulsed, one fit following another with increasing frequency as death approaches. If the body is opened immediately after death a rosy red sanguineous œdema is found at the point of inoculation, and hæmorrhagic inflammatory effusions around the nearest lymphatic gland, which is much swollen and full of bacilli. The intestines are hyperæmic; the adrenals, kidneys, and liver are red and swollen. The much enlarged spleen frequently presents an eruption of small whitish granulations resembling in appearance miliary tubercles. All the organs, and even any serous fluid that may be present in peritoneum or pleura, will be found to contain plague bacilli. In the blood, besides those free in the liquor sanguinis, bacilli are to be found in the mono-nuclear, though not, it is said, in the poly-nuclear leucocytes.

The disease is readily communicable to the lower animals from cultures.

*Intensification and attenuation of virus.*—There can be no question that, both by artificial means and in a natural way, the virulence of the bacillus of plague is susceptible of modification. It has been remarked in Russia, in Persia, and in Calcutta, that certain outbreaks of plague were preceded by a sporadic, or epidemic febrile, sometimes afebrile, affection in the course of which the lymphatic glands became enlarged and perhaps suppurated. Cases of this nature, in which a bacteriological examination proved that a cocco-bacillus was present in the blood and enlarged glands, are recorded by Drs. Cobb and Simpson (*Indian Med. Gaz.*, Nov., 1896). It is further known that in some instances the virulence and case mortality of a plague epidemic show a tendency to decrease, the early cases being the most frequently and most rapidly fatal. These facts seem to indicate that under certain unknown natural con-



ditions the virus tends to acquire increased potency, whilst in other circumstances its virulence tends to diminish.

This conjecture is countenanced by the results of experiment on animals. It has been shown that by passing the virus by inoculation from one guinea-pig to another the rate of its action becomes accelerated. On the other hand, Yersin remarks that, although it is difficult to start a gelatine-peptone cultivation, nevertheless, when obtained, such a cultivation—at all events certain parts of such a cultivation—will be found to be quite as lethal as virus derived directly from a bubo. He further observed that in such cultures a certain proportion of the colonies developed more rapidly than others; that if inoculation were made from these more rapidly developed colonies, their virulence is found to be diminished; and that if these rapidly growing cultures are frequently repeated, in the long run they cease to be fatal to guinea-pigs, although they may still prove fatal to white mice. During the height of the Hong Kong epidemic the same observer asserted that he found in the soil forming the floor of plague-haunted houses, four to five centimetres below the surface, a bacterium with all the morphological, staining, and culture properties of the plague bacillus, but which was devoid of virulence. This, which, if confirmed, would be an important observation from the ætiological standpoint, has been strenuously denied.

These various natural and experimental data indicate a very pronounced tendency to mutability as regards virulence on the part of the plague bacillus; a disposition which, in the future, may very well be turned to important practical account.

*Feeding experiments.*—Rats or mice fed on cultures, or on fragments of the liver or spleen of animals dead of plague, acquire the disease and generally die with the characteristic symptoms, lesions, and bacilli.

*Experiment on contagion.*—Yersin placed in the



same cage healthy and inoculated mice. The inoculated mice died first, but later the originally healthy and uninoculated mice also succumbed ; proving that plague is not only inoculable but that it is also communicable through the atmosphere, or by contact, or by ectozoa.

*Conditions favouring naturally acquired plague.*  
—The most potent circumstances which predispose to the epidemic outbreak of plague are extreme filth and overcrowding. In such circumstances the virus, once introduced, tends to spread. These conditions, however, are not all-sufficient ; for even in the filthiest and most crowded Oriental towns, and without any apparent alteration in the habits or circumstances of the population, the disease, after having become epidemic, dies out spontaneously. It may be difficult to indicate the exact way or ways in which filth and overcrowding operate, but certain it is, as experience has shown, that in sanitary hygienic conditions plague does not spread even if introduced, and that in opposite conditions it may for a time spread like wildfire.

Filth and overcrowding imply close proximity of the sick and the healthy ; an atmosphere saturated with the emanations of the sick ; a lowered tone of the general health ; abundant saturation of soil and surrounding media with animal refuse, fitting them as a nidus for what might be termed natural culture of the germ ; abundance of body vermin of all kinds ; abundance of other vermin, such as rats and mice, which serve as multipliers of the virus ; carelessness about personal cleanliness, about wounds of the hands and feet, about clothing, and about food, dishes, and water. One can understand how in such circumstances the germ has opportunities to multiply and spread.

Plague, though "catching," is not nearly so infectious as are scarlet fever, measles, small-pox, or even typhus. Medical men, and even nurses, in clean airy hospitals rarely acquire the disease, provided they have no open wounds and do not remain too long in close proximity to their patients. In cities the cleanly



districts are generally spared. This was well exemplified in the late epidemics at Canton and Hong Kong, where the airy, cleanly European quarters and the relatively clean, well-ventilated boat population were practically exempt; whilst the disease ran riot in the adjoining filthy, overcrowded native houses only a few yards away.

The fact that plague can be communicated to the lower animals by feeding them on the tissues of plague patients and on cultures of the specific bacillus, suggests that the disease may be conveyed to man in food or drink. Kitasato has found the bacillus in the intestinal contents of patients. Water or food contaminated with sewage or fæcal matter may, therefore, be regarded as a possible medium of infection.

It would appear that a certain degree of concentration of virus, such as we may assume to exist in direct inoculation into wounds, or a prolonged exposure to concentrated aërially-borne germs, is necessary for successful infection. Germs do not penetrate the unbroken epidermis, as proved by the impunity with which *post-mortem* examinations are made; but it seems not improbable that in a considerable proportion of instances the plague germ is introduced through trifling wounds of the feet. It is conceivable that such germs as may be lying about on the ground, deposited there in the discharges of sick human beings or of plague-stricken animals, or perhaps growing there in natural culture, may be picked up in this way. The frequency with which the primary bubo, as will be pointed out, is located in the deep femoral glands suggests this. One can understand, too, how lice, fleas, bugs, and perhaps flies might act as carriers of the virus from person to person, inserting it with their bites, or inducing scratching and superficial skin lesions through which the virus obtains entrance. Yersin found that the flies in his Hong Kong plague laboratory died in great numbers, their bodies being crowded



with the specific bacillus; he injected bouillon containing a trituration of one of these flies into a guinea-pig, and the animal presently died with all the signs of plague. Sablonowski, who in 1884 in a measure anticipated the discovery of the bacillus by Kitasato and Yersin, remarked that during the Mesopotamian epidemic of that year a certain species of fly appeared and disappeared concurrently with the plague; he considered that this insect was an active agent in spreading the disease.

*Plague among rats, etc.*—Many observers have remarked the great mortality among rats and other animals which generally precedes and accompanies outbreaks of plague in man. Writing about the mortality among rats during the recent Canton epidemic, Rennie (*Chinese Imp. Mar. Customs Gaz. Med. Rep.*, No. 48) remarks that the Chinese regarded this unusual and striking occurrence as a sure indication of an extension of the epidemic. From districts of the city where the plague had been raging for some time the rats entirely disappeared, whilst they kept on dying in other quarters to which the disease afterwards spread. The rats, he says, would come out of their holes, in broad daylight even, and tumble about in a dazed condition and die. Certain Chinese officials took steps to have all dead rats collected; in a very short time one officer collected upwards of 22,000.

Rocher (*Chinese Imp. Mar. Cust. Gaz. Med. Rep.*, No. 15) states that in Yunnan the mortality among the rats is particularly noticeable. Other animals also die, he says; oxen, sheep, deer, pigs, and dogs are all attacked at times, the dog less severely and less frequently than the others.

Pringle (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, Aug. 8th, 1896) says that in Shurwal, Himalayas, where in 1864 plague was epidemic, the rats quitted the various villages in anticipation of the advent of the disease; and that the people, taught by experience, on seeing this exodus recognised it as a warning.



Clemow, in a valuable paper in the *Journal of Tropical Medicine*, February, 1900, points out the connection of Mongolian and Siberian plague epidemics with the occurrence of the disease in a species of marmot, called tarbagan (*Arctomys lobax*), common and much hunted in these regions.

These and many similar facts with regard to plague in the lower animals throw important light on one of the ways in which the disease is spread; and it seems to me that they have to be reckoned with in the future, more than they have been in the past, in devising schemes of quarantine, and in attempts at stamping out the disease in already affected localities. I consider that the wholesale destruction of domestic vermin should go hand in hand with the isolation of plague-stricken patients.\*

*Age, sex, and occupation* have very little influence in plague. The youngest children are susceptible; old age seems to be to a certain extent protective, the disease being rarer after fifty than during adolescence. Women, doubtless on account of their remaining much indoors in the tainted surroundings, are relatively more frequently attacked than men.

*Geological constitution of soil* appears to have no direct influence on plague.

*Atmospheric temperatures*, if very high or very low, seem to have a repressing effect. Thus, as a rule, epidemics in Egypt and Mesopotamia declined

\* It is stated that the handling of a rat newly dead of plague is fraught with danger; whereas a rat that has been dead for some time and is cold and stiff may be touched with impunity. May it not be that the fleas of the newly dead rat are still in its fur and quit it for the body of the manipulator, carrying on their probosces the bacilli of the disease, which they introduce when they next proceed to feed on their new host? When a rat has been dead for some time and the body is cold, the fleas have already forsaken it for another host; hence the impunity with which it may be handled. The fact that the glands of the legs are usually the first to become implicated in the majority of cases of plague suggests that the virus is generally introduced through the skin of the feet or legs, which are just those parts most likely to be attacked by a flea picked up in walking across the floor of a room in which plague-stricken rats or other animals have died.



during the height of the very hot and dry summer, and in Europe during the extreme cold of winter. On the other hand, plague, on more than one occasion, has flourished during a Russian winter; and also, as in Hong Kong recently, during the heat of a tropical summer. On the whole, the evidence points to moderate temperatures combined with a certain degree of dampness as being the principal atmospheric conditions favouring epidemic outbreaks.

*Elevation*, as regards sea-level, does not directly affect the general distribution of the disease. Indeed, mountain tribes, probably on account of their poverty and squalor, are peculiarly liable to epidemics. In houses the ground floor is more dangerous than the upper storeys.

The *extension of plague epidemics* is peculiar, and in many respects resembles that of cholera. It follows trade routes. Sometimes it spreads rapidly from point to point; more generally it creeps slowly from one village to another, from one street or one house to another. Sometimes it skips a house, a village, or a district to appear there later. Particular houses, and even particular floors of houses (Lowson), may be infected, whilst those in the neighbourhood are free from the disease. Manifestly its extension depends more on place infection than on direct transmission from person to person.

**Symptoms.**—*Incubation period.*—Symptoms of plague begin to show themselves after an incubation period of from two to eight days. It is said that in certain very rare instances the incubation period may extend to as much as fifteen days. It is also said that in highly malignant epidemics the disease may declare itself within three or four hours from the time of exposure to infection.

*Prodromal stage.*—In a certain, but small, proportion of cases there is a prodromal stage characterised by physical and mental depression, anorexia, aching of the limbs, feelings of chilliness, giddiness,



palpitations, and sometimes dull pains in the groin at the seat of the future bubo.

*Stage of invasion.*—Usually, however, the disease sets in somewhat suddenly with fever, extreme lassitude, frontal or, more rarely, occipital headache, aching of the limbs, vertigo, drowsiness or perhaps wakefulness, troubled dreams. Rigor is rarely a marked feature; more often the disease is heralded by unimportant feelings of chilliness. The face quickly acquires a peculiar expression, the features being drawn and haggard, the eyes bloodshot, sunken and staring, the pupils probably dilated; sometimes the face wears an expression of fear or horror. The patient, when he can walk, drags himself about in a dreamy sort of way, or he staggers like a drunken man. There may be nausea and vomiting; in some instances there is diarrhœa.

*Stage of fever.*—The stage of invasion may last for a day or two without a serious rise of temperature occurring. Generally, however, it is of much shorter duration; or it may be altogether wanting, the disease developing abruptly without definite rigor or other warning, the thermometer rising somewhat rapidly to  $103^{\circ}$  or  $104^{\circ}$ , or even to  $107^{\circ}$ , with a corresponding acceleration of pulse and respiration. The rise of temperature is more gradual than is usual in malarial fevers. The skin is now dry and burning, the face is bloated, the eyes are still more injected, sunken and fixed, the hearing is dulled. The tongue is swollen and covered with a creamy fur, which rapidly dries and becomes brown or almost black; sordes form on the teeth and about the lips and nostrils. Thirst is intense, prostration extreme, the patient from utter weakness being hardly able to make himself heard. Sometimes the patient becomes delirious; more generally he sinks into a state of typhoid stupor and prostration, perhaps picking the bedclothes or trying to catch imaginary objects. The delirium is sometimes wildly furious, sometimes fatuous, sometimes of a low muttering type. Coma, convulsions—some-



times of a tetanic character, retention of urine, subsultus tendinum, and other nervous phenomena may occur. Vomiting is in certain cases very frequent; some are constipated, others have diarrhœa. The spleen and liver are usually both enlarged. Urine is scanty, but rarely contains more than a trace of albumin. The pulse, at first full and bounding, in the majority of cases rapidly loses tone, becoming small, frequent, fluttering, dicrotic, intermittent. In the later stages the heart may be dilated, the first sound being feeble or absent. In many, as death approaches, there may be a certain amount of cyanosis.

*Stage of adenitis.*—In from about two-thirds to nine-tenths of the cases, some time between the first few hours and the fifth day, generally within twenty-four hours, the characteristic bubo or buboes develop. Usually (in 70 per cent.) the bubo forms in the groin, most frequently on the right side, affecting one or more of the femoral glands; less frequently (20 per cent.) it is the axillary glands, and still more rarely (10 per cent.), and most commonly in children, it is the glands at the angle of the lower jaw that are affected. The buboes are usually single; in about one-eighth of the cases, however, they form simultaneously on both sides of the body. Very rarely are buboes formed in the popliteal or in the epitrochlear elbow glands, or in those at the root of the neck. Occasionally buboes occur simultaneously in different parts of the body.

The buboes vary considerably in size. In some instances they are no larger than a walnut; in others they attain the size of a goose's egg. Pain is often very severe; on the other hand, it is sometimes hardly complained of. Besides the enlargement of the gland itself, there is in most instances distinct infiltration of the surrounding connective tissue.

In a very small proportion of cases what are usually described as carbuncles, but which are in reality small patches of moist gangrenous skin which may gradually involve a large area (Lowson), develop



on different parts of the integument. These occur either in the early stage or late in the disease. Sometimes they slough and lead to extensive gangrene.

In favourable cases, sooner or later, after or without the appearance of the bubo, the constitutional symptoms abate with the setting in of a profuse perspiration. The tongue now begins to moisten, the pulse-rate and temperature to fall, and the mild delirium, if it has been present, to abate. The bubo, however, continues to enlarge and to soften. After a few days, if not incised, it bursts and discharges pus and sloughs—sometimes very evil-smelling. In rare instances suppuration is delayed for weeks; and in some the bubo subsides after a few weeks, or perhaps months, without having broken down. Convalescence, when it occurs, sets in some time between the sixth and tenth day, although it may be delayed for a fortnight or three weeks. Occasionally a pyæmic condition with boils, abscesses, cellulitis, parotitis, or secondary adenitis succeeds the primary fever. The sores left by the buboes and abscesses of plague are extremely indolent and may take months to heal.

*Hæmorrhages* of different kinds are not an unusual feature in plague. Ecchymotic effusions of a purplish or dull red tint, and varying in size from a hemp seed to spots half an inch in diameter, are very often found scattered in greater or less profusion over the skin, especially, according to Lowson, on exposed parts of the body and at the sites of insect bites or of wounds. Larger patches of cutaneous hæmorrhagic effusion do occur, but they are rare. There may be bleeding from the nose, mouth, lungs, stomach, bowel, or kidneys. Hæmorrhages occur with marked frequency in certain epidemics; they are regarded as evidence of great malignity. Especially malignant are those epidemics in which hæmoptysis, or pneumonia, is a common occurrence.

*Abortion* almost invariably occurs in pregnant women; the foetus sometimes shows signs of the disease.



*Death* may take place at any time in the course of plague. Usually it occurs between the third and fifth day, with symptoms of profound adynamia, heart failure, or perhaps from convulsions, from coma, from internal hæmorrhage, or later, from exhaustion from prolonged fever or suppuration, or from secondary hæmorrhages.

On the other hand, in a certain proportion of cases convalescence sets in and proceeds more or less rapidly. Generally it is a tedious affair, being prolonged by suppuration, sloughing, and similar complications.

**Pestis siderans.**—In that type of plague which has acquired the name of *pestis siderans* the disease proves rapidly fatal, death occurring some twelve to twenty-four hours from the onset of the symptoms, and before there is time for the development of the bubo.

**Pneumonic plague.**—This type of the disease, which has recently been carefully studied by Childe, is especially dangerous as well as deadly: dangerous because of the multitude of bacilli which are scattered about in the patient's expectoration, and because the clinical symptoms are unlike those of typical plague and are apt to be mistaken for some ordinary forms of lung disease. The illness commences with rigor, malaise, intense headache, vomiting, general pains, and fever. Cough and dyspnœa set in, accompanied by a profuse watery, blood-tinged sputum. The sputum is not viscid and rusty as in ordinary pneumonia. Moist râles are audible at the bases of the lungs, the breathing becomes hurried, other symptoms rapidly become worse, delirium sets in, and the patient dies on the fourth or fifth day. This is the most fatal, and is said to be the most infectious, form of plague.

**Abortive or larval plague (pestis ambulans.)**—Certain epidemics are distinguished by the larger proportion of mild cases. In such, buboes form and suppurate or resolve, the associated consti-



tutional symptoms being comparatively mild or, perhaps, altogether wanting. In every epidemic there may be cases in which the patient is able to be about, having little, if any, fever, and apparently being little inconvenienced by the disease. Such cases, however, may collapse suddenly.

The occurrence of epidemics of bubo with little or no constitutional symptoms, which precede and follow true plague, has already been alluded to (p. 173). These cases are of great importance in their bearing on the spread and prevention of the graver disease.

**Relapses**, though rare, do occur and are dangerous.

**Mortality.**—The case mortality varies in different epidemics. It is usually greatest at the beginning and height of the epidemic. Disregarding those mild epidemics just alluded to, the death-rate may be anything from 60 to 95 per cent. of those attacked. Much appears to depend on the social condition of the patient, the attention and nursing available, and on the amount of the initial dose of virus. Thus in the late Hong Kong epidemic, whilst the deaths among the indifferently fed, overcrowded, unwashed, and almost unnursed Chinese amounted to 93·4 per cent., it was only 77 per cent. among the Indians, 60 per cent. among the Japanese, and 18·2 per cent. among the Europeans; a gradation of mortality in general correspondence with the social and hygienic conditions of these different nationalities.

**Pathological anatomy and pathology.**—After death from plague the surface of the body presents very frequently numerous ecchymotic spots or patches. The number and extent of these vary, apparently, in different epidemics. Sometimes—as in the recent Hong Kong epidemic (Lowson)—they are few and trifling, having their origin, as mentioned, principally in insect bites. In other epidemics, according to their historians, the cutaneous hæmorrhages have been both extensive and numerous; hence the



name Black Death formerly applied to this disease. The characteristic buboes are generally apparent; occasionally there are also furuncles, pustules, and abscesses. Rigor mortis is usually moderate; sometimes *post-mortem* muscular contractions, like those of cholera, take place. *Post-mortem* rise of temperature is often observed. Decomposition is said to set in early.

The brain, spinal cord, and their meninges are markedly congested, and there may be an increase of subarachnoid and ventricular fluid. There are numerous and pronounced *puncta cruenta* on the brain sections; occasionally there may be considerable extravasations of blood into the substance of the brain (mesocephalon and medulla oblongata).

Ecchymoses are common in all serous surfaces; the contents of the different serous cavities may be sanguineous. Extensive hæmorrhages are occasionally found in the peritoneum, mediastinum, trachea, bowel, pelvis of kidney, ureter, bladder, or in the pleural cavities. The lung frequently shows evidences of bronchitis and hypostatic pneumonia; sometimes hæmorrhagic infarcts and abscesses are found. The right side of the heart and great veins are usually distended with feebly coagulated or fluid blood.

The liver is congested and swollen, and its cells are degenerated. The spleen is enlarged to two or three times its normal size. The mucosa of the alimentary canal as a whole is congested, showing here and there punctate ecchymotic effusions and, occasionally, hæmorrhagic erosions, and even—especially about the ileo-cæcal valve—ulcerations.

Similarly the kidneys are congested and may exhibit ecchymoses, both on the surface and in the pelvis. The perirenal connective tissue also may be congested and infiltrated. The ureters and the mucous surface of the bladder are often found to be sprinkled with ecchymoses, in which cases the contained urine is generally bloody.

Evidence is invariably discoverable of serious



implication of the lymphatic system. One, two or many of the lymphatic glands are inflamed and swollen. Both in and around the glands there is much exudation with hæmorrhagic effusion, hyperplasia of the gland cells, and an enormous multiplication of bacteria. The glands of the groin, of the armpit, and of the neck are particularly affected. On dissection, the superficial buboes are very often found to be connected with extensive, deep-seated adenitis extending either through the crural ring or down the neck, and involving the pelvic, the abdominal, or the mediastinal glands as the case may be. Section of the affected glands will reveal any stage of inflammation from cellular hyperplasia to suppurative softening, according to the period of the disease at which death has occurred. In whatever stage during the activity of the disease death has taken place, there is always evidence of intense hyperæmia in, as well as around, these glands; a hyperæmia which is specially characterised by a marked tendency to hæmorrhagic effusion. In the earlier stages of the adenitis the specific bacillus is found in the lymph spaces around the follicles; later, it is found in the follicles themselves, in the lymph spaces, and in the medullary cords (Aoyama).

If death has taken place at a very early stage of the disease, the swelling of the lymphatic glands may not be so evident; but it is rare not to find some gland or glands that are characteristically affected. Occasionally, instead of intense and more or less localised adenitis, a milder but more general enlargement of the lymphatic glands of the entire body is discovered. Sometimes the lymphatic trunks are also markedly implicated in the specific inflammation.

**Diagnosis.**—The occurrence of fever and adenitis during a plague epidemic must always be viewed with suspicion, particularly if the fever rapidly assumes an adynamic character. In the early stages diagnosis may be very doubtful, especially in pneumonic plague. The discovery of the



bacillus in the glands, blood, sputum, or discharges is the only thoroughly reliable test. A small quantity of the suspected material should be spread on a slide, dried, fixed, and stained with an aniline dye. Should a cocco-bacillus be found with the characteristic bi-polar staining, it should be cultivated by Haffkine's method in broth on which clarified butter (ghee) or cocoanut-oil is floated. From the under surface of the oil, if the bacillus be that of plague, stalactite-like growths of bacilli will form. When disturbed, the stalactite growths break off and fall in snow-like flakes to the bottom of the vessel. No other known bacillus behaves in this way.

**Prophylaxis.**—The prophylaxis of plague, as of other infectious diseases, has to be considered from the standpoint of the community and from that of the individual. As regards the former, it includes measures for preventing the introduction of the virus, of preventing its spread if introduced, and for securing its destruction.

*Quarantine.*—All systems of land or sea quarantine directed against plague should take cognisance of the facts that the incubation period of the disease may extend to eight days, and that plague affects certain of the lower animals as well as man. Seven days is the minimum period that should elapse between the time of departure from an infected place, between the date of the last death, and between the arrival of a ship or batch of travellers with cases of plague in progress among them, and free pratique. Moreover, as Kitasato has shown that the specific bacillus persists in the bodies of those who have recovered from plague for at least three weeks from the cessation of the active disease, convalescents should be isolated for a month before they are allowed to mingle with an uninfected community.

Although Kitasato has stated that the plague bacillus perishes in four days when dried on cover-glasses and protected from sunlight, and in from three to four hours when exposed to sunlight, ex-



perience has shown that under certain conditions, as yet unknown, it will survive outside the body for a very much longer period. There is a considerable mass of evidence tending to show that clothes, skins, textile fabrics, and other similar materials, may preserve the virus in an active state for several months. Such articles, therefore, coming from an infected district, more especially if there is any suspicion that they have been soiled by, or have been in proximity to, plague patients, should be destroyed or thoroughly disinfected.

In ships coming from an infected port the rats, mice, and suchlike vermin should be destroyed, thrown overboard and sunk before harbour is entered.

Kitasato found that bouillon cultures of the bacillus were killed in half an hour by a temperature of 80° Cent., and in a few minutes by steam at 100° Cent. Growth of the bacillus did not occur in cultures after exposure for one hour to a 1 per cent. solution of carbolic acid. The bacilli are also killed by a three hours' exposure to milk of lime. These facts serve as a guide to suitable disinfectants; of which the best and most practicable are steam, 1 in 1,000 corrosive sublimate in carbol-sulphuric acid, lysol, chloride of lime in 1 per cent. solution, and carbolic acid in 5 per cent. solution.

In the event of plague breaking out in a community, so soon as the disease is recognised, and provided it be feasible—as in the case of small, isolated villages, a double military cordon should be drawn around the implicated district, and the strictest isolation maintained. The patients should be rigidly isolated in special hospitals, the houses which they had occupied thoroughly disinfected and temporarily evacuated, or, better still—especially if insanitary and of small value—destroyed by fire. The clothes and bedding of all patients should be burned. The dead, with as little delay as possible, should be buried in deep graves or cremated. Isolated obser-



vation camps should be organised in which "suspects" and "contacts" may be segregated for a time equal, at least, to the incubation period of the disease. Rats and mice should be poisoned or otherwise destroyed, and their bodies burned. Besides such special measures, general sanitation should be scrupulously carried out. The diffusion of plague by railways must be carefully guarded against.

In India the compulsory inspection of all dead bodies prior to burial has been found a valuable measure for discovering infected houses and localities.

In all efforts to control the introduction and spread of plague, cases of *pestis ambulans* must be sought out and treated with as much respect as the more virulent forms of the disease.

It is very questionable if in practice any system of rigid quarantine, no matter how carefully devised and theoretically perfect, is ever absolutely protective. Its working is necessarily at the mercy of a large number of individuals any one of whom, either from incompetence or from dishonesty, may permit its regulations to be broken through. Even if the introduction of plague by man could be prevented in this way, it is difficult to see how its introduction by rats or mice could be effectually guarded against. Quarantine may, and doubtless does, keep out a proportion of the infected, and to this extent it does some good; but it must be combined with careful general sanitation, with thorough disinfection, with the destruction of all discharges and fomites, with the speedy discovery and isolation of the sick, with the evacuation of infected houses and even of neighbourhoods, and with the wholesale destruction of vermin. These latter things English experience has shown to be far more effective than any system of quarantine; it was only in deference to Continental views that quarantine, in the ancient sense of the word, was practised in Great Britain against plague and another disease—yellow fever. A rational



quarantine, plus rational plague measures, is what is wanted.

**Destruction of vermin and other measures in anticipation of the introduction of plague virus.**—Considering the well-established facts that rats are specially susceptible to plague, that in many epidemics they have been attacked weeks before the disease has shown itself in man, that their habits bring them into intimate association with man, there can be little doubt that these rodents play a very important part in the diffusion of the introduced virus (Simond). This being the case, it is reasonable to believe that if the rats were destroyed the risk from the introduction of a case of plague, whether by man, rat, or fomites, would be very much reduced in any community in which this measure had been carried out. It is curious that sanitarians have not more emphatically insisted on the practical importance of acting on this. The responsible authorities of all towns and villages in active communication with plague centres should, *in anticipation* of the possible advent of the infection, see to the destruction of all rats in their districts, in addition to instituting the ordinary measures for dealing with overcrowding, food and water supply, domestic and municipal cleanliness. The destruction of rats is a cheap measure in comparison to the costly sanitary fads that in India and elsewhere have so signally failed to arrest epidemic plague.

**Personal prophylaxis.**—As regards the individual all unnecessary visits, either to plague patients or to plague neighbourhoods, should be avoided and, if possible, prevented. The attendants on the sick, especially, ought to take care that the ventilation of the sick room is thorough, that cubic space is abundant, and that the utmost cleanliness is practised. Nurses must not hang over patients unnecessarily; they must also be careful to seal up and cover any wounds, no matter how trifling, they may have on their hands; they must go into the open air frequently,



and not remain in the wards too many hours at a stretch; they must employ disinfectants freely on themselves and on the excreta of their patients, and use a disinfectant mouth wash from time to time; they must be careful to wash hands and face before eating; and they must never partake of food or drink in the ward or sick-room. By carefully observing these common-sense precautions the risk in nursing plague patients is very much reduced, and is certainly very much less than that attending the nursing of cases of typhus exanthematicus. To obviate risk from wounds and to prevent the access of fleas and similar suctorial insects, those engaged on plague duties should wear boots and have the legs protected by trousers tied tightly round the ankles, or, better, by putties. Leather gloves are advisable if there is much handling of furniture or of anything likely to abrade the skin. Hospital work is only dangerous when patients are allowed to lie in their infected clothing, when disinfectants are not properly used, and when attendants are careless, stupid, or rash.

**Haffkine's inoculations.**—During the Bombay epidemic Haffkine introduced a system of prophylactic inoculation which, apparently, is of real value both in reducing the number attacked with plague to the extent of from 77 to 85 per cent., and also of diminishing the mortality in those attacked by 80 per cent. A description of Haffkine's methods will be found in the *Brit. Med. Journ.* of June 12th, 1897. It consists essentially in the subcutaneous injection of cultures of plague bacilli killed by heat. The reaction is at times severe, but no grave accident, so far as known, has hitherto occurred. The figures are not so favourable for Mauritius, where inoculations reduced the plague incidence to the extent of 45 per cent. only, and the mortality in those inoculated to 32·9 per cent. The Indian Plague Commission reports in favour of these inoculations, but remarks that the vaccine requires more accurate



standardising and more accurate dosage than hitherto to secure the best results.

**Lustig's injections.**—Recently (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, Feb. 10th, 1900) Lustig and Galeotti have introduced a method of preventive inoculation which apparently obviates many of the drawbacks of Haffkine's. They dissolve agar-agar plate cultures of *Bacillus pectis* in 1 per cent. solution of caustic potash, precipitate the nucleo-proteids so dissolved by weak acetic or hydrochloric acid, collect the precipitate, wash and dry it *in vacuo*. This substance can be kept apparently for an indefinite time. The dose for a man is about 3 mg. Before injecting it subcutaneously, it is dissolved in a convenient quantity of 0.5 per cent. solution of carbonate of soda. Its injection is followed by marked local and general reaction, and, in the case of the lower animals, by at least temporary immunity from plague.

**Treatment.**—Hitherto the treatment of plague has been mainly symptomatic. In attempting to relieve symptoms the asthenic tendencies of the disease must ever be borne in mind, and depressant remedies of all kinds carefully avoided.

During the earlier stages, when headache and perhaps high fever are urgent, much relief may be obtained from ice bags to the head and neck. If it be deemed advisable to attempt to lower temperature, sponging of the body every hour with warm water is a much safer measure than the employment of such antipyretics as antipyrin and similar drugs. Vomiting, according to Lowson, is usually relieved by a full dose of calomel followed by a saline. If this does not succeed, or if diarrhœa be present, he recommends ice pills and an effervescing mixture containing morphia and hydrocyanic acid. Sinapisms to the epigastrium are also useful. Later, when the pulse begins to fail, the same authority recommends strychnia, with or without carbonate of ammonia, in preference to digitalis or strophanthus. Strychnia, he says, should be used as a routine treatment,



and commenced early in the disease. In collapse, stimulants of various kinds, including strong ammonia to the nostrils and ether hypodermically, are indicated; they sometimes succeed in resuscitating a sinking patient. Given with judgment, Lowson found that morphia was by far the best hypnotic. At the commencement one-eighth to half a grain hypodermically relieves suffering and procures sleep; later, one-eighth of a grain suffices. Hyoscine (one two-hundredth to one seventy-fifth grain), or chloral (twenty grains) and bromide of potassium (thirty grains) are of service for the same purpose. Diarrhœa, if urgent, is best treated by intestinal antiseptics, as salol in 10-grain doses every four hours. The buboes in the early stage may be treated with applications of glycerine and belladonna. Should they become red and inflamed they must be poulticed and, on softening occurring, incised and dressed with iodoform. Indolent bubonic swellings should be treated with iodine liniment. Feeding and stimulation are to be conducted on ordinary principles.

**Serum therapy.**—Yersin, Calmette, and Borrel have shown that intravenous, intraperitoneal, and subcutaneous injections of gelatine cultures of plague bacillus mixed with a little bouillon and heated for one hour to 58° Cent., if employed in doses just short of producing a fatal issue, and repeated three or four times at intervals of fifteen days, render rabbits immune to the plague bacillus. The heating kills the bacillus but does not destroy its toxins which, at first, give rise to a very smart but, with each repetition of the injection, diminishing reaction. They further found that the serum of an immunised animal, if injected into an unprotected rabbit, exercised both an immunising and a therapeutic influence. An unprotected rabbit was inoculated with a virulent culture of the bacillus, and twelve hours afterwards with the serum. The progress of the disease, which would otherwise have certainly proved fatal, was at once arrested and the animal recovered. They then



immunised a horse by intravenous injections of living virulent cultures. After several injections made at intervals (the second after twenty days), they found that reaction, from being intense, became shorter and less pronounced, and that the serum of the animal was now both preventive and curative of inoculated plague in rabbits, guinea-pigs, and mice.

Accounts had led us to infer that the value of this discovery had been practically established for man. Of twenty-six cases of plague in China treated with Yersin's antipest serum, twenty-four are reported to have recovered. Further experience in India has not confirmed these brilliant results, the serum treatment of plague there having, so far, proved a failure.



## CHAPTER XI.

## DENGUE.

**Definition.**—Dengue—derived, according to Hirsch, from the Spanish equivalent of “dandy”—is the name applied to a specific and highly infectious fever peculiar to warm climates. It occurs usually in widespread epidemics. Once introduced into a community it extends with great rapidity, affecting a large proportion of the inhabitants; in these respects it resembles influenza, a disease with which it has by some been confounded. Dengue, however, differs from influenza in many respects, chiefly in being attended with a well-marked rubeoloid eruption and peculiarly severe rheumatic-like pains in the joints and limbs, and in not being accompanied or followed by pulmonary and other serious complications.

**Geographical distribution and mode of spread.**—Most parts of the tropical world have been visited at some time or another by dengue. From a study of the dates of the various epidemics, it would seem that there is a tendency for it to assume pandemic characters about once in every twenty years. The last great wave occurred in the early 'seventies. Perhaps of all places in the world it is most frequently met with in the West Indies.

Recently dengue has appeared in Syria, Asia Minor, on the Ægean shores of Greece and Turkey, and in North Queensland, Australia (1895–97). Early in the century it was seen in America, as far north as Charleston and Philadelphia in the United States, and as far south as São Paulo in the Brazils.

Like other infectious diseases dengue tends to advance along trade routes and lines of communication. Thus, starting from Zanzibar, the epidemic of



1870-73 first reached Aden. Thence it travelled to Suez on the one side and to India on the other. Passing to Singapore, it followed the trade routes to Cochin China and China, spreading at the same time to the islands of the Eastern Archipelago. From India it was carried by the coolie ships to Mauritius and Réunion in 1873.

An epidemic which I witnessed in Amoy (1872) illustrated very well a characteristic feature of dengue epidemics—namely, the peculiar suddenness of their rise and extension, and the general prevalence of the disease in an affected community. I am under the mark when I say that in this particular epidemic quite 75 per cent. of natives and foreigners were attacked within a very few weeks. All ages and occupations, both sexes, and people in every condition of life, were alike subject to it. About the first week in August I heard that a peculiar disease had appeared in the town; by the end of the second week the cases were numerous, whole families being prostrated at a time. A week later the cases were still more numerous, and by the end of the month so general was the disease that the business of the town was seriously interfered with. By the end of the following month—that is to say, in about eight weeks from the first appearance of the epidemic—all the susceptible apparently had passed through it, and, so far as Amoy residents were concerned, the disease was at an end, cases only occurring for a few weeks longer in visitors from unaffected districts. This course seems to be fairly typical of all dengue epidemics.

**Ætiology.**—*Germ.*—Nothing is known as to the virus of this disease. Doubtless it is similar in its nature to that of all the other exanthematous fevers, diseases to which dengue is manifestly intimately allied.

*Influences of meteorological conditions.*—When dengue spreads beyond its ordinary tropical limits, as, for example, in the epidemics of Philadelphia and Asia Minor, the extension occurs only during the



hottest part of the year—in the late summer and early autumn. Hitherto, such epidemics have been arrested on the approach of winter. Even when occurring within the tropics, dengue prevails principally, though not exclusively, during the hottest part of the year. High temperature seems, therefore, to be one of the conditions it demands.

Epidemics occur indifferently during the dry or the rainy seasons, the hygrometric condition of the atmosphere being without manifest influence.

*Usually a coast disease.*—It would appear that dengue, like yellow fever, prefers the coast line and the deltas and valleys of great rivers to the interior of continents. There are many exceptions to this rule; in 1870–73 it spread all over India. The distribution and concentration of population on the sea-board and along rivers, and the freedom of communication between communities so located probably determine this preference for such localities.

As a rule, elevated places enjoy a relative immunity; if the disease is introduced into such localities, it does not spread. To this, again, there are exceptions, for the Syrian epidemic referred to prevailed in certain spots 4,000 to 5,000 feet above the sea.

**Symptoms.**—*Initial fever and eruption.*—An attack of dengue may be preceded for a few hours by a feeling of malaise or, perhaps, by painful rheumatic-like twinges in a limb, toe, finger, or joint. Usually it sets in quite suddenly. A patient, describing his experience, said that in the morning he got up feeling quite well, but before he could complete his dressing he was so prostrated by pain and fever that further exertion was impossible, and he had to crawl back to bed again. Similar stories, illustrative of the suddenness of incidence of the symptoms, circulate during every epidemic of dengue. Sometimes the fever is ushered in by a feeling of chilliness or even by a smart rigor; sometimes a deep flushing on the face is the first sign of the disease.



However introduced, fever rapidly increases. The head and eyeballs ache excessively, and some limb or joint, or even the whole body, is racked with the peculiar stiff, rheumatic-like pains which, as the patient soon discovers, are very much aggravated by movement. The loins are the seat of great discomfort, amounting in some cases to actual pain; the face—particularly the lower part of the forehead, round the eyes, and over the malar bones—becomes suffused a deep purple; and often the skin over part or the whole of the body, and all visible mucous surfaces are more or less flushed, that of the mouth and throat being sore from congestion and perhaps from small superficial erosions. The eyes are usually much injected; very often the whole face is bloated and swollen. This congested erythematous state of the skin constitutes the so-called initial eruption.

These symptoms becoming in severe cases rapidly intensified, the patient, in a few hours, is completely prostrated. His pulse has risen to 120 or more; his temperature to  $103^{\circ}$ , in some cases to  $105^{\circ}$ , or even to  $106^{\circ}$ . He is unable to move owing to the intense headache, the severe pain in limbs and loins, and the profound sense of febrile prostration. From time to time the skin may be moistened by an abortive perspiration, but for the most part it is hot and dry. Gastric oppression is apt to be urgent, and vomiting may occur. Gradually the tongue acquires a moist, creamy fur which, as the fever progresses, tends to become dry and yellow.

*Defervescence.*—In this condition the patient may continue from one to three or four days, the fever declining somewhat after the first day. In the vast majority of cases this, the first and most acute stage, is abruptly terminated about the end of the second day by crisis of diaphoresis, diarrhœa, diuresis, or epistaxis. When epistaxis occurs the relief to the headache is great and immediate. On the occurrence of crisis the erythematous condition of the skin, if it has not already disappeared, rapidly subsides. In



a proportion of cases, and particularly in certain epidemics, crisis does not occur, the fever slowly declining during a period of three or four days. Thus the urgent symptoms abate, and the patient rapidly, or more slowly, passes from what, in many cases, may be described as the agony of the first stage to the comparative calm and comfort of the second.

*The interval.*—When the second stage is established and the thermometer has sunk to normal, the patient is sufficiently well to leave his bed and even to attend to business. An occasional twinge in the leg, arm, or finger, or a tenderness of the soles of the feet, and perhaps giddiness in walking, may remind him of what he has gone through and warn him that he is not quite well yet. But the tongue cleans, and the appetite and sense of well-being return to some extent.

*Terminal fever and eruption.*—This state of comparatively good health continues to the fourth, fifth, sixth, or even to the seventh day counting from the commencement of the illness. Then there is generally a return of fever, slight in most cases, more severe in others; it is usually of very short duration—a few hours. Sometimes this secondary fever does not occur; often it is overlooked. With the recurrence of the fever an eruption of a roseolar character appears. The pains likewise return, perhaps in more than their original severity. Though the fever subsides in a few hours, the eruption, at times very evanescent, may keep out for two or three days longer, to be followed very generally by an imperfect furfuraceous desquamation. It seldom happens that the fever or pains at this stage keep the patient in bed, although that is the best place for him if a comfortable and speedy convalescence is desired. Rarely, in this secondary fever, does the thermometer rise to  $103^{\circ}$ . The temperature falls rapidly to below the normal line on the setting in of diaphoresis, or diarrhœa, or of some form of crisis.

*Characters of the eruption.*—The terminal eruption



of dengue possesses very definite characters. It is absent in a very few cases only; in many of those cases in which it is supposed to be absent, being slight, it is overlooked. As stated, the eruption is roseolar in character. It usually commences on the palms and backs of the hands, extending for a short distance up the forearms. Its development is often associated with sensations of pricking and tingling. On the palms of the hand the spots are at first about the size of a small pea, circular, dusky red, and sometimes slightly elevated. The eruption quickly extends, and is best seen on the back, chest, upper arms, and thighs. In these situations it appears at first as isolated, slightly elevated, circular, reddish brown, rubeoloid spots, from one-eighth to one-half of an inch in diameter, thickly scattered over the surface, each spot being isolated and surrounded by sound skin. After a time the spots enlarging may coalesce in places; thus irregular red patches from one to three inches in diameter are formed. Or, perhaps, there is a general coalescence of spots, isolating here and there patches of sound skin; in this case the islands of sound skin give rise, at first sight, to the impression that they constitute the eruption—a pale eruption, as it were, on a scarlet ground. In a few instances the whole integument may be covered with one unbroken sheet of red. The rash is usually most profuse on the hands, wrists, elbows, and knees, and in these situations it is generally coalescent, and there, too, it may be detected though absent elsewhere. The spots disappear on pressure, and never or rarely become petechial. They fade in the order in which they appear—first on the wrist and hands; then on the neck, face, thighs and body; last on the legs and feet.

*Desquamation.*—Desquamation may go on for two or three weeks. In many it is trifling in amount; for the most part it is furfuraceous. Rarely does the epidermis peel off in flakes of any magnitude; never in the broad sheets seen after scarlatina. Often for a



day or two desquamation is accompanied by intense pruritus.

*Convalescence.*—In some instances, and in some epidemics, the disease terminates with the fading of the eruption; appetite and strength gradually return, and the patient, after a few days of debility, feels quite well again.

*The rheumatoid pains.*—With most, their troubles do not end so soon. For days or weeks some muscle, tendon, or joint is the seat of the peculiar pains which may become so severe as to send their victim back to bed again. Sometimes, three or four weeks after all apparent trace of the disease has vanished, a joint or a muscle will be suddenly disabled by an attack of this description. This may occur in patients who, during the acute stage, suffered little or no pain. A finger or toe, or a joint of a finger or of a toe, may alone suffer. Of all the joints perhaps the knee is most frequently affected; but wrists or shoulders are often attacked, and their associated muscles may even undergo considerable atrophy from enforced disuse. The soles of the feet, too, and the tarsal articulations are favourite sites.

The pains of dengue, both those occurring during the initial fever as well as those that may be regarded as sequelæ, are difficult to locate with precision; the joints or muscles affected may be percussed, pressed, or moved with impunity. Du Brun locates those associated with the knee in the thigh muscles, which, he says, are painful on deep pressure.

The pains are worst usually on getting out of bed in the morning, and on moving the affected part after it has been at rest for some time. They are relieved somewhat by rest and warmth. Passive movements are, as stated, not painful, but any resistance to the movement of the limb may cause acute suffering. When a muscle is affected the pain is accompanied by a sense of powerlessness.

*Other complications and sequelæ.*—Convalescence may be very much delayed by the persistence of



these pains; also by anorexia, by general debility, mental depression, sleeplessness, evanescent feverish attacks, boils, urticarial, lichenoid and papular eruptions, and by troublesome pruritus. Among sequelæ and complications may be mentioned enlargement of the lymphatic glands—particularly the superficial cervical, orchitis, possibly endocarditis and pericarditis, hyperpyrexia, purpura, and hæmorrhages from the mouth, nose, bowel, and uterus. Miscarriage is rare. The urine sometimes contains a trace of albumin, but true nephritis does not occur.

*Variability of epidemic type.*—Judging from the published descriptions, there is considerable variety in the symptoms of this disease in different places and in different epidemics. Some authors mention swelling of one or more joints as a common and prominent symptom; others refer to metastasis of the pains, enlargement of the submaxillary glands, orchitis, mental depression, hæmorrhages, and so forth, as being frequently present. However this may be, the essential symptoms in well-marked cases are the same practically everywhere, and in all epidemics; these are suddenness of the rise of the temperature, an initial stage of skin congestion, limb and joint pains, and a terminal rubeoloid eruption.

*Relapses* are not uncommon in dengue, and second and even third attacks during the same epidemic have been recorded. As a rule, however, susceptibility to the disease is exhausted by one attack. According to Hare, in the recent Australian epidemic the immunity acquired by an attack did not persist beyond one year.

The *incubation period* seems to be somewhat variable. It is certainly not a long one. I have seen a case in which it could not have exceeded twenty-four hours. Some observers place it at five and even seven days; this, I feel sure, is an over-estimate. One to three days seems to be near the truth.

**Mortality.**—In uncomplicated dengue the mortality may be said to be almost *nil* (0·1 per cent.,



Hare). In the case of very young children, convulsions and delirium may occur and cause anxiety ; and in the aged and infirm, and in those suffering from chronic exhausting disease, an attack of dengue may prove a serious complication. Charles describes a pernicious form which, though rare, was very much dreaded in Calcutta. In these cases the lungs became œdematous, and the patient, growing drowsy and cyanotic, rapidly passed into a comatose condition with a tendency to hyperpyrexia, and died. Some writers state that the gravity of any given case is in direct proportion to the abundance of the eruption ; others deny this.

In Europeans an attack of dengue very often leads to a condition of debility necessitating temporary change of climate, or even return to Europe. In both Europeans and natives the attendant lowering of the resistive powers predisposes to other and more dangerous diseases, such as malaria, yellow fever, dysentery, phthisis, and so forth ; consequently dengue, otherwise a benign disease, may become a source of public danger. It is probable that it is in this indirect way that the general mortality is increased during a visitation of this disease, as has been observed in several epidemics.

**Morbid anatomy.**—On account of the low mortality *post-mortem* records are few. Nogué (*Arch. de Méd. Nav.*, Dec., 1897), who observed two epidemics of dengue in Cochin China (1895–96), made four *post-mortem* examinations in this disease. In these, pulmonary and intracranial inflammation were the special features. The meningitis amounted to adhesions and sero-purulent infiltration of the pia mater.

**Diagnosis.**—Dengue must not be confounded with rōtheln, scarlatina, measles, syphilitic roseola, influenza, rheumatic and malarial fevers. A knowledge of the distinctive features of these diseases, and the fact that dengue is attended with a rash and with articular pains, and that it occurs in great



and rapidly-spreading epidemics, should prevent any serious error in diagnosis.

**Treatment.**—Were it possible to secure perfect isolation for the individual during an epidemic of dengue, doubtless he would escape the disease. Even comparative isolation is attended with diminished liability. In Amoy, in the epidemic of 1872, those foreigners who lived in a more or less isolated suburban situation were very much less affected than were those who lived in the native town, or than those whose occupations threw them much into contact with the natives. But though this and similar facts point to the theoretical possibility of avoiding dengue during an epidemic, in the ordinary conditions of life in the tropics prophylactic measures, such as they would suggest, are impracticable.

Like the allied fevers, dengue runs a definite course; therefore it is useless to attempt to cut it short. The patient should go to bed so soon as he feels ill, and he should keep his room till the terminal eruption has quite disappeared and he feels well again. Ten days is not too long to allow in severe attacks. As in influenza, light liquid diet, rest, and the avoidance of chill conduce powerfully to a speedy and sound convalescence. At the outset of the fever some saline diaphoretic mixture, with aconite, may be prescribed with advantage. If the pains be severe and the fever high, antipyrin, or phenacetin, or belladonna will give great relief. Cold applications to the head are comforting. If the temperature rises to  $105^{\circ}$  or over, cold sponging or the cold bath ought to be had recourse to. If the pains continue very distressing, a hypodermic injection of morphia will afford welcome relief and do no harm. Purgatives and emetics should be avoided unless pronounced constipation, or a history of surfeit, urgently demands their exhibition. The pain caused by the muscular movements entailed by the efficient action of purgatives more than counterbalances any advantage the latter might otherwise bring. Wine in the early



stage is not advisable. Freshly made lemonade or iced water will be found the most acceptable drink during the fever.

For the pains experienced during convalescence, rubbing with opium or belladonna liniment, gentle massage, electricity, salicylates, small doses of iodide of potassium and quinine have been advocated. Debility or anorexia indicate tonics such as quinine, strychnine, mineral acids, vegetable bitters, and change of air.



## CHAPTER XII.

## MALTA OR MEDITERRANEAN FEVER.

(Febris undulans, Hughes.)

**Definition.**—Malta fever—a disease probably of pythogenic origin, of low mortality, of indefinite duration, and of limited geographical range—is characterised in its more typical form by, or, rather, is made up of, a series of febrile attacks; each individual attack, after lasting one or more weeks, gradually subsiding into a period of absolute or relative apyrexia of several days' or weeks' duration. Each spell of relative apyrexia is followed by a period of fever, which is again succeeded by relative apyrexia. Common and characteristic complications are rheumatic-like swelling of joints, profuse diaphoresis, anæmia, liability to orchitis and neuralgic affections.

The duration of the illness may be anything from three weeks to eighteen months.

**Geographical distribution.**—Malta or Mediterranean fever is somewhat unfortunately named, for we now know that the disease so designated is not, as was formerly supposed, confined to Malta, or to the Mediterranean even. It is very common there, particularly in Malta; but recent investigations by Wright and others have shown that it occurs in India, in China, in the West Indies, and in England. I have recently seen the disease in a Lascar who, apparently, contracted the infection in Bombay. He had the characteristic fleeting joint affection, the prolonged irregular fever, the anæmia, and his blood exhibited the equally characteristic reaction with a culture of *Micrococcus melitensis*. It is highly



probable that the same, or a similar, fever occurs in many other parts of the tropical and sub-tropical world, having been confounded hitherto with malarial fever or with typhoid.

As it is extremely prevalent at times in the garrisons of Gibraltar and Malta, this disease is specially interesting to English military surgeons. Although only occasionally proving fatal, it is a fruitful source of inefficiency and invaliding.

**History.** — Formerly it was confounded with typhoid and malarial fever ; by some it is still regarded as but a phase of one or other of these. The labours of clinical observers from Marston (1861) to Maclean (1885), and more especially the recent bacteriological researches of Bruce, Hughes, Gipps, and Wright, have established it as a special disease ; in future it must be regarded as such.

**Symptoms.**—Malta fever begins generally with lassitude and malaise, such as we associate with the incubation of many specific fevers, particularly with typhoid. There is headache, boneache, anorexia, and so forth. At first the patient may go about his work as usual. Gradually the daily task becomes too much for him, and he has to take to bed. Headache may now become intense and, in addition, the patient will suffer from thirst and constipation. At the commencement the symptoms, with the exception that there is very rarely diarrhœa, resemble those of typhoid. There are no rose spots, however, then or at any subsequent period. There is evidence in the coated tongue, the congested pharynx, the anorexia, and the epigastric tenderness, of gastric catarrh ; and the occasional cough and harsh, unsatisfactory breathing at the bases of the lungs indicate some degree of pulmonary congestion. There may also be delirium at night. The fever is usually of a remittent type, the thermometer rising towards evening and falling during the night, the patient becoming bathed in a profuse perspiration towards morning. The spleen and the liver, but especially the former, are



somewhat enlarged and, perhaps, tender. Lumbar pain may be urgent.

After a week or two of this type of fever, specially distinguished by pains and perspirations, the tongue begins to clean, and the appetite to revive ; but, notwithstanding these signs of amendment, the patient still remains listless and liable to headache and constipation. He continues feverish and at times perspires profusely. Gradually, however, although the patient is anæmic and excessively weak, subjective symptoms become less urgent ; he sleeps well now, he has no delirium at night, and he can take his food, and this although the body temperature may still range too high.

About this time the peculiar fleeting rheumatic-like affection of the joints, so characteristic of the disease, shows itself in a large proportion of cases. One day a knee is hot, swollen, and tender ; next day this joint may be well, but another joint is affected ; and so this metastatic, rheumatic-like condition may go on until nearly all the joints of the body have been involved one after the other. The patient may suffer also from neuralgia in different nerves—intercostal, sciatic, and so on. Orchitis is an occasional complication. In some cases these complications are severe and characteristic ; in others they may be mild, or absent altogether. In this respect the same infinite variety shows itself as in other specific fevers.

Perhaps the most characteristic feature of Malta fever is the peculiar behaviour of the temperature. In a mild case there may be a gradual ladder-like rise through a week or ten days to  $103^{\circ}$  or  $104^{\circ}$ , and then, through another week or so, a gradual ladder-like fall to normal, the fever, which is of a continued or slightly remitting type, leaving for good without complication of any sort in about three weeks.

Such mild cases are the exception. Usually, after a few days of apyrexia, absolute or relative, the fever wakes up again and runs a similar course, the relapse



being in its turn followed by an interval of apyrexia, which is again followed by another relapse ; and so on during several months.

Generally remittent or nearly continued in type, in other instances the fever exhibits distinct daily intermissions, the temperature chart suggesting some septic invasion or an ordinary intermittent malarial fever. But there is no local evidence of suppuration to be found ; neither, if we examine the blood, is the plasmodium to be discovered ; nor is the quotidian rise of temperature accompanied by any ague-like rigor, or at most only by a feeling of chilliness ; nor is the disease amenable in any way to quinine.

**Sequelæ, mortality, and types.**—As a rule, the most serious consequences of Malta fever are the debility it entails, the profound anæmia, the rheumatic-like pains, and the neuralgiæ. There is little risk to life ; the mortality does not exceed 2 per cent. When death occurs it is usually from suddenly developed hyperpyrexia ; occasionally it is brought about by exhaustion, or by some pulmonary complication such as pneumonia. In a few instances the fever is of a fulminating type, rapidly ending in death from hyperpyrexia. Hughes, who has made an elaborate study of this disease, designates such cases “malignant.” Those cases with well-marked waves of fever he calls “undulating” ; those with ague-like diurnal fluctuations of temperature, “intermittent.” The combination of types is infinite, an “undulating” case sometimes assuming “intermittent” characters, or *vice versâ* ; malignant hyperpyrexial symptoms may supervene in either type and at any period in their progress.

**Pathological anatomy and pathology.**—

This disease has almost no pathological anatomy. The spleen is the only viscus of which it can be said that it is distinctly diseased. In Malta fever this organ is distinctly enlarged, soft, and diffuent ; on microscopical examination, the lymphoid cells are found to be increased in number.



**Ætiology.**—*The Micrococcus melitensis.*—Most important fact of all in connection with the spleen is the presence in it of a peculiar bacterium—the *Micrococcus melitensis*. For this discovery, made in 1887, we are indebted to Major David Bruce, R.A.M.C. Unfortunately, the bacterium does not occur—or but sparsely—in the general circulation, and therefore Bruce's discovery is of little direct use in diagnosis; but pathologically it is of great importance, as it enables us to say positively that this so-called Malta fever is a distinct disease, altogether different from either typhoid or malaria. The organism is present in the pulp of the spleen, from which it can be separated by cultivation. Bruce found it in this way in ten fatal cases. His results have been confirmed by Hughes, Gipps, Wright, Durham, and others. Injections of pure cultures give rise to a similar disease in monkeys and other animals, from whose blood the micrococcus can be recovered, cultivated afresh, and, on injection into other animals, again give rise to the disease. In three instances inoculation of cultures of the micrococcus into man has been followed by the characteristic symptoms of Malta fever after an incubation period of fifteen to sixteen days.

The *Micrococcus melitensis* is somewhat oval in shape, and measures .33 micromillimetre in diameter. It occurs generally singly, often in pairs, sometimes in fours, but never in longer chains. According to Gordon (*Lancet*, March 11, 1899), it possesses one to four flagella. It is readily stained by a watery solution of gentian violet, and is best cultivated in a 1½ per cent. very feebly alkaline, peptonised agar-agar beef jelly, in which, soon after inoculation, it appears as minute, clear, pearly specks. After thirty-six hours the cultures become a transparent amber; later they are opaque. No liquefaction occurs.

*Influence of age and residence.*—The most susceptible age as regards Malta fever is between the sixth and the thirteenth year. Very young children



and old people are less frequently attacked. Length of residence does not influence susceptibility.

*Influence of season.*—In Malta and other places where the disease is endemic this fever occasionally assumes an epidemic character. The period of its greatest prevalence is the season of lowest rainfall, embracing June, July, and August; differing in this respect from typhoid, which, in that island, is more prevalent during the three succeeding months—September, October, and November.

*Local causes.*—Great difference of opinion obtains both as regards the causes giving rise to this fever, and also as to those influencing its prevalence. The water supply is blamed by some; others attribute the disease to faecal saturation of the soil, and so on. The disease tends to occur in particular houses, barracks, and rooms, manifestly originating in limited foci of infection. The weight of evidence points to a faecal origin of the virus; and also to its diffusion by air currents, and not by food or water. There is no certainty on these points, nor will there be until the habits and haunts of the micrococcus outside the body are definitely ascertained.

*Influence of social conditions.*—All classes are liable to this disease; the officer and his family as well as the soldier in barracks.

*Not infectious.*—So far as known, Malta fever is not transmitted directly from one person to another; that is to say, it is not directly communicable from the sick to the healthy.

*Incubation period.*—The period of incubation is difficult to fix. Cases have occurred as early as six days after arrival in Malta; on the other hand, the disease has shown itself as late as fourteen and seventeen days after the subject of it has quitted Malta, and perhaps after arrival in England.

*Immunity.*—Bruce holds that one attack confers immunity from subsequent attacks; other authorities believe that one attack, so far from conferring immunity, actually predisposes to subsequent attacks.



**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of Malta fever from typhoid is a highly important practical matter. It is exceedingly difficult in the early stages. Principal reliance has to be placed on the absence of rose spots, the absence of diarrhœa, the presence of joint complications, the sweats, the locality where and the season in which it was contracted, and, if available, the agglutination and precipitation test.

Wright (*Lancet*, March 6, 1897; *Brit. Med. Journ.*, May 15, 1897) has shown that, both as regards sedimentation and agglutination, the germ of Malta fever reacts to the serum test in the same way as, and even more markedly than, *Bacillus typhosus*. A weaker dilution (never less than 1 in 30 or 50) than in typhoid must be used. Dead cultures give the reaction, and can be conveniently kept in stock for diagnostic purposes.

These observations have been abundantly confirmed. Birt and Lamb (*Lancet*, September 9, 1899), from a series of valuable observations, conclude that important deductions, affecting not only diagnosis but also prognosis, may be derived from the behaviour of the agglutinating substances present in the blood. Their conclusions are, briefly, as follows: (1) Prognosis is unfavourable if the agglutinating reaction is persistently low. (2) Also if the agglutinating reaction rapidly fall from a high figure to almost zero. (3) A persistently high and rising agglutinating reaction sustained into convalescence is favourable. (4) A long illness may be anticipated if the agglutination figure, at first high, decreases considerably. The agglutination reaction appears early in Malta fever as compared with typhoid; it is available for diagnostic purposes by the end of the first week of the fever. It persists long after convalescence, often for years.

After the fever has gone on for several weeks diagnosis is, of course, easier; in the early stages, on clinical grounds alone, and apart from the agglutination test, it may be almost impossible. It may be that it is only on the *post-mortem* table that we have



the relative assurance, from the absence of ulceration in the ileum, that we have had to deal with a case of Malta fever. Tuberculosis, abscess, empyema, malaria, and all other causes of continued high temperature, have to be carefully excluded in attempting a diagnosis.

**Treatment.**—Malta and those Mediterranean ports in which this fever is endemic should be avoided by pleasure- and health-seekers during the summer. Those who are obliged to live there all the year round would do well, at this season, to leave the towns and reside in the country. As a matter of precaution, in the endemic area the drinking water, food, and drains ought at all seasons to receive special attention.

When the diagnosis is sure, it is well to give a purge—none better than calomel and jalap—and to instruct the attendants to keep the patient's temperature systematically below  $103^{\circ}$  by cold sponging with vinegar and water or, if necessary, by cold bath or ice variously applied. In view of the prolonged nature of the fever, this measure is one of importance; at the same time, such treatment need not be applied too energetically, or so as to depress; a fall of  $2^{\circ}$  or  $3^{\circ}$  is all that is desirable.

Quinine and, on account of the joint affection, the salicylates are very generally prescribed. Both are useless, if not injurious. Antipyrin and other antipyretics are also often given to bring down temperature; but the wisdom of employing depressing drugs in so chronic and asthenic a disease as Malta fever is, to say the least, questionable. Any threat of hyperpyrexia is best met as directed, namely, by early employment of sponging, the wet pack, or, if necessary, by the cold bath. Sleeplessness may demand hypnotics; headache, if severe, moderate doses of antipyrin; inflamed joints or testes, the usual local applications; constipation, enemata or aperients. In fact, the treatment of Malta fever resolves itself into a treatment of symptoms.



The diet at first should consist of milk ; later, of broths and eggs and, if necessary, stimulants. Solid food must not be given until all fever has disappeared, and the tongue has remained clean for at least ten days. Lemonade or lime juice should be given after a time ; not merely as a pleasant, thirst-relieving beverage, but with a view to averting scurvy—not at all an improbable complication if the diet is too restricted over a long period. The return to solid food must be made with the greatest circumspection ; imprudence in this respect may bring on relapse.

Flannel clothing should be worn and frequently changed if there is much sweating.

Change of climate is not so necessary as in malarial affections, seeing, on the one hand, that the disease may persist in England ; and, on the other, that it may gradually wear out in Malta. It is not desirable to move a patient when fever runs high, or when debility is very great, or when the cool and healthy season in the Mediterranean is at hand. It must be considered that at this time winter is approaching in England, with climatic conditions very unsuitable for a patient who has become anæmic and debilitated from a long course of fever ; at this season he would do much better in Malta or Gibraltar. When, however, the case occurs early in the summer, or runs over the winter, then, in order to avoid the heat of the Mediterranean, change to England, if at all feasible and if it can be comfortably effected, should be advised.



## CHAPTER XIII.

JAPANESE RIVER FEVER—NASHA FEVER—KALA-AZAR—  
TROPICAL TYPHOID—TYPHO-MALARIAL FEVER.

THE RIVER FEVER OF JAPAN (SHIMA MUSHI).

**Definition.**—An acute endemic disease running a definite course and attended by a considerable mortality. It is characterised by the presence on the skin of an initial eschar followed by an ulcer, lymphatitis, fever, an exanthematous eruption, bronchitis, and conjunctivitis.

**History.**—This disease was first described by Palm in 1878, and subsequently, and more fully, by Baelz and Kawakami.

**Geographical and seasonal distribution.**—So far as known, shima mushi is confined to the banks of two rivers on the west side of the island of Nippon—the Shinanogawa and one of its tributaries, and the Omonagawa. Every spring these rivers inundate large tracts of country. Later in the year hemp is raised on strips of the inundated district. The crop is reaped in July and August, and it is solely among those engaged in harvesting and handling this that the disease occurs. It is not communicable by the sick to the healthy. Although transportable in the hemp to a very slight extent, it is only in limited spots here and there in the endemic districts that the virus originates.

**Symptoms.**—After an incubation period of from four to seven days the disease usually begins with malaise, frontal and temporal headache, anorexia, chills alternating with flushes of heat, and prostration. Presently the patient becomes conscious of pain and tenderness in the lymphatic glands of the groin, armpit, or neck. On inspecting the skin of the corresponding lymphatic area there is discovered—usually about the genitals or armpits—a small (2 to 4 mm.),



round, dark, tough, firmly adherent eschar surrounded by a painless, livid red areola of superficial congestion. Occasionally two or three such eschars are discovered. Although a line of tenderness may be traced from the sore to the swollen, hard, and sensitive glands, no well-defined cord of lymphatitis can be made out. The superficial lymphatic glands of the rest of the body, especially those on the opposite side corresponding to the glands primarily affected, are also, but more slightly, enlarged.

Fever of a more or less continued type now sets in, the thermometer mounting in the course of five or six days to  $40^{\circ}$  or  $41^{\circ}$  Cent. The conjunctivæ become injected, and the eyes somewhat prominent; at the same time a considerable bronchitis gives rise to harassing cough. The pulse is full and strong, ranging rather low—80 to 100—for the degree of fever present. The spleen is moderately but distinctly enlarged, and there is marked constipation.

About the sixth or seventh day an exanthem of large dark red papules appears on the face, tending to become confluent on the cheeks. The eruption then extends to the forearms, legs, and trunk; it is less pronounced on the upper arms, thighs, neck, and palate. Simultaneously with the papules a minute lichenous eruption breaks out on the forearms and trunk. These eruptions last usually from four to seven days; if but slightly marked they may fade in twenty-four hours.

The patients during the height of the fever are flushed, and at night, it may be, delirious. They complain incessantly, probably on account of a general hyperæsthesia of skin and muscles. Deafness is also a feature.

As the disease advances the symptoms become more urgent; the conjunctivitis is intensified, the cough becomes incessant, the tongue dries, the lips crack and bleed, and there may be from time to time profuse perspiration. By the end of the second week—sooner or later according to the severity of the



case—the fever begins to remit, the tongue to clean, and, after a few days more, temperature falls to normal, and the patient speedily convalesces. Diarrhœa or diuresis may occur during the decline of the fever. The circular, sharp-edged, deep ulcer left after the separation of the primary eschar—an event which usually takes place during the second week—now begins to heal, and the enlargement of the glands gradually to subside.

Such is the course of a moderately severe case. In some instances, however, the constitutional disturbance is very slight, although the primary eschar may be well marked and perhaps extensive. On the other hand, the fever may be much more violent, and complications such as parotitis, melæna, coma, mania, cardiac failure, or œdema of the lungs may end in death. Similarly the duration of the disease varies, according to severity, from one to four weeks, three weeks being about the average.

Pregnant women contracting shima mushi mostly abort and die.

The **mortality** in those attacked is approximately about 15 per cent.

**Pathological anatomy.**—Beyond evidences of bronchial catarrh, hypostatic pneumonia, enlarged spleen, perisplenitis, patchy reddening of the intestine near the ileo-cæcal valve, injection of the peritoneum, and slight enlargement of the mesenteric and superficial lymphatic glands, no noteworthy lesions have been described.

**Ætiology.**—The Japanese attribute this disease to the bite of an acarus (locally called *aka mushi*—red insect) resembling the *Leptus autumnalis* of Europe. Baelz rejects this idea, but does not explain how otherwise the virus is introduced. Men, women, and children are equally susceptible. One attack does not confer immunity, although it may render subsequent attacks less severe. As yet the virus of the disease, which doubtless enters in the first instance at the site of the primary eschar, has not been discovered.



**Treatment.**—On the supposition that the disease is introduced by an insect, or through a wound of some sort, care should be exercised by those engaged in hemp culture in the endemic district to protect and keep clean the skin, especially that about the genitals and armpits. There is no specific remedy for the disease; treatment must therefore be conducted on general principles.

NASHA FEVER (NASA, NAKRA).

Drs. Fernandez and Mitra describe (*Trans. First Ind. Med. Cong.*, 1895), under the name of nasha fever, a febrile disease which they say is peculiar to India, and especially prevalent in Bengal.

Preceding the fever a peculiar congestion of the mucous membrane of the septum nasi shows itself. Sometimes this congestion is confined to one nostril, sometimes both sides are affected. The pain is insignificant, but the surface of the septum is raised and presents a red and swollen appearance, a circumscribed swelling about the size of a pea (Mitra) being readily recognised. The usual symptoms of fever are present, marked constipation and malaise being very prominent. Frequently headache and pain in the back of the neck, shoulders, and small of the back are urgent. The face appears flushed; there is a feeling of heat and dulness about the head, and, according to Fernandez, the pupils are contracted. These symptoms continue from three to five days, when the swelling of the nasal mucosa decreases and the fever subsides spontaneously. The swelling never suppurates. In very rare cases sudden subsidence of the swelling is followed by grave symptoms—high fever, delirium, coma, and death.

One attack predisposes to another, the attacks appearing at more or less definite intervals of a month, a fortnight, or a week. Both sexes are liable, but females suffer less frequently than males. Children are never attacked. After fifty the disease does not



occur. Nasha fever is most prevalent between April and August, being seldom seen during the winter months.

In the discussion which followed the reading of Dr. Fernandez' and Dr. Mitra's papers at the Indian Medical Congress, Drs. Roy and Bose refused to recognise nasha fever as a special disease, believing that the congestion of the nasal mucosa was a common occurrence in many febrile diseases in India.

**Treatment.**—In milder cases a saline purgative suffices. Pricking the swelling in the nostril by a needle, or puncture with a lancet, quickly relieves the congestion and fever. Injections of cold water, or of some mild astringent, into the nostrils two or three times a day are said to be useful.

#### KALA-AZAR.

Kala-azar (black fever) is the name applied to an ill-defined and very deadly disease prevalent of late years in Assam, in the low-lying malarious district between the Brahmaputra and the foot of the Garo hills in the Gaolpara district. Commencing in the Rungpore district about 1887, as an extension of the Burdwan epidemic in Bengal, according to Rogers, it crossed the Brahmaputra into Assam, where it has gradually extended its area, depopulating whole villages in its gradual but steady advance, and seriously augmenting the mortality and interfering with the material progress of the country.

According to Giles, who was commissioned by the local government to investigate the subject, kala-azar is a slow wasting disease, characterised by great and progressive debility ; occasional, though rarely severe, intercurrent attacks of fever ; enlargement of the spleen ; darkening of the complexion ; and, at the end, various dropsical affections. Extreme anæmia is a constant symptom. Unless during the transient fevers, the body temperature is persistently and markedly sub-normal. The intercurrent fever and



the enlargement of the spleen he does not regard as essential features, but rather as accidental malarial complications, such as are to be expected in the course of any debilitating sickness in a country so notoriously malarial. The darkening of the skin—from which, presumably, the disease takes its name—he attributes to the leaden tint of anæmia enhanced by accumulations of dirt on the unwashed and naturally dark skin of the native. Giles found the ova of *Ankylostomum duodenale* in the fæces of practically all the cases he investigated. Influenced by this circumstance, and by the anæmia which was so marked a symptom in all, he regarded kala-azar as being merely a severe form of ankylostomiasis.

Rogers, on the other hand, after correctly pointing out that the ankylostomum is exceedingly prevalent in many districts of India in which kala-azar is unknown, opposes Giles's views, and maintains that it is but a form of malaria indistinguishable in its early stage from ordinary malaria. He found the malaria parasite a constant feature in the blood of his patients, and always encountered, *post-mortem*, marked malarial pigmentation of the liver, spleen and kidneys. Rogers further asserts that kala-azar is invariably introduced into hitherto unaffected villages by someone who had contracted the fever in an infected village; the first two or three cases, he says, occur in the same house in which the patient has come to live. He further states that the plasmodium of the kala-azar type of malaria, being of a nature much more virulent than that of the ordinary fevers of Assam, causes a marked cachexia in about as many months as the ordinary fever parasite does in as many years. He also considers that the germ, by intensification, has acquired infective properties, and is capable of passing directly from the sick to the sound through the air or through the soil. It is difficult to understand, however, how so important a biological revolution could be effected in the habits of the plasmodium.

Other writers agree with Giles in denying the



malarial nature of kala-azar. Gibbons, for example (*Ind. Med. Gaz.*, January, 1890), describes the *post-mortem* examination of a case, and states explicitly that there was no pigmentation of the spleen.

Ross, who was in 1898 commissioned by the Government of India to investigate the subject, considers that kala-azar and a similar condition called kala-dunkh, are virtually forms of post-malarial cachexia akin to, if not identical with, similar conditions met with elsewhere in malarial countries. He found that those who subsequently became the subjects of kala-azar, at an earlier stage exhibited all the phenomena of an ordinary malarial infection, including the presence of the parasite in the blood; that subsequently the parasites disappeared, but that now chronic hyperplasia in spleen and liver, with spells of quotidian symptomatic fever, supervened, leading to profound cachexia and death. I have seen two such cases in Englishmen who had been invalided from Assam. Both had formerly suffered from malarial fever; in both there was splenic and hepatic enlargement, recurring spells of quotidian fever, unaccompanied by parasites in the blood and uninfluenced by quinine, and attended with profuse diaphoresis, profound anæmia, darkening of the skin and emaciation. One died of cerebral thrombosis, the other of exhaustion. Kala-azar may be the result of a double infection, the soil for the second infection being prepared, so to speak, by the original malarial invasion.

It is evident that much clinical, ætiological, and pathological work has yet to be devoted to the study of kala-azar before its true nature can be definitely affirmed. Certain it is that it has no relationship to beriberi or to ankylostomiasis, as was once asserted.

#### TYPHOID FEVER IN THE TROPICS.

The existence of typhoid fever in the tropics was for long not only ignored but actually denied, even



by physicians and pathologists of repute. Formerly, the idea of malaria so dominated all views of tropical fevers that nearly every case of pyrexia, other than those of the most ephemeral description, or those associated with the exanthemata, or with manifest inflammation, was relegated to this cause. When ulceration of the ileum was encountered *post-mortem*, the intestinal lesion was regarded not as the specific lesion of the fever but merely as a complication. More correct views prevail at the present day, and typhoid now ranks not only as a common disease in the tropics but, to the European there, as one of the most commonly fatal. Little is known about typhoid as a disease of natives, beyond the fact that it does attack them; as a disease of Europeans it is only too familiar to the army surgeon in India and to the civil practitioner in most, if not in all, parts of the tropical world.

Typhoid fever is, one might almost say, alarmingly prevalent among young soldiers and civilians in the East. It is very common among them during the first two or three years after their arrival. Fortunately, the liability decreases with length of residence. Apparently a sort of acclimatisation, or rather habituation, to the poison is established with time, just as tends to be the case with other organic poisons. It is not unlikely that the relative exemption of the native races is owing to a like immunising effect produced by living in constant contact with typhoid and similar toxic agents. On visiting native cities—Chinese cities, for example—one is filled with amazement at the state of filth in which the people live, and not only live but thrive. The streets are narrow and never cleansed; the common sewer lies beneath the flagstones, and through the interstices between the stones can be seen the black, stinking slush in the sewer. The sewerage is not confined in a well-laid cemented drain, but it soaks through the loosely laid, uncemented stones, and thoroughly saturates the ground on which the tumble-down, overcrowded



houses are built. Night soil is allowed to remain in wooden buckets inside the houses awaiting collection by the soil merchant, who sells it to the market gardener and the farmer. Urine is accumulated in earthenware jars, and is similarly disposed of. The houses are rarely swept and cleaned, hardly ever repaired. In every corner are filth and rubbish. And yet, in such circumstances—in which the sanitarian would inevitably prophesy typhus and typhoid—the population seems to thrive. Doubtless, where the European would almost surely contract typhoid and other filth diseases, the natives have obtained an immunity by habituation. In Japan the privy is inside the house, under the same roof as the dwelling-rooms, and the whole house is generally pervaded by a peculiar, mawkish, privy odour. The natives do not appear to suffer much from this; but I used to see many cases of typhoid in “globe-trotters” who, after visiting Japan, had come to Hong Kong with unequivocal symptoms of the disease. In China, in Japan, and in India little or no care is taken to prevent contamination of the wells with sewage matter, and unless foreigners are very careful about boiling their drinking water and avoiding bazaar-made drinks, they are almost sure, sooner or later, to fall victims. Typhoid is common also in Cochin China, in the Malay country, in Mauritius, in Africa; the French have had large experience of it in Algeria and their West African possessions; the British have had similar experience in South Africa. It is also found in the West Indies, in Nigeria even; in fact, everywhere where it has been properly looked for.

It would appear that not only is typhoid a common disease in the tropics, but that it is also a very virulent one, with a death-rate twice as heavy as the death-rate of typhoid in England. According to my experience in China, not only is the tropical form grave from the outset, but it is extremely liable to relapse. In England the death-rate is put down at about one in eight attacked; but in India the elaborate



and carefully-prepared statistics show a death-rate rather over one in three. What with its frequency and its high rate of mortality, typhoid in India kills more European soldiers than cholera does.

Besides exhibiting increased virulence, experience has shown that as against typhoid those sanitary safeguards which are found to be practically sufficient in England are by no means so effective in India. It would also appear that soldiers on the march contract the disease in passing through uninhabited country, in spite of the fact that the camp may be pitched in spots which, presumably, have never been occupied by man before; and although the men may have drunk only of water from springs and streams that were beyond suspicion of faecal contamination. Similar testimony comes from Australia, where typhoid has occurred in the back country in lonely spots hundreds of miles from fixed human habitations. From these data the inference is suggested that Eberth's bacillus, under certain conditions of soil and temperature, may exist as a pure yet virulent saprophyte, for which an occasional passage through the human body is by no means necessary.

**Antityphoid inoculation.**—Having observed that the injection into subcutaneous tissue of the human subject of dead cultures of *Bacillus typhosus* conferred on the blood of the individual experimented on the power of agglutinating and sedimenting living cultures of the bacillus, Professor Wright, in the hope that in this circumstance he had grounds for concluding that protection against typhoid might be conferred by some system of artificial immunisation, devised such a system, and has practised it on a scale sufficiently extensive to warrant some conclusions. During the Maidstone epidemic of typhoid in 1897, of 200 individuals, the subject of special observation, 95 were inoculated, 105 were not inoculated. None of the former contracted typhoid, whereas 19 of the latter were attacked.

In the *British Medical Journal* of January 20,



1900, Professor Wright summarises his latest results. Of 11,295 British soldiers in India, to whom his observations apply, 2,835 were inoculated, 8,460 remained uninoculated. Of the former, 27 at some subsequent time had attacks of naturally acquired typhoid; of the latter, 213 were similarly attacked; the percentages being 0·95 and 2·5 respectively. In these attacks 5 of the previously inoculated died; 23 of the uninoculated. On the assumption that the whole of the British army in India was inoculated and that the foregoing results were maintained, there would be an annual saving of over 1,000 cases of enteric and of nearly 200 lives. Full details of the method of the preparation and of the clinical effects of Professor Wright's inoculations will be found in the *Lancet* of September 19, 1896, and the *Brit. Med. Journ.* of January 20, 1900.

It is not requisite to enter further into the subject of typhoid fever, for although, as I stated, this important disease is abundantly common in the tropics, it is not properly classifiable as a tropical disease; moreover, it is fully dealt with in every text-book on general medicine. It is alluded to here more by way of warning the practitioner in the tropics against overlooking it, and against assuming that every case of fever he may encounter is malarial.

#### TYPHO-MALARIAL FEVER.

Some years ago a good deal was written and said, particularly in America, about what is called "typho-malarial fever." An idea got abroad—and still exists, apparently—that there is a specific disease which, though resembling both, is neither typhoid, nor malarial, nor any of the other recognised forms of continued fever. There is no doubt that in warm climates, besides the known fevers, there are several, if not many, undifferentiated specific fevers. But the clinical group indicated by the term "typho-malarial" is not one of these. Typho-malarial fever is an ordinary typhoid occurring in a person who



has been exposed to malarial influences, *i.e.*, who has become infected by the plasmodium.

It has already been pointed out that the malaria germ may remain dormant for months or even years in the body, and then, on the occurrence of severe physiological strain – such as a chill, shock, excessive fatigue, and so forth, wake up again, and once more multiply and flourish in the blood and give rise to the phenomena of malarial fever. It is a recognised clinical fact, one familiar to our predecessors and much insisted on by them, that any disease process occurring in a person who has once had malarial fever is prone to take on an intermittent or periodic character; as if the previous malarial infection had left a sort of impress of periodicity on the constitution. Doubtless this is owing to the fact that in individuals with Laveran's parasite dormant in their tissues, the physiological strain implied by the presence of active disease paralyses for the time being the self-protective power, and the plasmodium is once more permitted to multiply and work its mischief in the blood. There are few more depressing influences than typhoid. Little wonder, then, that typhoid in a malarial is often accompanied by clinical evidences of a resuscitation of the plasmodium. And so it comes to pass that an attack of typhoid in malarial countries, or in persons returned from malarial countries, is prone to assume some of the characters of intermittent or remittent fever.

Not infrequently, instead of the slowly-increasing headache, malaise, creeping cold, anorexia, and day-by-day ladder-like rise of temperature, the first sign of typhoid in such circumstances is a violent rigor, immediately followed by rapid rise of temperature which, in an hour or two, mounts to  $104^{\circ}$  or  $105^{\circ}$ , to be succeeded in a few hours by profuse sweating and a partial remission of fever exactly resembling an attack of ague. For the next two or three days these attacks are repeated, the remission becoming less complete each time. Quinine may be given, but, although the rigors and



marked oscillations of temperature are checked, the practitioner is surprised and disappointed to find that the temperature keeps permanently high, and that the typhoid state is gradually developed. Or it may be that a typhoid fever begins in the usual insidious way, runs its usual course for a week or two, and then, in the middle of what is regarded as an ordinary typhoid, rigors and temperature oscillations and other malarial manifestations show themselves. If quinine is given, these oscillations cease and the typhoid resumes its usual course. Or it may be that it is not until the end of the fever and during convalescence that these malarial symptoms are developed. Several such cases are now on record in which the plasmodium was found in the blood.

The **diagnosis** between typhoid and some forms of malarial remittent is often exceedingly difficult, in certain cases almost impossible, without the assistance of the microscope and the serum test. The principal points to be kept in view are, first, the mode of incidence of the disease. In typhoid there is a gradual rise of temperature, a daily gain of a degree or so during several days, the maximum not being attained for five or six days; as against the sharp rigor and sudden rise of temperature through five or six degrees in the first few hours in malarial fever. Secondly, the characters of the gastric symptoms differ. Thus there is bilious vomiting and perhaps bilious diarrhœa, tenderness of the liver, epigastrium and spleen, and an icteric tint of skin and scleræ in malarial remittent; in contrast to the abdominal distension, perhaps the iliac tenderness and gurgling, and the peasoup stools of typhoid. Such signs as epistaxis, deafness, and cheek flushing in typhoid have a certain weight, but skin eruptions in the tropics are of little aid in the diagnosis of such cases. Prickly heat, or its remains, is present in nearly everyone, sick and healthy, malarial or typhoid patient alike; so that rose spots are to be found in nearly all fevers in hot weather. None of these signs can be considered as absolutely diagnostic;



all or any of them may be present in typhoid, and all or any of them may be present in malarial remittent. The only really diagnostic marks are tertian or quartan periodicity, amenability to quinine, and, above all, that supplied by the plasmodium malarie and the Widal serum test. In all doubtful cases the plasmodium should be sought for; if it is found, the case has certainly a malarial element, and quinine is indicated. If it is not found, and if quinine has not been administered and several negative examinations of the blood have been made, and if the observer has confidence in his skill as a microscopist, the chances are the case is one of pure typhoid. Nevertheless, if the plasmodium is found typhoid is not necessarily excluded, for the case may be one of typhoid in a malarial, that is typho-malarial, fever.

No one who is proceeding to the tropics to practise medicine should fail to familiarise himself with the technique for performing the Widal reaction. In Europe he can fall back on the bacteriologist; in the tropics, as a rule, he cannot do this.

**Prognosis and management.**—Remittents under suitable treatment we expect to see recover; typhoids too often go the other way. A word of caution may be given as to prognosis and treatment. In forming diagnosis too much weight must not be attached to the presence or absence of diarrhœa; constipation is much more common in tropical typhoid than in the disease in Europe. Diagnosis, therefore, must not be too much influenced by absence of diarrhœa, and the practitioner must not be led by the presence of constipation into giving active purgatives. Purgatives are often of the greatest service in malarial remittent; but if, in consequence of a mistake in diagnosis, it is assumed that a case of typhoid is remittent, and large doses of calomel and other cathartics are administered, the result may be disastrous. If doubt exists about diagnosis, and quinine is given, it will not do a typhoid much harm. It is a good rule, therefore, when in doubt to give quinine, but to avoid purgatives.



## CHAPTER XIV.

## HEAT-STROKE.

THE term "heat-stroke" conveys the suggestion that heat is the leading ætiological factor in the various morbid conditions which custom has grouped under this and similar names.

Until irrefutable evidence has clearly demonstrated the true cause of any given disease, it is a very grave error to base the name of such disease on some crude hypothetical ætiological conception. Such a nomenclature is sure to lead to confusion, to mistakes in practice, and to retard progress. There is no better illustration of the truth of this remark than that supplied by the group of diseases under consideration.

The expression "heat-stroke" covers several distinct, one might say of two of them almost opposite, clinical conditions. One of these is *heat-exhaustion*, virtually a syncope, which may occur anywhere and in any climate; high atmospheric temperature, whether natural or artificial, being its essential ætiological factor. The other, of which hyperpyrexia is the most striking clinical feature, is a well-defined and possibly specific fever, having a peculiar endemicity and assuming at times in the endemic area almost epidemic characters. Like yellow fever, dengue, tropical elephantiasis and other tropical diseases, this second form of heat-stroke occurs only in conditions of high atmospheric temperature; but, as with these diseases, it by no means follows that, though occurring in high temperature, it is caused by high temperature. To obviate confusion, and following the excellent example of Dr. L. Sambon (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, March 19, 1898), I shall describe this disease under its ancient name *Siriasis*.

Besides these two well-defined morbid states associated with high atmospheric temperatures there



is another, but ill-defined, group of heat-stroke cases which, to all appearances, result exclusively from exposure to the direct rays of the sun. These cases might be classified under the term *Sun-traumatism*.

Although not all of them strictly classifiable as fevers, in deference to custom and for convenience, I shall describe these three phases of so-called "heat-stroke" in this place and as a group.

#### HEAT-EXHAUSTION.

**Definition.**—Sudden faintness, or fainting, brought about by exposure to high atmospheric temperature.

**Ætiology.**—The healthy human body, when untrammelled by unsuitable clothing, when not exhausted by fatigue or excesses, when not clogged by surfeit of food, by alcoholic drinks or by drugs, can support with impunity very high atmospheric temperatures. In many parts of the world men live and work out of doors in temperatures of 100° or even of 120°. Many industries are carried on at temperatures far above this; glass-blowing, sugar-boiling, for example. The stokers of steamers, especially in the tropics, discharge for hours their arduous duties in a temperature often over 150° F.

When, however, the physiological activities have become impaired by disease, especially by heart disease, kidney, liver or brain disease, by malaria, by alcoholic or other excesses, by fatigue, by living in overcrowded rooms; or when the body is oppressed by unsuitable clothing; or in the presence of a combination of some of these, then high atmospheric temperatures are badly supported, the innervation of the heart may fail and syncope may ensue. Chevers, than whom few have had better opportunities of forming a sound opinion, speaking of this subject, says: "Numerous as the constitutional causes of heat-strokes are, all Indian experience combines to show that drunkenness is the chief."



The tropical practitioner will do well to bear this remark in mind ; it applies not only to heat-exhaustion, but also to all forms of disease grouped under the term "heat-stroke."

Heat-exhaustion, then, is one form of what, when the subject of it happens at the time to be exposed to the sun, is called "sun-stroke," or when the patient happens to be at the time under cover is called "heat-stroke." In nine cases out of ten this sun-stroke, or heat-stroke, simply means syncope ; syncope caused by solar or atmospheric heat, or a combination of these, acting on a body whose resistance has been impaired by disease, or by trying unphysiological conditions. This form of heat-stroke, consequently, has no special geographical distribution and no special morbid anatomy or pathology. For obvious reasons it is most apt to occur in warm weather, and in tropical climates ; and on this account its recognition, prevention, and treatment, have special claims on the students of tropical medicine.

**Symptoms.**—When attacked with heat-exhaustion the patient feels giddy, and perhaps staggers and falls. He is pale ; his pulse is small, soft, and perhaps fluttering ; his breathing is shallow, perhaps sighing, never stertorous ; his pupils are dilated ; his skin is cold ; his temperature is sub-normal ; and he may be partially, more rarely wholly, unconscious. Usually after a short time he gradually recovers ; very likely with a splitting headache and feelings of prostration. In a small proportion of cases the faint is not recovered from, and death ensues.

**Treatment.**—In syncopal heat-stroke the patient should be laid at once on his back in a cool, airy, and shaded place. His clothes should be loosened, a little water dashed on his face and chest, and ammonia held to his nostrils. If necessary, a stimulant may be given by the mouth, or injected into the rectum or hypodermically. It is a mistake to douche these cases too freely. The object is rather to stimulate than to depress.



## SUN-TRAUMATISM.

There is a large, ill-defined, and difficult-to-define class of heat-stroke cases, which belong neither to the category of heat-exhaustion nor to the very definite and probably specific disease described under the name *siriasis*. The morbid phenomena in this class of sun-induced disease are attributable, apparently, to a peculiar physical action of the direct rays of the sun on the tissues. To this category belong, it seems to me, those sudden deaths occurring without warning during, and manifestly in consequence of, exposure to the sun. Such may have been the sudden deaths described by Parkes, Maclean, Fayrer and others, in which soldiers in the excitement and stress of battle, while oppressed with thick clothing and heavy accoutrements and exposed to a blazing sun, suddenly fell forward on their faces and, after a few convulsive gasps, died. In these instantaneously fatal cases the paralysis of the heart or respiration seems to be of the nature of shock, as from a blow or other sudden and violent impression on the encephalon.

Doubtless, indeed it is a well-known fact, the strain undergone in these and similar circumstances may in some instances cause an apoplexy or rupture of some description in tissues prepared for such a cataclysm by morbid degenerations of long standing.

Besides these there is another type of case in which, after prolonged exposure to the sun, a febrile condition is established. This is sometimes of great severity, being characterised by intense headache, a rapid full pulse, a pungent dry skin, intolerance of light, sound and movement, and occasionally by vomiting. This condition suggests meningeal congestion, possibly inflammation. The acute phase may be quickly recovered from, or it may prove very persistent and last for days or weeks. It may leave no injurious effects, or it may be followed by a variety of transient or more permanent morbid



nervous phenomena. Among the sequelæ authors have mentioned tremor, loss of memory, amaurosis, deafness, various paretic conditions, epilepsy, insanity, persistent headache, recurring headache, dyspeptic conditions. How far these sequelæ are entirely attributable to sun-exposure, or how far they depend on independent diseases, as syphilis for example, the local cerebral manifestations of which may have been provoked, though not actually caused, by the sun-traumatism, it is not always easy to say.

The morbid anatomy, as well as the clinical symptoms, indicates meningitis as a feature in these instances of reputed sun-traumatism. Authors refer to thickenings and opacities of the meninges, and even to thickening and roughening of the calvarium.

Many speculations have been advanced as to the pathogenesis. Manifestly it is not altogether, if at all, a question of caloric, for such effects do not result from exposure to the heat of a furnace, however intense. There appears to be some special element in the solar spectrum capable of injuriously affecting the tissues, particularly if they have not become gradually habituated to sun-exposure. That some such element does exist is proved by the phenomena of sun-erythema, of that form of skin pigmentation known as sun-burning, and, possibly, of leucodermia. The sensation of distress brought on by exposure to a hot sun, which is quite a different sensation from that produced by the heat of a fire, points in the same direction. In this connection we are forcibly reminded of the phenomena of the Röntgen rays and of their effects on the tissues.

**Treatment.**—Patients suffering from sun-traumatism must be kept as quiet as possible in a cool, airy, and darkened room. For a time the head should be kept shaved and cold applied to the scalp. The bowels must be free, food light and unstimulating, and alcohol in every form strictly forbidden. Restlessness and insomnia are best treated by the bromides. For a considerable time the patient will



be conscious of loss of memory, and feebleness of intellectual power and of the faculty of concentration. He may be irritable, liable to headache, and extremely sensitive to heat—more particularly the heat and glare of the sun. So soon as he is able to be moved he must be sent to a cold climate, and there remain until all trace of his illness has completely disappeared. Indeed, it is questionable if the subject of pronounced sun-trauma should ever again risk the dangers of a tropical climate; certain it is that he should not return to the tropics so long as the slightest evidence of cerebral trouble remains.

For persistent headache and other signs of chronic meningitis, courses of the iodides and bromides, repeated blistering of the neck and scalp, together with careful dieting and general hygiene, should be tried. In not a few instances, in spite of the most careful treatment, medicinal and climatic, serious permanent disease of the encephalon remains, giving rise to various and often incurable troubles, and, very commonly, to distressing intellectual enfeeblement.

#### SIRIASIS.

**Definition.**—An acute disease developing in the presence of high atmospheric temperature, and characterised by hyperpyrexia, coma, and extreme pulmonary congestion.

**Nomenclature.**—This is, perhaps, the most important of the several diseases covered by those loosely used terms—sun-stroke, heat-stroke, *coup de soleil*, insolation, heat-apoplexy, heat-asphyxia, thermic fever, and so forth. As stated, I have followed Dr. Sambon in adopting the name Siriasis, because this term, whilst it is distinctive, embodies no ætiological theory; it has the further merit of being the most ancient of the many names applied to the disease.

The **geographical distribution** of siriasis, like that of yellow fever, appears to be remarkably



restricted. It is true that this type, or what passes for this type, of disease has been reported as occurring in many countries. On careful examination it will be found that a large proportion of the reputed cases are really examples of other diseases, more especially of cerebro-spinal fever, apoplexy, tubercular meningitis, delirium tremens, pernicious malaria, or some other phase of acute disease, but not of true siriasis. According to Sambon, hyperpyrexial heat-stroke is rigidly confined to certain low-lying, sea-coast districts, and to the valleys of certain rivers. It is never found in high lands, nor above a relatively low altitude—600 feet.

It is unknown in Europe. The endemic areas are—in America, the east coast littoral of the United States, more especially in the great towns; the Mississippi valley; the coast of the Gulf of Mexico; the valleys of the Amazon, and of the La Plata; and the South Atlantic coast: in Africa, the valley of the Nile; the coasts of the Red Sea; and a low-lying part of Algeria, near Biskra: in Asia, Syria; the valleys of the Indus and Ganges; Lower Burma; Tonquin; and south-east China: in Australia, the Murray River district; the Queensland coast; and, possibly, the plains of Sydney. No doubt, it occurs elsewhere in corresponding meteorological and telluric conditions; but, undoubtedly, many large areas in the tropical world, and especially so the interior of continents, are exempt from siriasis. It is not met with on the high seas, although it is well known on ships in the narrow, land-locked Red Sea and Persian Gulf.

**Ætiology.**—New-comers to the endemic areas and Europeans are more liable than natives or long residents. Apparently, long residence confers a relative immunity, although not an absolute exemption.

All ages and both sexes are susceptible; but, in consequence of their habits and more frequent exposure to the predisposing and immediate causes, men are more liable to siriasis than are women.



Predisposing influences similar to those in heat-syncope and sun-traumatism powerfully influence the liability to siriasis. Amongst these are all physiological depressants; notably intemperance, fatigue, overcrowding, unsuitable clothing, malaria, acute disease, and also chronic organic diseases of the important viscera.

Siriasis has generally been attributed to a direct action of atmospheric or solar heat on the body. Many theories of the *modus operandi* of this assumed cause have been advanced. Among these may be mentioned superheating of the blood by the high temperature of the surrounding atmosphere; paralysis of the thermic centres causing (a) over-production of heat, or (b) retention of body-heat; pressure on the brain by expansion from heating of the cerebro-spinal fluid; vaso-motor paresis; paresis of the heart ganglia; excess of carbonic acid in the blood; coagulation of myosin; suppression of sweat; deficient serosity of the blood from excessive sweating, and so forth.

X It is well known that neither high atmospheric temperature *per se*, nor high bodily temperature, unless the latter be associated with some special toxin, gives rise to symptoms at all like those of siriasis. Considering these two facts, and at the same time the peculiar and capricious distribution of the disease, the circumstances that its prevalence curve does not always correspond with the atmospheric temperature curve; that the degree of prevalence varies in the endemic area from year to year; that it is not most prevalent in the hottest years, seasons, or places; that it becomes epidemic at times; that it runs a definite course; that it may relapse; that in many instances it has definite premonitory symptoms; that it has peculiar lesions; and that it tends to terminate by crisis; in other words, that it behaves like pneumonia or any other specific fever, Sambon has boldly asserted that siriasis is a germ disease, like yellow fever or dengue, and,



like these, is caused by some organism which demands for its development a high atmospheric temperature and certain, as yet unknown, local conditions. Time will show how far this hypothesis is correct. In my opinion it has more in its favour than any of the many theories that have been based on a purely thermic ætiology.

**Symptoms.**—Though sometimes coming on suddenly during exposure to the sun, siriasis is very often preceded by a distinct prodromal stage. It is very often developed independently of any direct exposure to the sun; not infrequently the attack comes on during the night.

Among prodromata which may show themselves with greater or less distinctness for an hour or two, or even for a day or two, before the full development of the attack, may be mentioned great disinclination for exertion, pains in the limbs, drowsiness, vertigo, headache, mental confusion, sighing, anorexia, thirst, intolerance of light—sometimes accompanied by chromatic aberrations of vision, suffused eyes, nausea and perhaps vomiting, præcordial anxiety, sometimes a sense of impending calamity, a hysterical tendency to weep, a very hot dry skin, and a quickened pulse. Longmore called attention to excessive irritability of the bladder as a common prodromal symptom. This is a valuable and easily recognised danger-signal when present, and one the significance of which has been confirmed and emphasised by subsequent writers; it is possible, however, that its frequency has been exaggerated.

Though generally present in greater or less degree, and for a longer or shorter time, in many instances these prodromal symptoms are not remarked, the first indication of anything wrong being perhaps a short stage of restlessness, or possibly of wild delirium. This brief preliminary stage rapidly culminates in coma, complete unconsciousness, and high fever quickly passing into hyperpyrexia.

Wood thus describes the symptoms of the



developed attack :—"All the cases of sunstroke which have come under my observation have been in hospital, and represent, therefore, only the severe, fully-formed disease. The symptoms have been very constant. Total insensibility was always present with, in rare instances, delirium of the talkative form, and still more rarely the capability of being roused by shaking or shouting. The breathing was always affected, sometimes rapid, sometimes deep and laboured, often stertorous, and not rarely accompanied by the rattle of mucus in the trachea. The face was often deeply suffused, sometimes with the whole face deeply cyanosed. The conjunctiva was often injected, the pupils various—sometimes dilated, sometimes nearly normal, sometimes contracted. The skin was always intensely hot, and generally, but not always, dry; when not dry it was bathed in a profuse perspiration. The intense burning heat of the skin, both as felt by the hand and measured by the thermometer, was one of the most marked features of the cases. The degrees of heat reached during life was, in my cases, mostly  $108^{\circ}$ – $109^{\circ}$ . The pulse was always exceedingly rapid, and early in the disease often wanting in force and volume; later it became irregular, intermittent, and thready. The motor nervous system was profoundly affected. Subsultus tendinum was a very common symptom; great restlessness was also very often present, and sometimes partial spasms or even violent general convulsions. The latter were at times epileptiform, occurring spontaneously, or they were tetanoid, and excited by the slightest irritation. Sometimes the spinal cord appeared to be paralysed, the patient absolutely not moving."

The pupils, unless immediately before death, when along with the other sphincters they relax, are contracted. The reflexes are partially or wholly in abeyance. There may also be, especially in the graver cases, free watery purging, the dejecta, as well as the skin of the patient, emitting a peculiar



and distinctive mousey odour. The scanty urine may contain blood corpuscles, albumin, and casts.

Different writers mention a variety of what may be described as minor symptoms. They vary in different cases, and are by no means always present or characteristic. Whether these minor symptoms are present or not, in siriasis the essential symptoms, high fever and profound nervous disturbance, generally associated with insensibility, are invariably in evidence.

Unless active measures to lower temperature are taken early in the progress of the case, and unless these measures are vigorously carried out, in the great majority of instances death will occur within a few hours, or even minutes, of the onset of insensibility. The immediate cause of death is generally the failure of respiration. Rarely do cases linger for a day or two. Partial recovery is sometimes followed by relapse. In favourable cases the disease usually terminates by crisis. Convalescence is rapid.

**Mortality.**—As might be supposed, some types of heat-stroke are much more dangerous than others; siriasis infinitely more so than ordinary heat-exhaustion. Treatment, if early instituted and judiciously carried out, has undoubtedly a powerful influence in reducing mortality. Taking one type of heat-stroke with another, the case mortality among English troops in India is about one in four; in the year 1892, of 223 European soldiers admitted to hospital for heat-stroke 61 died.

**Morbid anatomy.**—A notable feature is the early appearance of rigor mortis. The blood is remarkably fluid, or but feebly clotted. The venous system is gorged, dark fluid blood pouring from the phenomenally engorged lungs and other viscera on section. Both blood and muscles are said to yield an acid reaction more or less pronounced. The red blood corpuscles are crenated, and do not form rouleaux. If the *post-mortem* examination is made shortly after death and before decomposition changes



have set in, the heart, particularly the left ventricle, will be found to be remarkably rigid; this rigidity is sometimes described as being of wooden hardness. If the examination be made at a later period, the muscle of the heart will be found soft and flabby. There may be some venous congestion of the meninges of the brain, but the brain itself shows no important vascular, or naked-eye, changes. The intestinal mucosa, as well as that of the stomach, is swollen and exhibits patches of congestion.

**Pathology.**—As may be gathered from the remarks on ætiology, the pathology of siriasis, so far, is in a very unsettled state, and will continue to be so until the essential cause of the disease has been finally determined.

**Diagnosis.**—The presence of high fever is sufficient to differentiate siriasis from sudden insensibility caused by uræmia, by diabetic coma, by alcoholic and opium poisoning, and by all similar toxic conditions. Cerebral hæmorrhage, particularly pontine, may, after some hours, be followed by high temperature; but here the febrile condition follows the insensibility, whereas in heat-stroke the febrile condition precedes insensibility. The diagnosis from a cerebral malarial attack may be very difficult; chief reliance has to be placed on the history—if obtainable, on the condition of the spleen, and, especially, on the result of microscopic examination of the blood. Malarial fevers, and the early stages of the eruptive fevers in children, are very apt to be regarded as heat-stroke, particularly if there has been recent exposure to a hot sun. Cerebro-spinal fever, so often mistaken for siriasis, may be recognised by the occipital retraction, the irregular pupils, the frequent occurrence of strabismus, the comparatively low and fluctuating temperature, the associated herpes, the initial rigor, and its long duration.

**Treatment.**—In all fulminating fevers, including siriasis, occurring in warm climates, if malaria be suspected, particularly if the plasmodium be discovered



in the blood, quinine should be injected hypodermically at once—seven grains or so of the hydrochlorate; this dose should be repeated three or four times at intervals of four hours. In every case of siriasis, whether it has been deemed advisable to administer quinine or not, attention must at once be given to reduce temperature by such rapidly-acting measures as the cold bath, or ice applied in various ways to the head and body. Antipyrin, antifebrin, and all other antipyretic drugs are of very little service, even if, in consequence of their depressing action on the heart, they be not actually dangerous; in all serious cases of siriasis, these drugs must be carefully avoided. Chandler (*New York Med. Rec.*, June 5th, 1897), speaking from an experience of 197 cases in which the mortality amounted only to twelve, gives some excellent directions for the management of hyperpyrexial cases. He directs that the patient be placed undressed on a stretcher, the head end of which is raised slightly so as to facilitate the escape of involuntary evacuations and to provide for drainage. A thermometer is kept in the rectum. The body is covered with a sheet upon which are laid numerous small pieces of ice, larger pieces being closely packed about the head. Iced water is then allowed to drip for thirty or forty minutes on the patient from drippers hung at an elevation of from five to ten feet. A fine stream of iced water poured on the forehead from an elevation will act as a stimulant and rouser; this is a very powerful measure, and must not be kept up for longer than one or two minutes. A hypodermic injection of forty minims of tincture of digitalis is given as soon as possible, its administration being preceded in the case of plethoric patients showing much arterial tension (but not otherwise) by a small bleeding. The application of cold should be at once discontinued so soon as the thermometer in the rectum has sunk to  $104^{\circ}$ ; and in cases of simple thermic fever, in which the temperature has not exceeded  $106^{\circ}$ , when it has fallen to  $102^{\circ}$ .



If these powerful antipyretic measures are carried beyond this point the fall of temperature may continue below the normal, even to as low as  $91^{\circ}$ , and dangerous collapse ensue. On discontinuing the iced sheet, the patient should be wrapped in a blanket, and hot bottles applied to limbs and trunk. Very likely perspiration, a very favourable sign, will then set in. Stimulants may now be necessary. Strychnine, owing to the marked tendency to convulsions present in heat-stroke, must on no account be used as a cardiac stimulant. Convulsions are best controlled by cautious chloroform inhalations. As death in heat-stroke generally results from failure of respiration, Chandler strongly recommends artificial respiration when the breathing threatens to become suspended ; he claims to have obtained some marvellous results from this expedient. It should be kept up for half an hour or longer.

During convalescence great care must be exercised to shield the patient from all influences calculated to provoke relapse.

#### PREVENTION OF HEAT-STROKE.

In heat-stroke climates great attention should be paid to the general health ; if this be not satisfactory, exposure to the sun and to high temperatures must, so far as possible, be avoided. Alcoholic drinks, gluttony, excess of animal food, too much tobacco smoking, in fact, dissipation of all sorts, are especially to be deprecated. Individuals suffering from malarial or other fevers, or from chronic liver or kidney disease, run great risk if they are careless about exposing themselves to the sun. Violent exercise, excessive fatigue, want of sleep, constipation, are also to be avoided.

Clothing ought to be light and loose fitting, the under-garment being of thin woollen material. In going out in the sun the head must be protected by a wide-brimmed pith hat, protecting the temples and



neck as well as the top of the head. This hat should be lined with some coloured material and so constructed as to admit of free ventilation around the head. A pad of cotton sewn into the back of the coat in such a way as to protect the spine is a wise measure, and one adopted by experienced sportsmen in India. The phenomena connected with the Röntgen rays suggest the possibility that there may be solar rays, other than the ordinary heat rays, which, although they may be able to pass through organic materials, can nevertheless be arrested by metals. If this be true for the sun as well as for the electric spark, a useful addition to the sun hat would be a thin plate of some light metal placed between the layers of pith constituting the basis of the ordinary solar topee. A sheet of tinfoil or other light metal would not perceptibly add to the weight of the head-gear. A white umbrella, lined with green, ought never to be despised. Tinted (smoke colour) goggles are probably a protection, as they certainly are a great comfort in mitigating solar glare.

Rooms should be kept dark during the day, and cooled by means of punkahs, thermantidotes, tatties, venetians, and other contrivances. In barracks and ships there must be no overcrowding. In very hot weather European soldiers should, if possible, sleep under punkahs. Military drills should be reduced to a minimum, and take place in the cool of the morning only, and after the soldier has had a cup of tea or coffee and some light food. Marches should be short, interrupted by frequent halts, and be got through if possible in the early morning. While marching the men ought to be in open order, relieved of all unnecessary weights, belts and clothing, and be well supplied with water. Camps should be pitched in cool and airy spots and on turf and under large spreading trees free from undergrowth. Double canvas, and grass or boughs laid on the wall of the tent will do much to mitigate the temperature within.



## CHAPTER XV.

## UNCLASSIFIED FEVERS OF THE TROPICS.

THERE can be little doubt but that in the tropics there are a number of fevers specifically distinct from any of the foregoing, and also from the better-known fevers of temperate climates. Such fevers are constantly met with and are a perpetual puzzle to the conscientious diagnostician. Up to the present, little, if anything, of a truly scientific character has been done towards describing, separating, and classifying them. Some attempts have been made to arrange these imperfectly differentiated fevers on a clinical basis; but, until their causes have been discovered and, above all, until they have been studied in reference to any possible connection they may have with the malaria parasites, with *Micrococcus melitensis* and with *Bacillus typhosus*, anything like a sound classification and description has to be postponed. So far as known, they are not associated with distinctive exanthems or even with distinctive visceral lesions; a circumstance which has contributed, doubtless, to retard our knowledge in a very important department of tropical medicine. Another circumstance which has retarded progress in this matter is the unscientific classification of fevers adopted by our military medical authorities, to which military medical officers have been obliged, or have elected, in great measure to conform. It would seem that every case of fever of short duration, as well as those cases which show an intermittent character, has to appear in the Army Returns as "ague." This misleading, slovenly, not to say dangerous, practice, must have had a powerful influence in retarding the study of the pyretology of the tropics,



at all events by our principal medical pioneers there—the army surgeons.

Recently, Crombie (*Trans. First Ind. Med. Cong.*) has attempted a classification of these fevers on a clinical basis, which, so far as it goes, is of distinct value. His remarks apply solely to the fevers of India; but I can recognise in his descriptions clinical forms which I frequently met with formerly in China. It is fair to infer from this latter circumstance that, if these fevers are found in India and China, they probably occur in other warm countries.

Crombie divides them into **simple continued fever**, **low fever**, and **non-malarial remittent**. To these I would add yet another which, from experience in China, I regard as a distinct clinical entity, and which from its peculiar feature I would call **double continued fever**.

**Simple continued fever.**—Simple continued fever generally, if not invariably, commences with a rigor, the temperature rapidly or more slowly mounting to  $104^{\circ}$ ,  $105^{\circ}$ , or even  $106^{\circ}$ . There is headache, malaise, a white furred tongue, anorexia, thirst, and perhaps vomiting. The fever lasts usually from three to eight days; occasionally it is prolonged for two, three, or four weeks. Crombie remarks that these cases are particularly common in towns, and are known locally as Bombay fever, Calcutta fever, and so forth. It might be suggested that such fevers are mild or aborted typhoid; but in the complete absence of the characteristics of enteric, the insignificant mortality, and the absence of complications, so grave a diagnosis does not seem to be justified. It is customary to attribute them to heat, chills, change of season, acclimatisation, irregularities in diet, exposure to the sun, and the like. As to how far these ætiological speculations are correct, it is hard to say.

**Low fever.**—Like the preceding, this type of fever is not an unusual one among Europeans in the tropics. Its characteristics are indefinite duration—weeks or months, a persistent though slight rise of



temperature—rarely above  $101.5^{\circ}$  but never below  $99^{\circ}$ , anorexia, debility, loss of flesh, and a tendency to bilious diarrhœa. It is unrelieved by quinine or arsenic; but it almost invariably responds to a change of air, especially to a trip at sea.

**Non-malarial remittent.**—Crombie remarks that it is a pity we have no better name for this fever, which is of very frequent occurrence in India, and is one of the most fatal of the fevers there. Remittent is a misnomer, for the symptoms are even less remitting than those of typhoid. The temperature runs high, touching  $104^{\circ}$  or  $105^{\circ}$  for a long part of its course. It begins not unlike simple continued fever. By some it is considered a variety of typhoid, notwithstanding the absence of many of the symptoms of that disease. Hepatic enlargement and congestion are early and constant conditions; but the spleen, as a rule, is not distinctly enlarged.

“Bilious diarrhœa, in no respect resembling the diarrhœa of typhoid, is also a very frequent symptom. Quinine—often given in large and repeated doses in these cases—is not only not useful but so obviously adds to the distress of the patient, without in any way producing an improvement in the progress of the symptoms, that it is very soon abandoned. Meanwhile, the temperature continuing persistently high, marked head symptoms, especially delirium of a muttering and irritable kind, come on, and the patient may even, and often does, pass into a condition of coma from which he can hardly be roused. This condition of persistent high temperature without marked remission, a distinctly enlarged and congested liver, bilious diarrhœa, congestion on the back of both lungs, and a low, muttering delirium, is generally reached by the eighteenth to the twenty-fourth day. If coma supervenes, the patient frequently dies about this period. In more favourable cases, where the symptoms are less severe, they may continue for a week or two longer. In such the average duration of the case is six weeks” (Crombie).



Crombie, although he had seen this fever in Europeans, regards it as being essentially a disease of natives. It is uncommon after thirty, but is frequent enough in childhood.

**Double continued fever.**—

In South China I encountered, both in Amoy and in Hong Kong, a peculiar type of fever, apparently of little gravity as affecting life, but sufficiently distressing while it lasted. It was characterised by an initial pyrexial stage of from ten days' to a fortnight's duration, followed by a stage of from three to seven days' relative or absolute apyrexia which, in its turn, was succeeded by another spell of about ten days' duration of smart fever, and then by convalescence (Fig. 35). Both in the primary and in the terminal fever the evening temperature may rise to

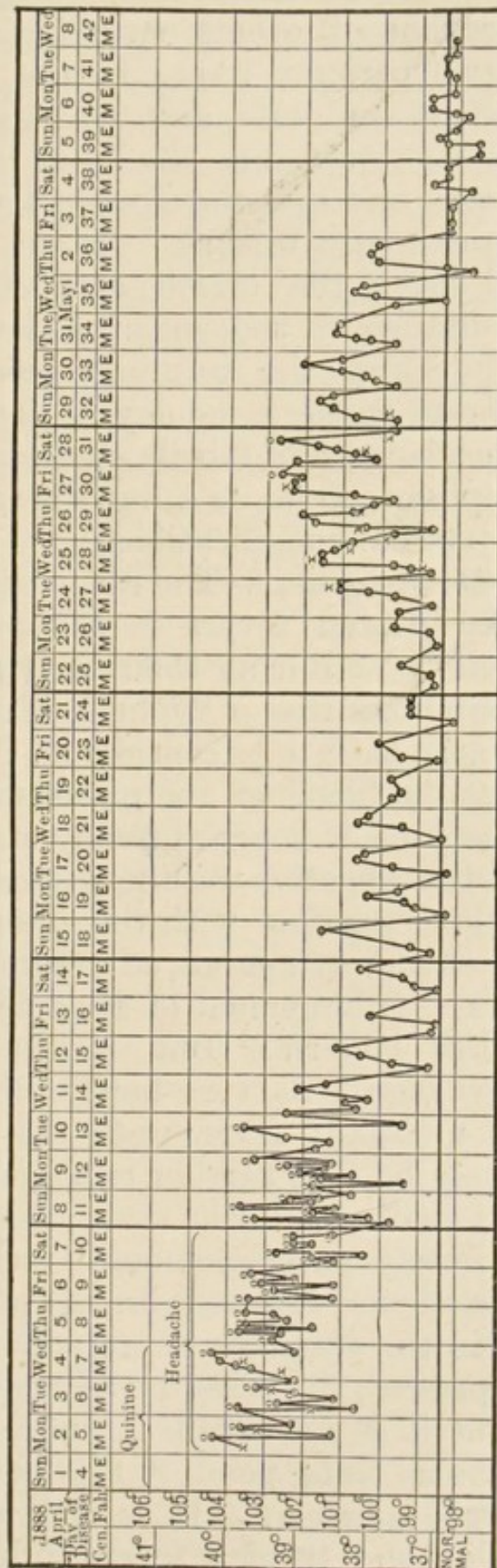


Fig. 35.—Chart of Double Continued Fever, Hong Kong. o indicates a dose of antipyrin.



104° or 104.5°. It might be said that such cases were relapses of simple continued fever; but as I have, on at least two occasions, seen the same succession of events occurring almost simultaneously in two patients living in the same house—once in husband and wife, and once in brother and sister—it seems probable that this is a special form of disease, and that the double fever is a constant and characteristic feature. In the case of the brother and sister the march of their fevers was strictly simultaneous, the primary fever, the apyretic interval, and the terminal fever occurring in both patients on the same days. Beyond a certain amount of headache and febrile distress there are no special symptoms, so far as I have been able to observe, nor any special complications.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of these imperfectly differentiated fevers is always a difficult matter, specially so during their early stages. Among other possibilities that of typhoid, of undulant fever, and of malaria, have to be considered. The persistent absence from the blood of the plasmodium and of pigmented leucocytes, if vouched for by an experienced observer, and the negative results attending administration of quinine, together with the absence of marked periodicity in the symptoms, of pronounced anæmia and of marked enlargement of the spleen, should be decisive against malaria. But, in the present state of our knowledge, it is very hard indeed to exclude typhoid and undulant fever until the case is well advanced. It may be that further experience of the blood serum tests will establish their title to be regarded as absolutely pathognomonic signs. In this event the practitioner will have in his possession an invaluable aid in the diagnosis of tropical fevers. As things are at present, in cases in which there is the slightest doubt it is an excellent rule to regard all doubtful fevers as being possibly typhoid.

**Treatment.**—It is well at the commencement of doubtful tropical fevers to be as guarded in treat-



ment as in diagnosis, and to eschew active purgatives, to enjoin rest in bed, to place the patient on a bland, unstimulating fluid diet, and to confine medication to some innocent fever mixture. There is no specific treatment for any of these unclassified fevers. Each case has to be dealt with on its own merits and on general principles. Headache may be relieved by cold applications to the forehead, by an ice cap, or, especially if temperature rises high, by sponging and, if not otherwise contra-indicated, by occasional doses of antipyrin or some similar drug. If quinine, on the supposition that the case is malarial, has been freely tried, and without benefit, it must not be persisted with. As already hinted, "low fever" should be treated by change of air, and more especially, where feasible, by a trip to sea.



## SECTION II.—GENERAL DISEASES OF UNDETERMINED NATURE.

### CHAPTER XVI.

#### BERIBERI (KAKKE, BARBIERS).

**Definition.**—Beriberi is a specific form of multiple peripheral neuritis occurring endemically, or as an epidemic, in most tropical and sub-tropical climates and, also, under certain artificial conditions, in more temperate latitudes. The mortality is considerable, death usually depending on heart paresis.

**Historical.**—The special nature of beriberi was recognised by the Dutch in the early years of their intercourse with the East. Later, it was studied by British physicians in India, particularly by Malcomsen, Carter, Waring, and Morehead. It was not until a more recent epidemic in Brazil that beriberi began to receive attention from the present generation of medical men; and it was not until Mr. Anderson, of St. Thomas's Hospital and then of Tokio, Japan, Dr. Simmons of Yokohama, and Professors Scheube and Baelz, also of Tokio, took the matter up that it was studied by modern methods, accurately defined, and its pathology correctly apprehended. Scheube and Baelz were the first to show distinctly that beriberi is of the nature of a specific peripheral neuritis similar to that of diphtheria and alcohol, a view which was subsequently confirmed and adopted by Pekelharing and Winkler, and by many other observers.

**Geographical distribution.**—The area of the endemic distribution of beriberi is co-extensive probably with the tropical and sub-tropical belts;



doubtless it exists in many places where its presence is not generally suspected. It is the scourge of many of the mines and plantations of the Malay and Eastern Archipelago. It is apt to break out among the coolie gangs engaged on extensive engineering works in the tropics, such as the Panama Canal or the Congo railway. It haunts the Dutch army in Sumatra, and used to be common enough, until better hygienic methods prevailed, in the British armies in India. It is at home in many parts of Japan, particularly in her large, low-lying, damp, over-crowded cities. It occurs in China, Manila, the Eastern Peninsula, India and Africa. It is prone to break out in jails, in schools, in ships. Sometimes, as an epidemic wave, it passes over a tropical country, as was the case in Brazil in the early 'sixties, where it still lingers. Sometimes sporadic cases crop up here and there. Generally, when it appears in a community, it attacks large numbers, picking out particular houses and districts. Lately we had an account of a small epidemic among a group of Western Australian natives, and also among Chinese on the eastern seaboard of Australia, a continent where beriberi was formerly supposed not to exist. Similarly, it appeared lately, apparently for the first time, in Japanese immigrants in Fiji. A little while ago I saw a case of beriberi from Lake Nyassa, another from the Upper Congo, another from Hayti. We hear of it also from Havana, from New Caledonia, from the Sandwich Islands—all of them places not before known to be liable to this disease. So that the area is probably a very extensive one. Indeed, within the last few years it would seem that it includes the temperate as well as the tropical zones. Recently beriberi showed itself in a lunatic asylum in Ireland—Richmond Asylum, Dublin; and apparently the same disease has been seen lately in lunatic asylums in the United States and in France, and also among the fishermen on the North American coast.



**Symptoms.**—Medical visitors to the native hospitals in many parts of the tropical world are likely to have their attention arrested by the large proportion of cases of partial paraplegia, of cases of œdema of the legs, and of cases of general dropsy. These, for the most part, are cases of beriberi.



Fig. 36.—Beriberi (Bentley).

**Paraplegic cases.**—On examining one of the paraplegic cases referred to (Fig. 36), it will be found that, besides paraplegia of greater or lesser degree, there is a certain amount of anæsthesia or of numbness of the skin; particularly of the skin over the front of the tibiæ, the dorsa of the feet, the sides of the thighs, perhaps also of the finger tips, and of one or two areas on the arms and trunk. The visitor may be struck with the thinness of the patients' calves, the flabby state of the gastrocnemii; and by

the fact that if, whilst making the examination, he should handle these and the neighbouring muscles somewhat roughly, particularly if he should squeeze them against the underlying bones, the patient will call out in pain and try to drag the limb away. The thigh muscles, likewise, may be found to be similarly



tender, and so may the thenar, the hypothenar, and the arm muscles; like the calf muscles, these too may be wasted and flabby. Very probably there is a loss of fat as well, the panniculus adiposus being everywhere very meagre. If tested electrically, the muscles exhibit to perfection the reaction of degeneration. If the knee reflex be tested in the usual way, after the first week there will be no response whatever; nor can any clonus be elicited. As a rule, all the deep reflexes are lost; but the superficial reflexes, unless in extreme conditions of paresis and muscular atrophy, are usually present and more or less active. If the patient is set to button his jacket or to pick up a pin, possibly he has a difficulty about it, or perhaps he cannot; he may bungle and fumble like an advanced ataxic. There is more than ataxia, however; for the hand grasp is so enfeebled that he may have a difficulty, on this account as well, in holding his rice bowl and feeding himself. There is no tremor of the hands; and very rarely is there any paresis of the ocular muscles, or of the muscles of the face, of mastication, of the tongue, or of the pharynx. The sphincters and bladder operate satisfactorily, and the functions of the alimentary canal are carried on fairly well, although there is often some dyspeptic distension and oppression after food. On the patient being got out of bed and started to walk, if he is able to progress at all, his gait will be markedly ataxic; but he is not ataxic merely, for, just as with the hands, it will be seen that, in addition to want of co-ordinating power, there is great muscular weakness. If he is laid on the bed and asked to raise his legs, he is perhaps hardly able to get them off the mat, to cross them, or to place them one foot on top of the other. Very probably he is the subject of marked ankle-drop, so that he drags his toes when he attempts in walking to advance the foot; he has therefore to raise the foot very high, letting it fall on the ground with a flop when he brings it down again. His ataxia and his muscular weakness, as well as the partial



anæsthesia from which he suffers, make him adopt all sorts of devices to assist him in progression (Fig. 37).

Manifestly these patients are suffering from some form of peripheral neuritis. The general health is



R. & M. Muir.

Fig. 37.—Beriberi (*Bentley*).

good for the most part; their tongues are clean, their bowels are fairly regular, and there is nothing amiss with the urine. Digestion, assimilation, and excretion go on satisfactorily.



*The heart and circulation.* — When the heart is examined, if the case be at all recent or moderately severe, attention is at once arrested. On inspection it may be remarked that the impulse is diffuse or is obscured by pericardial effusion; that there is epigastric pulsation; that the carotids throb too violently; that there is that peculiar wobbling, pulsating movement in the jugulars that denotes tricuspid insufficiency. On percussion the præcordial area is generally found to be enlarged, perhaps very greatly enlarged, especially to the right; and on auscultation loud bruits, usually systolic in rhythm, may be heard. Marked reduplication of the sounds, particularly of the second sound, is to be noted. The auscultator will also be struck by the peculiar spacing of the intervals between the sounds. It may be hardly possible to tell by the ear alone which is the first pause, and which is the second. They seem alike in point of duration; so that the sounds of the heart are, like the beats of a well-hung pendulum clock, evenly spaced, and not, as they are in health, separated by a long and a short interval, like the beats of an ill-hung clock. It will also be observed that the heart is very irritable, becoming easily quickened by exertion. All these signs vary in degree from time to time in the same case, and differ in degree in different cases. It will be judged, therefore, that, in addition to peripheral neuritis, there is serious disease in the circulatory system, particularly in its innervation; that there is dilatation of the right side of the heart; and that there is a state of relaxed arterial tension.

**Dropsical cases.**—In the next bed, perhaps, to the patient whose picture I have tried to draw, may be seen another man apparently suffering from quite a different affection (Fig. 38). He is propped up in bed. Instead of being thin and wasted, as the last patient, his face is puffy and heavy; his lips possibly are slightly cyanosed; and his arms, hands, trunk, legs, and feet are distended with œdema. It may be thought from the appearance of the œdema that it is a case of



acute nephritis, and an examination with this idea may be made of the scanty, dark-coloured urine. But



Fig. 38.—Beriberi (Bentley).

this is found to be of high specific gravity, and to contain no albumin, or only a mere trace; so that the case cannot be one of acute Bright's disease. Careful observation will discover that the œdema is somewhat firmer than that of nephritis, and, in not a few instances, that it does not involve the scrotum. Occasionally cases are met with in which the œdema is peculiarly localised and fugitive. Attention is now directed to the heart, and here a bruit is discovered, besides other evidences of dilatation of the organ and of arterial relaxation, just as in the first case. The lungs are now examined, and there, too, one may or may not discover signs of single or double hydro-thorax, although, probably, not to a very great extent. The lungs themselves are healthy. On getting him out of bed it is found that the patient

can hardly walk, partly from breathlessness; partly on account of mechanical interference by the dropsy with



the movements of the legs; partly, perhaps, from some degree of paresis. He has ankle-drop possibly; and, if firm pressure be brought to bear on the calf muscles through the œdema, signs of hyperæsthesia of the muscles may or may not be elicited. Knee-jerk is probably absent, and there is numbness of the shins and finger-tips. The tongue is clean, the appetite fair, and there is no fever. But there may be complaint of præcordial distress and even pain; this is aggravated by a full meal, so that the patient is obliged to eat sparingly. The amount of urine is generally very much reduced—to a few ounces even. In this patient, therefore, there are the same signs of peripheral neuritis and of dilatation of the heart as in the other case. In addition, there is a somewhat firm œdema, which is not altogether cardiac, but, as its character and the circumstances in which it is found suggest, is probably connected partly with lesion of the nerves regulating urinary excretion, and partly with the play of transudation and absorption in the nutrition of the connective tissue.

**Mixed paraplegic and dropsical cases.—**

In the next bed to this patient there lies, perhaps, another case which looks like a mixture of the two preceding. There is œdema to some extent, particularly of the shins and feet, about the flanks, sacral region and, very generally, over the sternum and root of the neck. There is numbness of the shins, there is some ataxia, there is muscular weakness and hyperæsthesia—particularly of leg and thigh muscles, there is absence of knee-jerks, there is cardiac bruit, and there are signs of dilatation of the heart and relaxed arterial tension. Just as in other cases, the general health of the patient is unaffected, the tongue clean, the urine though scanty is otherwise normal, and there is no fever.

*Great variety in degree and combination of symptoms.*—All through the wards of the hospital dozens of similar cases may be encountered. Some are so trifling that they are up and moving about



with more or less freedom; others are so severely smitten that they lie like logs in their beds, unable to move a limb or perhaps even a finger. Some are atrophied to skeletons; others are swollen out with dropsy; and some show just sufficient dropsy to conceal the atrophy the muscles have undergone. In some it will be noticed that the laryngeal muscles are affected, the patient being unable to speak above a whisper or to produce an explosive cough. In one or two the abdominal and the perineal muscles may be so profoundly paralysed that, when cough is attempted, at most a husky expiration is produced, whilst the belly is bulged forwards and the perineum shot downwards by the sudden contraction of the muscles of expiration.

*Erroneous diagnoses.* — The novice in tropical medicine will be greatly puzzled for a time over these cases. I have seen them diagnosed as many kinds of diseases, and, until I had a little experience, have so diagnosed them myself. I have seen them called cardiac disease, locomotor ataxia, muscular rheumatism, progressive muscular atrophy, ascending spinal paralysis, and have over and over again seen them relegated to that refuge for ignorance—malaria, and called “malarial rheumatism,” or “malarial paralysis,” or, more pedantically, “malarial paraplegia,” or “malarial neuritis.”\*

If the visitor has the curiosity to examine the blood of these patients, possibly in a proportion of them he will find *Filaria nocturna*, or some of the other bloodworms; very likely he will then think that the cases are forms of filariasis, and he may construct theories to explain how the filaria pro-

\* Dr. Strachan has described (*Practitioner*, 1897, p. 477) a form of multiple peripheral neuritis which he calls “malarial.” The disease is endemic, and very common in Jamaica. It differs from beriberi inasmuch as it is not attended with œdema, is frequently complicated with implication of the cranial nerves, and is rarely fatal. We have no accounts of any similar disease from other tropical countries. Probably, therefore, Dr. Strachan’s neuritis is not malarial, but depends on some cause peculiar, so far as known, to Jamaica. The subject requires further study.



duces the symptoms. Or, if he examine the fæces, very probably in over 50 per cent. of the cases, or in some countries in nearly all the cases, he will find the ova of *Ankylostomum duodenale* and, probably, those of *Trichocephalus dispar* also. On this evidence he may conclude that these are cases of ankylostomiasis. He had better, however, not commit himself to such a diagnosis until he has ascertained how it fares with the rest of the population as regards these parasites; for he will find that the filaria, the ankylostomum, and the trichocephalus are quite as prevalent outside as inside the hospital, and in the healthy as well as in the sick.

*Past history of patients.*—On inquiry he will learn that most of the cases come from two or three centres where similar disease is endemic—from some particular plantation, mine, or village. He will also remark that the same places supply both atrophic-paralytic cases and dropsical-paralytic cases; and he will also learn that many of the atrophic cases commenced with dropsical symptoms. From this he will make the important deduction that he is dealing, not with two diseases, but with two phases of the same disease; that sometimes this disease assumes atrophic features, sometimes dropsical features, and that sometimes it is of a mixed character. Many of the patients will give a history of fever at the outset of their troubles; in some there is a history of diarrhœa; in some the paralytic or dropsical symptoms developed very slowly; in others, again, they came on rapidly. In some there is a history of a similar attack the previous year, or a yearly attack for three or four years in succession. Some will tell that they have been ill for several months, others that they have been ill for a week or two only.

*Its uncertain course.*—He will learn that this disease, which is beriberi, commences slowly or suddenly; that it may be preceded by a period of intermitting languor, aching legs, slowly advancing œdema of legs or face; or that the patient may wake



up some morning and find that during the night he has become dropsical or paretic. Thus the disease may develop slowly or rapidly. Equally uncertain is its progress and danger; within a day or a week, or at any time during its course, it may assume fulminating, malignant characters. It may completely subside in a few days, or it may drag on for months. It may get well apparently and then relapse. It may, and generally does, clear up completely; or it may leave a dilated heart, or atrophied limb muscles with corresponding deformity. The variety in the severity, progress, and duration of beriberi is infinite; but in all cases the essential symptoms are the same—greater or less œdema, especially over the shins; muscular feebleness and hyperæsthesia, especially of the legs; numbness, especially over the front of the shins; liability to palpitation from cardiac dilatation, and to sudden death from the same cause.

*Progress of the cases.*—As the visitor watches the progress of the cases he will be astonished that those which he thought examples of locomotor ataxia, or of progressive muscular atrophy, or of ascending spinal paralysis, gradually improve, begin to walk about, and finally quit the hospital quite well. He will be astonished to see, after perhaps a profuse diuresis, the bloated carcass, that could hardly turn itself in bed, rapidly shrivel to little more than skin and bone, and assume all the appearances of the atrophic cases; and, later, perhaps after many months, become rehabilitated, and, in due course, also walk out of the hospital quite well. He will notice that the cardiac bruits come and go; that the degree of dilatation of the heart is subject to fluctuations; that what seemed organic disease completely disappears.

*Cardiac attacks.*—But he will also be astonished, as he goes his rounds, to see so often empty beds where the day before lay men whom he considered by no means seriously ill—certainly not dying. Some day he will come on a patient, whom the previous day he thought to be by no means seriously ill,



actually *in extremis*. The poor fellow is propped up in bed, he is struggling for breath, his face is purple, his eyes are starting out of his head, his whole attitude is expressive of the utmost distress; he has a horrible, tearing, boring, crushing pain under his sternum and in the epigastrium; the vessels of his neck are throbbing violently, his pulse is quick, small, intermittent, and his extremities are cold. In a short time the patient is dead. Some of the fatal cases, he will note, die quite suddenly as if from syncope; but most die in the distressing way described, evidently from paresis and over-distension of the right heart, complicated and aggravated by œdema of the lungs, or by diaphragmatic paralysis, by hydrothorax, or by hydropericardium.

*Nomenclature and classification in beriberi.*—For purposes of description, the paralytic-atrophic cases are designated “dry beriberi” or *beriberia atrophica*; the dropsical cases, “wet beriberi” or *beriberia hydrops*; and those in which there is a combination of both conditions, “mixed beriberi.” Sometimes the cases are classified according to the rapidity of development and gravity of symptoms into acute, sub-acute, and chronic. None of these classifications is good, seeing that they all refer to the same disease, and that one form may suddenly or more slowly merge into the other.

**Ætiology.**—*Sex, age, occupation, etc.*—Beriberi attacks both sexes. It occurs at all ages except early childhood and extreme old age, its favourite age being from about fifteen to thirty. It affects rich as well as poor. It is confined to no particular trade or occupation; if anything, it has a predilection for those who lead a sedentary life and are much indoors, as students, prisoners, and the inmates of asylums; it is apt to attack pregnant or parturient females. It is quite as common in the strong and full-blooded as in the weak and anæmic.

*Climatic conditions.*—In countries in which there is a hot and cold season the epidemic outbreaks occur



during the former, old cases improving and new cases ceasing to crop up during the winter. In countries which are hot all the year round beriberi may appear at any time; most frequently, however, in such climates it appears during the rains.

*Beriberi a place disease like malaria.*—Everything points to beriberi being a disease of locality, in this respect resembling malaria. It further resembles malaria in being fostered by damp, by high temperature, and by its most often attacking those who sleep on or near the ground. As with malaria, though its explosion in any given individual residing in the endemic area may be solicited by fatigue, chill, privation, and other causes of physiological depression, it is not actually caused by such circumstances.

*Influence of overcrowding.*—Overcrowding seems to favour the outbreak of beriberi. This has, perhaps, a good deal to do with its frequency and virulence in such conglomerations of humanity as are found in Oriental jails, schools, mining camps, plantation lines, armies, ships. Unlike malaria, it is common enough in the middle of large cities as well as in villages and jungle land.

*Ship beriberi.*—Unlike malaria, it is common in the native crews, more rarely, though occasionally, among the European officers and sailors of ships on the high seas and far away from any telluric influence. The crowding in the damp fore-castle and the exposure incident to a sailor's life seem to be among, though not the only, reasons for ship beriberi. Thus this form of the disease is often seen at the Seamen's Hospitals at the Albert Docks and Greenwich among the lascars and sidi-boys of steamers trading to India, the disease appearing perhaps months after the ships have left the East, sometimes even months after they had been lying in the London Docks. Some years ago a number of these cases was admitted to the Seamen's Hospital at the Albert Dock. I had the curiosity to visit one of the ships from which several of the patients had been brought. I went into the fore-castle. Although the



weather was mild for Englishmen, it was evidently very cold for the half-clothed lascars. They had a fire blazing in their quarters, every door, scuttle, window, and ventilator of which they had carefully closed. The place was suffocatingly hot, damp, and redolent of steaming humanity, and not very clean humanity either. I do not know how many men had stowed themselves away with their dirty rags in this place, but there was a crowd of them. Several had symptoms of beriberi, and were in their bunks. After seeing the fore-castle I was taken to a little dark cell, an oblong den with a couple of bunks one on top of the other, located somewhere in the neighbourhood of the keel. There was no light, no means of ventilation, and barely standing room. There I found three men sitting on the lowermost bunk, all of them suffering from severe beriberi. One of them, I afterwards heard, died before morning; the others were sent to the hospital just in time to save their lives. The fact is that these epidemics of ship beriberi are fostered by the artificial conditions which the ignorant lascars are allowed to bring about. They feel the cold of the English climate so much that, on entering British seas, they try to keep their quarters warm by lighting fires and stopping up all ventilators. By these means they create a hot, steamy atmosphere and a sodden state of the place they live and sleep in, which is a very good imitation of the tropical conditions the germ of beriberi requires for its development. In other words, these lascar sailors create an incubator on a large scale, which, should it chance to contain a beriberi germ, quickly becomes extensively infected and lethal.

*Asylum beriberi.*—Not very long ago exactly similar conditions, and with similar results, were produced by similar means in the Dublin lunatic asylum already alluded to. This asylum, built for 1,000 inmates, had 1,500 crowded into it. Any one who knows what the atmosphere of even a well-regulated and not overcrowded dormitory in a



lunatic asylum is like, can imagine what it becomes in warm weather, where three patients are lodged in a place barely sufficient for two. The heat, the breath-vapour condensed and streaming down the walls, the effluvia from the patients, the closed doors, the barred windows, the want of air, and the damp conspire to foster any germ of beriberi which evil chance may introduce into this incubator. These are just the conditions found in the tropics; and when such conditions are reproduced elsewhere, even in temperate climates, on the beriberi germ being accidentally supplied from without the result will be just the same.

*Beriberi a germ disease, but probably not communicable from man to man.*—Beriberi is undoubtedly a germ disease, for, as not a few facts have shown, the cause can be transported from place to place and, on encountering suitable conditions, will multiply as only a living organism can. I do not think, however, that the germ lives as a parasite in the human body, or that it exercises its pathogenic powers in a direct way, or that it passes directly from one human being to another like the germ of the ordinary infectious or directly communicable diseases. Nurses and medical men in hospitals where, perhaps, there may be hundreds of beriberi patients, do not catch the disease; nor in hospitals located outside the endemic districts does it spread to other patients. Of course, if hospitals are themselves infective, are themselves beriberi centres, beriberi may in that case attack patients admitted for other diseases, particularly, I think I have observed, for surgical disease—operation cases; in these circumstances it may attack nurses and medical attendants. Beriberi seems to resemble yellow fever in some of these respects.

*Possibly caused by a toxin generated by a germ living in the patient's surroundings.*—It is often remarked that when patients are removed from the endemic spots they at once begin to improve, and may be out of danger in a few days; whilst those



who remain in the endemic area most probably go from bad to worse, and very likely die. It is as if the place were infected by the germ, and not the individual; else, why should patients begin to mend so rapidly after they leave the locality? It is as if some toxin were generated in the soil or surroundings, and, rising up, were absorbed constantly and day by day; but when the spot in which the toxin is generated is quitted, and there is no longer a constant renewal of the poisoning going on, the effects, after a day or two, steadily and gradually wear out. This is not what happens where a germ is itself actually parasitic in the human body and the direct cause of disease; in such, disease and germ do not die out thus rapidly.

*Pekelharing and Winkler's views.*—Pekelharing and Winkler say that the beriberi germ is really introduced into the body, but as it can live there for a short time only, if beriberi disease is to be produced fresh doses of the germ have to be constantly reintroduced. They have gone the length of saying that they have found the germ in question, a bacterium, in the blood; and that they have succeeded in cultivating it, and in inducing in the lower animals, by repeated injections of their cultures, symptoms like those of beriberi. There are various sources of fallacy about Pekelharing and Winkler's experiments, and their conclusions have not been accepted as yet by many authorities.

*Other germs.*—Besides the bacilli and cocci of Pekelharing and Winkler, many other germs have been described as the cause of beriberi on evidence altogether insufficient. I have many times looked for bacteria and other microscopic parasites in the blood of beriberics, but hitherto without success.

*Nitrogen starvation theory.*—A favourite theory some time ago was to the effect that beriberi was due to nitrogen starvation—to deficiency of nitrogenous elements in the dietary. In former years, beriberi used annually to attack quite one-fourth of



the *personnel* of the Japanese navy. Now it is almost unknown in that service. The striking change coincided, in point of time, with the introduction into the Imperial navy of an improved ration, in accordance with a suggestion from Takaki who entertained this view about the influence of deficient nitrogen in food. It was inferred from the success following the change that the improvement in the health of the sailors was attributable to the increased amount of nitrogen in the new dietary. But the improvement could have been no more than coincidence; or, at most, the influence of the increased supply of nitrogen could only have been subsidiary. There were other hygienic reforms introduced about the same time as the improved dietary; these, doubtless, had their favourable influence.

Lately a French writer, on the strength of a limited number of observations on the curative and preventive influence of a fat dietary in beriberi, has propounded the theory that the disease is caused by deficiency of this element in the food.

If we examine all the circumstances, we shall find that neither the nitrogen starvation theory nor the fat starvation theory tallies with the facts of the peculiar geographical distribution of beriberi, its peculiar local limitations, its affecting rich as well as poor, its appearing in some houses and not appearing in neighbouring houses, and many other facts. For example, during an epidemic of beriberi in Singapore jail the male side of the prison was decimated, whilst not a single inmate of the female side was attacked, although both classes of prisoners had the same food and drank the same water. The only hygienic difference ascertainable between the two sides of the jail was, that whereas the male side was damp the female side was dry.

*Various erroneous theories as to the causation of beriberi.*—At one time Indian writers seemed somehow to have lost hold of this disease. Probably this was owing to its disappearance from the army there.



As a consequence, the nature, and even the clinical features, of beriberi came to be misunderstood ; so that in several works on Indian diseases it is stated that beriberi is of the nature of an anæmia, in others that it is an expression of scorbutus ; in others, again, that it is a form of ankylostomiasis. These views are absolutely erroneous, and have been amply refuted in Burma, in the Straits Settlements, in Japan, and in many other places. Hæmocytometric observations have shown that anæmia, if it should happen to be present in a case of beriberi, is in no relation, except an accidental one, to the disease ; so with scorbutus, a disease only too common in the underfed Oriental, and therefore likely enough to concur with beriberi in a certain proportion of cases ; and so with the *Ankylostomum duodenale* and the *Trichocephalus dispar*, intestinal parasites which are extensively distributed throughout warm countries, in beriberi districts and in non-beriberi districts alike. In fact, beriberi has been attributed to all sorts of causes—to damaged grain, damaged fish, to rain, to wind, to heat, to cold, to rheumatism, and to many other things, amongst others, of course, like every tropical pathological puzzle, to malaria.

*The germ viewed as a saprophyte.*—My idea about the matter is, as I have said, that beriberi is a germ disease ; that the germ resides in the soil or in the houses and surroundings of beriberi spots ; that it there distils a poison which, on being absorbed by man, produces neuritis, much in the same way that alcohol does. The soil is the infected medium ; the man residing on it is poisoned, not infected. In the case of alcoholic neuritis—so like beriberi—the germ of the disease is the yeast plant ; the culture medium, the saccharine solution ; the toxin, the alcohol. The alcohol germ may be swallowed with impunity ; not so the toxin it generates. So with beriberi : its germ lives in the soil ; it produces some kind of toxin there ; and this toxin, being inhaled or swallowed



by man, produces in him a specific neuritis; and, just as man can carry the yeast plant from one place to another, so may he carry the beriberi germ. So far as I have been able to interpret them, this is the only hypothesis which fits in with all the facts of the case.

Hirota (*Centralbl. f. inn. Med.*, April 23, 1898) mentions a circumstance which powerfully supports the theory I put forward. Of fifty-two infants who suffered from beriberi while being wet-nursed by beriberic mothers forty-two recovered, five died, five were not accounted for. In the cases which recovered the improvement set in at once on the children being weaned. Had a germ operating inside the body been the cause of the symptoms, the germ and the disease it produced would not have died out so rapidly; but we can readily understand cessation of symptoms on the supposition that they were caused by a toxin which on the cessation of suckling was no longer being imbibed.

**Morbid anatomy and pathology.**—There is very little to be said about the *post-mortem* appearances in beriberi which is not covered by the accepted descriptions of the lesions of peripheral neuritis. Central changes have not been made out with certainty; but there is a degeneration of the peripheral nerves—more especially of their distal ends, and there is secondary atrophic degeneration of muscle, including that of the heart which may be the subject of an acute fatty degeneration like that of diphtheria. If there is anything peculiar about the *post-mortem* appearances it arises from the somewhat special implication of the central and peripheral organs of the circulation—namely, dilatation of the heart, especially of the right side, and great accumulation of blood in the right heart and in the veins. In addition, there is a marked liability in many cases to serous effusion into the pericardium, pleuræ, peritoneum, and cellular tissue. This liability to serous effusion, and the tendency to cardiac dila-



tation, may be said to be more or less distinctive of beriberic as compared with other forms of multiple neuritis. It doubtless depends especially on vasomotor disturbances, although cardiac weakness and partial suppression of urine may be contributory elements in its production. Œdema of the lungs is also not uncommon and has, probably, a similar pathology to the connective tissue œdema. There is no nephritis.

*Mode of death.*—The most practically important point in the pathology of beriberi is that which relates to the modes of death. The paresis and the atrophy of the voluntary muscles, the œdema of the connective tissue, and the serous effusions are, as a rule, not very serious matters—at all events as affecting life. But it is very different when paresis and degeneration seriously implicate the heart and the muscles of respiration. In nearly all beriberics there is heart trouble arising, doubtless, from implication of the pneumogastric nerve and the cardiac plexus. In some patients the degree of implication is slight, but in others it is sufficient so to weaken the heart that death is inevitable. We cannot be quite sure in what cases the pneumogastric implication is likely to be serious, or in what cases it is likely to be slight. Often the mildest cases of beriberi, as judged by the degree of voluntary muscle paresis or by the amount of œdema, are in reality the most dangerous. There appears to be an element of chance determining the nerves which the poison picks out. Sometimes one may see a case which is completely paralysed so far as legs and arms are concerned, and perhaps wasted to a skeleton; and yet this same patient may never have a serious symptom referable to his heart, or in any way threatening life. On the other hand, one may see a patient with very little paresis, very little œdema, and yet in a short time the heart may become involved, and he will die in a few minutes or hours. I presume the dilatation of the heart, the usual cause of death in beriberi, is favoured or brought about by a concatena-



tion of several conditions ; by degeneration of muscle fibre following nerve destruction, by imperfect systole in consequence of an interrupted nerve supply, by obstruction to capillary circulation in consequence of vaso-motor paresis in the pulmonary and in the general circulation. Once commenced, the cardiac dilatation tends to increase of itself ; for the more the organ dilates, the more difficult does it become for it to contract, the greater the incompetency of the valves, and the more the blood stagnates in and over-distends it. The organ enters on a vicious pathological circle. Finally it becomes so distended that, like an overstretched bladder, it loses the power to contract altogether. The blood then rapidly accumulates in the great veins, the right auricle and ventricle are distended almost to bursting, and death is inevitable. The result is often contributed to by the co-existence of pleural effusion, hydro-pericardium, paresis of the diaphragm, over-distension of the stomach by food or gas, and, above all, by œdema of the lungs. It can readily be understood how the establishment of any additional obstruction of this description would still further tax the dilated, enfeebled heart, and determine the fatal issue.

When we come to make a *post-mortem* in these cases we may find a heart slightly hypertrophied and enormously dilated, the right cavities distended with blood, the lungs and liver full of dark blood, and all the great veins engorged.

**Prognosis.**—This tendency to dilatation of the heart is the dangerous element in beriberi ; it should always be before our eyes, and dominate our plans of treatment. It is wonderful how rapidly it may come on, and how rapidly it may prove fatal. These sudden deaths, occurring sometimes from syncope—from instantaneous failure, as well as from the somewhat slower process of increasing over-distension, are constantly sprung on one in this disease. An absolutely favourable prognosis, therefore, ought never to



be ventured on in even the mildest-looking case of beriberi, or so long as the patient is in the endemic area, or so long as the disease appears to be active. That is a lesson which is often, and sometimes painfully, borne in on the practitioner in beriberi districts.

*Evidences of grave heart implication*, such as pulsating cervical vessels, equal spacing of the intervals audible on auscultation, enlargement of cardiac dulness, especially to the right, epigastric pulsation, a rapid feeble pulse, cold extremities, cyanosis, dyspnœa, and a disproportion in the strength of the heart- and wrist-beats, are significant of danger. *Paralysis of the diaphragm, of the intercostal muscles, extensive serous effusions, very scanty urine* are also unfavourable signs.

*Vomiting*.—No one can say when or how soon fatal implication of the pneumogastric and other cardiac nerves may take place, but vomiting is always an ugly and threatening symptom in beriberi; it probably indicates that the former important nerve is being attacked. The Japanese, who have much experience of beriberi, regard the occurrence of vomiting as of fatal import.

Prognosis is improved if the patient is early removed (that is before the heart muscle, or the cardiac or respiratory nerves, are gravely degenerated) from the place in which the disease was contracted, to a healthy, non-beriberic, high-lying locality.

**Mortality**.—The mortality in beriberi varies in different epidemics and in different localities. On the whole, it is greater in low than in high latitudes, in the dropsical than in the atrophic forms, in the acute than in the chronic. In some epidemics it is as high as 30 per cent. of those attacked; in others as low as 5 per cent.

**Diagnosis**.—Usually the diagnosis of beriberi is not difficult. Multiple peripheral neuritis occurring as an epidemic, or in a place or ship in which the disease had occurred on some previous occasion, as a rule, may be set down as beriberi. Sporadic cases



may be difficult to diagnose, more especially if there is a history of alcoholism. The presence, actual or past, of œdema—especially of œdema over the shins—and palpitations and other evidences of cardiac implication, are significant of beriberi. It must be borne in mind that slighter degrees of beriberic poisoning, evidenced only by slight analgesia of the pretibial skin area, by slight œdema of the same region, by slight hyperæsthesia of the calf muscles, and, perhaps, by impairment or absence of knee-jerk, may be all the symptoms present. True rheumatism is rare in the tropics. Among natives, especially if their language is not understood, complaints of what may seem to be but rheumatic pains in the legs should always be carefully investigated, the knee-jerks tested, and signs of hyperæsthesia of the calf muscles sought for. The significance of these signs of what may be described as larval beriberi, is too frequently overlooked until some sudden death, which, with earlier recognition of the disease, might have been avoided, puts the practitioner on his guard. All parietic affections, all cases of œdema, all cases of palpitation, and all cases of rheumatic-like pains occurring among the natives of warm climates, therefore, should suggest the possibility of their being beriberi, and also the necessity for a detailed examination with this possibility in view.

**Treatment.**—The first and most important thing to be attended to in the treatment of a case of beriberi is the removal of the patient from the building, camp, or ship in which the disease was contracted. His condition warranting transport, if possible the patient must be got out of the endemic district. To leave a beriberic in the spot where he contracted his disease, is to leave him to continue absorbing the toxin that caused it; it is like allowing the victim of alcoholic neuritis to go on drinking. It is hardly possible for him to get well in such circumstances; it is often—in bad epidemics nearly always—tantamount to condemning him to death.



He should be removed to some dry locality and, if such is available, sleep well off the ground in a thoroughly ventilated, sunny room situated in an upper storey. He ought to clothe sufficiently and feed well, taking care that the food is not of a bulky character, and that it contains a sufficiency of nitrogenous and fatty elements. Rice is found to be a bad food for beriberics; it is too bulky. Wheat flour is better, so is oatmeal; beans of different kinds seem specially suitable for these cases, as they are cheap and contain much nitrogenous matter in small compass. Animal food, including fat, must enter into the dietary in reasonable amount. Milk and eggs are beneficial. The worst cases, particularly if there is any sign of serious cardiac implication, should remain in bed; but the mild cases had better spend the greater part of the day in the open air. If the disease break out on shipboard, the crew—healthy and sick alike—should be kept out of the fore-castle, and, so far as possible, made to sleep on deck, properly protected from the weather by an awning. With a view to diminish to some extent the bulk of blood in the vessels and heart, the seriously affected patients should take little fluid, and keep the bowels free by some saline aperient.

In cardiac cases small doses of digitalis or of strophanthus seem to do good. Should signs of acute cardiac distress appear, full doses—three, four, or five drops of the 1 per cent. solution—of nitro-glycerine are indicated. This must be repeated every quarter or half hour, and kept up until the threatening symptoms pass away. In suddenly developed cardiac attacks inhalations of nitrite of amyl, pending the operation of the nitro-glycerine, may be given. It is well that these two drugs be in the hands of properly instructed ward attendants, so as to meet cardiac complication on its earliest appearance. There is often no time to send for the doctor. Should signs of cardiac distension and failure persist and increase, in spite of these means, there must be no hesitation



in bleeding the patient, taking eight or ten ounces from the arm if it will flow, or, this failing for any reason, from the external jugular. Often, as the blood flows, rapid amelioration of the alarming condition sets in, and the patient is, for the time being, tided over an acute danger and given another chance. The bleeding should be repeated if the alarming symptoms recur, as they are pretty sure to do. Oxygen inhalations, if available, are worth trying in cardiac attacks. Pleural and pericardial effusions should be sought for, and, if deemed to be interfering in the slightest degree with the circulation or respiration, drawn off with the aspirator.

Provided the patient has been removed from the spot where he was being poisoned, and provided he can be tided over the first few days, he will probably recover; but in a serious case, should he remain in the place where his disease was acquired, though he may get over one or two cardiac attacks, the risk to life in bad epidemics is very great indeed, and he will almost surely die.

For the atrophy of the muscles and anæsthesia of the skin, faradisation and massage are of great service and should be employed so soon as the muscular hyperæsthesia has subsided—not before. Strychnine, arsenic, and nitrate of silver are in repute as tonics in these circumstances. Care should be taken that permanent deformity does not occur from contraction of muscles. Foot-drop should be counteracted by Phelps's talipes splint with an elastic accumulator, and any other threatening deformity appropriately met. Relapses must not be risked by a return to the original source of infection. A sea voyage has often a marvellously restorative effect.

When beriberi breaks out in a school, jail, or similar institution the place should be emptied of its inmates as soon as possible; at all events, those parts of the building in which the disease has appeared ought to be cleared out and not reoccupied until they have been thoroughly cleansed, disinfected, ventilated



and dried. Overcrowding must be strictly avoided. Ventilation must be effective. The dietary should be revised and, if necessary, have rice eliminated from it as much as possible; in the place of rice, meat, flour, or beans should be substituted. All the inmates should be obliged to pass a considerable time of every day in the open air; their knee-jerks should be tested, and their legs examined for numbness, œdema, and muscular hyperæsthesia from time to time. Any suspicious case should be removed at once.

Should beriberi appear on board ship, besides the precautions already indicated, special means of disinfection must be employed. Rotten planking and bilge-water must be removed from the neighbourhood of the quarters of the crew; the sound woodwork should be scraped and painted; disinfectants should be freely and frequently employed; clothes and sea-chests washed, and every means necessary to destroy lurking germs vigorously practised.

In beriberi countries low-lying, damp situations should be avoided as building sites. The sleeping quarters, especially, should be raised well off the ground, and located, if possible, in an upper storey; all rooms should be so arranged as to be easily flushed with fresh air and flooded with sunlight.



## CHAPTER XVII.

## EPIDEMIC DROPSY.

**Definition and description.**—A specific, epidemic, communicable disease running its course in from three to six weeks, and characterised by the sudden appearance of anasarca, preceded in most instances by fever, vomiting, diarrhœa, or by irritation of the skin; and often accompanied by a rash, by fever of a mild, remitting type, by disorder of the bowels, and by pronounced anæmia. The case mortality varies from 2 to 40 per cent., death being sudden and depending upon œdema of the lungs, hydrothorax, hydropericardium, or other pulmonary and cardiac complications.

**History and geographical distribution.**—The foregoing is a concise description, drawn principally from McLeod's account (*Trans. Epidem. Soc. Lon. N.S.*, vol. xii.), of a disease which appeared in Calcutta, it is believed for the first time, in the cold weather of 1877-78, of 1878-79, and 1879-80. On each occasion it disappeared with the advent of the hot weather. The same disease broke out at Shillong, Assam, 5,000 feet above the level of the sea, in October, 1878; at Dacca in January, 1879; at south Sylhet in the cold weather of 1878-79; and in Mauritius (Lovell and Davidson), having been imported from Calcutta, in November, 1878. There are no trustworthy accounts of its occurrence elsewhere, although certain vague statements seem to indicate that it appears at times in other parts of India. In Mauritius it prevailed until June, 1879, attacking about one-tenth part of the coolie population, of whom 729 died, a mortality of about 2 or 3 per cent. At Sylhet there were no deaths; at



Shillong the mortality was also insignificant; but in Calcutta the death-rate in those attacked was estimated as high as 20 to 40 per cent. Coolies and natives were alone affected; Europeans enjoyed a complete immunity. In Calcutta the disease was confined to a particular quarter; here it attacked families and groups of people, slowly extending its area, but at no time becoming generally epidemic throughout the city. The disease has not recurred in Calcutta since 1880; at all events if it has done so it has not been recognised.

**Special symptoms.**—*Dropsy* was almost invariably present. It usually appeared first in the legs, and in some instances was confined to the lower extremities; in others it spread and involved the entire body. Occasionally it was very persistent, lasting and recurring during convalescence.

*Fever* was also a very constant symptom; sometimes it preceded, sometimes it accompanied, sometimes it succeeded the dropsy. It was rarely high, ranging usually from  $99^{\circ}$  to  $102^{\circ}$ ; in a few cases—possibly from malarial complications—it reached  $104^{\circ}$ . Rigors were rare.

*Diarrhœa and vomiting* generally ushered in the disease in the Mauritius epidemic. In Calcutta these symptoms were not so frequent, although they were by no means rare there, occurring at both the earlier and later stages. Dysentery was common in the Calcutta epidemic.

*Nervous symptoms*—such as burning, pricking, itching, and feelings of distension of the skin, and sometimes limited to the soles and feet—often preceded the dropsy. Distressing aching of muscles, bones, and joints, worst at night, was usual. Anæsthesia of skin areas and paresis of muscles were never observed in Mauritius. Harvey remarked two cases in Calcutta exhibiting doubtful paretic symptoms; these are the only two recorded in which there was anything resembling the paretic symptoms usually so prominent a feature in beriberi.



An *exanthem*, erythematous on the face, rubeolar on the trunk and limbs, was frequently seen in Mauritius, less frequently in Calcutta. It appeared about a week after the œdema, and lasted from ten to twelve days.

*Circulation and respiration.*—Disturbances of the heart and circulation were prominent features in nearly all the cases. The pulse was weak, often rapid and irregular; cardiac bruits were also noted. Breathlessness on exertion occurred in all cases; severe orthopnœa in many. Signs of pleural and pericardial effusion, of œdema of the lungs, of pneumonia, and of cardiac dilatation were common in Calcutta.

*Anæmia* was usually present and marked; so were wasting and prostration. Scorbutic symptoms occasionally showed themselves.

The *liver, spleen and kidneys* were not specially affected. The urine was rarely albuminous.

**Morbid anatomy.**—Beyond general œdema and occasional pleural and pericardial effusion, nothing special was remarked *post-mortem*.

**Ætiology.**—Both sexes were attacked; children under puberty were less liable than adults; sucklings were seldom affected. The weak and the robust were equally susceptible. There are no direct observations on the germ of the disease; there is distinct though indirect evidence of its portability and of its communicability. But as to whether it is directly communicable from man to man, or whether it, or its product, is indirectly transmitted through some unknown medium, has not been determined. Evidence of its capacity for remaining latent for a considerable period is supplied by the history of the successive epidemics in Calcutta. The disease could not have been a very catching one, seeing that no medical man was attacked, and that, except in the case of Mauritius, it spread but slowly.

*Identification.*—McLeod, after a careful analysis of all the available evidence, concludes that epidemic



dropsy is a disease *sui generis*. At the time of its occurrence in Calcutta many of the physicians there looked upon it as a form of beriberi; and, indeed, in many respects it resembles very closely those cases of beriberi in which dropsy is a prominent symptom, and in which the nervous phenomena are slight or altogether absent. But in epidemics of beriberi such cases are the exception—in fact, are very rare, and always concur with others in which nerve symptoms are pronounced, and with purely atrophic cases; such were not seen in either the Calcutta or the Mauritius epidemics. In epidemic beriberi the mortality is much higher than it was in the Mauritius, the Shillong, or in the Sylhet epidemics. Furthermore, beriberi is a much more chronic disease, is not accompanied by an eruption, and but seldom with well-marked fever.

**Treatment.**—In the absence of anything like precise knowledge of the cause and pathology of epidemic dropsy, treatment must be entirely symptomatic. Mild purgatives, the exhibition of digitalis when there is evidence of cardiac weakness, and the occasional use of the nitrites in the fits of apnœa, might prove serviceable. During convalescence iron and arsenic are indicated.



## CHAPTER XVIII.

AFRICAN LETHARGY, OR THE SLEEPING SICKNESS OF  
THE CONGO.

**Definition.**—A disease, so far as known, limited to tropical West Africa. It is characterised by slowly increasing lethargy, and by other morbid nervous phenomena. After a chronic course it terminates in death.

**Geographical distribution.**—In West Africa the northern and southern limits of the endemic area of the sleeping sickness are, respectively, Senegambia and S. Paulo de Loando.

In some districts it is extremely prevalent, whilst in neighbouring districts it may be completely absent. Recent accounts from the Lower Congo tell us of its extreme frequency in that district; we have also some meagre accounts of its occurrence in the upper reaches of the river. Recently a case is recorded as having occurred as high up the Niger as Timbuctoo. Corre tells us that in some parts of Senegambia it is extremely common. It is said to be unknown on the lower part of the Niger (Crosse), at the mouth of the Congo, at Sierra Leone, and at a good many other places in the general endemic area. Its visitations seem to come and go. After decimating a village it may quite disappear for a time, migrating temporarily, as it were, to some neighbouring village. Accurate information is wanting on this, as on many other matters relating to this interesting disease. This much, however, is known—that it is an endemic which is liable to epidemic outbursts. So great is the terror of the natives when the disease appears among them, they sometimes abandon their villages. A peculiarity about sleeping sickness lies in the fact that, although it can be acquired in



certain places only, the symptoms of the disease may appear for the first time in quite another country, and many years (up to seven the negroes say) after the endemic region has been quitted. For example, a native of the endemic area may leave his country, make a voyage to England or to the West Indies, reside there apparently in good health for several years, and then, at the end of this term, exhibit for the first time the characteristic symptoms, and ultimately die of the disease. In the days of the slave trade sleeping sickness was frequently seen among the negroes in the West Indies; but it was never seen in negroes who were born in the West Indies and who had never visited Africa, being met with only in those who had come from, or had resided at one time in, the latter continent. Therefore, although the symptoms may develop anywhere, the cause of the disease must be strictly endemic. Sleeping sickness is not exclusively confined to the negro race, but only to the negro country. It has been seen in mulattos and in Moors, possibly in Europeans. It is unknown as an endemic in the north, east and south of the African continent, being limited apparently, as already indicated, to the basins of the Senegal, the Niger, the Congo, and the minor intermediate rivers.

**Symptoms.**—Sleeping sickness usually begins very insidiously. More rarely it is ushered in by a series of epileptiform seizures, occasionally by a maniacal attack. Those who are familiar with the disease are said to be able to recognise it in its earliest stages. The patient (Fig. 39) acquires a peculiar listless and morose manner, a somewhat melancholy expression of countenance, a certain fulness and puffiness about the face, a drooping of the upper eyelids; he is liable to headache, to attacks of vertigo, to evanescent flashes of fever, sometimes to diarrhœa and other intestinal disturbances. By-and-by, after a variable period of weeks or months, he begins to experience feelings of excessive lassitude, and of dis-



inclination or of inability for the daily task ; generally, too, there is a desire and liability to fall asleep at unusual times. He may fall asleep while at work, while at his amusements and even while he is eating. He is readily fatigued ; when he does speak, he may complain of weakness. He appears to feel chilly, for he likes to lie about in the sun. The lethargy and somnolence get better and worse ; on the whole, they tend slowly to increase. By-and-by, the patient seeks to seclude himself ; he ceases to take a part in conversation, although when obliged to speak or to answer a question he may do so intelligently enough. Gradually he becomes more silent, more taciturn, and he sleeps, or, rather, appears to sleep, almost constantly. If he is forced to walk or move about, he does so as if half awake or as if intoxicated, staggering about. His temperature may be sometimes elevated during the attacks of irregular fever ; at other times, and generally, it is distinctly subnormal. Limited patches of cutaneous anæsthesia may sometimes be discovered. A certain amount of muscular tremor is now frequently observed, and muscular power further diminishes. He takes to bed or lies about in a corner of his hut, indifferent to everything going on around him, though still able to speak and to take food when it is brought to him. At this more advanced stage he never spontaneously enters into conversation or asks for food even. As torpor deepens he forgets even to chew his food, falling asleep, perhaps, in the act of conveying it to his mouth, or with the half-masticated bolus still in his cheek. In other respects his health seems good. When he can be got to eat, the food is digested and properly assimilated. There is no wasting at first, and fæces and urine are regularly voided. As time goes on he begins to lose flesh ; muscular tremor, in the hands and tongue especially, may become very marked, and choreic movements may occur in one or more limbs. He may be seized with localised or more general convulsions, which are apt to be followed by paralysis of



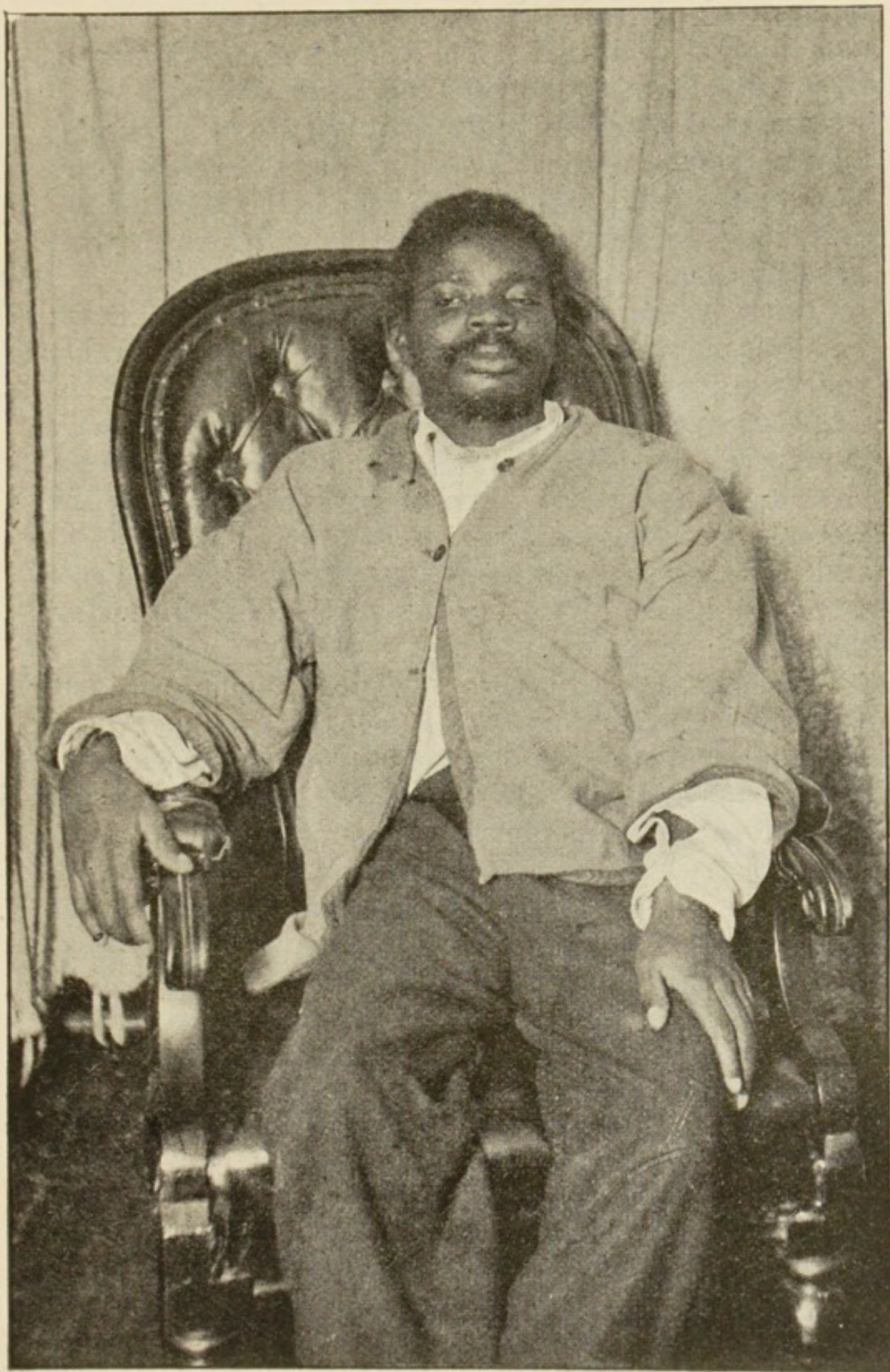


Fig. 39.—Congo Negro suffering from Sleeping Sickness.  
(From a Photograph.)



the convulsed part. Later, bed sores begin to form, and the lips swell and saliva dribbles from the mouth. Gradually lethargy deepens, nutrition fails, the body wastes, bed sores extend, and, finally, the patient may become comatose and so die ; or he may sink from slowly-advancing asthenia. Possibly he is suddenly attacked with general and fatal convulsions, or with hyperpyrexia.

Such is the ordinary course of sleeping sickness ; but its manifestations are subject to considerable variation. Occasionally it seems to be arrested in its progress ; though, very generally, once established, it proceeds to the fatal issue without material alteration for the better. Mania, occasionally noisy or violent, sometimes occurs ; this, and other psychical and physical symptoms like those in the general paralysis of the insane, are not unusual in the earlier stages.

There are one or two additional symptoms, not so evidently referable to the nervous system, which are almost invariably observed in sleeping sickness ; one is *enlargement of the lymphatics*, especially of the cervical glands ; another is an *intensely itchy papulo-vesicular eruption*, especially pronounced on the chest. The skin as a whole becomes dry, lustreless, and scurfy, and the hair is said to acquire in some a reddish tinge.

In those instances in which the points have been investigated the fundus oculi has been found normal, the superficial-reflexes active, the deep reflexes somewhat exaggerated.

The duration of sleeping sickness is very variable ; it may be anything from four months to as many years, a good deal depending on the way in which the patient is tended.

**Pathological anatomy.**—Manifestly, sleeping sickness is a brain disease, although hitherto no gross lesion in connection with the nervous system, or with any organ, sufficient to account for the symptoms, has been discovered.



In two cases of the disease whose organs were examined under the most favourable conditions, Mott showed that the essential lesion in sleeping sickness is an extensive meningo-encephalitis. Sections of the brain in both cases, although naked-eye evidences of pathological changes were almost nil, showed an extensive and possibly general infiltra-

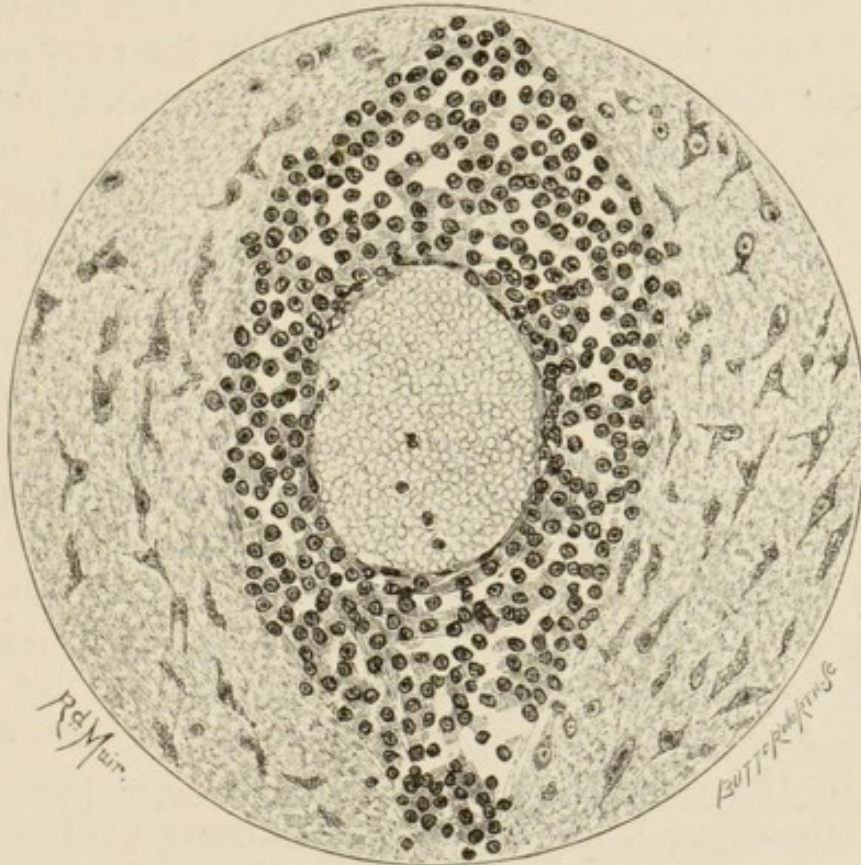


Fig. 40.—Transverse section of small vessel in the brain of a case of sleeping sickness, showing small cell infiltration of perivascular space. (After Mott.)

tion of the sheaths of the blood-vessels with leucocytes (Fig. 40) (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, Dec. 16th, 1899, Pl. Fig. 2). In neither case, though carefully sought for, was any gross lesion discovered in the encephalon.

**Ætiology.**—Sleeping sickness affects either sex and any age, and appears to be in no way influenced by occupation, temperament, food, or heredity. It has been attributed, on altogether insufficient grounds, to many things ; the true cause has not been definitely ascertained.

Remarking the singular correspondence which



seems to obtain in the distribution of this disease and that of *Filaria perstans*, and the well ascertained facts that the disease may declare itself, and that this parasite can remain alive, years after the endemic area has been quitted, I have suggested that *Filaria perstans* may in some way be responsible for sleeping sickness. If this be really so, it is hard to say in what way the parasite operates. As a matter of fact, I have found *Filaria perstans* in the only cases of sleeping sickness I have seen in England, three in number, and the parasite is now known to be exceedingly prevalent in a large proportion of the inhabitants of the endemic districts. The subject requires further investigation.\*

**Diagnosis.**—Sleeping sickness has been confounded with beriberi; but if it be borne in mind that the former is a disease of the central nervous system, whereas the latter is a disease of the peripheral nerves, such a mistake is not likely to occur.

**Treatment.**—Purging appears to do good temporarily. Arsenic in very large doses has also seemed to be followed by improvement, and even by arrest.

If *Filaria perstans* be at the root of the disease, care in the matter of drinking-water, or, possibly, of the bites of such insects as may subserve this parasite as intermediary host, is indicated as a prophylactic measure.

\* The recent discovery of *Filaria perstans* in the Buck Indians of British Guiana is interesting in connection with the following passage in a letter received some time ago from Dr. Ozzard, of that colony: "I haven't much doubt but that sleeping sickness does exist amongst our aborigines. One frequently hears travellers in the interior remark on the fact that when the Bucks fall sick they take to their hammocks and lie there till they die." A Buck woman was brought to Dr. Ozzard for treatment because, as her friends said, she was always asleep.



## SECTION III. — ABDOMINAL DISEASES.

---

### CHAPTER XIX.

#### CHOLERA.

**Definition.**—An acute, infectious, epidemic disease characterised by profuse purging and vomiting of a colourless serous material, muscular cramps, suppression of urine, algidity and collapse, the presence of a special bacterium in the intestine and intestinal discharges, and a high mortality.

**History and geographical distribution.**—It is probable that from remotest antiquity cholera has been endemic in Lower Bengal,\* and that thence, from time to time, it has spread as an epidemic over the rest of India. European physicians observed it there in the sixteenth, seventeenth, and eighteenth centuries, but it was not until the great epidemic extension of 1817 that the disease seriously attracted the attention of the profession in Europe. In that year cholera began to spread all over Asia, extending eastwards as far as Peking and Japan, southwards to Mauritius, and westwards to Syria and the eastern shores of the Caspian. Stopping short at Astrakhan in 1825, it did not on that occasion invade Europe.

*European epidemics.*—In 1830 cholera visited Europe for the first time. Advancing through Afghanistan and Persia, it entered by way of

\* Though it is customary to speak of Lower Bengal as the home of cholera, it is by no means certain that other Eastern localities have not some claim to a similar distinction—Bankok, Canton, and Shanghai, for example. Dr. Henderson, in his health reports, indicates that the disease is rarely absent during the summer months from the last-named city; the same may be said of Bankok and of Canton.



Russia and swept as an epidemic over nearly the entire continent, reaching Britain at the beginning of 1832. During the same summer it crossed the Atlantic to Canada and the United States. This epidemic did not die out in Europe till 1839. Since that time there have been at least five European epidemics—1848–51, 1851–55, 1865–74, 1884–86 and 1892–95.

Great Britain has been seriously involved in four only of these epidemics—namely, in 1832, 1848, 1854–55, and in 1866. On the occasion of the last two European epidemics, although the disease was frequently imported, it did not spread in Britain. America has not been so fortunate; for, although the 1870–73 epidemic practically spared Great Britain, it crossed the Atlantic and, entering by way of Jamaica and New Orleans, raged for a time in the United States.

From a study of the march of these various epidemics, it is to be concluded that cholera reaches Europe by three distinct routes:—*First*, viâ Afghanistan, Persia, the Caspian Sea, and the Volga valley; *second*, viâ the Persian Gulf, Syria, Asia Minor, Turkey in Europe, and the Mediterranean; and, *third*, viâ the Red Sea, Egypt, and the Mediterranean.

With certain exceptions, hereafter to be mentioned, there is hardly an important country in the world which has not, at one time or another, been visited by cholera in the course of some of its pandemic extensions.

**Ætiology.**—*The disease is carried by man.*—The study of the various epidemics shows that in its spread cholera follows the great routes of human intercourse, and that it is conveyed chiefly by man, probably in its principal extensions by man alone, from place to place. In Britain and the United States, for example, the places first attacked have been invariably seaports in direct and active communication with other ports already infected. In India, although the problem is much more difficult to unravel, in certain instances, the influence of



human intercourse in diffusing the disease can be distinctly traced. Thus the extensive pilgrimages, so frequent in that country, are a fruitful source of its rapid spread. During these gatherings hundreds of thousands of human beings are collected together in highly insanitary conditions—as at the Hurdwar and Mecca pilgrimages. Cholera breaks out among the devotees, who, when they separate, carry the disease along with them as they proceed towards their homes, infecting the people of the places which they pass through. Cholera never travels faster than a man can travel; but in modern times, owing to the increased speed of locomotion and the increased amount of travel, epidemics advance more rapidly and pursue a more erratic course than they did sixty years ago.

*Isolation secures immunity.* — In the case of isolated countries the absence of active and frequent intercourse with the outer world favours immunity, even during approximately pandemic extensions. Thus, though so near to the home of cholera, the Andaman Islands have never been visited by the disease. Similarly, Australia and New Zealand hitherto have enjoyed practical exemption. The same can be advanced of the Pacific Islands, the Cape of Good Hope, the west coast of Africa, Orkney and Shetland, Iceland, the Faroe Islands, and many of the islands of the Atlantic.

*Its unequal diffusion in the endemic and epidemic areas.*—Although cholera is always present in some part of the endemic area in Bengal, it is not equally diffused there, nor is it equally common at all seasons and every year. Thus, even within this area, there are places which enjoy an absolute or a relative immunity, and there are seasons and years of special prevalence. It has also to be remarked that the season of immunity for one place may be the season for prevalence in another place, and *vice versâ*. The same observations apply to the areas of epidemic extension.

When cholera extends as an epidemic, its course is often singularly erratic. Some places, apparently



in the direct line of advance, are passed over, to be attacked perhaps at a later period. Similarly, certain districts of a town may be spared, while other parts of the same town are ravaged by the disease.

*Local conditions favouring its presence.*—On the whole, it may be said that low-lying districts, particularly those along the banks of rivers, are more subject to the disease than high and dry situations; and that overcrowding and unhygienic conditions generally conduce to its prevalence. The principal and special element, however, which determines the diffusion of cholera is, undoubtedly, the character of the water supply.

*Cholera in the main a water-borne disease, entering by the stomach.*—From time to time many theories of the cause and nature of cholera have been put forward, many of them very absurd and manifestly incorrect. Most of these have now been definitely abandoned in favour of the theory that the cause of cholera is a specific germ which, in the main, is water-borne. The evidence in favour of this view may be regarded as being almost conclusive, although there is still some room for doubting whether the germ itself has really been discovered.

The earliest, and still one of the most telling pieces of evidence in favour of the water-borne theory of the diffusion of cholera, we owe to the late Dr. Snow. In August, 1854, cholera was epidemic in parts of London, notably in the neighbourhood of St. Anne's, Golden Square. A child at 40, Broad Street, after an illness of three or four days, died of the disease on the 2nd of September. The discharges from the patient had been thrown into a leaky cesspool which, as was subsequently discovered, drained into a well only three feet away. This well supplied the neighbourhood with drinking-water. On the night of the 31st of August cholera broke out among those who used the water of this particular well, very few escaping an attack. On the 2nd of September a lady died of cholera at Hampstead.



Attention was specially called to this lady's case, as hitherto the disease had not been seen in that district. On inquiry it was found that she had been habitually supplied with drinking-water from the Broad Street well referred to, as she had formerly resided in Broad Street and had retained a liking for the water from this particular well. She drank some of the water which had been procured on the 31st of August, both on that day and again on the 1st of September. On the latter day she was seized with cholera. A niece, on a visit to this lady, also drank some of the same water; she, too, was attacked by cholera and died. A servant also drank the water; although she suffered to some extent, she recovered. So far as could be ascertained by careful inquiry, these people had had no connection whatever with the cholera district except through the water fetched from this particular Broad Street well. Cholera, as mentioned, was not epidemic at Hampstead at the time. The inference that the germ had been conveyed in the polluted water is difficult to avoid.

Another remarkable illustration of the diffusion of the cholera germ by water is supplied by the recent epidemic in Hamburg. At the time, the hygienic conditions under which the inhabitants of the contiguous cities of Hamburg, Altona, and Wandsbeck lived were practically identical, save in the matter of water supply. Hamburg and Altona both drew their water from the Elbe; but, whereas the water distributed to the people of Altona was most carefully filtered, that supplied to the people of Hamburg was simply pumped up from the river and passed directly into the mains without filtration or purification of any description. The Wandsbeck water came from a lake and was filtered. In Hamburg, during the epidemic, there were 8,605 deaths from cholera, equal to 13·4 per thousand; whereas in Altona only 328 deaths occurred, equal to 2·1 per thousand. The death-rate in Wandsbeck was similar to that of Altona. Hamburg and Altona are contiguous and practically



one city. At one part a street forms the boundary between the municipalities. On one side of this street, the Hamburg side, there were numerous cases of cholera; on the Altona side there were no cases. The houses on both sides of the street were of the same character, and occupied by the same class of people. The only difference, so far as could be ascertained, was in the water supply: the houses on the healthy side of the street received Altona water; those on the cholera-stricken side, Hamburg water. It was remarked that a certain group of houses on the Hamburg side remained free from the disease. On investigation it was found that, unlike the other houses on the same side, these houses derived their water supply from an Altona main.

As regards its relation to the water supply this Hamburg epidemic is the exact counterpart of what happened in South London in 1854. Formerly this district was supplied with water by two companies—the Southwark and Vauxhall Company and the Lambeth Company. Both companies drew their water from the Thames—the latter from near Hungerford Bridge, the former from near Battersea Fields. The epidemic of cholera which visited London in 1849 was especially severe in South London. Subsequently, the Lambeth Company removed its intake higher up the river to Thames Ditton, and consequently the water it supplied at the time of the 1854 epidemic had improved in quality. The Southwark and Vauxhall Company did not change their intake, and in 1854 they were still drawing their supply from the river near Battersea Fields. When cholera visited London in that year the death-rate from the disease in the houses supplied by the Southwark and Vauxhall Company amounted to 153 per 10,000 inhabitants; whereas that in houses supplied by the Lambeth Company was only 26 per 10,000. The mains of the two companies ran side by side, some houses receiving the water of one company, some that of the other.

During the Hamburg epidemic it was also found



that the incidence of cholera was three times greater among those who used the town water than among those who got their supplies from wells. These, and many similar facts which might be adduced, clearly point to water as a principal medium for the diffusion of the cholera germ.

*The virus contained in the dejecta.*—Evidence, equally conclusive, tends to show that the germ on being swallowed by man multiplies in his alimentary canal, and, on being voided in the dejecta, subsequently finds its way by a route more or less direct to water again in which, under favourable conditions, it continues still further to multiply. An illustration, amounting almost to proof, of the fact that the germ of cholera is contained in the stools of cholera patients is supplied by Macnamara. Some of the characteristic rice-water discharge from a cholera patient got mixed accidentally with a few gallons of water. This was exposed to the sun for twelve hours. Early the following morning nineteen persons each drank about an ounce of the mixture. Within thirty-six hours, five of these nineteen persons were seized with cholera.

*Conditions of infection are complex.*—It is evident that the ingestion of the germ is a necessary condition for the production of the disease, but there are many facts which render it equally evident that this is not the only condition. Were it the only condition, then every one of those individuals referred to by Macnamara would have sickened. What the other necessary conditions may be it is hard—in the present state of knowledge, impossible—to say.

There is reason to believe that not only are the conditions complicated as regards the susceptibility of the individual, but also that they are equally complex as regards the germ itself in relation to its pathogenetic, proliferating, and diffusing properties.

**The germ of cholera.**—*Early views.* Since European pathologists first directed their attention to the subject, many views have been entertained as



to the exact nature of the cause of cholera. Some of these views were of the most fantastic description. Mysterious atmospheric and telluric conditions were invoked, and superstitious notions worthy of the Middle Ages, only a very few years ago were freely ventilated even in high places and by educated minds. Among those who ventured to formulate definite and more reasonable hypotheses some considered that cholera, like the more familiar exanthematous fevers, was directly contagious. Others thought that it was not directly contagious, but that it was communicated by the evacuations of the sick after these evacuations had undergone some peculiar fermentative process outside the human body. Others, again, as Von Pettenkofer, regarded the virus as a chemical ferment which developed in the soil under certain unknown epidemic conditions.

*Discovery of the comma bacillus.*—Since the rise of the germ theory of infective disease most of these speculations have been definitely abandoned, or have received more precise expression in the view that cholera is caused by a certain bacterium, known as the comma bacillus or cholera vibrio, which Koch found to be present practically invariably in the stools and intestinal contents of cholera patients. This bacterium Koch first discovered in Egypt in 1883. Believing in its importance he afterwards proceeded to India on a special mission, and there, in Calcutta, in 1884, he found the same bacterium in the intestinal contents of forty-two fatal cases, and in the stools of thirty other cholera patients; in fact, he found it in every case of the disease examined. Moreover, he entirely failed to find it in any other disease or in healthy discharges. These observations, so far as they concern the presence of the comma bacillus in cholera stools, have been abundantly confirmed by many other workers; so that the presence or absence of this bacterium is now regarded as a trustworthy and valuable practical test of the choleraic or non-choleraic nature of any given case of



intestinal flux; and this even by the opponents of Koch's special view as to the nature of the relationship of the bacterium in question to the disease with which it is so intimately associated. If only on account of its diagnostic value, the comma bacillus therefore is an organism of importance; but as many high authorities regard it as a necessary concomitant and even as the actual germ and true cause of Asiatic

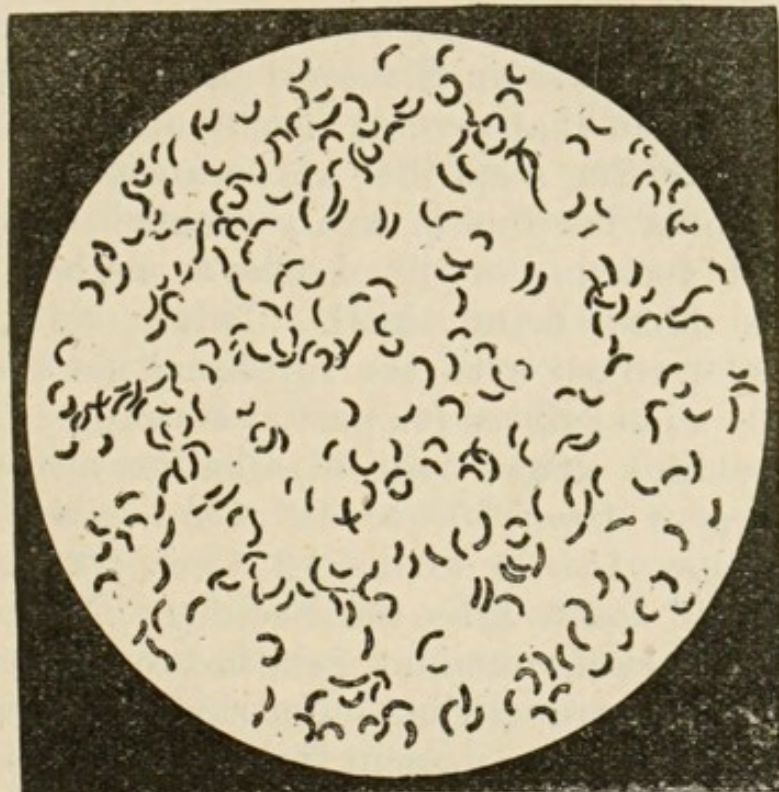


Fig. 41.—Cholera bacillus. Agar cult: 24 hours' growth.  
( $\times 1000$ .) (Muir and Ritchie.)

cholera, the vibrio acquires an importance of the first rank.

*The comma bacillus; description.*—The comma bacillus (Fig. 41) is a very minute organism, 1·5 to 2 micromillimètres in length by ·5 to ·6 micromillimètres in diameter—about half the length and twice the thickness of the tubercle bacillus. It is generally slightly curved, like a comma; hence its name. After appropriate staining, at each end, or at one end only, flagella can be distinguished; sometimes one, sometimes, though less frequently, two. These flagella are of considerable length—from one to five



times that of the body of the bacterium; their extreme tenuity renders them difficult to see in ordinary preparations. The flagella are not always present during the entire life of the parasite. In virtue of this appendage the bacillus exhibits very active spirillum-like movements. The individual bacilli when stained show darker parts at the ends or at the centre, suggesting the possibility of spore formation; this point has not been definitely settled. Sometimes in cultivations two or more bacilli are united, in which case an S-shaped body is the result; or it may happen that several bacilli are thus united together, producing a spirillar appearance.

The comma bacillus is easily stained by watery solution of fuchsin, or by Löffler's method, dried cover-glass films being used. Dilute solution of methyl violet mixed with the intestinal contents and placed on a slide suffices for partial staining.

The bacillus grows best in alkaline media at a temperature of from 30° to 40° Cent. Growth is arrested below 15°, or above 42° Cent.; a temperature over 50° Cent. kills the bacillus. Meat-broth, milk, blood serum, nutrient gelatine, or potato, are all suitable culture media. Nutrient gelatine and potato are the most convenient for diagnostic purposes.

In gelatine plate-cultivations minute white points appear; around these the gelatine liquefies, and the colonies of bacilli sink into funnel or bubble-shaped depressions. By the end of the second or third day the cultivation is besprinkled with such depressions, liquefaction spreading peripherally until it involves the entire surface of the gelatine. The colonies are white or yellowish, very irregular in shape, granular, and shining like so many particles of ground-glass. Later they assume a peculiar roseate hue, said to be absolutely characteristic.

In gelatine stab cultures the growth at first is most active near the surface; later, the colony sinking, liquefaction advances most below the surface of the gelatine, so that a bubble-shaped appearance is



then produced. Later still, as growth proceeds along the needle track, a finger-shaped liquefaction results, which in time extends to the sides of the tube. At the bottom of the liquefied area there is an accumulation of a white mass of bacteria; at the top a scum of bacteria in various stages of degeneration is formed. These cultures may die after five or six weeks.

Agar is not liquefied, and in it the cultivations retain their vitality longer. On potato, at 20° to 30° Cent., the culture appears as a thin, brownish, porcelain-like film. In broth, some of the bacilli form a scum on the surface; others, falling in masses to the bottom, leave the body of the liquid clear.

Although, taken together and in conjunction with the morphological appearances, these culture characters are fairly distinctive, nevertheless certain other bacteria, such as Finkler's spirillum, behave very similarly; and, as the microscopic features of these other bacteria in some instances are very much like those of the cholera vibrio, a mistake is easily made. The production of what is known as "cholera red" by the addition of pure sulphuric acid (indol reaction) to a culture in peptonised broth, is also not quite distinctive of the cholera vibrio, for a similar reaction is produced by some other bacilli.

In careful and practised hands the diagnosis of cholera by the microscopic and cultural characters of the vibrio may be made with practical certainty.

*Is the comma bacillus the germ of cholera?—* Although it may be safely asserted that cholera is intimately associated with the comma bacillus, it does not necessarily follow that this organism is the cause of cholera. Many attempts have been, and are being, made to establish such a relationship. Nevertheless, what may be considered as absolute proof is still wanting; such proofs as alone can be afforded by the production in man, or in the lower animals, of a disease in every respect like cholera by the administration of pure cultures of the comma bacillus



Short of this the proof may be said to be almost complete ; indeed, by not a few the causal relationship of the bacillus to the disease is considered as established.

Since Koch first announced his discovery many facts having a bearing on the subject have been brought to light, some in favour of his views, some apparently militating against them.

(1) It has been found that there are several bacilli with morphological and cultural characters closely resembling those of the cholera comma, notably the Finkler-Prior bacillus of cholera nostras, Lewis's saliva comma bacillus, many of the comma-shaped bacilli discovered by Cunningham, and certain species found in river water. Koch and others maintain that, though morphologically similar, those other bacilli behave so differently in culture media that, biologically, they may be considered as specifically distinct from the cholera vibrio.

(2) Cultures of pure bacilli have many times been swallowed by way of experiment ; yet, although in a few instances diarrhoea with comma bacilli in the stools has resulted, in perhaps no instance has true cholera, much less fatal cholera, been produced. On this account it is held by some that the comma bacillus cannot be regarded as the germ of cholera. Against this it is advanced that other factors must be present to insure the induction of cholera by such experiments ; for example, a suitable and peculiar condition of the body, possibly, as Buchner suggests, some second and as yet unknown micro-organism. Buchner therefore regards cholera as the result of a mixed infection. Moreover, the cholera vibrio, like other pathogenic bacteria, may lose through cultivation, or otherwise, its virulence while retaining its morphological and cultural qualities.

(3) A few cases of what from a clinical point of view appears to be true cholera have been observed in which the most careful and most prolonged bacteriological examinations failed to detect the comma bacillus. Therefore, it has been advanced, as cholera



can occur without the comma bacillus, the comma bacillus cannot be the cause of cholera. Against this it has been said that these observations were defective; that although the bacillus was not found, it by no means follows that the bacillus was not present at some time in the case.

(4) The comma bacillus has been observed in the stools of individuals who did not at the time or afterwards suffer from cholera. To this it is answered that although one of the necessary conditions for the production of cholera was present, others, equally necessary, were absent. Possibly, as Pettenkofer remarked, for the production of an attack of cholera three things might be necessary, X, Y, and Z. The comma bacillus may be the X, but in the absence of the Y, certain local, and of the Z, certain personal conditions, disease does not result.

(5) It has been found impossible by the administration of comma bacilli to produce in the lower animals true cholera, or any condition with clinical symptoms closely resembling cholera. Koch and others, in certain experiments on guinea-pigs, acting on the supposition that the acid in the stomach killed the bacillus, neutralised this by the administration of sodium carbonate, and paralysed the intestine by intraperitoneal injections of tincture of opium. In this way they claim to have succeeded in killing guinea-pigs with symptoms to a certain extent like those of cholera. There are many sources of fallacy in this experiment, as has been pointed out by Klein and others. Exactly similar results can be got by using the Finkler-Prior and other bacilli. The most promising experiments in this direction are those by Jablotny on the ground squirrel, *Spermophilus guttatus*. By administering to this animal comma cultures in alkaline media a disease in many respects like cholera was produced; and, in the intestines and discharges of the animals experimented on, cholera-like pathological changes were found, as well as comma bacilli.

*Variability of the cholera microbe.* — Bacterio-



logical studies, always difficult, are extremely so in the case of the cholera microbe owing to its special liability to variation, both in its morphological and in its pathogenic characters. On this subject Haffkine remarks (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, Dec. 21st, 1895): "When the cholera bacillus was first discovered its properties were described with extreme precision, which helped in concentrating for a long time all studies on well-defined and carefully chosen specimens. Little by little, as the field of observation grew larger, a number of varieties have been found with characteristics differing so largely as to annihilate almost completely the original description. When we open the intestine of deceased cholera patients and investigate the microbes there, the adopted methods will bring to the surface vibrios in which the external forms, instead of the characteristic comma or spirillum, will vary between a coccus and a straight thread; the number and disposition of the cilia, the secretion of acids, the form of growth in broth, will vary; instead of giving in gelatine a discrete and well-defined figure of liquefaction, the variation will extend from the complete loss of this property to a rapid dissolution of the whole medium; there will be varieties which grow luxuriantly in given media, and others which do not grow there at all; some will be phosphorescent in the dark, and others not; some will give the indol reaction, and others will be deprived of this property, and so on. The first thing to be done is to select carefully among these the most typical specimens, rejecting the others, and then to try their pathogenic power. We shall find such a divergence in strength that the extreme forms will not be believed to be the cholera species. There will be commas deprived of any virulence demonstrable on animals, and others which will kill the most resistant species. Some will be fatal to a guinea-pig at a dose of 1/100 of a culture tube, and others harmless in doses 500 times stronger. The average comma dies out when introduced under the skin of an adult animal; others will spread in the



system and give rise to a fatal septicæmia. The ordinary comma will be without effect on birds; but several specimens have been isolated, and believed to be typical, which easily killed pigeons by hypodermic or intramuscular injection. I believe to be of great value the method worked out by Pfeiffer for comparing all such varieties with one selected as typical, which he employed for the preparation of an antitoxic serum. This method will be found of efficient help in distinguishing specimens of the greatest affinity with the average cholera comma. But once such specimens are selected and their particular properties studied they begin to change from the first day they are introduced into the laboratory, and no calculation based on these studies is possible. In a case quoted by M. Metchnikoff, the proportion of the initial power of the microbe, and the strength it showed at a later trial, was as 75 to 1, the microbe having gradually sunk to  $1/75$  of its initial virulence." These remarks, by so great a master of the subject, whilst they indicate a way of reconciling many apparent discrepancies in matters of fact and differences in the conclusions arrived at by different bacteriologists, and whilst they indicate a key to many of the clinical features of cholera, teach us caution in accepting as proved the causal relationship of the cholera vibrio to the disease with which it is so invariably associated.

**Symptoms.**—An attack of cholera commences in one of two ways; either it may supervene in the course of what appears to be an ordinary case of diarrhœa, or it may come on suddenly and without any well-marked prodromal stage. During cholera epidemics diarrhœa is unusually prevalent. It is a common observation that at such times an attack of this latter nature, after a day or two, may assume the characters of true cholera. The preliminary looseness in such cases is called the "premonitory diarrhœa." Whether this looseness is specifically related to the subsequent attack, or whether it is of an ordinary



catarrhal or bilious type and acts simply by predisposing to the specific disease, has not been determined. Possibly, owing to a catarrhal condition—in itself non-specific—the resisting power of the mucous membrane is impaired; possibly, in diarrhœa, the large amount of fluid in the gut affords a favourable medium for the cholera germ to multiply in. Besides diarrhœa, other prodromata such as languor, depression of spirits, noises in the ears, etc., are sometimes noted.

When true cholera sets in, profuse watery stools, painless or associated with griping, and at first fæcal in character, pour, one after the other, from the patient. Quickly the stools lose their fæcal character, becoming colourless or, rather, like thin rice water containing small white flocculi in suspension. Enormous quantities—pints—of this material are generally passed by the patient. Presently vomiting, also profuse, at first perhaps of food but very soon of the same rice-water description, supervenes. Cramps of an agonising character attack the extremities and abdomen; the implicated muscles stand out like rigid bars, or are thrown into lumps from the violence of the contractions. The patient may rapidly pass into a state of collapse. In consequence principally of the loss of fluid by the diarrhœa and vomiting, the soft parts shrink, the cheeks fall in, the nose becomes pinched and thin, the eyes sunken, and the skin of the fingers shrivelled like a washerwoman's. The surface of the body becomes cold, livid, and bedewed with a clammy sweat; the urine and bile are suppressed; respiration is rapid and shallow; the breath is cold and the voice is sunk to a whisper. The pulse at the wrist soon becomes thready, weak, and rapid, and then, after coming and going and feebly fluttering, may disappear entirely. The surface temperature sinks several degrees below normal— $93^{\circ}$  or  $94^{\circ}$ , whilst that in the rectum may be several degrees above normal— $101^{\circ}$  to  $105^{\circ}$ . The patient is now restless, tossing about uneasily, throwing his arms



from side to side, feebly complaining of intense thirst and of a burning feeling in the chest, and racked with cramp. Although apathetic, the mind generally remains clear. In other instances the patient may wander or pass into a comatose state.

This, "the algide stage" of cholera, may terminate in one of three ways—in death, in rapid convalescence, or in febrile reaction.

When death from collapse supervenes, it may do so at any time from two to thirty hours from the commencement of the seizure, usually in from ten to twelve. On the other hand, the gradual cessation of vomiting and purging, the reappearance of the pulse at the wrist, and the return of some warmth to the surface may herald convalescence. In such a case, after many hours, the secretion of urine returns, and in the course of a few days the patient may be practically well again. Usually, however, on the cessation of the more acute symptoms of the algide stage, a condition, known as "the stage of reaction," is developed.

*Reaction; cholera typhoid.*—When the patient enters on this stage the surface of the body becomes warmer, the pulse returns at the wrist, the face fills out, restlessness disappears, urine may be secreted, and the motions diminish in number and amount, becoming bilious at the same time. Coincidentally with the subsidence of the more urgent symptoms of the algide stage and this general improvement in the appearance of the patient, a febrile condition of greater or less severity may develop. Minor degrees of this reaction generally subside in a few hours; but in more severe cases the febrile state becomes aggravated, and a condition in many respects closely resembling typhoid fever, "cholera typhoid," ensues. This febrile or possibly typhoid state may last from four or five days to perhaps a fortnight or even longer. In severe cases the face is flushed, the tongue brown and dry, and there may be delirium of a low typhoid character with tremor and subsultus; or the patient may sink into a peculiar torpid condition. The



motions are now either greenish or like pea-soup, and may contain a larger or smaller amount of blood; at the same time they are very offensive. The reappearance of urine may be delayed from two to six days; at first scanty, high-coloured, cloudy, albuminous, and containing casts, it gradually becomes more profuse, paler, and with less albumin. Though at first the urine is very deficient in urea, in uric acid, and in salts, later the quantity of these substances may exceed for a time the normal.

During the stage of reaction death may occur from a variety of complications; from pneumonia, from enteritis and diarrhœa, from asthenia, or from such effects of uræmic poisoning as coma and convulsions.

In cholera there is a considerable variety in the character of the symptoms and in their severity, both as regards individual cases and as regards different epidemics. It is generally stated that during an epidemic the earlier cases are the more severe, those occurring towards the end of the epidemic being on the whole milder.

*Ambulatory cases* occur during all epidemics. Such cases are characterised by diarrhœa and malaise merely; there is never complete suppression of urine, the diarrhœa never loses its bilious character and it is not accompanied by cramps. The attack gradually subsides without developing a subsequent stage of reaction.

*Cholerine*.—In another set of cases the diarrhœa may be somewhat more acute, and the stools assume the well-known rice-water appearance; but the looseness soon ceases without leading to suppression of urine, or to algide symptoms, or even to very severe cramps, and without being followed by a stage of reaction. Such cases are sometimes designated “choleraic diarrhœa” or “cholerine.”

*Cholera sicca*.—A very fatal type is that known as “cholera sicca.” In these cases, though there is no, or very little, diarrhœa and vomiting, collapse sets in so rapidly that the patient is quickly overpowered as



by an overwhelming dose of some poison, and dies in a few hours without purging or any attempt at reaction. At the *post-mortem* examination the rice-water material, so characteristic of cholera, though it may not have been voided during life, is found in abundance in the bowel. Other cases die suddenly from apnœa caused, apparently, either by coagula in the right heart, or by spasm of the pulmonary arterioles, the lungs refusing to transmit the thickened blood. In certain cases, after temporary improvement, relapse may occur and is nearly always fatal.

*Hyperpyrexia* is an occasional though rare occurrence in cholera ; in such the axillary temperature may rise to  $107^{\circ}$ , the rectal temperature perhaps to  $109^{\circ}$  ; these cases also are almost invariably fatal.

*Sequelæ*.—Cholera is apt to be followed by a variety of more or less important sequelæ, such as anæmia, mental and physical debility, insomnia, pyretic conditions, chronic enterocolitis, nephritis, different forms of pulmonary inflammation, parotitis apt to end in abscess, ulceration of the corneæ, bed sores, or in gangrene of different parts of the body. Jaundice occurs at times and is said to be of the gravest import. Pregnant women almost invariably miscarry, the fœtus showing evidences of cholera.

**Morbid anatomy and pathology.**—Rigor mortis occurs early and persists for a considerable time. Curious movements of the limbs may take place in consequence of *post-mortem* muscular contractions. On dissection the most characteristic pathological appearances in cholera are those connected with the circulation and with the intestinal tract.

If death have occurred during the algide stage, the surface presents the shrunken and livid appearance already described. On opening the body all the tissues are found to be abnormally dry. The muscles are dark and firm ; sometimes one or more of them are discovered to be ruptured—evidently from the violence of the cramps during life. The right side of the heart and systemic veins are full of dark, thick, and



imperfectly coagulated blood, which tends to cling to the inner surface of the vessels. Fibrinous clots, extending into the vessels, may be found in the right heart. The lungs are usually anæmic, dry, and shrunken; occasionally they may be congested and œdematous. The pulmonary arteries are distended with blood, the pulmonary veins empty. The liver is generally loaded with blood; the gall bladder full of bile; the spleen small. Like all the other serous cavities, the peritoneum contains no fluid, its surface being dry and sticky. The outer surface of the bowel has generally a diffuse rosy red, occasionally an injected, appearance. On opening the bowel it is found to contain a larger or smaller amount of the characteristic rice-water material, occasionally blood. The mucous membrane of the stomach and intestine is generally pinkish from congestion, or there may be irregularly congested or arborescent patches of injection here and there throughout its extent. In addition, there may be seen smaller or larger points of ecchymosis in, or under, the mucous membrane. The changes in the alimentary canal are most marked at the lower end of the ileum, where Peyer's patches and the solitary glands may be seen to be congested and swollen. In some instances the bowel is pale throughout; in many the mucous membrane has a sodden, pulpy appearance from exfoliation of epithelium—possibly a *post-mortem* change; occasionally, especially towards the lower end of the ileum, a croupous exudation is met with. The mesenteric glands are congested. The superficial veins of the kidneys are full; the medullary portion is much congested, the cortical portion less so; the tubules are filled with granular matter; the epithelium is cloudy, granular, or fatty; and, at a later stage, may be shed. The bladder is empty and contracted. Nothing special is to be noted in the nervous system.

If death have occurred during the stage of reaction, the tissues are moist; the venous system is less congested; the lungs probably congested and



œdematous, perhaps inflamed. Very probably there are evidences of extensive enteritis.

Microscopical examination of the contents of the bowel during the acute stage of the disease discovers, in most instances, the comma bacillus. Usually it is in great abundance; occasionally in what is almost a pure culture. Sections of the intestine show the bacillus lying on and between the epithelial cells of the villi and glands. In no other organ or tissue of the body is the bacterium to be found. Therefore, assuming that the comma bacillus is the cause of cholera, we must conclude that the clinical phenomena are not the result of a septicæmia; but that they arise, either from a local irritation produced by the bacillus, or from some toxin which it generates in the bowel and which is absorbed, or from a combination of these factors.

That the cholera vibrio is a powerful irritant is shown by the effect produced locally by a hypodermic injection of a virulent culture. When so injected, not only does it give rise to local œdema but, unless precautions are taken, it causes in certain animals necrosis of the tissues and ulceration at the seat of injection. It is conceivable, therefore, that when in the course of the naturally acquired disease the bacilli proliferate in the bowel, they or their products act as an irritant to the mucous membrane and so provoke the hypercatharsis, and the consequent dehydration of the tissues, which are the dominating features of the disease. On the other hand, the hypodermic injection of cholera vibrio cultures is followed by smart febrile movement lasting from one to three days, evidencing the presence of a febrogenetic toxin capable of producing constitutional symptoms. This fact, together with the rapid and intense prostration which, in some instances of natural cholera, appears to be out of all proportion to the amount of catharsis present, suggests that in a measure the lethal effects of the vibrio are attributable, not alone to the drain of fluid from the blood and tissues, but also to the absorption of a



cholera toxin from the intestine. It is somewhat strange, however, if this toxin be anything more than a subsidiary element in the production of the symptoms in most instances of the naturally acquired disease, that catharsis is not one of the effects of the hypodermic introduction of the vibrio, and that fever is not an earlier and more prominent symptom in natural cholera. The modern tendency is to regard the clinical phenomena as the result partly of local irritation and partly of a toxæmia ; variation in the proportional intensities of the various clinical elements depending on the degree of virulence of the particular strain of microbe introduced, and on the circumstances and idiosyncrasy of the patient.

**Diagnosis.**—During the height of an epidemic the diagnosis of cholera is generally an easy matter ; the profuse rice-water discharges, the collapse, the cold clammy skin, the cyanosis, the shrunken features, the shrivelled fingers and toes, the feeble, husky, hollow voice, the cold breath, the cramps and the suppression of urine, together with the high rate of mortality, are generally sufficiently distinctive. But in the first cases of some outbreak of diarrhœa, which may or may not turn out to be cholera and the true nature of which for obvious reasons it is of importance to determine, diagnosis may not be so easy. Symptoms resembling true cholera may supervene in the course of an ordinary severe diarrhœa, and are very usual in cholera nostras, in mushroom poisoning, in ptomaine poisoning, in the early stages of trichinosis, and in a certain type of pernicious malarial fever. In none of these, however, is the mortality so high as in cholera ; it may be laid down, therefore, that epidemic diarrhœa attended by a case mortality of over 50 per cent. is cholera.

In other forms of diarrhœa it is rare for the stools to be persistently so absolutely devoid of biliary colouring matter as they are in cholera. A careful inspection of the stools sometimes yields valuable information in other ways. Thus in mushroom



poisoning, fragments of the mushrooms which caused the catharsis may be seen; in trichinosis, the microscope may detect the adult trichina. In choleraic malarial attacks the presence of the plasmodium in the blood, the periodicity of the symptoms, their amenability to quinine, together with the character of the prevailing epidemic, generally combine to guide to a correct diagnosis.

The detection of the comma bacillus in the stools is now regarded as a positive indication of cholera. It would be rash, however, to affirm that a negative result from bacteriological examination of a single case is conclusive against its being cholera. Moreover, it must be borne in mind that such examinations to be trustworthy have to be made by a skilled bacteriologist. According to Kanthack and Stephens, the following were the methods of bacteriological diagnosis practised by Klein during the threatened epidemic in 1893 :—

“*Method 1.*—A flake from the dejecta is placed in peptone broth and incubated at 37° Cent. In twenty-four hours an abundant crop of vibrios is found on the superficial layers of the broth. This pellicle consists of a practically pure culture, or, at any rate, is a culture which easily allows of pure subcultures being obtained.

“*Method 2.*—A flake is placed in sterile salt solution or broth; it is shaken up, and from this gelatine or agar tubes are inoculated, and plates are made. In agar plates incubated at 37° Cent. numerous colonies may be found in twenty to thirty hours. In the gelatine plates, after two to three days' incubation at 20° to 22° Cent., numerous typical colonies can be got.

“*Method 3.*—A flake is placed directly into Dunham's peptone salt solution (1 per cent. peptone, 0·5 per cent. sodium chloride), or the Dunham's solution is inoculated after previous dilution of the material. The peptone solution, after six, eight, to ten hours' incubation at 37° Cent. shows a definite turbidity, due to the rapid growth of the comma bacilli; and the cholera-red reaction may be obtained. For speedy diagnosis this method is most valuable; in six to twelve hours, or, at latest, in sixteen hours, comma bacilli can be found in the superficial layers of the peptone solution, so that in twenty-four hours pure cultures and the cholera-red reaction can be obtained in secondary peptone tubes. Also, a positive result may be



obtained by this method in cases in which the microscopical examination has failed to give definite evidence of the presence of vibrios."

The first two methods are applicable to those instances in which microscopical examination of the stools shows crowds of comma bacilli. Method 3 is specially applicable to those stools in which comma bacilli are in very small numbers.

**Mortality.**—The average case mortality in cholera amounts to about 50 per cent. Some epidemics are more deadly than others. As already mentioned, the mortality is greater at the earlier stages than at the later stages of an epidemic. To the old, the very young, the pregnant, the subjects of grave organic disease—particularly of the liver, kidneys, and heart, the dissipated, the under-fed, and the feeble, the danger is very great.

**Quarantine prevention.**—Theoretically, quarantine should be an efficient protection against the introduction of cholera into a community; practically, it has proved a failure. Unless they are stringent and thoroughly carried out, quarantine regulations can be of little use. Unfortunately, the temptation to evade such regulations is in proportion to their stringency. It is impossible to secure the absolute honesty and efficiency of every individual in a large body of men charged with the details of any system entailing great personal inconvenience and loss to travellers and merchants. Therefore, if the strength of the quarantine chain is to be measured by its weakest link, the chain must be weak indeed, as a very slight acquaintance with its working will attest. Even if the utmost care, intelligence, and honesty succeed in excluding individuals actually suffering from cholera, or likely within a reasonable time to suffer from cholera, there is yet no guarantee that the germ of the disease may not be introduced. Koch and others have shown that sometimes the dejecta even of individuals apparently in good health and who have not suffered, or who may not subsequently suffer, from choleraic



disease, may yet contain, and for some time continue to contain, the cholera vibrio. If the cholera vibrio be the germ of cholera, then such healthy, vibrio-bearing individuals may well suffice to start an epidemic. It is impossible, short of absolute and complete isolation, for any practicable system of quarantine to deal efficiently with such cases.

So far from ordinary quarantine proving a defence against cholera, it may actually increase the risk of an epidemic. This it does by fostering a false sense of security, and so leading to neglect of those well-proved guarantors of the public health—domestic, municipal, and personal cleanliness, and a pure water and food supply.

The system to which Great Britain apparently owed her immunity during recent epidemics on the continent of Europe is a practicable and in civilised conditions, an efficient one. Under this system only ships which were carrying, or which had recently carried, cholera patients were detained; and even these merely till they could be thoroughly disinfected. Thus inconvenience and loss to travellers and merchants were small, and the temptation to conceal cases of the disease, or to evade regulations, was proportionately minimised. Any cholera cases were isolated in suitable hospitals, the rest of the crew and passengers, although supervised for a time, being given free pratique. At the same time, attention was not diverted from the sanitation of towns, especially of seaports; this was the measure mainly relied on. Suspicious cases occurring on shore were at once reported to the sanitary authorities and promptly dealt with, fomites being destroyed or disinfected at as little cost and inconvenience to individuals as possible. Every endeavour was made to prevent fæcal contamination of the public water supply.

Of late years in India effort is being directed much on the same lines, attention being given to sanitation rather than to quarantine. During the great religious festivals the sanitary condition of the



devotees is looked after so far as practicable, special care being given to provide them with good drinking and bathing water. Many of the large Indian towns now enjoy an abundant and pure water supply; and civilised systems of night soil conservancy and other important sanitary measures are being gradually introduced, in the case of more than one great city, with the most gratifying results.

Among the troops in India, on the appearance of cholera in their neighbourhood, special protective measures are promptly instituted, elaborate directions having been drawn up for the guidance of medical officers. For an account of these regulations the reader is referred to the Annual Report of the Sanitary Commissioner with the Government of India for 1895, Appendix, p. 189.

*Incubation period.*—All quarantine and protective systems must take cognisance of the fact that, although cholera may declare itself within a few hours of exposure to infection, it may also do so at any time up to ten days thereafter. Three to six days may be set down as the usual duration of the incubation period.

**Anti - choleraic inoculations.** — In 1885, during an epidemic of cholera in Spain, Ferran instituted a system of prophylactic inoculation. He injected hypodermically ordinary laboratory cultures of the cholera vibrio obtained directly from cholera corpses. No attempt was made to regulate or standardise in any way the virulence of the cultures. The results were not encouraging. As accidents were frequent, the Government put a stop to the practice.

In 1893 (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, Feb. 11th, 1893) Haffkine, after elaborate experiments on the lower animals, commenced a system of anti-choleraic vaccinations, using a pure virus of a fixed and known strength. This virus he prepared by passing the cholera vibrio through a series of guinea-pigs by means of intra-peritoneal injections. In this way the microbes were increased in toxicity to a definite



point, beyond which their virulence could not be augmented. Cultures so prepared gave rise not only to a general but also to a local reaction, the latter being so severe that it ordinarily ended in extensive sloughing and ulceration. To avoid this undesirable result, a milder vaccine was prepared by cultivating the strong vaccine in artificial media at a temperature of 39° Cent., and in an atmosphere kept constantly renewed. By first injecting under the skin of animals this milder vaccine, it was found that such a measure of protection was conferred that subsequent injection of the strong virus was no longer followed by violent local reaction. Having satisfied himself that the subcutaneous injection of these two vaccines conferred immunity against the cholera vibrio in the lower animals, Haffkine proceeded to use them in man on a large scale in India, with the approval and aid of the Government. Up to 1895 70,000 injections of living cholera bacilli had been made in 43,179 individuals. In no instance did any bad result ensue. While admitting that the value of his method has not been fully proved, Haffkine claims that the results are sufficiently encouraging to justify a continuation of these inoculations on a larger scale.

The symptoms which these injections produce are fever, transient œdema and tenderness at the seat of injection, the first evidence of constitutional disturbance appearing from two to three hours after the injection is made. The fever and general indisposition last from twenty-four to thirty-six hours, the local symptoms gradually disappearing in from three to four days. The symptoms following the second injection—made from three to four days after the first—are generally more marked but of shorter duration. The microbes injected die. It is the substances set free at their death which confer the immunity; for it is found that carbolised cultures—that is, dead vibrios—produce the same immunising and constitutional effects, though in a somewhat milder and probably less permanent degree. How long the



immunity conferred by these injections endures has not been definitely settled. For details of Haffkine's original methods and technique see the *Brit. Med. Journ.*, Feb. 4, 1893, and the *Indian Med. Gaz.*, Nov., 1896.

In consequence of an experiment on himself Haffkine found that, although the virulent comma bacillus produced necrotic effects at the site of inoculation in guinea-pigs, it did not do so in man. Accordingly he abandoned his original method of a primary inoculation with an attenuated virus, and has since countenanced immediate inoculation with virulent, recently-isolated vibrios, without further preparation. According to Powell (*Journ. of Tropical Med.*, Dec. 1899), the method is as follows:—

“The whole surface of agar in a sloped tube is inoculated with the comma and cultivated for from twenty-four to thirty-six hours at a temperature of 40° C. The whole surface should then be covered with a uniform layer of growth. Sterilised water is then added to one-third the height of the agar, and the growth washed off and suspended in the water by rapidly rotating or shaking, till the surface of the agar is quite clear. Half a cubic centimetre, about nine minims, is the dose for an average adult.”

Powell's results are highly favourable—namely, 198 cases of cholera with 124 deaths among 6,549 non-inoculated tea-garden coolies in Assam, against 27 cases and 14 deaths among 5,778 inoculated coolies. Had the incidence of cholera been the same in both classes, the inoculated would have had 174 instead of 27 cases, and 109 instead of 14 deaths.

**Personal prophylaxis.**—During cholera epidemics great care should be exercised to preserve the general health; at the same time, anything like panic or apprehension must be sedulously discouraged. Fatigue, chill, excess—particularly dietetic or alcoholic excess—are to be carefully avoided. Visits to cholera districts should be postponed if possible, seeing that the new-comer is specially liable to contract the disease. Unripe fruit, over-ripe fruit,



shell-fish, food in a state of decomposition, and everything tending to upset the digestive organs and to cause intestinal catarrh are dangerous. Melons, cucumbers, and the like deserve the evil reputation they have acquired. Purgatives—particularly saline purgatives—unless very specially indicated, should never be taken at these times. All drinking water, and all water in which dishes and everything used in the preparation and serving of food are washed, should be boiled. Filters—except perhaps the Pasteur-Chamberland filter—are not to be relied on; in most instances they are more likely to contaminate the water passed through them than to purify it. A good plan in a household, or in public institutions, is to provide for drinking purposes an abundant supply of weak tea or lemon decoction, the supply being renewed daily; such a plan insures that the water used in the preparation of the drink has been boiled.

Diarrhœa occurring during cholera epidemics should be promptly and vigorously treated.

**Treatment.**—During cholera epidemics it is customary to establish dépôts where sedative and astringent remedies are dispensed gratuitously for the treatment of diarrhœa. Experience seems to encourage the belief that by such means incipient cholera may be aborted during the stage of premonitory diarrhœa. Of the various drugs used with this view, chlorodyne, or chlorodyne and brandy, is the most popular. Lead and opium pill; chalk, catechu and opium mixture; compound kino powder; aromatic powder of chalk and opium; a pill of opium, asafoetida and black pepper; dilute sulphuric acid and laudanum, are among the drugs more commonly employed for this purpose. Whether true cholera can be cut short in this way or not, it is certainly in the highest degree advisable at such a time to neglect no case of diarrhœa; but to insist on rest, warmth, and the greatest prudence in feeding in all cases of intestinal catarrh or irritation.

Many plans of treatment, based on theoretical



considerations, have been advocated from time to time ; so far, however, none of them has proved of material service in true cholera. The eliminative treatment advocated by Dr. George Johnson ; the spinal ice-bag recommended by Chapman ; various antiseptic methods directed to the destruction of the vibrio in the intestinal canal ; drugs designed to counteract the physiological effects of the cholera toxins, as chloroform, atropine, nitrite of amyl, and nitro-glycerine may be mentioned as belonging to this category of remedies.

Practically, the only treatment of any proved value in cholera is the purely symptomatic and expectant one. If our efforts have failed to counteract the premonitory diarrhœa, attention should be given to maintaining the patient in as favourable a condition as possible to struggle against the poison of the disease. He should be kept strictly in the horizontal position, in a warm bed, and in a well-ventilated but not too cold room. His thirst should be treated by sips of iced-water or of soda-water, or champagne, or brandy and water. Copious draughts, as they are likely to provoke vomiting, are usually condemned. It does not follow from this that they are harmful ; the emesis contributes to the elimination of germ and toxin. Cramps may be relieved by gentle frictions with the hand or with ginger-root, by a small hypodermic injection of morphia, or, these failing, by short chloroform inhalations. The surface of the body should be kept dry by wiping it with warm dry cloths, and the surface heat maintained by hot-water bottles or warmed bricks placed about the feet, legs, and flanks. The patient must not be allowed to get up to pass his stools ; a warmed bed-pan should be provided for this purpose. All food should be withheld while the disease is active.

If the pulse fail or disappear at the wrist, stimulants by the mouth, or, if there is much vomiting and these do not appear to be absorbed, hypodermic injections of ether or brandy may be given. No



improvement ensuing, intravenous injection of saline fluid may be had recourse to. A suitable injection may be quickly prepared of common salt sixty grains, carbonate of soda sixty grains, boiled water one quart. Of this, from one to three quarts at a temperature of 100° Fahr. may be slowly injected by gravitation into a vein, the effect being carefully watched. The pulse can generally be quickly restored temporarily by this means and life prolonged, possibly in a few instances saved; too often, however, the fluid so introduced rapidly escapes by the bowel and collapse once more sets in. Dr. Cox, of Shanghai, has had some encouraging results from continuous, prolonged, slow, intravenous injection of saline fluid, the fluid gravitating from a vessel placed two and a half feet above the level of the patient's arm. The flow is kept up for several hours, and as long as it is deemed that there is any risk of collapse (*China Med. Missionary Journ.*, June, 1897).

During the stage of reaction, should purging persist, large doses of salicylate of bismuth with a little opium may prove of service. In these circumstances massive rectal injections of tannin one ounce, gum arabic one ounce, warm water one quart, are of use. If the secretion of urine is not quickly restored, large hot poultices over the loins, dry cupping of the same region, and the judicious use of bland diluents should be had recourse to. Stimulating diuretics are dangerous. Retention of urine must be inquired about, and the region of the bladder frequently examined, and, if necessary, the catheter employed. In the event of constipation, purgatives must be eschewed and simple enemata alone used.

In cholera convalescents the diet for a time must be of the simplest and most digestible nature—diluted milk, barley-water, or rice-water, thin broths, meat juice and so forth—the return to ordinary food being effected with the greatest circumspection.

Cholera typhoid must be treated much as ordinary enteric fever.



## CHAPTER XX.

## DYSENTERY.

**Definition.**—A term applied to what is probably a group of diseases of which the principal pathological feature is inflammation of the mucous membrane of the colon, and of which the leading symptoms are pain in the abdomen, tenesmus, and the passage of frequent small stools containing mucus, or mucus and blood. In some instances the disease is communicable.

**Geographical distribution.**—From time to time forms of dysentery have extended as epidemics of great severity over vast tracts of country. These great epidemics, or, rather, such of them as have been recorded, have been confined principally to temperate latitudes, and do not specially concern us here.

In respect to geographical distribution and certain epidemiological points, tropical dysentery bears a close resemblance to malaria. Like malaria, although dysentery is found in temperate climates, in them it is, with exceptions, a comparatively rare and mild affection. Like malaria, as we approach the Equator dysentery tends to become more common, and in type more severe. Like malaria, it is endemic in certain spots, where it often appears in sporadic form, and, at times, in limited local epidemics. Like malaria, it may extend beyond these endemic spots and involve more extensive tracts of country. Like malaria, it appears to have a predilection for low-lying, damp places; and, like malaria, when occurring in temperate climates it is most prevalent in the late summer, or in early autumn. Like malaria, it tends to disappear on the cultivation, drainage, and improved sanitation of a country. Furthermore, the two diseases often occur in the same places and at the same time. They may even concur in the same individual; and one disease seems to predispose to the other.



To this extent these two diseases resemble each other ; nevertheless, though they have many points in their epidemiology and in their geographical distribution in common, they are pathologically totally distinct and independent affections, with different causes, different lesions, and requiring different treatment. Moreover, there are many places where dysentery is common and where malaria is unknown, and, though very much more rarely, *vice versâ*.

**Symptoms.**—In ordinary cases the leading symptoms of dysentery are those of inflammation of the great intestine—namely, griping, tenesmus, and the passage of frequent, loose, scanty, mucosanguineous stools. It commences in various ways—insidiously, or suddenly ; or it may be grafted, as it were, on some general affection such as scurvy or malaria, or on some chronic disease of the alimentary canal, as sprue. It may assume acute characters, or from the outset the symptoms may be subdued and of little urgency. As a rule, the symptoms are proportioned to the extent of the disease, but they are not necessarily so. In certain cases they may be extremely urgent and in apparent disproportion to the area of bowel affected ; or they may be, in comparison to the extent and the degree of the anatomical lesion, disproportionately trifling ; or they may be altogether absent, even when the colon is extensively diseased. There is, therefore, endless variety in the character, urgency, and significance of the symptoms. As a general rule, the nearer to the rectum the lesions, the more urgent the tenesmus ; the nearer to the cæcum, the more urgent the griping. These two symptoms, together with the presence of points of localised tenderness, form, in cases, a fair guide to the location and extent of the lesions.

Until we know more of the ætiology of the various forms of colitis grouped under the term “dysentery,” our arrangement of the types of the disease must remain a purely arbitrary one. I classify them according to the gross characters of the intestinal lesion.



*Catarrhal dysentery.*—A common history to receive from a patient is that for some days he, or she, had suffered from what was supposed to be an attack of ordinary diarrhœa. The stools, at first copious, bilious and watery—perhaps to the number of four or five in the twenty-four hours—had latterly, and by degrees, become less copious and more frequent, less feculent and more mucoid, their passage being attended by a certain and increasing amount of straining and griping. On looking at what was passed, the patient had discovered that now there was very little in the pot except mucus tinged, or streaked, or dotted with blood; a tablespoonful, or thereabouts, being passed at a time. By degrees the dysenteric element entirely supplanted the diarrhœa; so that when seen by the physician the desire to go to stool has become almost incessant, the effort to pass something being accompanied by perhaps agonising griping and tenesmus. The patient has hardly left the stool before he has a call to return to it, and he may be groaning and sweating with pain and effort. The suffering is sometimes very great; nevertheless, with all this suffering, there is very little fever, the thermometer showing a rise of only one or two degrees, rarely more.

In another type of case the incidence of the dysenteric condition is much more abrupt. Within a few hours of its commencement the disease may be in full swing. The stools, at first feculent, soon come to consist of little save a yellowish, greenish, or dirty brown mucus—blood-tinged or streaked and dotted with little hæmorrhages. Very soon the desire to stool becomes increased, the griping and tenesmus being accompanied, perhaps, with most distressing dysuria. The patient is glued, as it were, to the commode. Fever is absent or inconsiderable. The tongue soon becomes white or yellow-coated; there may also be thirst; very generally anorexia is complete.

In either case, after perhaps four, five, or six days, the urgency of the symptoms may gradually diminish



and the acute stage taper off into a subacute or chronic condition ; or it may terminate more quickly in perfect recovery.

*Ulcerative dysentery.*—Should, on the contrary, the disease advance, the urgency of the symptoms shows hardly any abatement ; the stools become very offensive and now contain, besides blood, large or small shreddy, ash-coloured, stinking sloughs. This may go on, better or worse, for days or weeks. Recovery from this condition is a slow process, as the presence of sloughs in the stools indicates the existence of deep ulceration which must necessarily take some time to cicatrise. Such a condition tends to drift into that most dangerous and most distressing complaint, chronic dysentery, relapsing and improving during many months or even years ; and causing, if severe and prolonged, great wasting, pain and misery.

*Gangrenous dysentery.*—What is known as gangrenous dysentery is, symptomatically, but an aggravated form of acute ulcerative dysentery. Instead of being mucoid, the stools come to consist of a sort of dirty water, like the washings of flesh. On standing they deposit a grumous, coffee-grounds-looking material, and they stink abominably. Now and again sloughs of every shape, size, and colour, from ash-grey to black, are expelled. Sometimes tube-like pieces, evidently rings of mucous membrane which have been cast off *en masse*, are discharged. In such cases the patient rapidly passes into a state of collapse. He sweats profusely ; the features, the extremities, and even the whole body, are cold and pinched as in the algide stage of cholera ; he may vomit from time to time, and the belly may become distressingly tympanitic. In this condition there is usually a persistent and worrying hiccough. Low muttering delirium sets in ; the pulse becomes small and running, and the patient rapidly sinks. Recovery is extremely improbable. Nevertheless, such cases have recovered, and must not necessarily be despaired of.



*Hæmorrhage.* — Whenever in dysentery sloughs separate, hæmorrhage is always possible. Sudden collapse may occur from this cause, even in otherwise mild cases. As in typhoid, the occurrence of hæmorrhage is more or less of the nature of an accident, depending, as it does, on the position of the sloughing sore in relation to an artery; of course, the more extensive and the deeper the sloughing, the greater the liability to hæmorrhage.

*Perforation.* — Another grave, though fortunately rare, accident in the course of dysentery is the occurrence of perforation. Should this unhappily take place, and if the patient survive the shock of an extensive extravasation into the peritoneum, symptoms of peritonitis will supervene and rapidly prove fatal.

*Intussusception.* — Intussusception is also an occasional occurrence, especially in children, not always readily recognised. A sudden increase of pain, increased straining, entire absence of fæcal matter from the stools, vomiting, and perhaps the presence of a tumour in the rectum, might lead one to suspect this accident.

*Tenderness; thickening.* — In most cases of acute dysentery there is a considerable amount of tenderness of the abdomen. If the disease be of some standing a certain amount of thickening may be felt along the track of the colon, particularly over the sigmoid flexure.

*Hepatitis.* — In acute dysentery the liver is usually distinctly enlarged and may be tender. It sometimes happens that attacks of hepatitis seem to alternate with attacks of dysentery; or, rather, that hepatitis increasing, dysenteric symptoms decrease and *vice versâ*. These are always very anxious cases, and too often eventuate in the formation of an abscess or multiple abscesses in the liver; in the latter event they almost necessarily prove fatal.

*Pathognomonic symptoms.* — No two cases of dysentery are exactly alike. In epidemic dysentery,



which is usually of a more severe type than the sporadic form, the individual cases have a general resemblance to each other. In all varieties the leading symptoms are the same—frequent discharge of muco-sanguinolent stools, tenesmus, griping and, usually, tender abdomen. In the presence of these symptoms, with or without fever, particularly if the disease be epidemic at the time, a diagnosis of dysentery is probably correct.

**Mortality.**—Although every now and again cases are met with which prove directly fatal from rapid exhaustion, from hæmorrhage, or from perforation; and though some epidemics exhibit a malignancy which, fortunately, is not very common, the direct and immediate mortality from this disease is, under modern methods of treatment, not very high. In India, the case mortality in dysentery among Europeans ranges from 3 to 22 per cent.; among natives, about 37 per cent. In Egypt, Griesinger stated it as 36 to 40 per cent. In Japan, Scheube places it at 7 per cent. These figures are of little value, as so much depends on the place, the type of the epidemic, and the range of cases covered by the statistics. There was a time when, under a spoliative treatment by bleeding and calomel, dysentery proved a very fatal disease indeed. Even now, in the presence of scorbutus, famine, the stress of war, and similar conditions, whenever dysentery becomes epidemic in a community it is apt to claim a large number of victims.

*Sequelæ more dangerous than the disease.*—As a rule, under modern treatment, it is the sequelæ of the disease that we have to fear rather than the disease itself. The chronic ulceration, the scarring, thickening, and contractions of the gut, are irremediable conditions which too often, after months or years of suffering, lead to intestinal obstruction or, very frequently, to atrophy of the glandular and absorbent system of the entire alimentary tract, general wasting, and fatal asthenia. Such patients hardly ever pass a healthy motion; they are troubled with chronic



indigestion ; they pass at times their food unaltered ; they have recurring attacks of diarrhœa ; they are flatulent ; their tongues are red, often ulcerated and tender ; they develop the condition known as "sprue," and, sooner or later, almost invariably succumb.

*Liver abscess.*—Much more frequent in its occurrence than these, and much more rapidly fatal, sometimes accompanying or quickly following dysentery, more often showing itself after months of comparative good health and when dysenteric symptoms had long ceased to trouble the patient, had perhaps been forgotten even, there is suddenly sprung on us the gravest of all the sequelæ of this disease—the patient gets abscess of the liver. This important subject is specially dealt with elsewhere in this volume (p. 374).

**Morbid anatomy and pathology.**—We were able to study the cognate subject of malaria scientifically ; we could point out its germ or cause, and, in a measure, indicate the way in which this germ produced pathological effects. Unfortunately, in the case of dysentery this cannot be done. Although in many instances the specific nature of the disease is not to be doubted, the specific body or germ has not been indicated with anything like certainty. Many bacteria have been incriminated—the *Bacillus coli communis*, a *Bacillus dysentericæ*, *Staphylococcus aureus* and *S. albus*, etc. In one form of dysentery claims have been advanced for regarding the *Amœba coli* as the germ. Up to the present all or any of these claims, whether for bacteria or for protozoa, are still very far from being established.

In treating of the pathology of dysentery, therefore, we cannot begin by describing the cause ; we can describe the effects, and only speculate about their cause or causes.

*The term dysentery includes, probably, several diseases.*—There is good reason to believe that the term "dysentery" includes not one but several distinct diseases. We know that the symptoms



grouped under this word are apt to differ in intensity and character in different places and in different epidemics. Some forms of the disease run a more or less definite course, and then terminate for good. Other forms exhibit a remarkable disposition to relapse. The dysentery of certain tropical countries, as the East Indies, is prone to eventuate in abscess of the liver; that of temperate climates and certain tropical countries, as the West Indies (excepting one or two of those epidemics of which we have trustworthy accounts) is seldom succeeded or accompanied by hepatic suppuration. These and other circumstances seem to point to radical differences in the several forms—differences of cause as well as differences of symptoms, course, and sequelæ. It is well, therefore, to regard the term “dysentery” as but the name of a symptom or group of symptoms indicating an inflamed condition of the colon—much in the same way as we regard diarrhœa, cough, or fever as symptomatic merely of disease, and not as indicating a single and well-defined disease. Dysentery simply means inflammation of the colon. There may be many kinds of inflammation of the colon.

*Catarrhal dysentery.*—It is unreasonable to suppose that in those cases which, either spontaneously or in consequence of treatment, subside in a few days, the pathological condition advances farther than a state of catarrhal inflammation. In such cases it is reasonable to suppose that the pathological condition consists only, or mainly, in congestion or in catarrhal inflammation; that here and there, or throughout its extent, the mucosa and, perhaps, submucosa are slightly swollen, red, injected; and that the surface of the former is softened, perhaps eroded, and covered with a blood-streaked glairy mucus of the same character as that which appears in the stools.

*Ulcerative and gangrenous dysentery.*—Cases of catarrhal dysentery rarely die; the exact conditions of the mucous membrane, therefore, in these cases can only be conjectured. It is otherwise, however, in the



severer forms of the disease. When such cases come to the *post-mortem* table, the mucous membrane of the large intestine and, very frequently, a foot or two of the lower end of the ileum are found to be thickened, congested, inflamed, speckled perhaps with ecchymoses, œdematous, and more or less riddled with ulcers or patches of gangrene of various sizes, shapes, and depths. It is found, as a rule, that the brunt of the disease has fallen on the sigmoid flexure and descending colon; not infrequently, however, the lesions are equally, if not more, advanced in the cæcum and ascending colon. On the whole, the transverse colon, though often seriously involved, is so to a less extent than one or other of the parts mentioned, or than the hepatic and splenic flexures.

The dysenteric ulcer varies in size from a punched-out-looking sore the size of a pea, or even less, to a patch several inches in diameter. As a rule, in the earlier days of the acute stage, the ulcers tend to follow the folds of the mucous membrane, the free borders of which are the parts most liable to implication. The edges of the sores are ragged and undermined, the floor is sloughy and grey. There may be considerable thickening of the edges and base of the ulcer, and there may be peritoneal adhesions. The appearance of the ulcer suggests that it extends by a process of burrowing in the submucosa, the superjacent membrane sloughing or disintegrating in consequence of the destruction of its subjacent nutrient vessels. This burrowing may extend for a considerable distance beyond the apparent margin of ulceration; so much so that long, suppurating, fistulous tunnels may connect one ulcer with another. In this way large patches of mucous membrane come to be undermined, and subsequently to slough away. Sores so formed are necessarily ragged and irregular in outline, and may even surround pieces of comparatively healthy mucous membrane. The floor of the active dysenteric ulcer may be, and generally is, formed of a sloughy material lying on the muscular coat; but the sore may penetrate



deeper than this, and include the muscular coat itself, and even the serous membrane. The largest ulcers are generally found in the sigmoid flexure and descending colon; they are also frequently, though more rarely, found in the cæcum, the magnitude of the lesions diminishing as we trace the bowel upwards or downwards, as the case may be.

Along with the ulceration there is intense congestion of the non-ulcerated parts of the mucous membrane. In places there may be œdema of the submucosa; there may be small abscesses even which elevate the mucous membrane; and there may also be distension of the solitary follicles by a mucoid or purulent material. In some instances a large portion of the mucous membrane may be seen to have died *en masse* and become gangrenous. In such, extensive sloughs may be thrown off as a sort of tube, apt to be mistaken during the lifetime of the patient for a diphtheritic cast of the bowel.

*The primary lesion.*—Such, briefly, is a description of the principal lesions found in the acute stage of fatal dysentery. There is general agreement among pathologists about these; but there is very great discrepancy of opinion as to the exact nature of the primary and essential lesion. Some maintain that the starting-point of the disease is in the solitary follicles which, becoming distended by a specific exudation, afterwards slough, and form the starting-point for a spreading ulcer. Other pathologists regard the primary lesion as being altogether independent of the glandular structures of the mucous membrane. They hold that, in consequence of the irritation produced by the specific cause of dysentery, an exudation is thrown out on to, and into the continuity of, the mucous membrane itself; a dry eschar is formed of this, the implicated piece of tissue being subsequently got rid of, very much in the same way as the slough forming the core of an ordinary boil. Another primary lesion described is the small abscess, already alluded to as elevating the mucous membrane



and projecting into the lumen of the gut; these minute, pimple-like abscesses consist of a collection of a sort of gummy pus. After a time a tiny opening forms at the apex of the little swellings, through which the contents may be expressed; it is this opening which, it is alleged, forms, on enlarging, the specific ulcer of dysentery. Assuming that there are several specific causes for dysentery, it is to be expected that the corresponding primary lesions differ; that whilst one causes a suppurating, or a gangrenous lesion, another may produce a croupous or diphtheritic one which, in time, may also end in ulceration.

*Healing process.*—The dysenteric ulcer heals partly by contraction, partly by the formation of a very thin scar tissue—scar tissue which, besides contracting, is apt to become pigmented. Lost glandular structures are never reproduced. Owing to the constant peristaltic movement of the gut, and the passage of fæces over the face of the healing ulcer, cicatrization, as might be supposed, is a slow process, and one prone to interruption by recurring attacks of inflammation.

*Anomalous types of dysentery* have been described from time to time. Thus in a special report on an outbreak among Polynesian immigrants to Fiji which occurred on board ship in 1890, Daniels describes a disease of high fatality (fifteen deaths in thirty-one cases), manifestly infectious, running a rapid course—death taking place in from two to ten days. In six cases there was extensive superficial ulceration of the mouth, and in two cases diphtheritic inflammation of the prepuce. *Post-mortem* examinations were made in four cases. In all, the whole of the colon and at least half of the small intestine was found acutely inflamed, superficially ulcerated, or covered with a firm, dry, green or grey layer adherent to or continuous with the subjacent intestinal wall. In a special report (1898) Dr. Corney, of Fiji, remarks that at least six similar epidemics had occurred in Melanesian immigrant vessels in twelve years. The



high degree of infectiveness, the diphtheritic lesions in intestine and prepuce and the great mortality clearly indicate a special form of enterocolitis.

*Lesions in chronic dysentery.*—In chronic dysentery the ulcers are usually smaller and less numerous than in the acute disease. They are also less ragged in outline, tending to become circular in shape and to acquire thickened rather than undermined edges. Cicatricial bands and contractions may narrow the lumen of the gut whose functions are still further hampered by thickening, or by adhesions which unite and bind it to neighbouring organs. Dilatation above the seat of cicatricial stricture is liable to ensue. In chronic dysentery large patches of the bowel, and even the ulcers themselves, may be pale and anæmic; whilst, at the same time, other patches of the gut are congested. Some parts may be thickened and contracted; others, again, may be thinned and dilated, the glandular structures being atrophied.

*Polypoid growth.*—Some time ago I attended a case of chronic relapsing dysentery in which the mucous membrane—at all events of the rectum and descending colon—was covered with enormous numbers of polypoid growths of considerable magnitude, some of them at their free ends being as large as the tip of the little finger. The growths had pedicles one to two inches in length. During life these polypoid bodies appeared in the stools, often in great number, looking like so many mucilaginous seeds. Similar cases are occasionally met with.

*Liver; mesenteric glands.*—In by far the majority of cases of acute dysentery, the liver is hyperæmic and swollen. In about one-fifth of the cases of Indian dysentery which come to the *post-mortem* table, the liver is the seat of single or multiple abscesses. In chronic dysentery this organ may be atrophied; very generally it is the subject of fatty degeneration.

In acute cases the mesenteric glands are enlarged, soft, and congested; in chronic cases they are enlarged, hard, and pale. None of the other viscera are



characteristically affected. Abscess is sometimes discovered about the rectum. If perforation has occurred, there may be signs of commencing peritonitis.

**Ætiology.**—Our knowledge of the cause of dysentery is of a most fragmentary and very unsatisfactory character. Probably the several specific causes or germs of colitis have their action supplemented by the ordinary bacteria of suppuration and ulceration, which find their opportunity in a tissue weakened by, what may be regarded as, the more specific cause or causes of dysentery. It must be with the mucous membrane of the bowel, in this respect, as it is with the skin of the surface of the body. There are many causes for eczema and many secondary germs which proliferate on, and further irritate, an eczematous skin; so with the intestinal mucosa.

*Amœba coli.*—Lately, certain observers—particularly Kartulis, Councilman, Lafleur, Kruse, and Pasquale—have endeavoured to make out that there is a distinct type of dysentery associated with the presence of *Amœba coli* in the stools. According to these authors, this type of the disease is caused by the amœba, and they designate it “amœbic dysentery.” As distinguished from other forms of the disease, its principal clinical characteristics are said to be chronicity, relapses alternating with periods of comparative quiescence, great liability to the formation of abscess of the liver, and the presence of the amœba in the stools.

When present, the amœba (Fig. 42) is generally easy to find. All the preparation necessary is to pick out a small fragment of stool shortly after it has been passed, preferably a piece of flocculent mucus, and then to lay this on the slide, and compress it sufficiently under the cover-glass to form a fairly transparent film. In warm weather a warm stage is not required; but in cold weather it is well, until the observer has become by practice familiar with the appearance of the parasite in its passive condition, to warm the slide. This, in the absence of more



elaborate apparatus, may be conveniently done by placing the slide on a copper or tin plate with a hole cut in it to allow of the transmission of light. Such a warm stage should be provided with a long arm to the end of which a spirit-lamp is applied, care being taken not to raise the temperature of the slide above blood heat. Search is then made with a half-inch objective. The amœba, which

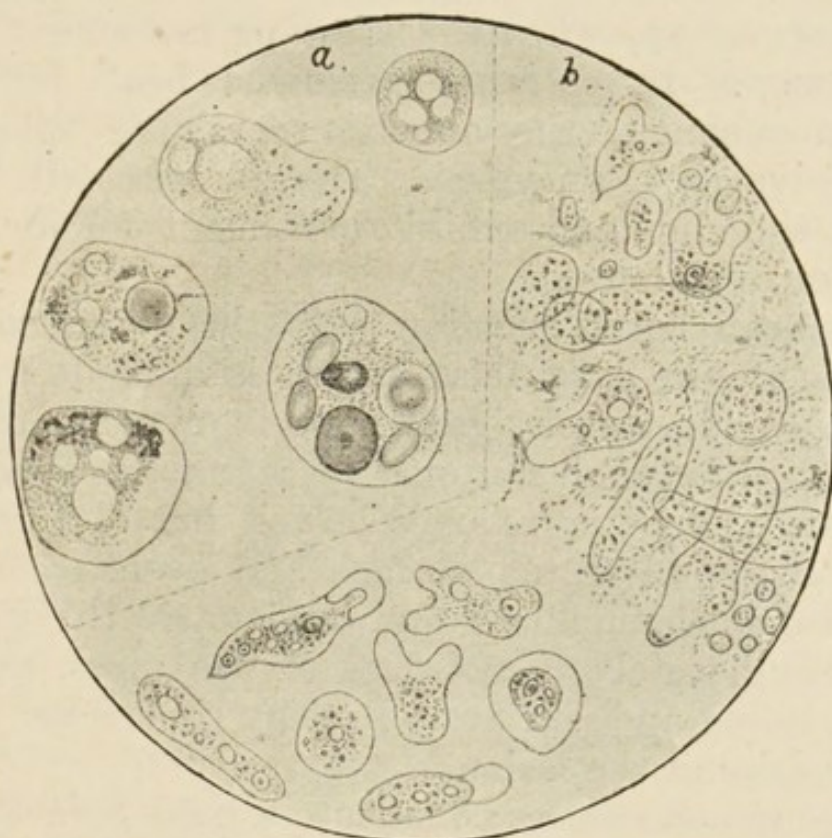


Fig. 42.—*Amœba coli*.

*a*, *Amœba dysentericæ* fixed and stained (Councilman); *b*, *A. dysentericæ* in stools.  
(After Lœsch, Virchow's "Archiv," Bd. 65.)

is a clear body, having a very faint, often hardly perceptible, greenish tinge, some three to five times the diameter of a red blood corpuscle, is recognised by its movements, which closely resemble those of the ordinary fresh-water amœba. It consists of a somewhat granular endosarc surrounded, when active, by a very clear ectosarc. A nucleus may sometimes be detected in the endosarc, as well as one or two non-contractile vacuoles, and, generally, various extraneous bodies such as blood corpuscles, bacteria, and so forth, which the amœba has included. As the



temperature of the slide approaches blood heat the amœba sends out and retracts rounded pseudopodia. These when first protruded consist of ectosarc only; but when the clear protrusion of ectosarc has been extended a little way the endosarc is seen suddenly to burst, as it were, and flow into it. If the temperature of the slide be allowed to fall below 75° Fahr. the parasite will assume a sharply-outlined spherical form and remain quite passive until the slide is again warmed up, when the creeping movement may be resumed. In certain specimens heat fails to induce movement, the amœba remaining spherical and passive as if encysted. The parasite will keep alive on the slide and exhibit movement for an hour or two, or even longer.

There can be no question as to the occurrence of this parasite in dysentery, but it is difficult to say what may be its exact significance in relation to the disease. It is found not only in the mucus lying on or thrown off by the inflamed bowel, but also in the sloughs on the ulcerated surface and even, according to Kartulis, Councilman and Lafleur, in the tissues constituting the base and sides of the ulcer, and in the still living and relatively healthy tissues for some distance around the lesion.

These circumstances constitute a good *primâ facie* reason for regarding the parasite as the cause of the disease. On the other hand, there are many cases of dysentery in which the amœba cannot be found; cases, too, of relapsing dysentery with clinical characters such as the American authors referred to describe as belonging to amœbic dysentery. I have searched the stools in some such cases many times; but, though familiar with the appearance of the parasite, in a proportion of instances—just as has happened to other observers—have failed to find it, and this in well-marked dysenteries, acute, relapsing, and chronic. Moreover, as is well known, the amœba, or an amœba hitherto indistinguishable from *Amœba dysentericæ*, is found in perfectly healthy stools, in cases in which



there is no reason whatever to suspect the existence of disease of the alimentary canal.

Gasser (*Arch. de Méd. Expér. et d'Anat. Path.* No. 2, March, 1893), in material supplied by 153 cases of dysentery—principally soldiers from Oran—although he found *Amœba coli* in 45 out of 109 acute cases, observed no relationship whatever between the number of amœbæ present in the stools and the severity of the disease. In 34 chronic cases he found the amœba in 13; and in 8 cases of chronic diarrhœa supervening on dysentery he found it in 5. In the stools of 20 healthy individuals from Oran he found the amœba in 4. He further states that he failed to find, or rather to recognise, the amœba in stained sections of dysenteric bowel. He concludes, therefore, against the amœba having anything more than an accidental relationship to the disease; that, in place of the amœba causing the dysentery, it is, if anything, the dysentery which causes or, rather, favours the amœba; in other words, that the amœba finds in dysenteric discharges a favourable medium for multiplying in.

Celli and Fiocca (*Hyg. Institut.: Roman. Univ.*, Feb. 19, 1895) studied the parasitology of dysentery in material from 62 typical cases—some from Italy, some from Egypt. They, too, conclude that *Amœba coli* is not the direct cause of dysentery, and for the following reasons:—(a) Epidemic, endemic, and sporadic dysentery may occur without amœbæ in the stools. (b) Dysentery may be induced by the ingestion, or by the injection into the bowel, of dysenteric fæces which have been ascertained by microscopic examination to be quite free from amœbæ. (c) Amœbæ are very common in countries in which dysentery occurs, hence their frequency in the stools of dysenterics in these countries; they are there accidentally. They further point out that *Amœba coli* is not the only amœba to be found in the intestine; *Amœba guttula*, *diaphana*, *vermicularis*, *oblonga* and *reticularis*, besides *proteus*, have all been found



there. *Amœba coli* has attracted attention, they consider, principally on account of its movements and size; whereas the other amœbæ, with perhaps quite as good a claim to be considered pathogenetic, inasmuch as they can be detected only in specially-prepared cultures, elude the eye, even of the sharpest observer, in stools prepared in the ordinary way.

*Bacteria*.—Celli and Fiocca believe that dysentery is caused by *Bacterium coli commune* which, they assert, is always present in the stools in this disease. Generally non-pathogenetic, this bacterium, they and others believe, acquires in certain circumstances very virulent properties. They say that in the bowel it is often associated with a bacillus like that of typhoid, as well as with streptococci; and they assert that introduced by the mouth, or injected by the rectum, any or all of these, particularly when in combination and in certain not understood circumstances, either singly or in combination, excite dysentery. They suppose that what they call *Bacterium coli dysenteriae* is but a variety of *Bacterium coli commune*, a variety brought about in some way by the presence of the other bacteria mentioned; that in consequence of the presence of these other bacteria *Bacterium coli commune* acquires the power of secreting a specific toxin, which power it retains on being transferred from one human being to another. The toxin, they say, can be precipitated by alcohol from cultures, and has the property of giving rise to dysentery when administered by the mouth, the anus, or hypodermically.

These results require confirmation, more particularly as the writers experimented on the cat, an animal very subject to dysentery at all times and on the introduction of almost any irritant.

Zancarol considers that dysentery and dysenteric liver abscess are caused by streptococci.

In the *Journal of Experimental Pathology* (1898) there is an account of a limited but very fatal epidemic in the United States in which *Bacillus*



*pyocyaneus* was found. Calmette and Maggiora have also encountered this bacterium in dysentery, as in infantile diarrhœa.

*Durham's micrococcus*.—Recently Durham (*Arch. of Neurology*, 1899, Path. Lab. London County Asylums, has described an exceedingly minute micrococcus—so minute that it passes through a Berkefeld filter—which he separated from the blood, liver, spleen, kidney and bile in seven cases of asylum dysentery. The investigation is as yet incomplete, but there are some grounds for supposing that this micro-organism may turn out to be the germ of the very fatal type of dysentery, euphemistically termed “colitis,” which is the scourge and disgrace of more than one of our English lunatic asylums. Assuming this to be the case, from the fact that the micrococcus occurs throughout the organs, the dysenteric lesion must be regarded as symptomatic of a general infection.

*Significance of the concurrence of dysentery, liver abscess and Amœba coli, in connection with absence of pus bacteria in liver abscess*.—The intimate connection of abscess of the liver with dysentery, and the presence of *Amœba coli* in the contents of a large proportion of liver abscesses, are now well-ascertained facts which, to my mind, constitute a powerful, though by no means a conclusive, argument for regarding the amœba as an ætiological element, if not the probable cause, in at least one form of dysentery. The fact that the amœba is found in liver pus proves that Councilman and Lafleur's statement about its presence in the tissues around the dysenteric ulcer is correct; for it is only by first passing into the tissues that such an organism could get into the portal circulation and so arrive at the liver.

There is yet another circumstance in connection with liver abscess which is not without a significance pointing in the same direction. In a large proportion of liver abscesses the usual pyogenetic bacteria are absent. This has been proved over and over again. Cultures made with such pus often remain sterile. It



is a very singular coincidence that it is just in those forms of suppurative hepatitis in which the usual pyogenetic organisms are absent that we find this other parasite present. Moreover, a liver abscess is not like ordinary abscesses; it has no proper abscess wall. Liver pus is not like pus elsewhere; it contains proportionately very few pus corpuscles; but it contains much tissue *débris*, many blood cells, and much granular matter. As an abscess, it is altogether peculiar. A peculiar effect suggests a peculiar cause.

Anyone who has watched the movements of *Amæba coli* on the warm stage can readily understand how such an organism might break down and separate the anatomical elements of an organ like the liver, and so cause a softening—a cavity resembling an abscess. It feeds on the tissues, in fact, and to grow and multiply it must disintegrate their structures and consume their cells. I shall point out elsewhere that *Amæba coli* occurs much more frequently in liver abscess than is generally supposed; thereby strengthening the argument for regarding this parasite as being in causal relationship to liver abscess and, therefore, *pro tanto* to dysentery.

*The germ of dysentery water-borne.*—Notwithstanding the vast amount of speculation, and perhaps somewhat limited amount of work, expended in endeavouring to ascertain what the germ or germs of dysentery may be, it cannot be said that as yet we are even near the complete solution of the problem. One thing, however, is fairly well ascertained, and that is that these germs, whatever they may be, are often introduced by means of drinking water. The statistically-ascertained improvement in the public health in respect of dysentery in such large towns as Calcutta and Madras, following so closely on the introduction of improved water supplies, and the improvement in the health of the British Navy following the introduction of regulations requiring that, in all places in which the water supply is not above suspicion, the drinking water served out to the



men shall be distilled, constitute powerful testimony in favour of regarding dysentery as a water-borne disease. This conclusion receives additional support from the occurrence of epidemics of dysentery in the crews of ships which have watered at polluted sources; as well as from the occurrence of similar epidemics in large institutions in which, by some accident, surface water has leaked into the water supply. This does not exclude the possibility of other sources of infection, as privies, dust, flies, and vessels or instruments used by dysenterics; but the water theory probably covers the vast majority of dysentery epidemics, as well as of sporadic cases.

*Predisposing and exciting causes.*—It seems not improbable that, in conditions of sound health, the pathogenetic organisms of dysentery may exist in and pass through the alimentary canal without attacking the tissues and giving rise to disease. So long as the mucous surface is sound and vigorous, it probably has the power of protecting itself against many such organisms. It is very probably the same in this respect with the dysentery germ or germs as with the cholera vibrio. It is probable that it is only on the establishment of some condition of lowered vitality, such as may be induced by catarrhal troubles, chill (a powerful excitant of dysentery), irritating food, bad food, constipation, malaria, scurvy, starvation, and so forth—all well-recognised exciting causes—that the dysentery germ can overpower the natural protective agencies and light up the specific lesions. It is a well-known fact that it is in such circumstances that dysentery is most apt to declare itself. Hence the importance of avoiding these things in tropical climates, more especially in the presence of a bad water supply or of an epidemic. It seems probable that the well-known liability of lunatics to dysentery is associated with that lowering of the resistive powers which is so pronounced a feature in many forms of insanity.

*Influence of age, sex, and occupation.*—All ages



are subject to dysentery, children especially. Occupation has no special influence. Both sexes are liable. Pregnancy, miscarriage, and the puerperal state are grave complications.

**Diagnosis.** — Provided reasonable care be exercised, diagnosis, especially in acute cases, is usually easy. In chronic cases the question of hæmorrhoids, polypus, stricture, tubercle, malignant and specific disease, proctitis, abscess about the rectum, and tumour in the bowel, may require to be considered. Diagnosis must never be taken for granted. In every case stools must be inspected; and in every case in which there is any probability of rectal disease, some of the forms of digital or specular examination must be made. In African cases the possibility of bilharzia disease of the rectum must be borne in mind, and a microscopical examination made of the urinary sediments and of the fæces with a view to the detection of any ova of bilharzia which may be present. In children especially, intussusception may occur independently, or as a complication, of dysentery; the possibility of this must not be overlooked. Chronic dysentery is often diagnosed chronic diarrhœa. This error will be avoided by careful inquiry into the early history of the case, the detection of mucus or of blood corpuscles in the stools, and the occurrence of tenesmus. Careful inquiry for any history there may be of occasional exacerbations in which straining, and blood and mucus in the stools, are more or less prominent features, will often lead to a correct diagnosis.

**Treatment.** — The treatment of dysentery requires much judgment and very careful supervision. In former days it was the fashion to bleed repeatedly and to a large amount, and, at the same time, to administer large doses of calomel—amounting in the aggregate to ounces—and opium. It is not to be wondered at, therefore, that in those days the mortality was excessive.

Nowadays better and more rational methods



prevail. There is less confidence in drugs, more in the self-recuperating powers of the body. A most important part of our modern plans has for its object to afford the diseased organs favourable conditions for repair; not so much to endeavour to heal them, as to give them the opportunity of healing themselves.

If called on to treat a case of what appears to be dysentery, our first duty is to assure ourselves that diagnosis is correct. We must inspect the stools, and, until the case is quite recovered, we must inspect them daily or frequently. Their condition is the surest guide in the management of this disease. From them we can form a fairly accurate idea of what is going on in the bowel; and from them we can judge of the effects of diet and of drugs.

*Importance of rest.*—It is with an inflamed bowel as with an inflamed joint; the first and all-important indication to fulfil is, after removing the causes of irritation, to place the part at rest. Could these two indications, the removal of the cause of irritation and the repose of the organ affected, be fulfilled thoroughly, cure would at once set in. Unfortunately, the affected surface being so inaccessible, we cannot always remove the irritant in the case of dysentery, nor can we place the parts involved at absolute rest. We can, however, partially meet these indications—quite sufficiently, as a rule, to insure recovery.

The diagnosis of dysentery established, the patient should at once be sent to bed. This in itself has a marked influence on the bowel. Repose must be as nearly complete as possible. The patient must not be allowed to get out of bed; when he has a call to stool he must use the bed-pan. To a certain extent this enforcement of rest is comparable to the placing of an inflamed leg in a splint and elevating it. It insures a certain amount of mechanical rest, and relieves the blood-vessels of the inflamed part of a certain amount of hydrostatic pressure.

*Food in acute dysentery.*—The indication of rest



we further endeavour to meet by stopping all solid food. Were it possible, it would be well to stop all food. This, of course, is impossible, and so we make a compromise between the therapeutical indication and physiological necessity by reducing the diet to a minimum and selecting only such foods as, while possessing considerable nutritive value, yield but a small faecal residue. The tongue is a fair index to the sort of food most likely to suit the case. When this organ is coated, indicating gastric catarrh, small quantities of thin chicken soup, egg albumin, thin barley- or rice-water, are better borne than milk; when the tongue is or has become clean, then milk, pure, diluted with barley- or rice-water or peptonised, is the best diet. Alcohol is generally contra-indicated, but in cases of collapse small feeds of white wine whey may be given with advantage. These foods should be taken in small quantities at a time, a little every hour or two. They must be given neither hot nor cold, as food when either too hot or too cold is apt to excite peristalsis and to cause colic and straining.

*Malaria and scorbutus.*—If upon inquiry it is found that there is reason to suspect either a malarial or a scorbutic element in the case, treatment must be modified accordingly. Careful practitioners never forget to ascertain if these important complicating elements are present or not. If malaria be suspected, it would be well to make a careful microscopic examination of the blood for the plasmodium; if the parasite is found, then quinine must be freely administered either by the mouth or, if the bowels are very irritable, by intramuscular injection. The presence of scorbutus, of course, indicates fruit juices and fresh unboiled milk, in addition to the usual treatment for dysentery.

*Drug treatment.*—A dose of castor oil and laudanum is a good preliminary in the treatment of dysentery; indeed, many cases are promptly checked thereby, and require no further treatment beyond rest and dieting for a day or two.



The drugs which have proved of most service in the treatment of severe dysentery are ipecacuanha, one or other of the aperient sulphates either of magnesia or of soda, opium, and calomel. It is difficult to prognosticate in any given case whether ipecacuanha is likely to prove the more effective drug, or whether the sulphates, or calomel will answer better. In every case one or the other ought to be exhibited at once; one failing after a fair trial, the other, unless manifestly contra-indicated, should get a chance.

*Ipecacuanha.*—In English practice ipecacuanha is generally the first to be tried. It must be given on an empty stomach. The best plan is to interdict all food for three hours; then to give fifteen or twenty drops of laudanum in a tablespoonful of water and, at the same time, to apply a mustard poultice to the epigastrium. About twenty minutes later, when the patient is coming under the influence of the laudanum, twenty to thirty—some give as much as sixty—grains of ipecacuanha in pill, bolus, keratine capsule, or in suspension in about half a wineglassful of water, are administered. With a view to prevent vomiting, the patient is directed to lie flat on his back, using a low pillow, and not to eat, drink, speak, or move for at least four hours. Probably he will fall asleep. Should he feel nauseated, he must resist the desire to vomit as much as possible. With the same object in view, when saliva begins to collect in the mouth, as it is apt to do in such circumstances, it must not be swallowed; on a slight sign from the patient the nurse should remove the accumulating saliva with a handkerchief. If much saliva be swallowed, it is sure to provoke vomiting. In some instances these precautions suffice to avert emesis. Should, however, the ipecacuanha be brought up within an hour of its being swallowed, the dose had better be repeated so soon as the nausea has subsided, the same precautions against vomiting being observed.

After three or four hours, and when all feeling of



nausea has subsided, small quantities of food may be given, and frequent and fractional feeding persisted in for six or eight hours, or until the following day, when the dose of ipecacuanha must be repeated. In many instances one or two such doses abort the dysentery, and the acute symptoms rapidly subside. It may be necessary to go on with the ipecacuanha once or twice a day for three or four days. It is a good practice to reduce the ipecacuanha by gr. v. every day. If the drug is doing good, a copious feculent pultaceous stool will be passed. Ipecacuanha *sine emetinâ* may be tried; generally speaking, however, it is unsatisfactory.

*Aperient sulphates.*—Should, however, ipecacuanha appear to be doing no good, sodium sulphate—which is less irritating than magnesium sulphate—may be tried; indeed, by some this line of treatment is preferred from the outset. These salts have the advantage over ipecacuanha of not causing nausea, and they are often quite as successful. They may be given in drachm doses in a little hot water, or in cinnamon water, every quarter of an hour until a purgative effect is produced, or they may be given in a large dose—half an ounce—to begin with, followed up by smaller doses if necessary. The purgative effect should be obtained once or twice daily, and for two or three days at least. The lessening of tenesmus and the production of copious, watery, feculent stools is the test of the successful action of the sulphates.

*Calomel.*—Should these means fail to control the disease, and should the bloody mucoid stools persist, and the griping and tenesmus continue, recourse may be had to calomel in combination with opium and ipecacuanha—a grain of each every five or six hours, the effect being watched and salivation avoided. Some give calomel from the outset as a routine treatment in dysentery, either in five-grain doses every six or eight hours, or in fractional doses every hour. This method is most in vogue in Germany, and is probably best suited for the croupous forms of the



disease. In France and the United States the sulphates are most in vogue; while British physicians, relying on Indian experience, place most confidence in ipecacuanha.

*Bismuth and opium.*—As a result of either line of treatment, the dysenteric symptoms may subside rapidly—perhaps entirely. Sometimes, although the stools become feculent, and the mucus and blood disappear, a sort of diarrhœa remains. This generally quickly yields to a salicylate of bismuth (grs. x–xx) and morphia (gr.  $\frac{1}{12}$ ) mixture.

*Other drugs.*—*Simaruba* (*Ailanthus glandulosa*) sometimes succeeds where other measures have failed. It is a drug which, though nowadays neglected in Europe, is still much used in the East by so-called “dysentery doctors.” It seems to be specially serviceable when the case has become subacute or chronic. To be effective, it requires to be given in much larger doses than is directed in the Pharmacopœias. One method of preparation I have seen employed is as follows:—Using an earthenware pot, boil half an ounce of simaruba in a pint and a half of water for three hours, and then strain it. Let the patient remain in bed and drink this decoction on an empty stomach every second morning for four times. Food must consist of milk and farinaceous stuffs. Another method is to boil an ounce of simaruba in twelve ounces of water until it is reduced to seven drachms; to this a drachm of spirit is added. This preparation, also, must be made in an earthenware or in an enamelled dish. For an adult this is a suitable dose; a child may take a fourth part. It should be taken every night for four nights.\*

\* The following is the formula of a preparation of simaruba much used in Shanghai, and there known as “Rhein’s Specific Remedy for Diarrhœa and Dysentery.” I understand that the formula was purchased by the Shanghai municipality for a considerable sum of money, so highly was it thought of by the European community of that city. Simaruba bark, three ounces; Chinese cinnamon, one ounce; boil in three quarts of water and allow it to evaporate down to one pint. When cool, strain into a



*Monsonia ovata*.—Dr. John Maberly (*Lancet*, February 6th, 13th, 1897) reports very favourably on *Monsonia ovata*—a South African plant—in dysentery. He uses a tincture of two and a half ounces of the dried plant to the pint of rectified spirit. It gave in his hands wonderful results, even in chronic as well as in acute cases which had resisted the ordinary remedies.

*Cinnamon*, pomegranate, mangosteen rind, and other aromatics and astringents sometimes do good in chronic dysentery.

I can offer no explanation of the action of any of these drugs in dysentery. We use them quite empirically. Ipecacuanha and simaruba really seem to have some sort of specific action on the disease or on its cause, but in what way it is impossible to indicate. Strange to say, ipecacuanha, which has been found so serviceable in India, Africa, the Brazils, and elsewhere, has a very poor reputation as an anti-dysenteric in the United States (Osler); it has also signally failed in some English epidemics (Clouston); facts pointing to specific differences in the dysenteries of different countries.

*Relief of pain*.—During the attack the patient may suffer much from griping and tenesmus. These are generally relieved by hot fomentations, turpentine stupes, or by a hot bath. An excellent application is the Japanese hot-box or hand-warmer—a small tin box containing a slowly-burning cartridge of powdered charcoal. These hot-boxes, or an imitation under the name of “istra,” can now be procured in England. Three or four of them may be roughly sewn into a piece of flannel and laid on the abdomen. This application has the advantage of being very light, of not wetting the clothes, and of keeping warm for many hours. Tenesmus and dysuria are best relieved by morphia hypodermically ;

brandy bottle, add three tablespoonfuls of good brandy, and fill up by pouring cold water over the bark in the strainer till the bottle is full. Dose : A wineglassful three times a day.



or by an enema of a wineglassful of thin starch containing forty or fifty drops of laudanum; or by suppositories of morphia and cocaine. Washing out the rectum with a pint of very hot water, with or without boracic acid, is sometimes effectual in removing for a time, or, at all events, of mitigating, the incessant desire to go to stool and to strain. Two drachms of bismuth with laudanum—thirty minims, and thin starch—two ounces, is also a good sedative enema (Davidson).

Treatment should be energetic and thorough at the outset of dysentery. Every effort must be made to prevent it from becoming chronic, as in this stage the disease is very difficult to treat successfully, and is prone to terminate in permanent invalidism.

**Treatment of chronic dysentery.**—As a matter of routine my personal experience leads me to recommend in all cases of chronic dysentery a short preliminary course of ipecacuanha—30, 25, 20, 15, 10 and 5 grains on successive evenings, with, of course, rest and a milk diet. Thereafter I generally prescribe a minute dose of castor oil, with or without opium, three times a day, regulating the dose according to effects. These measures failing, I have recourse to some of the following.

*Nitrate of silver injections.*—The most effective treatment of certain types of chronic dysentery is undoubtedly massive injections of large quantities of nitrate of silver solution of a strength of from half a grain to one grain to the ounce of distilled water. There is a right and there is a wrong way of using this splendid remedy. If employed in the wrong way it is useless, perhaps worse than useless. It must never be practised when acute symptoms are present. These must first be got rid of by ipecacuanha, by the sulphates, by calomel, by castor oil, and by rest and diet. The patient should be prepared for a week at least in this way. Then the bowel is to be cleared by a minute dose of castor oil, followed by a large enema of three or four pints of warm water to which two or



three teaspoonfuls of carbonate of soda have been added. The whole of this injection having escaped, and when the bowel is quite empty, two to three pints of the nitrate of silver solution are thrown in by means of a long tube passed slowly and carefully into the bowel as far as it will go without kinking. It is better to fill the bowel by gravitation, using a funnel and tube, rather than by a syringe. The patient should be encouraged to retain the injection as long as he can, to lie flat on his belly, and to roll from side to side so as to secure that the injection comes in contact with every portion of the large intestine. If it seems to be doing good, this injection may be used every few days and kept up for some time. Improvement in suitable cases generally sets in at once. The nitrate must not be persevered with if it causes any marked irritation or increase of symptoms.

In the mild chronic dysenteries which are seen in Great Britain, and which originally had been contracted in the tropics, and also in the more acute relapses of tropical dysenteries, ipecacuanha should always be tried.

*Other methods of treating chronic dysentery* which succeed at times are the systematic washing out of the bowel daily with warm boracic water, with linseed infusion, with milk (a very valuable remedy), with mangosteen rind decoctions, with weak solutions of alum, sulphate of copper, or tannin; systematic daily dosing with small quantities of castor oil, with or without opium—one to two drachms of castor oil with four to ten drops of laudanum three times a day (Hillier); ten to twenty drops of turpentine three times a day; the daily consumption of some preparation of fresh bael fruit; a course of Carlsbad, of Kissingen, or of Vichy water; a diet of grapes only, of milk only, or of beef only; cold water compresses to the abdomen.

*Post-dysenteric constipation.*—After the subsidence of a dysentery constipation and balling of the



stools is by no means an uncommon event. This complication is best prevented, or met, by enemata of warm water to which a little salt has been added—a teaspoonful to the pint—or, if the bowel is very irritable, of linseed tea or of thin rice-water. An occasional dose of castor oil, half to one teaspoonful, once or twice a week or oftener, and kept up so long as the motions are not quite healthy, is an excellent routine practice; its action may be supplemented by a glycerine suppository. A course of Carlsbad waters or salts often gives excellent results.

*Food and clothing.*—In chronic dysentery much attention should be given to clothing and food. The former should be very warm. Dysenterics ought never to feel cold. Cold bathing is very dangerous for them; so are alcoholic drinks of all sorts. Food should be simple in the extreme. Beef, mutton, cheese, bread, coarse fruit or coarse vegetables, nuts, pickles, and such-like are, as a rule, not well borne. Fruit and fine, well-cooked vegetables in moderation are necessary and often beneficial. In obstinate chronic dysentery it is often a good thing to change the diet from slops to solids, from a meagre to a more liberal one. Wonderful results are sometimes got from a sea voyage.

*Hepatitis.*—During the whole course of an attack of dysentery, and for months thereafter, the condition of the liver must receive the most careful attention. We may not be able to prevent abscess of this organ; but if pain and swelling seem to suggest it as threatening we can try by means of saline aperients, ipecacuanha, rest, low diet, fomentations, dry cupping, and such-like measures to avert what, to say the least, is a very grave complication.

**Prophylaxis.**—The prophylaxis of dysentery consists principally in securing a pure water supply, in avoiding unwholesome food, in temperance, in clothing warmly and avoiding chill, in correcting constipation and stopping diarrhoea.



## CHAPTER XXI.

## EPIDEMIC GANGRENOUS RECTITIS.

So far as known, this very fatal disease seems to be confined to the natives of the low-lying, hot, damp regions in the north of South America, and, perhaps, to the natives of Fiji and other islands of the South Pacific. In Guiana it is known as "Caribi" or "Indian sickness," in Venezuela as "Bicho" or "El Becho." It is said to be very contagious, and appears to be a form of rapidly-spreading phagedæna, which starts from the neighbourhood of the anus. Occasionally it may begin higher up—in the colon. In the latter case it is called the "high" form; in the former the "low" or rectal form. Animals, as well as men, are attacked.

I am indebted to Dr. Ackers of Curaçoa, formerly of Venezuela, for the following information on the subject:—"I have only seen cases of the disease in animals, principally fowls, though also in dogs and calves; but I have been told by medical men, who themselves attended the cases, of its occurrence in children of the poorer classes. The disease commences by an itching in the anus, which produces an inclination to frequent defæcation. This stage continues for a few days, when a severe inflammation of the mucous membrane of the rectum sets in, giving rise to symptoms of acute dysentery. There are frequent stools of a mucous, bloody substance, accompanied sometimes by bile or excrement; at the same time, there is much straining, considerable elevation of temperature, anorexia, and great thirst. At this period, if the animal or child is not attended to, the above symptoms become more alarming; a constant flow of a slimy, fœtid, semi-liquid substance streaked with blood appears. Sometimes the discharge is of a



bright green colour, such as might be obtained by crushing tender stalks of grass. When this occurs the patients refuse all food, but the thirst is still intense. The affected animal remains standing in one place, with drooping head, as if overcome by fever and weakness. For a day or so it continues like this, until at last, unwilling to move, eat, or even drink, it suddenly dies in convulsions. Sometimes, however, this stage is not fatal, but is followed by prolapsus of the rectum, which is in a very inflamed state and ulcerated; rapidly gangrene sets in and is quickly fatal. The Venezuelan peasants state that this disease arises in children from chewing the green tender stalks of unripe maize, of which they are very fond on account of its sweetness. In children prolapsus of the rectum is very frequent; in fatal cases they may die, like the animals, in convulsions, though in children convulsions are not necessarily a fatal symptom. The treatment employed by the natives for animals consists in an enema of strong lemon juice, mixed with a weak dilution of white rum and water (aguardiente), two or three times a day; at the same time, the anus is freely dusted with wood ashes, some of which are also introduced into the rectum. A purgative of oil is generally administered also. In some cases I have known this treatment proves very successful. On the other hand, when the disease is far advanced, or when the ulceration of the bowel appears at an early date, it seems to be of little or no avail. Another treatment employed, especially for children, consists in an enema of the juice obtained by crushing the stalks and leaves of *Spigelia anthelmintica* (pasote). A decoction of the same herb is also given by the mouth three or four times a day. This decoction is very frequently administered by the peasants as an anthelmintic. In cases of children suffering from 'bicho,' one of the quarters of a lemon is roasted and introduced into the rectum as a suppository once or twice a day, and I have heard that it gives very satisfactory results."



## CHAPTER XXII.

## HILL DIARRHŒA.

**Definition.**—A form of morning diarrhœa accompanied by flatulent dyspepsia and the passage of copious, liquid, pale, frothy stools. It occurs principally in Europeans on their visiting the hills after residing for some time in the hot lowlands of tropical countries.

**Geographical and seasonal distribution.**—Crombie, who gives an excellent account of this disease (*Ind. Med. Gaz.*, Dec., 1880; May, 1892), points out that a similar affection may show itself in the highlands of Europe as well as in those of India. It is said also to occur in corresponding circumstances in South Africa. There is no reason, therefore, to suppose that hill diarrhœa is special to India, although, owing to the large European population frequenting the hill sanatoria in that country, it has been particularly noticed there. An elevation of 6,000 feet or over, if combined with an atmosphere saturated with watery vapour, is particularly favourable to its development. In India it is found to begin and end with the rains, during which, in certain years and places, it is apt to assume almost epidemic characters. Thus, during the wet season of 1880, in Simla an epidemic of hill diarrhœa affected from 50 to 75 per cent. of the population, three-fourths of the cases happening within a week of each other. In some years hill diarrhœa is less prevalent than in others; but at the proper season few of the various hill sanatoria of India are without examples.

**Symptoms.**—Without very obvious cause the patient, who in other respects may be in good health,



soon after arrival at a hill sanitarium becomes subject to a daily recurring diarrhœa, the looseness coming on regularly every morning some time between 3 and 5 a.m. The calls to stool are apt to be sudden and imperative. The motions passed are remarkably copious; very watery in some instances, pasty in others. They are pale, frothy, and like recently stirred whitewash, so devoid are they of biliary colouring matter. Their passage is attended with little or no pain, often with a sense of relief. From one to half a dozen, or more, such stools may be voided in the morning before 11 a.m. After that hour, at all events in ordinary cases, the diarrhœa is in abeyance for the rest of the day, and the patient may then go about his duties or pleasures without fear of inconvenience.

The distinctive features of this form of diarrhœa are, therefore, the regularity of its recurrence every morning and its cessation after a certain hour in the forenoon; the absence of bile in the stools; and the attendant flatulence. The abdomen is sometimes blown out like a drum, the patient being conscious of unpleasant borborygmi associated with a feeling as of some boiling or chemical operation proceeding in his inside. Occasionally cases are met with in which the stools are very pale, but in which there is no diarrhœa.

Under treatment, or spontaneously, or, according to Crombie, on acclimatisation occurring, after some days or weeks the diarrhœa may subside. In other instances it persists in defiance of treatment until the return of the patient to the warm plains, when it at once spontaneously subsides. Crombie instances a case in which the patient was regularly attacked with hill diarrhœa whenever he visited Simla—twelve occasions—recovery invariably taking place on his return to the plains. If the looseness is both considerable and protracted, there necessarily ensue debility, wasting, and anæmia, and the disease may lapse into confirmed sprue—an affection having, apparently, close affinities with hill diarrhœa.



**Ætiology and pathology.**—It is difficult to say what may be the precise factors determining this disease. The low barometric pressure associated with great elevation above the sea-level, may be a favouring circumstance. Damp seems to be indicated by the fact that the disease occurs principally during the rains. Chill after exposure to the high temperature of the plains has possibly an important share. Manifestly there is a suspension of the functions of the liver and, considering the dyspepsia and looseness, most probably of those of the pancreas and of the other glandular structures subserving digestion. Hill diarrhœa is certainly something more than an intestinal catarrh. As Crombie points out, it is more of the nature of dyspepsia. There are no adequate grounds for connecting it with either the water or the food supply. The question of micro-organisms has, apparently, not been studied.

**Treatment.**—The treatment recommended by Crombie, and endorsed by other medical men of experience in India, consists in a pure milk diet, rest, warm clothing, a teaspoonful of liquor hydrargyri perchloridi in water about fifteen minutes after food, and twelve grains of pepsine, or a corresponding quantity of lactopeptine or ingluvin, two hours later. If, in spite of treatment, the disease persists, the patient must return to the low country.



## CHAPTER XXIII.

## SPRUE (PSILOSIS).

**Definition.**—By the term “sprue” is understood a peculiar and very dangerous form of chronic catarrhal inflammation of the whole or part of the mucous membrane of the alimentary canal, generally associated with suppression of the chologenic function of the liver and, probably, of that of the other glandular organs subserving digestion. It is frequently met with in tropical countries, particularly in European residents. The same disease may develop for the first time in temperate climates ; only, however, in individuals who have previously resided in the tropics or subtropics. Sprue is characterised by irregularly alternating periods of exacerbation and of comparative quiescence ; by an inflamed, bare, and eroded condition of the mucous membrane of the tongue and mouth ; by flatulent dyspepsia ; by pale, copious and generally loose, frothy, fermenting stools ; by wasting and anæmia ; and by a tendency to relapse. It may occur as a primary disease, or it may supervene on other affections of the bowels. It is very slow in its progress ; and, unless properly treated, tends to terminate in atrophy of the intestinal mucosa, which usually, sooner or later, proves fatal.

**Nomenclature.**—Sprue has been more or less recognised by writers on tropical medicine for many years. It has been called “tropical diarrhœa,” “diarrhœa alba,” “aphthæ tropicæ,” “Ceylon sore mouth,” “psilosis linguæ” (Thin), besides a variety of other names. The term “sprue” is an adaptation from the Dutch word “spruw” in use in Java, where the disease is very common.

**Geographical distribution.**—It is probable that sprue, although more common in certain warm countries than in others, is found throughout the



greater part of the tropical and many parts of the subtropical world. It is especially common in South China, Manila, Cochin China, Java, the Straits Settlements, Ceylon, India, tropical Africa, and the West Indies (Hillary). Apparently it is most prevalent in those countries in which high temperature is combined with a moist atmosphere. It is common, however, in certain subtropical countries, as North China and, occasionally, even in Japan; countries where, although the summer is hot and damp, the winter is dry and bracing.

**Ætiology.**—Prolonged residence in the endemic area is perhaps the most potent predisposing influence; cases, however, do occur in which the disease shows itself after a residence of one or two years only. Exhausting diseases, particularly those involving the alimentary canal, as dysentery, bill diarrrhœa, morning diarrrhœa, hæmorrhoids and fistula, are apt to terminate in sprue. Frequent childbearing, miscarriages, uterine hæmorrhages, exhausting discharges, and prolonged lactation also predispose to the disease; so may syphilis, courses of mercury or of iodide of potassium, bad food, bad water, anxiety, chills, and so forth—in fact, any depressing influence, particularly if it is combined with intestinal irritation. Malaria does not seem to be specially responsible. At one time *Anguillula stercoralis* (*Rhabdonema intestinale*), a parasite very common in the stools of cases of chronic intestinal flux, particularly in Cochin China (p. 595), was put forward as the cause of the chronic entero-colitis (for the most part sprue) of that country. Subsequent investigations have disproved this. Like the anguillula, *Amœba coli* may be present in the stools in these cases; but, similarly, it is in no way responsible for the disease. Neither has any bacterium which can be regarded with any degree of certainty as special to sprue been separated from the characteristic stools. In searching for the fundamental cause of this affection, the latency which the disease occasionally exhibits, and the fact that the first symptoms may



not appear until months or even years have elapsed since the patient quitted the tropics, must be kept in view.

**Symptoms.** — *Variability.* — There is infinite variety in the combination and in the severity of the various symptoms of sprue, as well as in the rate of progress of the disease. In some instances it may be almost a subacute process running its course in a year or two ; in others, again, it may drag on intermittingly for ten or fifteen years. Much depends in this respect on the circumstances, the character, the care, the treatment, and the intelligence of the patient.

*General symptoms in a typical case.* — In an ordinary fully developed case the patient—who is generally dark or muddy in complexion and much emaciated—complains of three principal symptoms : soreness of the mouth, dyspeptic distension of the abdomen, looseness of the bowels ; the last being particularly urgent during the morning and earlier part of the forenoon. The patient may also complain of feeling physically weak, of loss of memory, and of inability to take exercise or to apply his mind. His friends will probably volunteer the information that his temper is irritable and unreasonable.

*Mouth lesions.* — If the mouth is examined, the soreness will be found to depend on a variety of lesions of the mucous membrane, which, though painful, seem to be of a very superficial character. These lesions vary considerably in intensity from day to day. During an exacerbation the tongue looks red and angry ; superficial erosions, patches of congestion, and perhaps minute vesicles appear on its surface, particularly about the edges and tip. Sometimes, from the folding consequent on swelling of the mucous membrane, the sides of the organ have the appearance of being fissured. The filiform papillæ cannot be made out, although here and there the fungiform papillæ may stand up, pink and swollen. If the patient be made to turn up the tip of the tongue, very likely red patches of superficial erosion, some-



times covered with an aphthous-looking pellicle, may be seen on either side of the frænum. On everting the lips, similar patches and erosions are visible ; and if the cheek be separated from the teeth the same may be seen on the buccal mucous membrane. Occasionally the palate is similarly affected ; very often in this situation the mucous follicles are enlarged, shotty, and prominent. The gullet and uvula may also be raw and sore.

In consequence of the irritation caused by these superficial and exceedingly sensitive lesions, the mouth tends to fill with a watery saliva which may dribble from the corners. If the patient attempts to take any sapid food, strong wine, or anything but the very blandest diet, the pain and burning in the mouth are intolerable ; so much so that, although perhaps ravenously hungry, he shirks eating. Not infrequently swallowing is accompanied and followed by a feeling of soreness and burning under the sternum ; suggesting that the gullet, like the tongue, is also in an irritated, raw, and tender condition. During exacerbations of the disease the condition of the mouth becomes greatly aggravated. Although during the temporary and occasional improvements it becomes much less painful, even then salt, spices, strong wines, and all kinds of sapid foods sting unpleasantly ; and the tongue, particularly along its centre, is seen to be bare and polished as if brushed over with a coating of varnish. At all times the tongue is abnormally clean and devoid of fur ; during the exacerbations it is swollen, but during the remissions, and when not inflamed, it is small, pointed, and, owing to the anæmic condition of the patient, yellowish like a piece of cartilage.

*Dyspepsia.*—Dyspepsia is usually much complained of, the feelings of weight, oppression, and gaseous distension after eating being sometimes excessive. Very likely the abdomen swells out like a drum, and unpleasant borborygmi roll through the bowel. Occasionally, though not often, there may be vomiting,



the vomiting sometimes being sudden and not always accompanied by feelings of nausea.

*Diarrhœa.*—The diarrhœa associated with sprue is of two kinds ; one chronic and habitual, the other more acute and, in the early stages, evanescent. The former is characterised by one or more daily discharges of a copious, pale, greyish, pasty, fermenting, mawkish, evil-smelling material. The latter is of a watery character, also pale and fermenting, the dejecta perhaps containing undigested food. In these latter circumstances the diarrhœa usually brings with it considerable relief to the dyspeptic distension, at all events for a time. When the mouth is inflamed the diarrhœa is usually more active. The stools during periods of quiescence may be confined to one or two in the early morning or forenoon ; during the later part of the day the patient is not disturbed. The stools, however, even in this quiescent phase, are always extraordinarily copious ; patients remark their phenomenal abundance. They are passed almost, or altogether, without pain. Not infrequently during exacerbations there may be a tender excoriated condition of the anus, and sometimes, in women, a similar condition of the vagina. Thin states that the stools in sprue are acid.

*Types, history, course, and termination. Protopathic sprue.*—There is a striking uniformity in the history of most cases of sprue. On inquiry, we shall probably learn that the patient has been suffering for months, or perhaps years, from irregularity of the bowels. This, we may be told, began soon after arrival in the tropics as a bilious morning diarrhœa. For a long time this morning diarrhœa went on, without interfering in any way with the general health. Later the mouth, now and again, became tender, little blisters or excoriations appearing for a day or two at a time about the tip of the tongue or inside the lips. These sore spots would come and go. Perhaps, from time to time, exacerbations of the mouth symptoms would be associated with a little



increase of diarrhœa. Gradually the stools lost their bilious character and became pale and frothy; dyspeptic symptoms, particularly distension after meals, now appeared. As time went on, these symptoms would recur more frequently and in a more pronounced form, following, almost inevitably, any little imprudence as regards food or exposure. The general condition now began to deteriorate; emaciation, languor, lassitude, and inability to get through the day's work satisfactorily, becoming more pronounced each summer until, finally, a condition of permanent invalidism was established. Should the disease continue to progress, the emaciation advances slowly but surely. Diarrhœa may be almost constant, and now no longer confined to the morning hours; the complexion becomes dark, sometimes very dark; the appetite, sometimes in abeyance, is more frequently ravenous; unusual indulgence in food being followed by increased discomfort, temporarily relieved by smart diarrhœa. Finally the patient is confined to the house, perhaps to bed. The feet become œdematous, and the integuments hang like an ill-fitting garment, the details of the bony anatomy showing distinctly through the dry, scurfy, earthy skin. Finally, the patient dies in a semi-choleraic attack; or from inanition; or from some intercurrent disease. Such is the history of an ordinary, mismanaged case of sprue.

*Sprue secondary to dysentery.*—When the disease has supervened on dysentery, we shall learn that the motions characteristic of the original dysenteric attack gradually changed in character; from being scanty, mucoid, bloody, and accompanied with pain and tenesmus, they became diarrhœic, pale, frothy, their discharge being followed by a feeling of relief rather than of pain. The mouth at the same time became sore, exhibiting the characters already described. Gradually a condition of confirmed sprue was established, which ultimately, unless properly treated, will almost certainly prove fatal.

*Sprue secondary to acute entero-colitis.*—Another



type of case commences as an acute entero-colitis with sudden and profuse colicky diarrhœa, vomiting perhaps, and a certain amount of fever. The acute symptoms do not subside completely, but gradually have the typical symptoms of sprue grafted on to those of an acute intestinal catarrh.

*Incomplete sprue. (a) Gastric cases.*—Occasionally we meet with cases of confirmed sprue in which, at first, the morbid process, judging from the existing clinical symptoms and subsequent history, is confined to a limited part of the alimentary canal. Thus we sometimes get sprue without diarrhœa, the principal symptoms being sore mouth, dyspeptic distension, pale, copious but solid stools, and wasting.

*(b) Intestinal cases.*—On the other hand, we may get cases in which the mouth is not ulcerated, and in which there is little or no distension or dyspepsia, but in which the stools are liquid, copious, pale, and frothy. Sometimes a patient may have suffered at an earlier period, or on a former occasion, from the first type of the disease, who, later, acquires the diarrhœic form; and *vice versâ*.

*(c) Sprue without diarrhœa.*—It sometimes happens that under treatment the sore mouth, the dyspepsia, and the diarrhœa completely subside; nevertheless the wasting continues, the stools remaining phenomenally copious—so much so that the patient may declare that more is passed than has been eaten. In this case wasting is progressive, and the patient gradually dies of inanition.

*Intestinal atrophy consequent on sprue.*—In certain instances, under treatment the symptoms proper to sprue subside; but the patient's digestive and assimilative faculties are permanently impaired. Slight irregularities either in the quality or the amount of food, chill, fatigue, depressing emotions, and other trifling causes suffice to bring on dyspepsia accompanied by flatulence and diarrhœa. These cases may linger for years; usually they improve during the summer in England, getting worse during the



winter and spring, or during cold damp weather. Ultimately they die from general atrophy, diarrhœa, or some intercurrent disease.

**Morbid anatomy.**—*Post mortem* the tissues in sprue are abnormally dry; fat is almost completely absent; the muscles and the thoracic and abdominal viscera are anæmic and wasted. With these exceptions and certain important changes in the alimentary tract, so far as known there are no special lesions which are invariably associated with this disease. According to Bertrand and Fontan, occasionally certain changes are present in the pancreas—namely, fatty or granular degeneration of the cells, with softening of isolated acini and slight inflammatory infiltration of the connective tissue. These, however, are not constant, any more than are certain other and similar changes occasionally found in the liver and kidneys.

*Lesions of the alimentary tract.*—The principal and characteristic lesions are found in the alimentary tract. The bowel is thinned to such an extent as to be almost diaphanous. The serous coat is generally healthy, the muscular coat atrophied. The submucosa in places has undergone hypertrophic fibrous changes; and the mucous membrane from mouth to anus, either in patches or universally, is superficially eroded and interstitially atrophied. The internal surface of the bowel is coated with a thick layer of dirty grey, tenacious mucus which conceals patches of congestion, of erosion, or even of ulceration, besides such evidences of similar antecedent disease as pigmented areas and thin scarred, cicatricial patches. The villi and glands are eroded and in many places completely destroyed. Here and there minute spherical indurations, about the size of a pin's head and surrounded by a dark pigmented or congested areola, can be felt in the mucous membrane. On cutting into these, they are found to be minute cyst-like dilatations of the follicles filled with a gummy muco-purulent material. Sections of the diseased



bowel show under the microscope corresponding changes; such as varying degrees of erosion or ulceration of the surface of the mucous membrane; degenerations of villi, glands, and follicles; the small mucous cysts referred to; sometimes small abscesses; and, also, infiltration by leucocytes of the basement membrane and submucous layer; and, in the latter, fibro-cirrhotic changes. The mesenteric glands are generally large and pigmented, perhaps fibrotic. The erosion lesions are usually most marked towards the end of the ileum and in the colon; but they may be present in greater or lesser degree universally, or in patches throughout the entire alimentary tract from mouth to anus.

**Pathology.**—In attempting an explanation of the phenomena of sprue, two features of the disease have to be considered—the catarrhal condition of the alimentary canal, and the absence of the normal colouring matter of the fæces. Possibly one of these is the consequence of the other; possibly the two conditions are concurrent but independent consequences of the same cause. What that cause may be is quite unknown. Whether the first pathological step originates in physiological exhaustion of the digestive functions, brought about by tropical conditions abnormal to the European constitution; or whether the disease depends upon a specific organism; or whether there is a combination of these, has still to be settled. In view of the occurrence of morning diarrhœa of dark bilious stools as a frequent first step in the development of sprue, hyperactivity of the liver might be assumed to be a first step in the development of the disease, an activity which in time ends in exhaustion of the chologenic functions of the gland. It might be further suggested that, concurrently with this hepatic disturbance, there is a similar initial hyperactivity of all the other glands appertaining to digestion, a hyperactivity which also ends in a corresponding exhaustion. Chemical changes in the ingested food would then follow on



the establishment of these apeptic conditions, and ultimately, from the formation of acrid chemical bodies, lead to the chronic catarrhal changes found *post mortem*.

An analysis by Wynter Blyth of the stools in sprue resulted in ascertaining the presence of the ordinary elements of bile, notwithstanding their apparent absence so far as absence of colour would indicate. On the other hand, Bertrand and Fontan, in a similar analysis, failed completely to find bile acids. Until a decision is arrived at on this point it is useless to speculate further on the subject.

Micro-organisms, of course, abound in the fermenting stools of sprue; but hitherto no bacterium or protozoon which must be regarded as specific has been found in association with the disease.

Personally, I incline to regard sprue as an expression of exhaustion of the glandular structures subserving digestion, the result of over-stimulation by certain meteorological conditions which are found in tropical countries, and which are unsuited to the European constitution. The remarkable effect of physiological rest, as supplied by "the milk treatment," in curing sprue seems to support this hypothesis.

**Diagnosis.**—The condition of the tongue, the character of the stools, and the history are sufficiently distinctive, one would suppose, to render diagnosis an easy matter. Nevertheless, I have known of cases in which the disease has been diagnosed and treated as syphilis, the condition of the mouth being attributed to this disease, and the character of the stools and other symptoms being ignored.

**Prognosis** is good for recent cases, provided proper treatment is carried out. It is bad for patients over fifty, for long-standing cases, for careless and injudicious patients, and for those who cannot or will not take a pure milk diet.

**Treatment.**—*Importance of early and thorough treatment.*—If treatment be undertaken sufficiently



early in sprue, and be thoroughly and intelligently carried out, it is generally marvellously successful. Should, however, it be undertaken at too late a period, when the glands and the absorbing surface of the alimentary canal have been hopelessly destroyed, do what we will, the case is sure to end fatally. In prescribing a treatment, therefore, the first thing for the physician to do is to get his patient thoroughly convinced of the deadly nature of his complaint; for, unless he receives the hearty and complete co-operation of his patient, the physician must not expect to cure a well-established case. To be successful, treatment must be thorough, sustained, and prolonged. All predisposing causes, as uterine or other discharges, syphilis, scurvy, and the like, must of course be dealt with and, so far as possible, removed.

*The milk cure.*—By far the most successful treatment is what is known as the "milk cure." In carrying this out it is well to commence with a dose of some aperient—castor oil or pulvis rhei composita. Pending the action of the drug, all food, including milk, should be withheld. The patient should be sent to bed in order to economise strength and maintain an equable warm temperature of the skin. He should also be directed to clothe warmly, to encircle the abdomen with a broad flannel binder, to cover his arms and shoulders with a warm jacket, and to live in a warm room. When the purgative has acted the milk is begun. At first sixty ounces, at most, are allowed in the twenty-four hours, small quantities being given every hour or every two hours. When the patient is very weak the feeding must be continued during the night. The milk should not be drunk, but sipped with a teaspoon, or taken through a straw or fine glass tube, or from a child's feeding-bottle. As a rule, on this regimen, in the course of two or three days, the patient's condition is very much improved. The stools have increased in consistency — are solid perhaps, the distension of the



abdomen has subsided, dyspeptic symptoms have vanished, and the mouth is much less tender and less inflamed. The quantity of milk should now be increased at the rate of half a pint a day or every second day, until 100 ounces, or thereabouts, are taken in the twenty-four hours. It is well to keep at this quantity for ten days at least, when, everything going well, a gradual increase to six or seven pints may be sanctioned. Up to this point the patient should keep in bed; but when he has reached this quantity he may get up and, if he feels strong enough and the weather is mild, go out of doors. *For six weeks, dating from the time the stools become solid and the mouth free from irritation, no other food or drink whatever should be permitted.* A raw egg, if it is found to agree, may now be added to the milk; later, some artificial malted food; next, small quantities of well-boiled arrowroot, rusks, pulled bread, thin bread (stale) and butter, or other digestible form of starchy food; later still, chicken broth, a little fruit; and, by-and-by, fish and chicken may be gradually introduced.

*Importance of prompt treatment of threatened relapses.*—Should, however, the slightest sign of dyspepsia or flatulence, especially of diarrhœa, or of sore mouth show itself, then the extra food must be discontinued immediately, a dose of compound rhubarb powder administered, and the patient be sent back to bed and placed once more at absolute rest and on a pure milk diet. In convalescents, no matter how long the acute symptoms have been in abeyance, this prompt recognition and treatment of threatened relapse should be rigorously observed. This is a rule of the utmost value and importance. Procrastination in treatment, under these conditions, is exceedingly dangerous. Promptitude in recognising and treating relapse not only saves time, but it may avert hopeless intestinal atrophy.

*Symptoms persisting.*—In commencing this treatment, if the patient after two or three days be



found unable to digest and assimilate so much as three pints of milk in the twenty-four hours, the daily allowance must be reduced by half a pint a day until thirty ounces or thereabouts only are taken. If now the motions become solid, the quantity of milk must be gradually increased by five or ten ounces a day, so that in the course of a few weeks the full allowance—six or seven pints—is consumed.

*How to meet inadequate assimilation.*—It sometimes happens that the quantity of milk can be raised to seventy or eighty ounces per diem but no higher, further increase bringing on sore mouth, distension, and diarrhœa. In some of these cases the difficulty appears to depend not so much on digestion as on inability to absorb a large quantity of fluid. Occasionally, in such cases, one may succeed in getting the necessary amount of nutriment introduced by thickening the milk with condensed milk; or by slowly evaporating fresh cow's milk so as to reduce its bulk without diminishing the solids (Thin). The evaporation is best done in a vessel like a glue-pot, in which the milk is not boiled, but is surrounded by a jacket of boiling water; the milk during the process must be constantly stirred to prevent the formation of a scum. Or the milk diet may be supplemented by an adequate allowance of raw or underdone meat.

*Other forms of giving milk.*—Digestion is sometimes aided by peptonising the milk; or by mixing it with lime water or a little salt; or by aërating it in a soda-water syphon (Goldsmith, *Brit. Med. Journ.*, July 1st, 1893). Koumiss sometimes agrees for a time when ordinary milk fails, and, if necessary, should be tried. Similarly, white wine whey is occasionally digested when milk is not; it is often of great service, especially when an alcoholic stimulant is indicated.

*Treatment with meat juice and underdone meat.*—Occasionally, symptoms persist or become aggravated under this system of treatment, and one is forced to conclude that milk does not suit the patient.



In such cases raw meat juice will often prove an efficient substitute. The juice of four or five pounds of fresh lean meat, and a little water to allay thirst, may be taken in small quantities at short intervals daily. After a time, when the stools are reduced in number and quantity, although perhaps not quite solid, scraped meat, or very much underdone meat, and by-and-by a little charred toast, a plain rusk or biscuit, and so forth, may be gradually added to the diet.

*Meat and warm water diet.*—Not infrequently, after the stools have become solid under a carefully regulated pure milk diet, it is found that any attempt to return to ordinary food, or to take anything beyond the most simple farinaceous dishes, is quickly followed by a recurrence of diarrhœa and the familiar flatulent dyspepsia. Such cases are sometimes successfully treated by a complete abandonment of milk, fish, and farinaceous stuffs for a time, and placing the patient on what is known as the “Salisbury cure.” This is a diet consisting only of meat and warm water. Commencing with smaller quantities, in time the allowance of meat is gradually raised to about three pounds *per diem*, taken at equidistant intervals in three or four meals. The meat must be of good quality, free from fat, coarse fibre, and gristle; it may be prepared as mince, or in the form of steak or chop, not too much cooked. Warm water, amounting in all to four pints in the twenty-four hours, is drunk before going to bed and on rising in the morning, and also about two hours before meals—never at meals. This course must be persisted in for six weeks, when ordinary food will be gradually attempted again.

*Nutrient enemata or suppositories.*—In all grave cases of sprue nutrient enemata or suppositories should be steadily administered every four or six hours. If tolerated they are most valuable aids to nutrition. It is well, when using them, to wash out the rectum once a day with cold water.



These methods of treatment—milk and meat juice combined with warmth and rest—are the two most successful methods of treating sprue; should they fail, the chances of recovery are poor indeed.

*When to send the patient to Europe.*—When sprue develops in the tropics, if feasible, the patient should be sent to Europe as soon as possible. It is a mistake, however, to ship an invalid with his disease active on him, or if his end is manifestly not very far off. Diarrhœa should not be active when the patient is put on board ship. In every case provision, such as a cow or an abundant supply of sterilised milk, should be made for carrying on treatment during the voyage.

*The clothing and general management.*—Sprue patients returning to Europe ought to be especially careful in their clothing, and they ought to get out their warm clothes before the ship leaves the tropics. If their return is during the winter, they should arrange to remain in the South of Europe till at least late spring. Next to an unsuitable dietary, perhaps cold is the most prejudicial influence to which a sprue case can be exposed. A sprue patient ought never to feel cold; he ought always to wear thick flannels, thick stockings, and, when up and about, thick boots. In winter a chamois-leather waistcoat, provided with sleeves, is of great service. His rooms ought to be warm. He ought never to be fatigued; he ought to go to bed early and rise late; in fact, he ought to do everything in his power to avoid irritating the bowel, to guard against chill, physiological depression, and the necessity for copious eating. During the summer England is suitable enough as a residence; but during the cold winter and spring months some milder, drier, and more sunny climate must be sought out.

*Drugs in sprue.*—Experience soon teaches one to distrust medicines in sprue. Occasionally a gentle aperient or, if diarrhœa is watery and excessive, a few drops of laudanum are of service; but active drugging



of all sorts is, as a rule, in the highest degree prejudicial. If the mouth is very painful, cocaine—five grains to the ounce—brushed on before eating will deaden sensibility and, for a time at all events, relieve suffering. Constipation must be carefully avoided, and a simple enema used if necessary.

I think it right to state that two methods of drug treatment seem, in some cases, to have been followed by good results. One, advocated by Dr. Begg, lately of Hankow, consists in the administration of repeated doses of yellow santonin. He recommends one or two doses of castor oil to commence with, and, thereafter, five grains of santonin in a teaspoonful of olive oil once or twice a day for a week, diet being at the same time attended to. The other method has gained for an irregular practitioner in Shanghai some reputation; it consists in the repeated administration of purgatives alternately with or before the exhibition of large quantities—two teaspoonfuls at a time—of some form of carbonate of lime, believed to be powdered cuttlefish bone or powdered crabs' eyes. I have tried the santonin treatment without benefit to patients. I have also used cuttlefish bone; in one case with the result of permanently stopping the diarrhœa but not of arresting the progress of the disease. In this case, although diarrhœa was most effectively checked, yet massive solid stools continued to pass. After a few weeks the patient died from asthenia, notwithstanding a liberal diet which, apparently, was digested but not absorbed.

The sprue patient, if possible, ought not to return to the tropics. If compelled by circumstances to go back, he must exercise the utmost care with regard to his health, and avoid exposure, fatigue, cold bath, alcohol, and all excesses; take a minimum of, or avoid altogether, red meat; purge gently and go on absolute milk diet on the slightest sign of relapse.



## CHAPTER XXIV.

## TROPICAL LIVER.

THE subject of liver disease is everywhere a difficult and complicated one. It is especially difficult in tropical countries; for not only is the resident there liable to all the forms found in temperate climates, but he is exposed, in addition, to various potent predisposing and exciting causes of liver disease not present, or only present in a very mild degree, in more temperate latitudes. These additional causes of liver disease inseparable from the tropics are heat, malaria and, especially, dysentery. To these, too often, have to be added injudicious personal habits, a tendency to over-full and over-rich feeding, to over-stimulation by alcohol, and deficiency of muscular exercise.

The young European who finds himself in the tropics for the first time is surrounded very often by luxuries in the shape of food, wine, carriages, servants, luxuries to which he had not been accustomed perhaps in his home. At first the change, the excitement of novelty, and the high temperature act as stimulants to appetite, and the excessive loss of fluid by cutaneous transpiration creates a powerful thirst. Little wonder, therefore, that in such circumstances the youth, having the appetite and the opportunity of gratifying it, is apt to indulge in food and drink beyond safe physiological limits. He is made lazy by the heat; he cannot exercise during the day, and when evening comes he prefers lounging on the verandah or hanging about the club bar to walking, or riding, or games. Very likely he sits up late at night, drinking and smoking, so that in the morning he is too sleepy to



ride out or take any other form of exercise. And so it comes about, what with a surcharge of aliment and alcohol, and the diminished activity of lung metabolism and excretion incident to high temperature and muscular inactivity, that a very large and unusual amount of physiological work is thrown on the liver. With this large amount of work there is a corresponding hyperæmia. This may be considered the first stage of tropical liver—hyperæmia from functional activity; up to this point it is a purely physiological condition.

Pushed a step farther this physiological hyperæmia passes into congestion with blood stasis and consequent diminished functional activity. Hyperæmia of a physiological character will be evidenced by increase of functional activity, and there will be a copious flow of bile, sometimes causing diarrhœa of a bilious character, particularly morning diarrhœa. But when the limits of physiological hyperæmia are passed, and congestion of a pathological character sets in, the consequent arrest of function will be evidenced by pale stools, perhaps diarrhœa of a pale, watery, frothy, fermenting character—in the last case the diarrhœa doubtless depending, in part at least, on fermentative processes set up in the contents of an alimentary canal no longer kept relatively aseptic by an adequate supply of healthy bile. Other symptoms of this condition are headache, furred tongue, scanty, high-coloured, loaded urine, a feeling of weight or fulness, or even of pain in the region of the liver, and, probably, enlargement of the percussion area and other physical signs of enlargement of that organ. One step farther and such a condition may pass into actual hepatitis attended with fever, smart pain in the liver, tenderness on percussion, and still more marked increase of the hepatic area.

A functionally very active hyperæmic organ is prone to inflammation, even on slight cause. In the case of the hyperæmic liver a common cause of inflammation is chill, such as may arise from a cold bath, a wetting,



or from lying uncovered on a warm night in a current of air. The experienced resident knows this very well, and is at great pains to guard against such an occurrence. He very likely wears what is known as a cholera belt ; he sleeps, even on the warmest night, in flannel pyjamas, and with a thin blanket drawn over his abdomen ; during the day he wears a woollen singlet and very likely serge or thin tweed clothes. He does not sit down in damp clothes, and he has a great respect for a shower of rain. Besides chill, there are other causes which may convert the hyperæmia into congestion or inflammation ; a blow may operate in the same way, so may a surfeit of eating or drinking, so may exposure to the sun, so may an attack of malarial fever or of dysentery.

**Treatment.**—Nature sometimes effects a cure in these cases of hepatic congestion by establishing a smart diarrhœa. In the treatment of such cases we cannot do better than to imitate Nature, and even to supplement her efforts. A few doses of the sulphates, in the shape of some kind of bitter water or of Carlsbad salts, generally give prompt relief. But if the subject of such attacks does not profit by experience and mend his ways, very likely his liver, in time, will become chronically hyperæmic and extremely liable to intercurrent attacks of congestion of a character more or less acute. The subjects of this type of “liver” ought to be most careful in their habits. They must not lie abed too long ; they must not take cold baths ; they must not take cold drinks, nor expose themselves to cold in any form ; they must clothe warmly ; and they must eschew alcohol in every shape. Animal food they must partake of but sparingly ; and they should give the preference to fowl and fish over beef and mutton. Fruit and farinaceous food may be more freely partaken of, but over-eating in every form must be avoided. Exercise should be taken at least twice a day ; and, at least once in twenty-four hours, the exercise should be of such a character as to provoke perspiration. A gallop



on horseback, a smart game of tennis or rackets, are excellent hepatic stimulants. Occasionally, once a week or not so often, particularly when a sense of fulness or aching in the right side seems to indicate that all is not right with the liver, a dose of Carlsbad salts or bitter water, preceded perhaps by a few grains of calomel, may avert more serious trouble.

When hyperæmia becomes chronic, when the patient is continually suffering with "liver," he should leave the tropics for a time. Nothing relieves these cases of chronic congestion so quickly or so effectively as a visit to Carlsbad and a thorough course of the waters there, and of the dietetic restrictions imposed in the Carlsbad cure. This should be followed up by country life in England and the active pursuit of country sports; the usual precautions in the shape of warm clothing, avoidance of cold baths, chills, alcohol, and high living being scrupulously observed and a weekly saline purge taken.

A serviceable imitation of the natural Carlsbad water may be made by dissolving fifty-three grains of the powdered salt in a pint of boiling water.\* This may be divided into three equal portions, which are to be sipped as hot as possible, at intervals of twenty minutes, on an empty stomach, first thing in the morning. While taking the solution gentle exercise, as moving about the room, should be indulged in. Breakfast must not be taken till an hour after the last dose. If the bowels are not gently acted on an increased quantity of the salts should be taken. During the course, which should be persevered in for three weeks, the diet must be carefully regulated; butter, fat, nuts, fruits, pastry, preserves, tinned foods, cheese, salads, wines, spirits, and beer are to be avoided. Too much meat must not be taken; a small meat meal once a day must suffice. The quantity of food, too, should be restricted, and clothing, exercise, and bathing be carefully attended to. Much

\* A good substitute for Carlsbad salts consists of sod. sulph. 2 parts, sod. bicarb. 1 part, sod. chlorid. 1 part.



excellent advice on the subject of the Carlsbad treatment will be found in Surgeon-Major Young's book, "The Carlsbad Treatment for Tropical Ailments," published by Thacker, Spink & Co., Calcutta.

During severe attacks of acute congestion, or of severe hepatitis attended with fever and much local distress, the patient must be kept in bed and placed on a very low diet of thin broths, barley water, or rice water, or milk and water. He should be purged freely and often with salines. A large hot poultice, two feet or more in length by one foot in breadth, should be laid over the region of the liver; such a poultice to be effective should pass from the centre of the back to well over the epigastrium. Dry cupping sometimes gives marked relief. Muriate of ammonia has a certain reputation in these cases; it should be prescribed in twenty-grain doses every six or eight hours. I have often used it, but I cannot vouch for its virtues; it does no harm.

When such a hepatitis is associated with dysentery, should it resist these milder measures, thirty to sixty grains of ipecac. often give marked relief. This dose should be repeated every twelve or twenty-four hours for two or three times. When the hepatitis is associated with malarial fever, full doses of quinine, in addition to the purging and the other measures already mentioned, are indicated.

Whether hepatitis, unless associated with dysentery, ever passes on to suppuration is a moot point. Some say that it may; others resolutely deny that there is such a thing as "tropical abscess" unassociated with dysentery. This subject will be discussed in the following chapter. Malarial hepatitis has already been considered (p. 110).



## CHAPTER XXV.

## ABSCESS OF THE LIVER.

**Definition.**—A form of suppuration in the liver, occurring especially in warm climates, principally in male Europeans and in association with dysentery.

**Geographical distribution.**—Abscess of the liver, of the type known as tropical abscess, is, for the most part, a disease of warm climates. Usually a sequel, or, it may be, a concomitant of dysentery, it is rare or altogether absent in countries where dysentery is also rare or absent. Its geographical distribution, therefore, is in the main regulated by that of dysentery. It has to be noted, however, that liver abscess is not a sequel or concomitant of the dysentery of all countries and at all times. Thus it is rare as an indigenous disease in temperate climates, even in those temperate climates in which dysentery is at times common enough. Again, in tropical climates the dysentery and liver abscess curves do not everywhere and at all times maintain a constant and definite relation to each other; for, even in hot countries, the dysentery of some places is more apt to be followed by liver abscess than is the dysentery of other places; and, even as regards dysentery in the same place, some epidemics are more apt to be associated with liver abscess than others are. Nevertheless, on the whole, it may be laid down as a fairly general law that in the tropics and sub-tropics the liver abscess curve follows in the main the dysentery curve; and that the geographical range of liver abscess in these climates is the same as that of dysentery.

In Great Britain the liver abscesses met with occur most frequently in individuals who manifestly had contracted the disease in the tropics. As a disease of indigenous origin, notwithstanding the considerable amount of dysentery in lunatic



asylums and similar large public institutions in Great Britain, it is distinctly rare, though not so uncommon as is usually supposed. Of course this remark does not apply to those suppurations which are connected with ordinary pyæmia, with gall-stones, hydatids, pylephlebitis, and the like; it applies only to dysenteric and, possibly, if there be such a disease, to idiopathic abscess. In northern and central Europe it is much the same in this respect as in Britain. The disease is more frequent in southern Europe—in Italy, Greece, the Balkan peninsula, and south Russia; it is said to be particularly common in Roumania. In eastern Asia, even outside the tropical belt, it is far from rare: thus it is not uncommon in Japan, and it is a very notable feature in the morbidity of Shanghai and the coast of south China. In Africa it is common enough; indeed, some of the best modern studies of the disease have been made in Egypt and in the Algerian province of Oran. In the western hemisphere there is a corresponding distribution; fairly common in the tropics, it becomes progressively rarer as we proceed north and south. It is apparently less common in the West Indies than in India and the East generally. In the southern hemisphere, although the cooler parts of Australia seem to enjoy a practical immunity, the European in the Northern Territory and in the neighbouring island of New Caledonia is subject to this disease.

**Ætiology.**—*Relation to dysentery.*—There can be no question as to the existence of an intimate relationship between dysentery and liver abscess. Numerous and well-authenticated statistics, as well as everyday experience, attest this. In 3,680 dysentery autopsies made in various tropical countries, and collated by Woodward, 779 (21 per cent.) revealed abscesses of the liver. To quote recent Indian experience:—According to the Annual Report of the Sanitary Commissioner with the Government of India for 1894, out of 465 European soldiers who died from



dysentery in India during the period 1888-94, 161 (35 per cent.) had, in addition to dysenteric lesions, abscess of the liver. Conversely, in Egypt, Kartulis, in an experience of over 500 cases of liver abscess, elicited a history of dysentery in from 55 to 60 per cent.; Zancarol, also in Egypt, in 444 cases, elicited a similar history in 59 per cent.; and Edwards and Waterman, in 699 collated cases, elicited a like history in 72.1 per cent. During the period 1870-95, of 45 cases of liver abscess treated at the Seamen's Hospital Greenwich, and collated by Mr. Johnson Smith, *post-mortem* evidence, or a distinct history, of dysentery was obtained in 38 (84.4 per cent.).

These figures are conclusive as to the existence of an intimate relationship between dysentery and liver abscess. There is good reason, however, for believing that, while they represent the truth, they do not represent the whole truth, and that the association is even more frequent than they indicate. As has been pointed out by Dr. Neil Macleod and others, the occurrence of antecedent dysentery in cases of liver abscess is very often overlooked; for, without a *post-mortem* examination, it may be impossible to pronounce definitely on this point in every instance. It is also well known that extensive dysenteric ulceration may be present and yet give rise to no active subjective symptoms whatever. Moreover, it must be borne in mind that many patients suffering from liver abscess forget, or fail to mention, the occurrence of a previous dysenteric attack, and that they may mislead the physician by describing such an attack as "diarrhœa." Further, at *post-mortem* examinations, dysenteric lesions of a superficial and apparently trifling character are often either not sought for or they are overlooked. Consequently, although the evidence of antecedent dysentery may not be forthcoming in a proportion of cases of liver abscess, it must not be concluded from this that in these cases there had been no dysentery.

In a masterly paper (*Brit. Med. Journ.*,



October 26th, 1895) Macleod, after a very careful and critical analysis of certain figures bearing on this subject, concludes that dysentery is a factor in nearly every case of tropical liver abscess. In forty cases of the disease observed in Shanghai he had positive evidence of dysentery in all except one; and even in this case, as recovery ensued, there was no certainty that dysenteric lesions had not been present in it also. Perhaps Macleod's conclusions are somewhat too sweeping; I confess, however, that they are, in the main, in harmony with my own experience. Doubtless they apply to liver abscess as met with in Shanghai and, probably, in many other places. It is just possible, however, that what holds good for one place may not hold good for all places, and that Bombay, for example, may differ in this respect from Shanghai. In the Sanitary Commissioner's Report, above referred to, it is stated that in 2 (3 per cent.) instances only, out of 74 cases of liver abscess occurring in the Bombay Presidency in the period 1888-94, were there dysenteric associations. It is difficult to believe that, did it always exist, so important and evident a circumstance as dysentery had been overlooked 72 times in 74 cases. It is equally difficult to believe that the liver abscess of Bombay is associated with dysentery in only 3 per cent. of cases, whilst, according to the same authority, in the whole of India it is certainly so associated in at least 30 per cent. of the total cases. Manifestly, the statistical aspect of this important question requires re-study in the light of more careful clinical and *post-mortem* observation.

Another important point, yet to be definitely settled, is the exact relationship in point of time of the dysentery to the liver abscess. In the great majority of cases the dysentery antedates the abscess. But many clinicians have held that in some instances the relationship is reversed; that in others the two diseases are from the commencement concurrent; whilst in others, again, hepatitis, presumably of a



kind which may eventuate in abscess, alternates with active dysenteric symptoms. If the abscess antedate the dysentery, then the dysentery cannot be the cause of the abscess. On these grounds some pathologists have regarded liver abscess and dysentery as but different expressions of one morbid condition; reacting to some extent on each other, but not directly related the one to the other as cause and effect. Here, again, the latency as regards symptoms of some dysenteries has to be discounted in attempting to settle the question.

*Race and sex.*—Besides this matter of its relationship to dysentery, there are several well-ascertained facts to be reckoned with before we can arrive at sound views on the subject of the ætiology of liver abscess.

(1) Though common in Europeans in the tropics, liver abscess is rare among the natives. Thus, in the native army of India the proportion of deaths from liver abscess to the total mortality in 1894 was only 0·6 per cent., whereas in the European army it was 7·4 per cent. Man for man, the relative liability of the European soldier and the native soldier was as 95·2 to 4·8.

(2) This disproportion is in spite of the fact that the native is more liable to dysentery than the European. Thus, in 1894, in the Indian army the admission rate among the native troops for dysentery was 43·8 per thousand, whereas in the European troops it was only 28·6; and in every hundred deaths in the native army 4·7 were from dysentery, against only 3·8 in the European army.\*

(3) European women in the tropics, though quite as subject to dysentery as European men, rarely suffer from liver abscess; children hardly ever.

\* Dr. Rees informs me that liver abscess is more common among the natives of Nigeria than these figures seem to show it to be among the natives of India. Among the negroes Dr. Rees informs me that the mortality in dysentery is much higher than among Europeans resident in Nigeria. Of those negroes attacked with dysentery who lived long enough many subsequently developed liver abscess.



(4) The rarity of liver abscess in temperate climates.

*Predisposing conditions.*—The foregoing considerations seem to indicate that for the production of liver abscess at least two things are necessary—a predisposing cause, and an exciting cause. Dysentery is certainly not always and alone both the exciting and predisposing cause. Were this so, the native soldiers and the European women and children in India would suffer as frequently from liver abscess as do the European males there. Some additional factor evidently complicates the problem.

As liver abscess is developed principally in tropical climates and in European visitors there, and much more rarely in the native, it would seem that tropical conditions in those unaccustomed to them are in some way bound up with this predisposing element; and as liver abscess is rare in European women and children, it would seem that these conditions are in some way specially operative on European men. We have therefore grounds for concluding that, in addition to general tropical conditions, it must be the greater amount of exposure to which men, as compared with women and children, are subjected in the course of their business and amusements; or some other condition, especially that one which is relatively more common in men than in women and children—over-indulgence in stimulating food and alcoholic drinks—that constitutes this predisposing cause. Intemperate habits and exposure, doubtless, lead to a special liability in men to a hyperæmia and congestion of the liver tissue by which its resistive faculty to pathological influences is impaired. In these circumstances, pathological influences which in the healthier condition of the organ—such as we assume to exist more generally in natives and in European women and children—would have been successfully overcome, gain the upper hand and lead to suppurative disintegration of the organ. In support of this view we have the statement of Waring, that 65 per cent. of



liver abscesses observed by him were in alcoholics ; and it is also said, that when the native takes to European habits in the matter of eating and drinking, his liability to liver abscess is greatly and proportionately increased.

I conclude, therefore, that in the vast majority of instances the exciting cause of liver abscess is dysentery ; the predisposing cause hyperæmic, congestive, or degenerative conditions incidental to tropical life, supplemented by such things as exposure and unphysiological habits in eating and drinking.

*Supplementary causes.*—It is conceivable that in a highly predisposed liver exciting causes other than dysentery, such as a blow or sudden aggravation of chronic congestion by chill or excess, may suffice at times to determine suppuration. Liver abscess is most prone to develop at the commencement of the cold season. Further, one can conceive that in a hyperæmic liver struggling to resist dysenteric suppurative influences some third condition, such as the blow, chill, or surfeit referred to, may contribute to or determine the formation of abscess which, in their absence, might have been averted.

Briefly stated, the causes of liver abscess are, first, predisposing—hyperæmic and degenerative conditions of the liver ; second, exciting—dysentery, or dysentery combined with chill, dietetic excess, or traumatism.

*Influence of age and length of residence.*—Liver abscess may occur at any age after childhood, but is most common between twenty and forty. It is most prone to show itself during the earlier years of residence in the tropics (40 per cent. in the first three years), although the older resident is by no means exempt.

*Influence of malaria.*—Malaria, by causing frequent attacks of hepatic congestion and by lowering the general vitality, may have some predisposing influence ; but, as already pointed out, malarial hepatitis is essentially of a plastic and not of a suppurative nature. It is a common mistake to suppose that malaria causes the suppurative liver disease of the



tropics ; the two concur geographically, but are in no way ætiologically identical.

*Organisms concerned.*—The questions of the organisms concerned in liver abscess will be discussed in the section on pathology.

**Symptoms.**—There is great variety in the grouping of symptoms in liver abscess. The following is a common history.

The patient, after residing for some time in the tropics, during which he enjoyed good general health and lived freely, was attacked by dysentery. In due course he appeared to recover, and resumed work. Several weeks or months elapsed when, after a wetting, or some such incident, he began to feel out of sorts, to suffer from headache, foul tongue, want of appetite, irregularity of the bowels, disturbed nights, excessive and unaccountable languor, irritability of temper, and depression of spirits. About the same time he began to be conscious of a sense of weight and fulness in the right hypochondrium. Later, he became feverish, particularly towards evening, the oncoming of the febrile distress being sometimes preceded by a sense of chilliness. At times he had sharp stabbing pain in the right side in the region of the liver, perhaps a dry cough and, possibly, a gnawing, uncomfortable sensation or pain in the right shoulder. His friends observed that his face had become muddy and haggard. He was uneasy if he lay on his left side. The quotidian rise of temperature now became a regular feature, the thermometer every evening touching 102°—sometimes more, sometimes less—and sinking to near normal by morning. He now began to perspire profusely at night, and even during the day when he chanced to fall asleep. He had to change his sleeping clothes once or even twice every night on account of the drenching sweats. On examination it is found that the patient is somewhat emaciated ; his complexion thick and muddy ; his pulse 80 to 100 ; his tongue is furred and yellowish ; the palms of his hands and soles of his feet are cold and clammy. As



he lies on his back it is obvious, on inspection, that the epigastrium is too full for one so emaciated; and it is seen that the breathing is shallow and mainly thoracic. The right rectus muscle is found to be rigid. Considerable discomfort, if not pain, is elicited by attempts at palpation and percussion over the right hypochondrium. The liver dulness extends an inch too high, and an inch or more beyond the costal border in the nipple line; posteriorly, it rises to about the eighth rib in the line of the angle of the scapula. It is further observed that the line of dulness is arched along its upper border; and that it is not materially altered by changes of position, unless it be on standing, when the lower margin descends markedly in the epigastrium. Percussion below the right costal border, on deep inspiration, gives rise to much uneasiness or even to acute pain. Very likely one or two tender spots can be discovered on firm pressure being made with the finger tips in some of the lower right intercostal spaces, or below the right costal margin. The spleen is not usually enlarged. Auscultation may detect pleuritic friction somewhere over the base of the right lung, or peritoneal friction over the liver itself. The urine, free from albumin, is scanty, high-coloured, and deposits copious urates on cooling.

As the case progresses emaciation increases; hectic with drenching nocturnal sweats continues; the liver dulness and pain may further increase; or the general enlargement may somewhat subside, and percussion may reveal a pronounced local bulging, upwards or downwards. If the abscess which has now formed is not relieved by operation, after months of illness the patient may die worn out; or the abscess, which has now attained enormous dimensions, may burst into the right lung or pleura, or elsewhere, and be discharged, and either recovery, or death from continued hectic and exhaustion or from some intercurrent complication, ensue.

*The great variety in the urgency of symptoms.*—Although the foregoing is a fairly common history in



liver abscess, there are many instances in which the initial symptoms are much more urgent, and in which the disease progresses much more rapidly. In other instances subjective symptoms are almost entirely absent; or so subdued that the true nature of the case may be entirely misapprehended until the abscess bursts through the lung or bowel, or a fluctuating tumour appears in the neighbourhood of the liver; or, perhaps, not until after death, when the unsuspected abscess is discovered on the *post-mortem* table.

*Fever.*—In an acute sthenic case the initial inflammatory fever may run fairly high and persist for some time. Later, when it may be assumed that pus has formed, the fever becomes distinctly quotidian and intermittent in type, the morning temperatures being normal, or only slightly above normal, the evening rising to  $101^{\circ}$  or  $102^{\circ}$ , or a little over or under this. Sometimes evening temperatures of  $103^{\circ}$ , rarely of  $104^{\circ}$ , are registered. In the asthenic and insidious type, at first there may be short flashes of feverishness at more considerable intervals, to be followed later by a steadier fever of a hectic type, as in the suppurative stage of the sthenic cases. In either type there may be afebrile intervals of several days' duration; and in either there may also occur, concurrently with aggravations of the local conditions, spells of continued high temperature. Occasionally, though rarely, liver abscess may be unattended by fever of any description whatever.

*Rigors.*—In the classical descriptions of liver abscess the occurrence of violent rigor is generally mentioned as a notable sign of the formation of pus. Undoubtedly such a rigor does at times signalise this event; but it is by no means constant, and its absence is no guarantee that abscess has not formed. Generally the evening rise of temperature is preceded by a sense of chilliness, sometimes by a more marked rigor simulating, in the regularity of its recurrences and in its severity, the rigor of a quotidian malarial fever.



*Sweating*, particularly nocturnal sweating, and of a very profuse character, is an almost invariable accompaniment of liver abscess. The patient's clothes may be literally drenched with perspiration. Even during the day—particularly, as already mentioned, if he chance to fall asleep—the sweat may stand in beads upon the forehead and around the neck. This, like most of the other symptoms, may be temporarily absent, or, in a small proportion of cases, trifling.

The *complexion* is generally muddy, cachectic, and slightly icteric-looking; marked jaundice, however, is uncommon.

*Wasting* is generally decided and progressive.

*Rheumatic-like pains and swelling of the hands and feet*, such as occur in chronic septic affections, are sometimes to be noted. They usually disappear rapidly when the abscess bursts or is opened, and free drainage is established.

*Pain* of some description is rarely absent. In a few exceptional cases there is no pain; such a patient may declare that he does not know that he has a liver.

There are several types of pain—local and sympathetic—associated with liver abscess. Complaint is almost invariably made of a sense of fulness and of a sense of weight in the region of the liver, not infrequently referred to the infra-scapular region. Stabbing, stitch-like pain, increased by pressure, and especially by deep inspiration, coughing, and all sudden jarring movements, is very common, and probably indicates peri-hepatitis from proximity of the abscess to the surface of the organ. Percussion, or firm palpation, especially if practised during deep inspiration and below the ribs in front, generally causes smart pain and decided shrinking, the rectus muscle starting up as if to protect the subjacent inflamed parts. Pain on swallowing, at the moment the bolus of food traverses the lower end of the œsophagus was mentioned to me by a medical man,



himself the subject of hepatic abscess, as being a marked symptom in his own case. Pain on firm pressure with the finger tips in an intercostal space, and over a limited area, is a common and valuable localising sign. Among the sympathetic pains may be mentioned shooting pains radiating over the chest and down the right flank and hypochondrium.

*Pain in the right shoulder.*—This symptom is present in about one-sixth of the cases. It may be persistent, or it may intermit; it may radiate to the side of the neck, or to the region of the scapula, or down the arm; or it may be limited to the shoulder tip and clavicular region. In some instances it is of a dull, gnawing, aching character; in some it is more acute; and in some it may be represented by a burning sensation, as if the surface of the skin had been flayed by a blister. This symptom is a reflex transmitted from the hepatic terminals of the phrenic through the fourth cervical to the branches of the cervical and brachial plexuses.

*Cough* of a dry, hacking character, doubtless also a reflex from irritation of the diaphragm, or from an inflamed condition of lung or pleura over the seat of abscess, is not uncommon. When the abscess discharges through the lung, cough is sometimes very severe and may cause vomiting.

*Respiration* is generally shallow and proportionately rapid. This is partly symptomatic of the attendant fever; oftener it is owing to the fact that fuller inspiration is attended with stitch. Sometimes the breathing is entirely thoracic, the lower part of the chest seeming to be fixed—especially the right side—and the diaphragm almost motionless.

The *decubitus* is usually dorsal or right dorsal, the body being somewhat bent towards the right side and the right leg perhaps slightly drawn up. When the patient stands, a stoop to the right may be noticeable. Lying on the left side generally causes pain from dragging on adhesions, or discomfort from the pressure of the enlarged liver on the heart and



stomach. Occasionally the decubitus is indifferent, or even on the left side.

The *digestive organs* are usually disturbed and the tongue is coated. Vomiting may occur from time to time, arising either from pressure on the stomach by the swollen liver or as an expression of gastric catarrh; appetite, as a rule, is poor; flatulence may be troublesome; the bowels are confined or irregular, or there may be diarrhoea or dysentery. In the case of concurrent dysentery, it may be noted sometimes that the hepatic and dysenteric symptoms alternate in severity.

The *area of hepatic percussion dulness* is usually extended upwards and downwards, and sometimes horizontally. The extension may be general, especially in the earlier stages; later, careful outlining of the upper and lower boundaries may discover a limited and dome-like increase in one direction, most significant if upwards. The upper line of dulness is not, as a rule, horizontal, as in hydrothorax; almost invariably, on approaching the spine, it trends downwards more markedly than in hydrothorax or empyema. Variations in the extent of the dulness may take place from time to time, and sometimes very rapidly, depending on fluctuations—not in the size of the liver abscess, but on the varying and relative amounts of local and general hepatic congestion. One sometimes finds even a narrow hepatic dulness in the nipple line with a great increase in the axillary or scapular lines. In one case the lower border of the liver may be as low as the umbilicus; in another, especially in front, it may be well inside the costal margin. Diagnosis in the latter type of case is difficult, and depends rather on the nature of the fever, and on the history and general condition, than on local signs.

*Splenic enlargement* may be present even when there is no malarial complication. This is rare however and, in uncomplicated cases, is seldom great. I have seen splenic tumour closely simulated by abscess in the left lobe of the liver.



*Varicosity of the epigastric and hæmorrhoidal veins*—one or both of them—is sometimes discoverable.

*Œdema of the feet and ascites* are rare in the earlier stages ; but the former is very usual towards the termination of long-standing cases.

*Local œdema* over one or more intercostal spaces, or more extensive and involving the whole or part of the hepatic area, is sometimes apparent. When limited it is a useful locating symptom.

*Local bulging*, if attended with fluctuation, indicates the presence of pus near the surface and the pointing of the abscess. Usually this, when it occurs, is in the epigastrium ; but pus may burrow and find its way down the flank, or among the muscles of the abdominal wall, and open perhaps at a point remote from the abscess cavity in the liver.

*Friction*, both pleuritic and peritoneal, is sometimes to be made out, and is not without its value as a localising symptom.

*Pneumonia*, generally limited to the base of the right lung, and of a sub-acute and persistent character, indicates contiguity of the abscess to the diaphragm. It is especially common in those cases in which the abscess subsequently ruptures through the lung. This form of chronic pneumonia is a fruitful source of error in diagnosis.

*Chronological relation of the hepatitis to the dysenteric attack.*—This is most irregular and uncertain. In many cases of dysentery a concurrent hepatitis is manifest almost from the commencement of the attack ; this hepatitis may not subside, but pass directly to abscess formation. Or the initial hepatitis and dysentery may both subside apparently, but the former may recur weeks, months, or even years afterwards, when, perhaps, the attack of dysentery is almost forgotten. Or there may be no active hepatic symptoms with the dysentery, hepatitis supervening only long after all bowel trouble has passed away. In a few cases no dysenteric history



can be elicited ; it is seldom, however, as has already been insisted on, that careful inquiry fails to bring out some story of previous bowel disturbance more or less urgent. In a few instances liver abscess of tropical origin does not declare itself until the patient has been several years resident in a temperate climate and quite outside the endemic area.

The *incidence of the symptoms* is equally variable. Some cases commence with marked sthenic fever, much local pain, great tenderness and hepatic enlargement, signs of suppuration as rigor, hectic, and local bulging, rapidly supervening. Others, again, commence so insidiously that the patient can hardly say when he first began to feel ill ; perhaps there may be a history of slow deterioration of the general health during a year or longer before definite hepatic symptoms show themselves. The former type seems to be the more common in the young and robust newcomer to the tropics ; the latter, in the more or less cachectic and old resident. Between these extremes there is endless variety.

*Duration of the disease.*—Liver abscess may run its course in three weeks. Generally it is an affair of several months. Sometimes it may run on for a year or even longer ; particularly so if it burst through the lung and drainage be imperfect, in which event the cavity may keep on bursting and refilling at intervals for almost an indefinite period.

**Terminations.**—Apart from operative interference, liver abscess may terminate in various ways. It may end in spontaneous rupture leading to death or recovery. Death may also be brought about in other ways—by the severity of the local disease ; by prolonged hectic and exhaustion ; by concurrent dysentery ; or by intercurrent disease as pneumonia, pulmonary abscess, empyema, peritonitis. Recovery may also ensue on the abscess becoming encysted, or, possibly, absorbed.

*Rupture of the abscess.*—Rendu in a series of 563 instances of abscess of the liver, compiled from various



sources, gives an interesting table showing the direction of rupture in 159 (28 per cent.) of the cases which opened spontaneously. This table may be summarised as follows :—

Rupture occurred into the pericardium in		1 case	0·13	per cent.
„	pleura	31	„	5·5
„	lung	59	„	10·5
„	peritoneum	39	„	6·9
„	colon	6	„	1
„	stomach and			
	duodenum	8	„	1·4
„	bile ducts	4	„	0·7
„	vena cava	3	„	0·5
„	kidney	2	„	0·3
„	lumbo-iliac			
	region	6	„	1

From this it will be seen that about 28 per cent. of liver abscesses rupture spontaneously, most generally into the lung or pleura.

*Rupture into the lung.*—If rupture takes place into the lung the abscess contents may be suddenly discharged, mouthful after mouthful of pus mixed with blood welling up or being coughed up. In a few instances, in such circumstances, death has occurred suddenly from the flooding of the lungs with pus. More commonly the discharge is effected gradually, a few drachms being brought up with each cough; in the aggregate this discharge may amount perhaps to five or ten ounces in the twenty-four hours. In favourable cases the daily amount expectorated gradually diminishes until all discharge ceases and the patient recovers. Frequently, however, a deceptive arrest of discharge and cessation of cough are followed by a rise of temperature, which had become normal on the occurrence of rupture. With this there may be a reappearance of the night sweats. In a few days cough and expectoration return as before and fever once more subsides. This process of alternate emptying and refilling of the abscess cavity may recur many times before recovery finally takes place. In some cases it continues for months, and



may finally wear out the patient. Abscess may form in the lung; or a sudden and fatal hæmoptysis be brought about by ulceration opening some large pulmonary vessel. In some, expectoration never altogether ceases; if accompanied by fever this persistency indicates imperfect drainage, or, possibly, the presence of a second and unruptured abscess.

*Characters of the expectorated liver pus.* — The appearance of expectorated liver pus is almost pathognomonic. In colour it is chocolate brown; in consistence it is viscid and jelly-like. It may be streaked with blood; sometimes the expectoration may be almost entirely pure blood. Not infrequently these hæmorrhagic cases are regarded and treated as examples of ordinary hæmoptysis. Presumably, in the majority of instances, this blood comes from the wall of an abscess jarred and torn by the succussion of the harassing cough. Under the microscope expectorated liver pus exhibits the appearance to be presently described (p. 392).

*Rupture into the pleura* leads to sudden development of evidences of pleural effusion, which, unless relieved by drainage, may, in its turn, give rise to all the signs of empyema, and terminate in death, or in rupture through the lung or chest wall.

*Rupture into the stomach* is generally signalled by vomiting of the characteristic pus and, at all events temporarily, by cessation of local symptoms and fever.

*Rupture into the bowel* may cause diarrhœa, the pus more or less altered appearing in the stool. This is an occurrence that is frequently overlooked.

*Rupture into pericardium, into peritoneum, or into a blood-vessel* is almost necessarily and rapidly fatal.

*Rupture through the skin* is said to be the most favourable, though a rare, termination of liver abscess.

**Mortality.** — Rouis (203 cases), in Algiers, observed a mortality of 80 per cent.; Castro (125 cases), in Egypt, a mortality of 72·5 per cent. or,



excluding cases operated on, of 76 per cent. In the Indian army, during the period 1891-94 (prior to which abscess of the liver, in the statistical returns, is not separated from hepatitis), and, presumably, including cases operated on, the mortality was 57·7 per cent.

*Causes of death.*—In Rouis's 162 fatal cases the causes of death are stated as follows:—Severity of the local disease, or through the associated dysentery, 125; bursting of the abscess into the peritoneal cavity, 12; into the pleura, 11; gangrene of abscess wall, 3; peritonitis, 3; pneumonia from effusion of liver pus into the lung, 3; rupture of adhesions, 2; pneumonia, 2; rupture into the pericardium, 1.

**Morbid anatomy.**—It may be inferred from the symptoms that in the early stages of suppurative hepatitis there is general congestion and enlargement of the liver; in some instances this condition may be more or less confined to one lobe or even part of a lobe. Later, as we know more especially from observations in cases that have died from the attendant dysentery, one or more greyish, ill-defined, anæmic, circular patches, half to one inch or thereabouts in diameter, in which the lobular structure of the gland cannot be made out, are formed. These grey spots are very evident on section of the organ. A drop or two of a reddish, gummy pus may be expressed from the necrotic patches—for such they are. Still later, the centres of the patches liquefy and distinct but ragged abscess cavities are formed. An abscess thus commenced extends partly by molecular breaking down, partly by more massive necrosis of portions of its wall; partly by the formation of additional foci of softening in the neighbourhood and subsequent breaking down of the intervening septa. The walls of such an abscess have a ragged and rotten appearance. Spherical on the whole, there may be one or more diverticula extending from the main cavity; or contiguous abscesses may break into each other and communicate by a sinus. Occasionally a



thickened blood-vessel is met with stretching across the cavity. Though the pus and detritus lying on the abscess wall are viscid and adhesive, there is no notable exudation of lymph either lining the cavity, or in the still living liver tissue beyond. There is a peripheral zone of hyperæmia ; beyond this zone the gland may appear normal or simply congested

*Number and size of abscesses.*—Liver abscess may be single or multiple. If multiple, there may be two, three, or many abscesses. Zancarol's statistics, applying to 562 cases, give the proportion of single to multiple abscess cases as three of the former to two of the latter.

When single the abscess sometimes attains a great size. Frequently it is as large as a cocoanut or even larger ; it has happened that the entire liver, with the exception of a narrow zone of hepatic tissue, has been converted into a huge abscess sac. When multiple the individual abscesses are generally smaller, ranging in size from a filbert to an orange.

As might be expected from considerations of the relative size of the parts, abscess is more common in the right than in the left and smaller lobes. Roux gives the proportions in 639 cases as 70·85 per cent. right lobe, 3 per cent. left lobe, and 0·3 per cent. lobus spigelii.

*Adhesions* to surrounding organs are frequently, though not invariably, formed as the abscess approaches the surface of the liver. In this way the danger of intra-peritoneal extravasation is usually averted.

*Pulmonary inflammation and abscess* from escape of liver pus into the lungs are sometimes discovered *post-mortem*. Generally the pulmonary abscess communicates with the mother abscess in the liver by a small opening in the diaphragm.

*Liver pus.*—As already mentioned, the naked-eye appearance of liver pus is peculiar. When newly evacuated it is usually chocolate-coloured and streaked with, or mixed with larger or smaller clots or streaks



of blood, and here and there with streaks of a clear mucoid material. It is so thick and viscid that it will hardly soak into the dressings, but lies on the surface of the gauze like treacle on bread; spreading out between the skin and the dressing, and finding its way past the edge of the latter rather than penetrating it. When quite fresh, here and there little islands of yellowish what may be described as laudable pus may be made out in the brown mass. Sometimes it contains considerable pieces of necrotic tissue. Occasionally, from admixture of bile, the abscess contents are green-tinged. Liver purulage has always a peculiar mawkish odour; it is rarely offensive, unless the abscess lie near the colon, in which case it may have a fæcal odour. Under the microscope many blood corpuscles are discoverable, besides much broken-down liver tissue, large granular pigmented spherical cells, débris, oil globules, hæmatoidin crystals and, occasionally, Charcot-Leyden crystals, amœbæ, leucocytes, and the ordinary pyogenic bacteria.

*Amœba coli and pyogenic organisms.*—According to my experience of tropical abscess of the liver seen in England, *Amœba coli* can be detected in considerably over half the cases. This agrees with Kartulis's experience in Egypt, and that of others elsewhere. I have observed in a good many instances in which I have failed to detect the amœba in the aspirated liver pus, or in the pus which escaped at the time of operation, that the parasite appeared, often in great profusion, four or five days later in the discharge from the drainage-tube. I have seen them in these circumstances in strings of eight or ten, the string-like arrangement suggesting that they had developed in some tube, such as a blood-vessel. The amœbæ persist in the discharge until the abscess has healed. It is justifiable to infer from the absence of amœbæ in the pus constituting what might be called the body of the abscess, and their appearance in the pus coming from the walls of the abscess a few days later, that the habitat of the parasite is not so much the pus occupying



the general abscess cavity as that immediately in contact with the wall and the breaking-down tissues themselves. This is an inference entirely in harmony with Councilman and Lafleur's demonstration, confirmed by Marshall (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, June 10, 1899), of the parasite in the still living tissues around the abscess. In my experience the presence of the amœba does not affect prognosis unfavourably; Lafleur ("System of Medicine," Allbutt, vol. ix., 1897) says it does; I cannot agree with him, as I have many times seen amœbic liver abscess cases recover completely and rapidly after operation.

Other protozoa have been found in liver pus. Thus both Grimm and Berndt have found numerous active flagella therein. Some time ago, in the expectorated pus from a liver abscess discharging through the right lung, I found a ciliated infusorium resembling *Balantidium coli*.

In the pus of a large proportion of liver abscesses, both microscopic examination and culture may fail to detect the usual pyogenic micro-organisms. To harmonise this well-established fact with modern views on the cause and nature of the suppurative process, it has been suggested that, though in these sterile abscesses micro-organisms had originally been present, they had subsequently died out. This view receives a measure of support from the fact that in a proportion of instances there is no difficulty in demonstrating in the pus the ordinary pyogenic bacteria and, sometimes, the *Bacterium coli commune*. It by no means follows from this, however, that bacteria are a necessary factor in the production of all liver abscesses.

*Encystment.*—In rare instances the pus of liver abscess, instead of possessing the chocolate colour and viscid consistency described above, is yellow and creamy. This is particularly the case when the abscess becomes encysted—an occasional event. The walls of these encysted abscesses are thick, smooth, resistant, and fibrous. In time their contents become cheesy, and ultimately cretified; in the



latter event the cyst shrivels up and contracts to a small size.

**Pathology.**—The pathology of liver abscess has been a fruitful source of speculation and controversy. Much confusion has crept into the question from attempts to separate, ætiologically and pathologically, multiple from single liver abscess. The former is often called “pyæmic abscess” or “dysenteric abscess,” and has been set down as being the peculiar sequel of dysentery; the latter has been called and considered the “tropical abscess” *par excellence*, and regarded as idiopathic and entirely unconnected with dysentery.

As already pointed out, a careful examination of cases and statistics shows that both forms of abscess, single and multiple alike, are, in the vast majority of instances, clearly associated with dysentery. The dysenteric association, therefore, will not hold as a basis of classification and distinction. In their respective clinical histories, in their symptoms, in the characters of their walls and contents, in the frequent presence of *Amœba coli*, single and multiple abscesses are practically identical. The only difference between them is a numerical one; also a circumstance quite inadequate to base a doctrine of specific distinction on.

The view which I incline to hold on this subject has already been partly indicated in the section on ætiology. There are two factors which are principally concerned in the production of liver abscess: (1) the predisposing—weakening of the resistive faculty of the liver by chronic congestion or tissue degeneration, and, perhaps, other subtle changes brought about by a combination of climatic, dietetic, and other tropical conditions; (2) the exciting—some micro-organism, streptococcus, staphylococcus, *Bacterium coli commune*, amœba, or other parasite which, coming from the ulcerated dysenteric colon, or by way of the portal circulation (Marshall has recently demonstrated *Amœba coli* in a thrombus in



a branch of this vessel), gains access to the liver and proliferates in the weakened tissues. In at least 90 per cent. of cases the pyogenic micro-organism is derived from dysenteric processes in the colon. Whether the resulting abscess be single or multiple is more or less a matter of accident. If the weakened liver is efficiently inoculated at one point only, there is only one abscess; if at many points, then there is multiple abscess. This is virtually, in a sense, Budd's theory expressed in modern terms.

An apparently weighty objection to this view is sometimes urged. Why, it is asked, if liver abscess be the result of septic absorption from a dysenteric ulcer, is it not a common sequel of typhoidal or of tuberculous ulceration in the tropics? Macleod has met this objection very ingeniously and, I believe, to a certain extent, correctly. He points to the fact that typhoidal and tuberculous ulcerations are surface lesions unattended with abscess formation in the wall of the bowel. In their case there is free escape of the products and germs of ulceration; whereas in dysenteric lesions, in addition to the superficial ulceration, there is often what is really abscess formation with burrowing and retention of pus below the mucous membrane, and therefore great liability to entrance of micro-organisms into the radicles of the portal vein. Liver abscess, therefore, according to this view, is a pyæmic process. Often, however, it must be confessed, the dysentery preceding liver abscess appears, judging from the symptoms, to be of the catarrhal rather than of a more severe type.

To what extent *Amœba coli* is concerned as an occasional, or even common, cause of liver abscess it is as yet impossible to state. But if we watch the movements of this animal on the warm stage; and if we reflect that it lives and wanders about in the same very active way among the structures forming the walls of the liver abscess, and even in what are comparatively sound tissues, preceding, as it were, the suppuration; and consider that it lives at the



expense of these tissues, it is hard to resist the conclusion that the amœba operates as a disintegrating and irritating agency. Kartulis suggests that it may act merely as a carrier of pus-forming bacteria. Others maintain that it is a harmless epiphenomenon, incapable in any way of inducing pus-formation.

Calmette, in view of the frequency with which he and others have found liver abscess to be sterile, suggests that the exciting agency is of a chemical nature, some irritating liquefying body derived from the decomposition processes going on on the surface of the dysenteric ulcer.

**Diagnosis.**—Of all the grave tropical diseases none is so frequently overlooked as abscess of the liver. Acute sthenic cases are readily enough recognised; not so the insidious asthenic cases. The novice in tropical practice is some time in realising that grave disease of so important an organ as the liver may, for a long time, be unattended with urgent symptoms, whether local or constitutional, or both.

The most common mistakes in diagnosis are : (1) Failure to recognise the presence of disease of any description, even when an enormous abscess may occupy the liver. (2) Misinterpretation of the significance and nature of a basic pneumonia—a condition so often accompanying suppurative hepatitis. (3) Attributing the fever symptomatic of liver abscess to malaria. (4) Mistaking other diseases for abscess of the liver and *vice versa*—for example, hepatitis of a non-suppurative nature, such as that attending malarial attacks; suppurative hepatitis before the formation of abscess; syphilitic disease of the liver—softening gummata, which are often attended with fever of a hectic type; pylephlebitis; suppurating hydatid; gall-stone and inflammation of the gall-bladder; subphrenic abscess; abscess of the abdominal or thoracic wall; pleurisy; encysted empyema; pyelitis of the right kidney; pernicious anæmia; leucocythæmia; scurvy and similar blood diseases associated with enlargement of the liver;



ulcerative endocarditis. Any of these may be attended with fever of a hectic type, increased area of hepatic percussion dulness, and pain in or about the liver.

Many times a correct diagnosis can be arrived at only by repeated and careful study of the case in all its aspects. Golden rules in tropical practice are to think of hepatic abscess in all cases of progressive deterioration of health; and to suspect liver abscess in all obscure abdominal cases associated with evening rise of temperature, and this particularly if there be enlargement or pain in the liver and a history of dysentery — not necessarily recent dysentery. If doubt exists, there should be no hesitation in having early recourse to the aspirator to clear up diagnosis.

As bearing on prognosis, apart from the risk from sudden rupture in some untoward direction, to overlook abscess of the liver is a much graver error than to mistake some other disease for liver abscess; for the chances of recovery from operation are proportionately prejudiced by every day's delay.

Low pneumonia of the right base in a tropical patient should always be regarded with suspicion; in most instances it means abscess of the subjacent liver.

Perhaps the most common error is to regard the hectic of liver abscess as attributable to malaria. The regularity with which the daily fever recurs, the daily chilliness or even rigor coming on about the same hour, the profuse sweating, and other circumstances so compatible with a diagnosis of malaria, all contribute to this mistake. So common is the error that Osler says he hardly ever meets with a case of liver abscess which has not been drenched with quinine. My experience is the same. I have seen medical men make this mistake, not only in their patients, but in their own persons. If carefully considered, there are several circumstances which should obviate so serious an error. (1) No uncomplicated ague resists quinine in full doses. (2) In malaria,



if the liver be enlarged the spleen is still more so ; the reverse is the case in liver abscess. (3) The plasmodium cannot be found in the blood in non-malarial hepatitis. (4) In liver abscess the fever is almost invariably an evening one ; in malaria it most frequently comes on earlier in the day. (5) Quotidian periodicity, contrary to what is the case with tertian or quartan periodicity, is by no means pathognomonic of, or peculiar to, malaria. (6) The almost invariable history of antecedent dysentery, or, at least, of bowel complaint, in liver abscess.

To mistake other forms of suppuration for liver abscess is of no great moment, because in many of the suppurative diseases just enumerated the treatment is the same as for liver abscess, and no bad result need be looked for if diagnosis is not quite accurate. A more serious error, however, is to overlook the presence of leucocythæmia, pernicious anæmia, or scurvy, and to proceed to aspirate an enlarged liver on the supposition that the symptoms arise from abscess. Fatal intraperitoneal hæmorrhage from the puncture has been known to ensue in such circumstances. If any doubt exists on this point, a microscopic examination of the blood should be made before proceeding to explore.

A point to note in exploring is, that when the instrument enters the liver, an up-and-down pendulum-like movement will be communicated to the outer extremity of the needle in harmony with the rising and falling of the organ in respiration. If the needle does not exhibit this movement, its point may be in an abscess cavity, but this abscess is not in the liver.

**Treatment.**—Hepatitis which has not proceeded to abscess formation should be treated, in the absence of dysentery, with free purging by the sulphates, massive hot poultices, low diet, and rest in bed. If there be much pain, relief may be afforded by either wet or dry cupping over the liver, or by leeches around the anus. Ammonium chloride, in twenty-grain doses three times a day, is usually prescribed. If



dysentery be present, the case should be treated with full doses of ipecacuanha, repeated once or twice a day for two or three days, or by a cautious use of the purgative sulphates, and by poultices, rest, and low diet.

When the occurrence of rigor, or the development of hectic, or the appearance of local bulging, or the persistency of the fever and of the local symptoms, gives grounds for suspecting that abscess has formed, active medication must be suspended, a somewhat improved dietary prescribed, and measures taken without unnecessary delay to locate by means of the aspirator the position of the pus.

When he proceeds to use the aspirator, the surgeon must be prepared to open and drain the abscess if pus be discovered ; once diagnosis is established, nothing is gained by delay. By proceeding to open the abscess at once the shock of a double operation is avoided, and only one administration of the anæsthetic is required.

To facilitate aspiration, as well as the subsequent operation if such should be found to be necessary, the patient ought invariably to be placed under an anæsthetic. Unless in very special and exceptional circumstances, it is a mistake to attempt exploration without this, for the surgeon ought to proceed with deliberation and to feel himself at liberty to make as many punctures as he may think necessary. A medium- or full-sized aspirator needle should be used, as owing to the nature of the pus it may not flow through a cannula of small bore.

If there are localising signs, such as a tender spot, a fixed pain, localised bulging, localised pneumonic crepitus, pleuritic or peritoneal friction, these should be taken as indicating, with some probability, the seat of the abscess and the most promising spot for the exploratory puncture. If none of these localising signs are present, then, considering the fact that the majority of liver abscesses are situated in the upper and back part of the right lobe, the needle should, in the first instance, be inserted in the axillary line in the eighth or ninth interspace, about an inch



or an inch and a half from the costal margin and well below the limit of the pleura. The instrument should be carried in a direction inwards and slightly upwards and backwards and, if found necessary, to its full extent. If pus be not struck the needle must be slowly withdrawn, a good vacuum being maintained the while in case the abscess has been transfixed and the point of the needle lodged in the sound tissue beyond. No pus appearing in the aspirator the remainder of the dull hepatic area must be systematically explored, both in front and behind, regard being had for the lung and pleura on the one hand, and for the gall-bladder, large vessels, and intestine on the other. The peculiar colour—often like dirty brown thick blood—of liver pus must not be allowed to deceive the operator into thinking that he has failed to strike the abscess.

At least six punctures should be made before the attempt to find pus is abandoned. Provided there is complete absence of breath sounds, of vocal fremitus and resonance over the lower part of the right lung, and pus has not been reached from lower down, then the pleura or lung may be disregarded and puncture made anywhere below the line of the nipple and angle of the scapula, or wherever the physical signs suggest.

The surgeon should be encouraged to make early use of the aspirator by the fact that its employment, even where no pus is discovered, is not infrequently followed by rapid improvement in all the symptoms; many such cases are on record. Hepatic phlebotomy, as Dr. George Harley designated the removal from the liver of a few ounces of blood by the aspirator needle, is a measure of proved value in hepatitis. With due care, risk from hæmorrhage is small; it is very small indeed in comparison with the risk of allowing a hepatic abscess to remain undiscovered and unopened.

It is hardly necessary to add that strict aseptic precautions, in the way of purifying the patient's skin, the surgeon's hands, and all instruments, must be carefully observed.



*Operations for abscess of the liver.*—The following is the operation usually practised by English surgeons. It is substantially that described by Mr. Godlee in the *British Medical Journal* of January 11th, 1890, to which the reader is referred for many valuable details and practical hints.

If pus is struck below the costal border, the aspirator needle being left *in situ* as a guide, the abdominal wall is incised down to the peritoneum. A three-inch incision will give plenty of room. If firm adhesions be discovered, a sinus forceps is at once run along the needle, and pushed through the intervening liver tissue and into the abscess. The aspirator cannula is now removed, and the blades of the forceps are opened sufficiently, as it is being withdrawn, to make a wound in the liver big enough to admit the fore-finger, which must now be inserted and moved about so as to enlarge the wound and to gain some idea as to the size and direction of the cavity of the abscess. A rubber drainage-tube, about as large as the finger, and provided with a flange, is cut to a suitable length, and carried by means of the forceps to the back of the abscess. The abscess is then allowed to empty itself. When pus no longer flows freely, a massive antiseptic dressing is applied and firmly secured by a broad binder or many-tailed bandage.

If after division of the abdominal wall no reliable adhesions be discovered between this and the liver, the capsule of the latter must be securely attached to the former by a double circle of stitches. The abscess is then to be opened, as above described, with sinus forceps. After stitching, some surgeons prefer before opening the abscess, first to stuff the wound in the abdominal wall with iodoform gauze, and to wait for a day or two for adhesions to form. Others stuff the wound with gauze without previous stitching.

Should the abscess be struck through an intercostal space, and if the latter be not deemed sufficiently wide to admit of manipulation and free drainage, a couple of inches of rib had better be



excised. The diaphragm may then be stitched to the thoracic wall or, better, to the skin as well, when the abscess may be opened with forceps. To stitch the capsule of the liver to the diaphragm is a somewhat difficult proceeding; but if there are no reliable adhesions it had better be attempted, especially if the opening is to be made through a part of the liver covered by peritoneum. If, by any chance, the pleura is opened during the operation pneumothorax will result, an unfortunate, but not necessarily a serious, contingency. In this case the hole in the pleura must be carefully stitched in such a way that the pleural cavity is completely cut off before the diaphragm is divided and the abscess opened. Pus must not on any account be allowed to enter the pleural cavity; this, owing to the aspirating influence of inspiration, it would readily do if the smallest hole should remain patent. The young surgeon would do well to practise these operations on the dead body, and familiarise himself with the relations of the various structures they involve.

Some operators of experience completely ignore the absence of peritoneal adhesions, and, even in these circumstances, open the abscess without previous stitching of peritoneal surfaces. The risk and danger of escape of pus into the peritoneal cavity, they hold, is very small if free drainage to the outside is secured. Dr. Neil Macleod considers that, in the circumstances, stitches will not hold in the soft and inflamed liver tissue; he also considers that, in the event of the incision having to be made in the thoracic wall, removal of part of a rib is unnecessary. On account of the liability of the rubber drainage-tube to become nipped when the emptying sac causes a want of correspondence between the wound in the abdominal or thoracic wall and that in the liver, and, also, on account of facility of introduction during the subsequent dressings, this operator uses metal drainage-tubes of suitable lengths—four inches, three and a quarter in., two and a half in., and one and three-



quarter in.—with an oval lumen of four-tenths by three-tenths of an inch. These tubes he introduces by means of a special guide (*Brit. Med. Jour.*, Dec. 26, 1891).

*The author's method.*—The following easy, rapid, and efficient method of operating on abscess of the liver I have frequently practised, and can recommend. The necessary apparatus (Fig. 43), which can be made by native workmen, consists of a large trocar and cannula (*a*), four to five inches long, by three-eighths of an inch in diameter; a steel stilette (*b*) at least fourteen inches in length; two metal buttons (*c, d*)  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch at their greatest diameter, with long (half-inch), hollow, roughened necks into which the ends of the stilette fit loosely; six inches of  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch stout drainage tubing (*e*). While the ends of the drainage tubing are held and well stretched by an assistant, they are firmly lashed to the stem of the buttons, over the ends of the shorter (*d*) of which, for additional security, the tubing is also tied (*e*). Two large holes, to provide for free drainage, are then cut close to one end of the drainage-tube. The tube is then mounted on the stilette by inserting one end of the latter through one of the drainage holes and lodging it in the hollow neck of the distal button (*c*), and thereafter so stretching the rubber that the other end of the stilette can be inserted into the neck of the other button (*d*). When thus stretched, the drainage-tube should be capable of passing easily through the cannula. The apparatus being thus prepared and rendered thoroughly aseptic by soaking in carbolic lotion, and the position and depth of the abscess having been carefully ascertained by means of the aspirator and noted, the aspirator is withdrawn and an incision about an inch in length made with a scalpel through the skin at the site of the puncture. The trocar and cannula are then thrust into the abscess and the trocar is withdrawn. After allowing a small quantity of pus to escape, so as to relieve any tension that may be present in the abscess sac, the



stretched drainage-tube, perforated end first, is slipped into the cannula and carried to the back of the abscess. Holding the stretched drainage-tube firmly, and maintaining it carefully in contact with the back of the abscess with one hand, the cannula is withdrawn with the other. Still grasping the

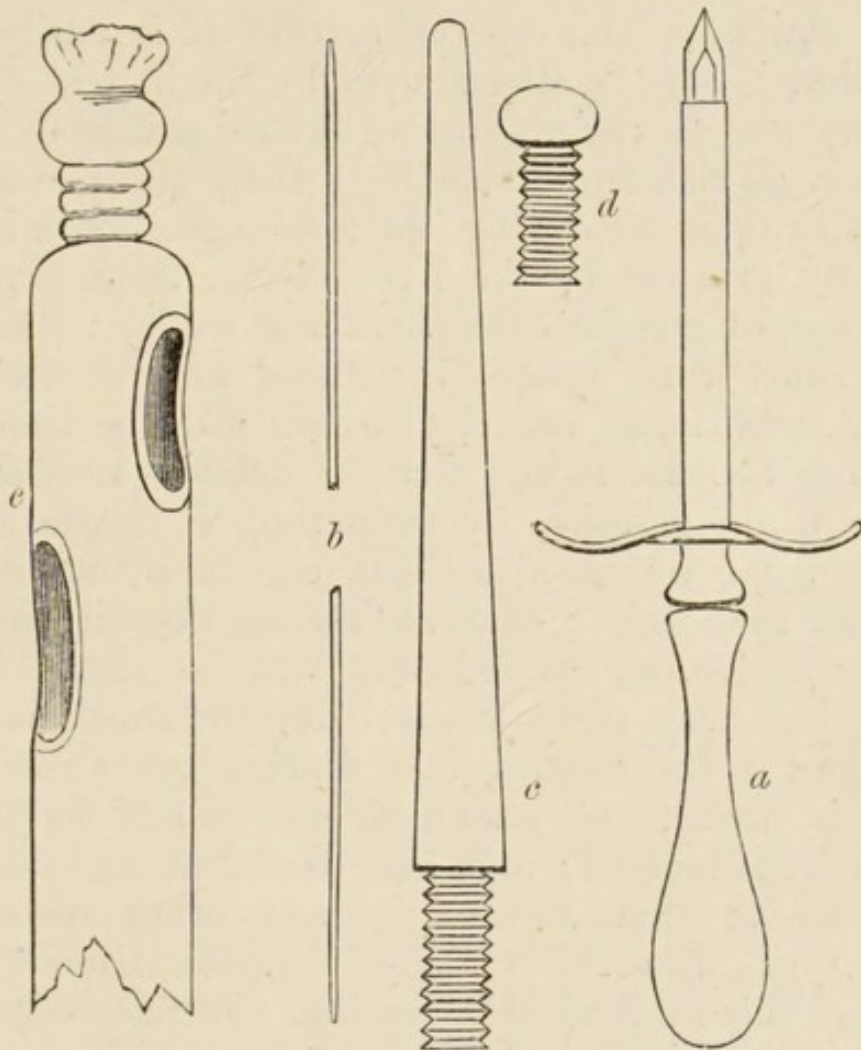


Fig. 43.—Apparatus for operation for Abscess of the Liver. (*a* and *b* reduced.)

drainage-tube firmly, the button on the free end of the apparatus is slipped off the stilette, the end of which is made to perforate the drainage-tube close to the button. This it readily does, and the drainage-tube is allowed slowly to resile towards the fixed end, still held in contact with the back of the abscess. When the drainage-tube has completely contracted, the stilette is withdrawn. The drainage-tube is now transfixed with a safety-pin inserted close to the skin, and the superfluous tubing cut off. Pus flows freely



from the tube which now firmly plugs the wound in the abdominal wall and liver, and bridges the peritoneal cavity. When the abscess has nearly emptied itself the usual antiseptic dressing is applied. In operating through the thoracic wall, if deemed desirable, part of a rib may be excised before the trocar is introduced.

I claim for this operation that it is easily done, and that it may be undertaken by the merest tyro in surgery and in the absence of skilled assistance; that there is no risk from bleeding; that, the peritoneum being bridged across by the drainage-tube which is securely grasped by the liver tissue, there is no risk of escape of pus into the peritoneal cavity; that in a very short time lymph is effused around the tube, giving additional security when, after a time, the tube has become loose; that, if deemed necessary, a larger drainage-tube, by stretching it on the stilette in the same way as described, can be substituted for the half-inch tube; that an abscess deep in the liver can be as readily opened, and with as little risk, as one lying near the surface; that the shock is much less than in the cutting and tearing operation; that there is no risk of pneumothorax should the pleural cavity be traversed; and that the drainage obtained is equal to that secured by any other method of operating. Several of my surgical friends have adopted this method of operating, and have expressed great satisfaction with the ease with which it is performed, and with the results.

*Other operations.* — Some Continental surgeons recommend extensive incision of the liver, using a Paquelin's knife with the view of minimising bleeding. Zancarol, for example, advises that the hepatic and integumental incisions should extend the whole breadth of the abscess cavity, which he mops out and stuffs with iodoform gauze. Certain French surgeons recommend scraping the abscess cavity; most practise irrigation with some antiseptic fluid. These methods do not find favour with English or Indian surgeons.



The method of opening the abscess by caustics, formerly much in vogue, is now abandoned; equally so another method, also formerly employed—namely, that of leaving a rigid trocar in the wound.

*Treatment after operation.*—For the first few days after a liver abscess has been opened the discharge is considerable, and the dressing may have to be changed frequently. Very soon, however, should the case do well, the discharge rapidly diminishes, and the dressing requires renewal only every other day or every three or four days. During the first week the drainage-tube, provided it be acting efficiently, should not be disturbed, more particularly as it may be difficult to replace. Later, it may be removed and cleaned, and when discharge has practically ceased, cautiously shortened; it is a great mistake, however, to begin shortening the tube before it is being pushed out, or so long as there is any appreciable discharge. If there is the slightest indication, such as rise of temperature, that pus is being retained, the drainage must be rectified and the sinus, if necessary, dilated with forceps and finger, and a full-sized drainage-tube introduced as far as it will go. If this does not suffice, a counter-opening may have to be made. Delay in remedying imperfect drainage is a serious error.

Should an abscess on being opened be found to be septic, or should it become so, it must be flushed out daily, or twice a day, with a weak non-mercurial antiseptic, and a counter-opening made if necessary.

After liver abscess has been opened and is draining well, temperature rapidly falls and, in a few days or almost at once, becomes normal. Should fever persist, it is to be inferred either that the drainage is inefficient, or that there are more abscesses in the liver, or that there is some complication. If it be deemed that there is another abscess, this should be sought for with the aspirator, and, if found, opened and drained. I have seen a patient recover after three abscesses had been so treated.



*Treatment of abscess discharging through the lung.*—In the case of abscess discharging through the lung, and not progressing favourably, the question of obtaining by surgical means more efficient drainage must be considered. There are two possibilities which render interference desirable. (a) Continued discharge of pus and blood, with or without attendant hectic; a condition which, if it persists, in all probability will in the end kill the patient. (b) Not infrequently prolonged discharge through the lung may induce fibrotic changes in that organ, or may give rise to pneumonia, or to abscess of the lung with all its attendant dangers. In these circumstances it is sometimes difficult to arrive at a decision as to whether an attempt should be made to open and drain the abscess, or to leave it alone. A large proportion of the cases recovers, but at least an equally large number dies. Of the latter, by timely surgical interference, a proportion may certainly be saved.

In all cases of abscess discharging through the lung a careful register should be kept of three things—body temperature, daily amount and character of expectoration, and, once a week, the weight of the patient. If temperature keeps up, if the amount of pus continues the same or increases, or if the patient continues to lose weight, an attempt should be made at all risks to reach and drain the abscess from the outside. If temperature keeps normal, if pus gradually or intermittently decreases, and if the body-weight be maintained or increases, operation is unnecessary, or, at all events, should be deferred.

In exploring the liver in such cases, it must be borne in mind that most likely the abscess cavity is collapsed, and that the sides of the abscess are in contact. Such an abscess is not likely to be discovered unless the needle be thrust in to its full extent, and, whilst a good vacuum is being maintained in the aspirator, slowly withdrawn. If by good fortune the abscess has been traversed, then, when the end



of the needle crosses the cavity, a small amount of pus will be seen to flow. Great care must now be exercised to keep the needle in position so as to serve as a guide in opening the abscess. Recovery has been known to follow the introduction of a drainage-tube in the presumed direction of such an abscess, even although the abscess cavity was not entered, much less drained by the tube.

*Treatment of abscess rupturing into a serous cavity.*—When there is evidence that an abscess of the liver has ruptured into the peritoneum, into the pleura, or into the pericardium, the particular serous cavity involved must be opened at once and treated on general surgical principles; otherwise, the patient will almost surely die. In the circumstances the surgeon will be justified in assuming great risks.

The *prognosis in early operations* on single abscess of the liver, provided there is no dysentery or other complication, is good. In multiple abscess, or in single abscess if there is active dysentery or other serious complication, prognosis is bad. In multiple abscess, if there are more than two or three abscesses, it is necessarily hopeless.

The *question of return to the tropics* after recovery from liver abscess frequently crops up. If feasible, and if the patient has not to make too great a sacrifice, he ought to remain in a temperate and healthy climate. There are many instances, however, of individuals who have enjoyed permanent good health in the tropics after recovery from liver abscess.



## CHAPTER XXVI.

## INFANTILE BILIARY CIRRHOSIS.

WITHIN the last fifteen or sixteen years, a peculiar disease of the liver has been noticed in children in Calcutta and, to a less extent, in other large towns of India. It is found to be more prevalent in Hindoo than in Mahomedan children. Thus, in Calcutta, from 1891 to 1893 inclusive, infantile biliary cirrhosis, the name given to this disease, caused 1,748 deaths. Although the Hindoo and Mahomedan populations of that city are about equal, yet as many as 1,616 of the deaths occurred in Hindoos, whilst only eighty occurred among Mahomedans, the balance of the mortality being among the Eurasians and other races. The disease occurs principally in children under one year, rarely attacking those over three years. As a rule, it commences during dentition, or about the seventh or eighth month, running a fatal course in from three to eight months. In rare cases it may commence within a few days of birth. Instead of lasting several months, its progress may be much more rapid, and terminate in death in from two to three weeks.

The cause of infantile biliary cirrhosis is quite unknown. Neither alcohol, syphilis, nor malaria has anything to do with it. The children of the well-to-do are relatively more frequently attacked than those of the poor. It has also been observed that it tends to run in families, child after child of the same parents succumbing within a year or two of birth. In 400 cases Ghose had only six recoveries; in some of these recoveries the diagnosis was doubtful.

**Symptoms.**—Commencing insidiously, the characteristic initial enlargement of the liver may have



made considerable progress before the disease is suspected. Nausea, occasional vomiting, sallowness, feverishness, constipation, anorexia, irritability of temper, thirst and languor call attention to the child's condition. On examination, the liver is found to be enormously enlarged, extending perhaps to the umbilicus or even lower. The surface of the organ is smooth; the edge, at first rounded and prominent, as the liver begins to contract becomes sharp and distinct and can be readily grasped between the fingers, the swollen organ feeling hard and resistant. Fever of a low type sets in; the sallowness deepens into profound jaundice; the stools are pale, the urine is dark; and there may be ascites, with puffiness of the feet and hands. Sooner or later, death from cholæmia ensues.

**Pathological anatomy and pathology.—**

Surgeon-Major Gibbons, who has given an elaborate and most careful account of the pathological anatomy of this disease, concludes that it is a peculiar form of biliary cirrhosis, the consequence of the action on the liver cells of some irritant of gastric origin, which leads to degeneration of the cells in the first instance, with subsequent increase of intercellular connective tissue and, later, of the portal sheaths. The formation of new bile ducts between the hepatic cells, which is a well-marked feature, he regards as evidence of a natural curative effort having for its object a regeneration of the liver cells.

**Treatment.**—Hitherto, in this disease, treatment has been of little avail. There is some ground, however, for thinking that early removal from the endemic locality, and a complete change of wet-nurse and food, might have a beneficial effect. (*Trans. First Calcutta Med. Cong.*)



## CHAPTER XXVII.

## PONOS.

UNDER the name "Ponos" Karamitsas (*Gaz. des Hôpit.*, 1880) and Stephanos (*Gaz. Heb. de Méd.*, 1881) have described a peculiar disease endemic in the islands of Spezzia and Hydra in the Grecian Archipelago. Ponos, in a sense, is analogous to the infantile biliary cirrhosis of Indian cities. Like the latter, it is confined to very young children, it is endemic in particular districts, tends to run in particular families, to pursue a more or less chronic course, and is invariably associated with disease of an abdominal viscus—in this case the spleen. Though not invariably so, it is usually fatal.

**Symptoms.**—Commencing somewhat suddenly and, commonly, during the first year of life, the earliest symptoms to attract the attention of the parents are languor and a pallor which rapidly acquires a sallow tint. Fever of an irregular character sets in; the spleen enlarges; prostration is very marked; and, it is said, the urine exhales a peculiarly disagreeable odour. Emaciation becomes progressive. Although the digestion is enfeebled and constipation is nearly always present at first, the appetite is fairly preserved, although it may be perverted or excessive. The spleen gradually attains a great size, and is tender—hence the name, "ponos" (pain). The associated fever is of an irregular character, tending to become remittent, the thermometer rising during the exacerbations to 39° or 40° Cent.; towards the end the fever assumes hectic characters. Complications in the form of bronchitis, pneumonia, diarrhœa, dysentery, peritonitis, or meningitis may show themselves. When



the disease has been established for some time œdema and ascites may occur, and there may be hæmorrhages in or from various organs, especially the gums. In certain cases boils, and even patches of superficial gangrene, are met with. The progress of the disease is very variable ; it may last from one or two months to one or two years.

**Pathological anatomy and pathology.—**

Of these nothing is known further than that ponos exhibits none of the characteristic lesions of tuberculosis, of leukæmia, or of malaria. Its cause is quite unknown. It has been remarked, however, that it is prone to occur in the children of those who have themselves suffered in infancy in the same way. It is said that in the case of the disease attacking the child of a tuberculous mother, recovery will very promptly set in if the child be supplied with a healthy wet-nurse. It has been suggested that ponos is an expression of malaria, but the *post-mortem* evidences are altogether against this supposition ; moreover, malaria is said to be unknown in the two islands in which this peculiar disease is endemic. The tendency to bleeding from the gums, cutaneous ecchymoses, and liability to hæmorrhages suggest a scorbutic element. Ponos affects the children of rich and poor alike, and those living in good as well as those living in dirty, unhygienic houses.

**Treatment.**—No specific is known. Quinine, tonics, fruit juices, careful management of the food, and early change of residence would seem to be indicated.



## SECTION IV.—INFECTIVE GRANULOMATOUS DISEASES.

### CHAPTER XXVIII.

#### LEPROSY (*Elephantiasis Græcorum*).

**Definition.**—A chronic infective granulomatous disease produced by a specific bacterium, and characterised by lesions of the skin, nerves, and viscera eventuating in local anæsthesia, ulceration, and a great variety of trophic lesions. After a long course it is almost invariably fatal.

**History.**—The many allusions in the oldest Chinese, Indian, Syrian, and Egyptian writings to a chronic, disfiguring, and fatal affection possessing well-marked and characteristic skin lesions, warrant us in concluding that the disease now known as leprosy was as common and familiar in the East in times of remotest antiquity as it is at the present day.

There is some evidence—necessarily of a negative character—that leprosy is of comparatively recent introduction into Europe. The earlier Greek and Latin writers do not mention the disease. Hippocrates, who, had he been practically acquainted with leprosy, would undoubtedly have described it accurately and fully, makes but brief allusion to the subject. Aristotle is the first of the Greek writers to give an unequivocal description. We may infer, therefore, that the introduction of leprosy into Greece probably took place between the time of Hippocrates and that of Aristotle—that is to say, between 400 B.C. and 345 B.C. Most likely it came from Egypt. In the time of Celsus—53 B.C. to A.D. 7—it was still a rare disease in Italy ; but, during the earlier centuries



of our era it increased there, and, probably following in the wake of the Roman conquests, it appears to have spread thence over the greater part, if not over the whole, of Europe. By the end of the seventh century it was well known in Spain, France, and Lombardy. There is a notice of its occurrence in Ireland in 432. As regards England, the first allusion to leprosy refers to about the year 950. The popular idea that it was brought to this country from the East by the returning Crusaders (*circa* 1098) is therefore incorrect; though, doubtless, the Crusaders, and the multiplicity of pilgrimages so much the fashion in the Middle Ages, and the destitution arising from the many wars of the period, had something to do with its rapid diffusion and great increase about this time.

So common was leprosy during the Middle Ages that the rulers and clergy of nearly all European States, becoming alarmed at its rapid extension and terrible ravages, took measures, by instituting leper asylums and enacting stringent laws for the segregation and isolation of lepers, to restrict the spread of what was speedily becoming almost a general calamity. These measures, based on what we now know to be a correct appreciation of the infectious nature of the disease, were ultimately crowned, in the case of most European countries, by almost complete success. Reaching its acme during the fourteenth century, leprosy then began gradually to decline, although as regards Great Britain it did not finally disappear as an indigenous disease until the end of last century. It died out first in England, later in Scotland—the last British leper dying in Shetland in 1798. In Italy, France, Spain, Germany, and Russia the repressive measures were almost equally successful, although in these countries, in Greece, and in the Greek islands leprosy of indigenous origin is still occasionally to be seen. The only country in Northern Europe in which at the present day it may be said to linger to any extent is Norway, where, in places, it is still by no



means uncommon (in 1890 there were 1,100 known lepers); but even here, under a system of segregation and comparative isolation—more humane perhaps in its application than that practised by our ancestors, although identical with it in principle—the disease is rapidly dying out.

Apart from Egypt, we know nothing of the early history of leprosy in Africa. We are equally ignorant as regards aboriginal America. The historians of the Spanish conquest do not allude to it as a native disease; we appear, therefore, to be justified from this circumstance in concluding that the introduction of leprosy into the New World was probably effected through the negroes in the days of the slave trade.

*Rise of modern knowledge of leprosy.*—The more important landmarks in our modern knowledge of leprosy are, first, the publication in 1848 of Danielssen and Boeck's *Traité de la Spedalskhed*, in which, for the first time, the clinical features of the disease were carefully and critically described; second, the descriptions of the macroscopic and microscopic lesions—the leproma, the nerve lesions, and the lepra cell—by Virchow, Vandyke Carter, and many others; and last, the discovery in 1874 by Armauer Hansen of the specific cause of leprosy—the *Bacillus lepræ*—a discovery which brings this disease into line with tubercle, and which has given a much-needed precision to our ideas on the important subjects of heredity and contagion, and on other practical points bearing on the question of the leper as a source of public danger and on his treatment and management.

**Geographical distribution.**—Whatever may have been the case formerly, at the present day, with unimportant exceptions, leprosy is a disease more particularly of tropical and sub-tropical countries. So generally is it diffused in these that it would be more easy to specify the tropical countries in which leprosy has not, than to enumerate those in which it has, been ascertained to exist. Moreover, it is probable that in many of the countries not yet



positively known to harbour the disease it does really exist; for experience shows that the endemic area of leprosy enlarges as our knowledge of the natives of the uncivilised regions of the earth becomes more intimate. It may be safely concluded, therefore, that with the exception of a few insignificant islands, leprosy is an element, and often an important element, in the pathology of nearly all warm countries.

The only tropical country of any magnitude about which we have anything like accurate leprosy statistics is India; and even in this instance the figures, for many reasons—principally errors in diagnosis and concealment—are untrustworthy. According to the census of 1891, after making allowance for error, it is estimated that in British India there were 105,000 lepers in a population of 210,000,000—a ratio of about 5 in 10,000. Respecting China, of all countries probably the one in which there is the largest number of lepers, we have no figures to go by; but, judging from what is seen in the coast towns and treaty ports, the number of lepers there is even greater than in India. In Japan, in the Philippines, in Cochin China, in the Malay peninsula, in the islands of the Eastern Archipelago, and in several of the South Pacific islands, in Persia, Arabia, and Africa, the disease is common enough. The same may be said of the West Indies and of the tropical regions of America.

As regards more temperate countries, we know that there is a considerable number of lepers at the Cape, a few in Australia (principally Chinese but also a few Europeans), a few in San Francisco (Chinese). In Canada and in the United States there are also a few lepers of European blood, but their number is quite insignificant. In New Zealand, where leprosy was at one time common among the Maoris, it has died out. There are a good many lepers in Iceland. It is also reported as existing among the aborigines of the Aleutian peninsula and



Kamschkatka. In Great Britain and other European countries, particularly in the capital cities, lepers are not infrequently exhibited at medical societies; but, with rare exceptions, these cases are not of indigenous origin, most of them having contracted the disease abroad.

Though thus extensively diffused, leprosy is by no means equally prevalent throughout the wide area indicated. Thus in China it is comparatively rare in the northern provinces, excessively common in the southern. In India a similar caprice of distribution is noted; in Burdwan, for example, the proportion of lepers in 10,000 of the population is as high as 19·5, whereas in several other districts it is as low as 1·5, or even lower. This caprice of distribution does not seem to depend on climate, geological formation, or suchlike physical conditions; leprosy is found in mountainous districts, on the plains, on the coast, in the interior, in all varieties of climate, and on all kinds of geological strata. Social conditions, it would seem, have most to do in determining distribution; its endemic prevalence appearing to be bound up in some way with uncleanly habits, squalor, dirt, and poverty—not, be it noted, directly caused by these things, but associated with them.

*Recent introduction.*—An interesting and, from the ætiological standpoint, an important circumstance about the geographical distribution of leprosy is its appearance and rapid spread in recent times in certain islands whose inhabitants, there is good reason to believe, had previously been exempt. This modern introduction of leprosy into virgin soil, so to speak, has taken place in two islands at least—the Sandwich Islands and New Caledonia.

*Sandwich Islands.*—In the case of the Sandwich Islands leprosy was noted among the aborigines for the first time in 1859. After the most painstaking investigation Dr. Hildebrand failed to trace it farther back than 1848. Soon after its presence was recognised the disease spread so rapidly that by the year



1865 there were 230 known lepers in a population of 67,000. By 1891 the native population, from various causes, had diminished to 44,232; of these 1,500 were lepers—about 1 in 30.

*New Caledonia.*—In New Caledonia (Grall, *Arch. de Méd. Navale*, Oct., Nov., Dec., 1894) leprosy was unknown until 1865. It is supposed to have been introduced about that time by a Chinese; the man was well known. Its rapid diffusion throughout the island can be, and has been, traced step by step. In 1888 the lepers numbered 4,000.

*Isle of Pines.*—Similarly, in the Isle of Pines it was introduced in 1878, and has since spread. In the Loyalty Islands the first case was seen in 1882; in the island of Mare alone in 1888 there were 70 lepers.

**Symptoms.**—Although, as will afterwards be explained, the *Bacillus lepræ* is the cause of all leprosy, the clinical manifestations of its presence are far from being identical in every case; indeed, they are almost as varied as are those of syphilis or of tubercle. Our early conceptions of the disease, derived for the most part from the Bible or poetical literature, in which the leper is symbolical of all that is loathsome and hopeless, are apt to mislead. As a matter of fact, in its earlier stages leprosy is far from being always, or even generally, a striking disease. Often for years the only visible evidence of its existence may be two or three small blotches, or perhaps one or two patches of pale or pigmented skin on trunk or limbs—very likely concealed by the clothes and perhaps disregarded by the patient himself—the true significance and nature of which can be appreciated only by the expert. It is generally not until the later stages that we see the disfiguring and extensive lesions on which the popular conception is founded. As a rule, leprosy is a disease of very slow development. Sometimes, it is true, it is suddenly and frankly declared from the outset, and progresses rapidly; but, in the vast majority of cases, the early



lesions are trifling and are apt to be misinterpreted and overlooked, and years elapse before serious mutilation or deformity is produced. The student must bear this important practical fact in mind in the study and diagnosis of all equivocal skin lesions in persons residing in, or coming from, the endemic haunts of leprosy.

To facilitate description, it seems advisable to divide the evolution of leprosy into stages, premising, however, that the division proposed is in great measure an artificial one. What are here designated stages are not, all of them, in nature and in every instance, abruptly separated or even present; for the most part they merge imperceptibly into each other and, in not a few instances, some of them cannot be recognised.

1. The primary infection.
2. The period of incubation.
3. The prodromata.
4. The primary exanthem or macular stage.
5. The period of specific deposit.
6. The sequelæ — ulceration, paresis, trophic lesions.
7. Terminations.

1. *The primary infection.*—Seeing that leprosy is caused by a specific germ, there must have been a time in the history of every leper when the infecting germ entered the body. In the case of many specific diseases, such as syphilis, the site of the primary infection is indicated by a well-marked local lesion and the time of infection can usually be ascertained. So far as present knowledge goes, this much cannot be affirmed of leprosy; in this disease we know of nothing that indicates precisely either the seat or, with rare exceptions, the time of primary infection. In this respect leprosy resembles tuberculosis. We are equally ignorant as to the condition of the infecting germ, whether it enters the organ or organs through which it gains access as spore or as bacillus; and, also, as to the medium in or by which it is conveyed.



We cannot say whether it enters in food, in water, in air; whether it passes in through the unbroken epithelium, or whether it is inoculated on some accidental breach of surface, or, perhaps, introduced by some insect bite.

Recently Sticker found *Bacillus lepræ* in the nasal mucus in 128 out of 153 lepers examined. He considers that the initial lesion of the disease is a specific ulceration of the cartilaginous septum of the nose; this lesion persists and is an active source of infection during life. Of this condition epistaxis, he maintains, is often an early symptom.

Although we are in absolute ignorance as to the process of infection, we may be quite sure that in leprosy there is an act of infection, and that the infective material comes from another leper. Leprosy has never been shown to arise in a country *de novo*. There are many facts and arguments to support this statement; their discussion is deferred until the important practical subjects of heredity, contagion, and the hygienic questions connected therewith, come to be considered.

2. *The period of incubation*.—This is generally, possibly always, long, and has to be reckoned usually in years—two or three at least. There are cases on record in which the period of incubation must have been longer even than this. Danielssen mentions one in which the period was ten years. Leloir describes another in which fourteen years or more, and Høegh one in which twenty-seven years, elapsed between the time at which infection was presumed to have occurred and the first manifestations of the disease. On the other hand, cases are on record in which the incubation period was set down at three months or even at a few weeks.

3. *Prodromata*.—Fever of greater or less intensity, and occurring more or less frequently is, almost invariably, a feature of the prodromal stage of leprosy. Febrile attacks may recur off and on during one or two years. It is well to bear in mind that in tropical



countries such attacks are apt to be looked on as malarial. Another very common prodromal feature is an unaccountable feeling of weakness, accompanied usually by a sensation of heaviness and a tendency, it may be irresistible, to fall asleep at unusual times. Dyspeptic troubles, associated with diarrhoea in some cases, with constipation in others, and usually attributed to "liver," are also common. Epistaxis and dryness of the nostrils, corresponding to the epistaxis in the prodromal stage of typhoid, tuberculosis, and such as is sometimes met with in early syphilis, are noted by Leloir. Headache; vertigo; perversions of sensation—such as localised pruritus, hyperæsthesia, "pins and needles," neuralgic pains—intermittent for the most part, and perhaps very severe and especially common in the limbs and face; general aching, rheumatic-like pains in loins, back, and elsewhere; all or any of these for months may herald the explosion of leprosy. They point to a direct and early implication of the nervous system by the lepra bacillus, or to toxin poisoning by its products.

Another curious feature in early leprosy, also noted by Leloir, is the liability in many instances to excessive sweating, which comes on without apparent, or on very slight, provocation. I had once under observation an Englishman who subsequently developed leprosy, in whom this prodromal symptom was particularly pronounced, so pronounced that he had remarked it himself. This gentleman for many years kept a diary in which, among other things, he recorded very carefully matters relating to his health; so that it was easy to trace from this diary the gradual evolution of his leprosy. The first unequivocal manifestation of the disease, an extensive erythematous patch on the ulnar side of the left arm and hand, which afterwards became anæsthetic, and two or three pigmented spots on the cheek, back, and leg, was noted on March 3rd, 1894. Five years before this there is an entry in his diary, under date June 4th,



1889, of the first of a long series of severe headaches, transient febrile attacks, and progressive deterioration of health and vigour. Under date of June 9th, 1892, is the first mention of the profuse perspiration which, occurring without obvious cause, continued to be a prominent feature until several months after the appearance of the skin lesions referred to. In the diary such entries as the following frequently occur: "Nov. 20th, 1892.—Feel poorly and sweating inordinately; wondering what is coming over me. I am very ill." "Dec. 5th to 19th, 1892.—Ill in bed. I had furious sweats during this time, and had dreadful pains in the back, lower part." And again: "Dec. 21st, 22nd.—Feeling very ill; awful sweats; weak; done up." As pointed out by Leloir, this hyperidrosis may be general or it may be confined to particular parts, generally the trunk, the limbs being unaffected or even being the subject of anidrosis. A still more limited anidrosis is sometimes noted; it usually happens that these non-sweating spots become anæsthetic at a later period of the disease.

Just as in syphilis, in a very small proportion of cases of leprosy there is a complete absence of constitutional symptoms prior to the appearance of the specific skin eruption.

4. *The primary exanthem.* — After a longer or shorter period of indifferent health, and being sometimes preluded by an outburst more severe than usual of fever and other prodromic phenomena, an eruption appears on the skin. The occurrence of this generally coincides with, or is soon followed by, an improvement in the general health.

Although strictly macular, this eruption—the primary exanthem of leprosy—varies in different cases both as to the size of the spots, their number, duration, and other characteristics. They may be no larger than a millet seed, or they may occupy surfaces many inches in diameter; they may be numerous, or there may be only two or three. The earlier spots



are usually purely erythematous, disappearing on pressure, and being darkest in the centre and shading off towards the periphery. But in some cases they may be pigmented from the outset ; or they may be mere vitiliginous patches ; or all three forms of macula may concur in the same individual—erythematous, pigmented, and vitiliginous. In not a few lepers what in the first instance was an erythematous patch may in time become pigmented, or it may become pale ; in the latter case the loss of pigment is usually associated with a certain degree of atrophy of the cutis. Or it may be that the centre of an erythematous patch clears up, the periphery of the patch remaining red and perhaps becoming pigmented ; so that the affected spot comes to present the appearance of a red or dark ring, or portion of a ring, enclosing a patch of pale, usually anæsthetic skin. In certain instances the eruption of the various forms of maculæ may be preceded by local paræsthesiæ, such as a sense of burning, tingling, pricking, and so forth.

At first the maculæ may be evanescent and may fade wholly or in part in the course of a few days, weeks, or months ; but as the disease progresses, and fresh spots appear, they tend to greater permanency, to be more liable to pigmentation, and are partially or wholly anæsthetic from the outset, or subsequently become so.

A striking feature in this and in all leprous eruptions is the loss of the hair in the affected areas. Another striking circumstance in this connection is the fact that the most hairy part of the body, the scalp, is never affected either with leprous eruptions or with what could be considered leprous alopecia. As the face, particularly the superciliary region, is prone to all forms of leprous eruption, falling of the eyebrows is a very usual, very early, and very characteristic phenomenon. The beard, too, is apt to be patchy, particularly in nodular leprosy. In many instances, before they drop out, the individual hairs become white, or downy, or splintered, or monillated.



The most frequent seats of the primary macular eruption are the face, especially the superciliary region, the nose, cheeks, and ears ; the extensor surfaces of the limbs ; the backs of the hands ; the back, buttocks, abdomen, and chest. The palms of the hands and the soles of the feet are rarely if ever attacked ; the scalp is never attacked. At this stage of the disease the mucous membranes are very rarely affected.

In the distribution of the maculæ a rough symmetry may or may not be discernible.

5. *The period of specific deposit.* — During the stage just described, if there be any thickening of the skin or other evidence of new growth, it is barely perceptible to sight and but slightly to touch. Sooner or later, however, another stage is entered on, a stage characterised by the deposit or, rather, growth of a tissue possessing well-marked specific characters. This deposit occurs either in the skin, or in the continuity of the peripheral nerve trunks, or in both. If in the first situation, nodular or, as it is sometimes called, tuberculous leprosy is the result ; if in the second, we have nerve or anæsthetic leprosy ; if in both of these situations, then what is known as “mixed leprosy” is produced. These three forms of the completely developed disease, though having much in common, are, as a rule, clinically fairly distinguishable. It is customary, therefore, to describe them separately.

#### NODULAR LEPROSY.

This form of leprosy often appears without a well-marked preliminary macular stage, being ushered in, after a longer or shorter prodromic stage, by a smart attack of fever and the rapid development on the face or elsewhere of the specific lesion. In other instances a well-defined but, in comparison with nerve leprosy, short macular stage precedes the appearance of the characteristic lepromata (Fig. 44).

The essential element in nodular leprosy is the



leproma. The dimensions, the combinations, the situations, the growth, and the decay of this give rise to the more manifest symptoms of the earlier stages, at all events, of the disease. The leproma, which will be more fully described in the section on the pathological anatomy of leprosy, is formed by infiltration of the deeper layers of the derma with what at first is a small-celled, somewhat dense neoplasm. As this slowly or more rapidly increases it forms a prominent, rounded boss or protuberance covered with unbroken epidermis. In size it ranges from the dimensions of a split pea, or of a bean, to a great plaque many inches across. In colour it is different according to its age and condition, and according to the natural hue of the skin of the leper; it varies from red to dirty pink in the earlier and congestive active stage, to dark brown or dirty yellow in the later stages. It is generally, though not always, especially at first, anæsthetic to some degree, if not absolutely so; it is devoid of hair, usually somewhat greasy-looking and, perhaps, stippled with gaping follicles. Though not so hard as keloid growth, it is fairly firm to the touch, and, unless very extensive, can be readily raised up and freely moved over subjacent structures. Isolated lepromata are usually round or oval; when contiguous they may coalesce, forming patches of irregular outline.

When many lepromata run together, or are closely set, the growth causes the natural folds of the skin to be exaggerated; and thus great disfigurement, especially of the face, may ensue. Thus the skin of the forehead and eyebrows—an early and favourite site of leprosy infiltration—is thrown into massive folds and overhangs the eyes; the fleshy parts of the nose broaden out; the cheeks become massive; the lips are thickened and protrude; the chin is swollen and heavy; the external ears are thick and pendulous; and the bloated, dusky, wrinkled, greasy, passive countenance acquires the repulsive appearance very appropriately designated “leontiasis.”



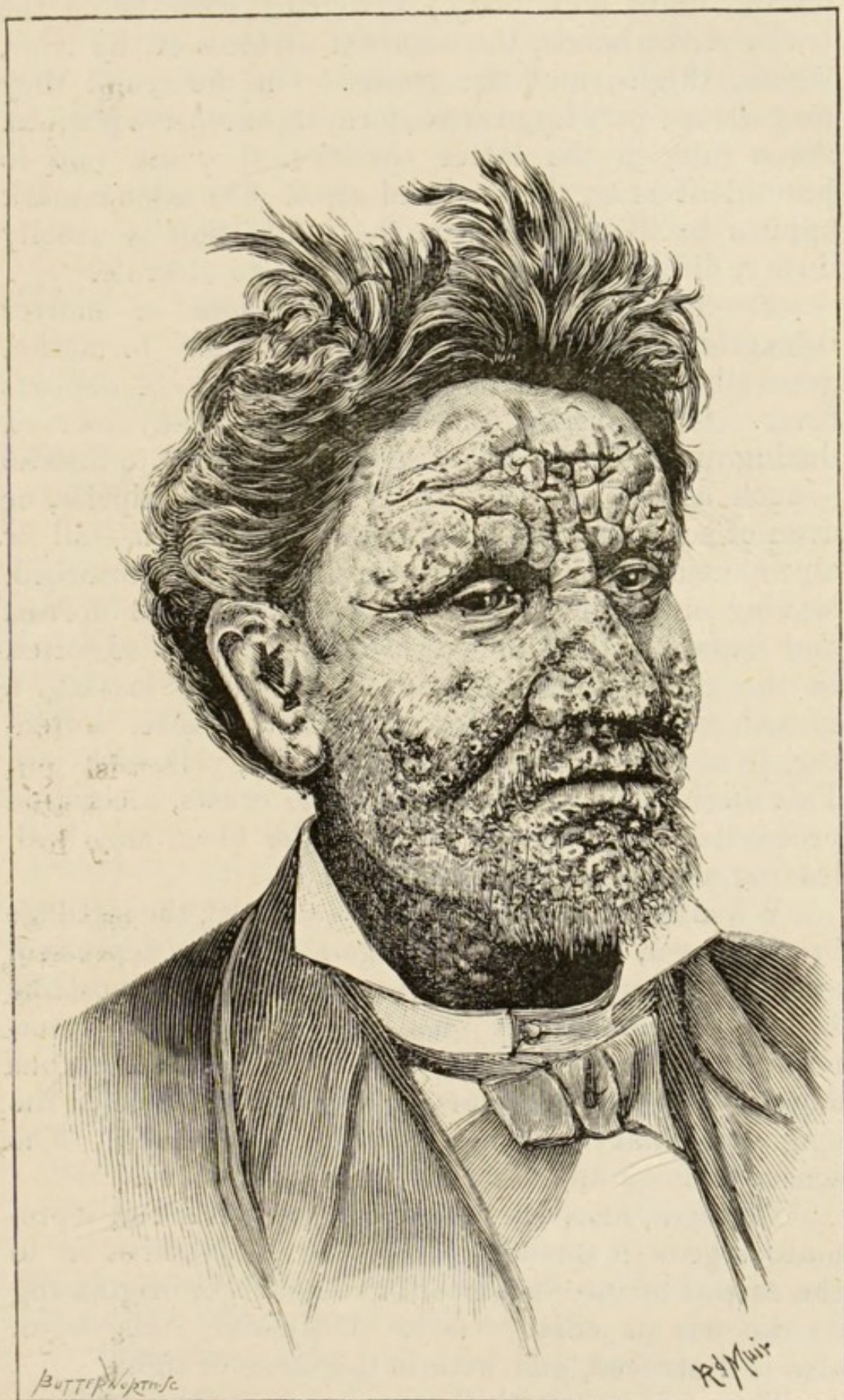


Fig. 44.—NODULAR LEPROSY (Leloir).



Nodules may appear in greater or less profusion on the limbs and body; favourite sites being the backs of the hands, the external surfaces of the arms, wrists, thighs, and the groins. On the trunk they may occupy very large areas, forming extensive plaques. As a rule, in the latter situation they are not so prominent as on the face and arms. The same remark applies to the legs, where the infiltration is usually dusky, diffuse, ill-defined, and prone to ulcerate.

From time to time, and at longer or shorter intervals, fresh tubercles appear, their formation generally concurring with an outburst of leprous fever. Occasionally, and this is very often observed during an intercurrent attack of some acute disease—such as an exanthematous fever, or erysipelas, or even of some exhausting disease like phthisis—all or a proportion of the nodules are temporarily absorbed, leaving only slight traces behind. But the normal and usual fate of the nodule is either first to soften in the centre and then to be absorbed, leaving a smooth circular patch of scar tissue; or, after softening, to ulcerate and discharge a sticky, yellowish pus. This discharge tends to dry up into crusts, ulceration proceeding underneath. Finally the ulcer may heal, leaving an irregular, depressed scar.

When the septum of the nose is affected, the cartilage breaks down, the tip of the organ becomes depressed, and a stinking discharge escapes from the nostrils. In such circumstances breathing is very much interfered with, more especially if, at the same time, leprous deposit occurs or ulcerates in or about the glottis, the epiglottis, pharynx, tongue, or mouth generally. The senses of smell and taste are then lost for ever.

The eyes, also, are sooner or later attacked, lepromatous growth spreading from the conjunctiva on to the cornea or into the anterior chamber, or originating in the iris or ciliary body. Ultimately this organ also is destroyed, and with it the sense of sight.

Thus, in time, with the exception of that of hearing, one sense after another disappears. Ulcers form



everywhere from the breaking-down of the nodules or from injuries to the insensitive skin. The cervical and inguinal glands, owing to leprous infiltration, swell and perhaps suppurate and become fistulous; the abdomen enlarges from leprous, perhaps combined with amyloid, infiltration of the liver, and there may be diarrhœa from amyloid disease of the intestine. In addition to these troubles, if the patient live, the nerve trunks are attacked, and then the neuralgic, paretic, and trophic lesions of nerve leprosy are superadded. The fingers and toes ulcerate and drop off, or they become distorted and atrophied; or the phalanges are absorbed, the hands and feet becoming reduced to useless stumps. A peculiar goat-like smell is emitted by the ulcerating, decaying body. Altogether, the blind, lame, unhappy wretch—still retaining his intellect but devoid of every sense except that of hearing, breathing with difficulty through a stenosed larynx, and racked by neuralgic pains and irregular outbursts of fever—comes to present, before the inevitable death from exhaustion occurs, a sadder, more loathsome, and more repulsive picture than imagination could conceive. Fortunately, in a large proportion of cases, the leper is mercifully carried off by phthisis, pneumonia, or some intercurrent affection at an earlier period, and before his disease could be said to have run its full course.

#### NERVE LEPROSY.

Just as in nodular leprosy, in nerve leprosy the prodromic and macular stages may be severe, or slight, or altogether absent. Usually, however, in nerve leprosy, much more frequently than in nodular leprosy, the ulterior and more distinctive lesions are preluded by a long and well-marked macular stage, during which large areas of skin are occupied by erythematous (Fig. 45), by pigmented, or by vitiliginous patches. The ringed form of eruption is a very usual one; a red, congested, slightly elevated



and, perhaps, hyperæsthetic border enclosing a larger or smaller area of pale, anæsthetic, non-sweating integument—the whole resembling somewhat one of those extensive body-ringworms so common in natives of hot, damp climates, for which these rings are sometimes mistaken. Such eruptions may come and go, or they may be permanent, or they may spread and multiply during many years before the more distinctive and graver signs of nerve leprosy are evolved.

A frequent and very distinctive symptom of this type of the disease, occurring often about this time, is the sudden appearance of bullæ (*pemphigus leprosus*)—one or more or a series of them—on the hands, feet, knees, backs of thighs, or elsewhere. These bullæ vary in size from a pea to an egg. After a few days they rupture, exposing a reddish surface which presently crusts over, exfoliates, and finally turns into a pale, perhaps anæsthetic, spot with a sharply defined, pigmented border. More rarely the site of the bulla ulcerates. Should similar bullæ be formed in the neighbourhood of the first, the resulting ulcerations may unite into an extensive, probably superficial, serpiginous-looking sore.

A time comes when evidence of profound implication of the nervous system, in the shape of severe neuralgic pains, formication, hyperæsthesia, or anæsthesia, becomes more accentuated. The lymphatic glands enlarge, and there is often considerable fever and general distress. Hitherto, the most prominent symptoms have been the skin lesions. These may remain or even increase; on the other hand, they may in part or entirely disappear. But whether the skin lesions increase or retrograde, evidences of profound implication of the peripheral nervous system now distinctly show themselves; the neuralgic pains still further increase, and hyperæsthesia, anæsthesia, and various paræsthesiæ, along with trophic changes in skin, muscle, and bone, the results of nerve destruction, become the dominating elements in the case.



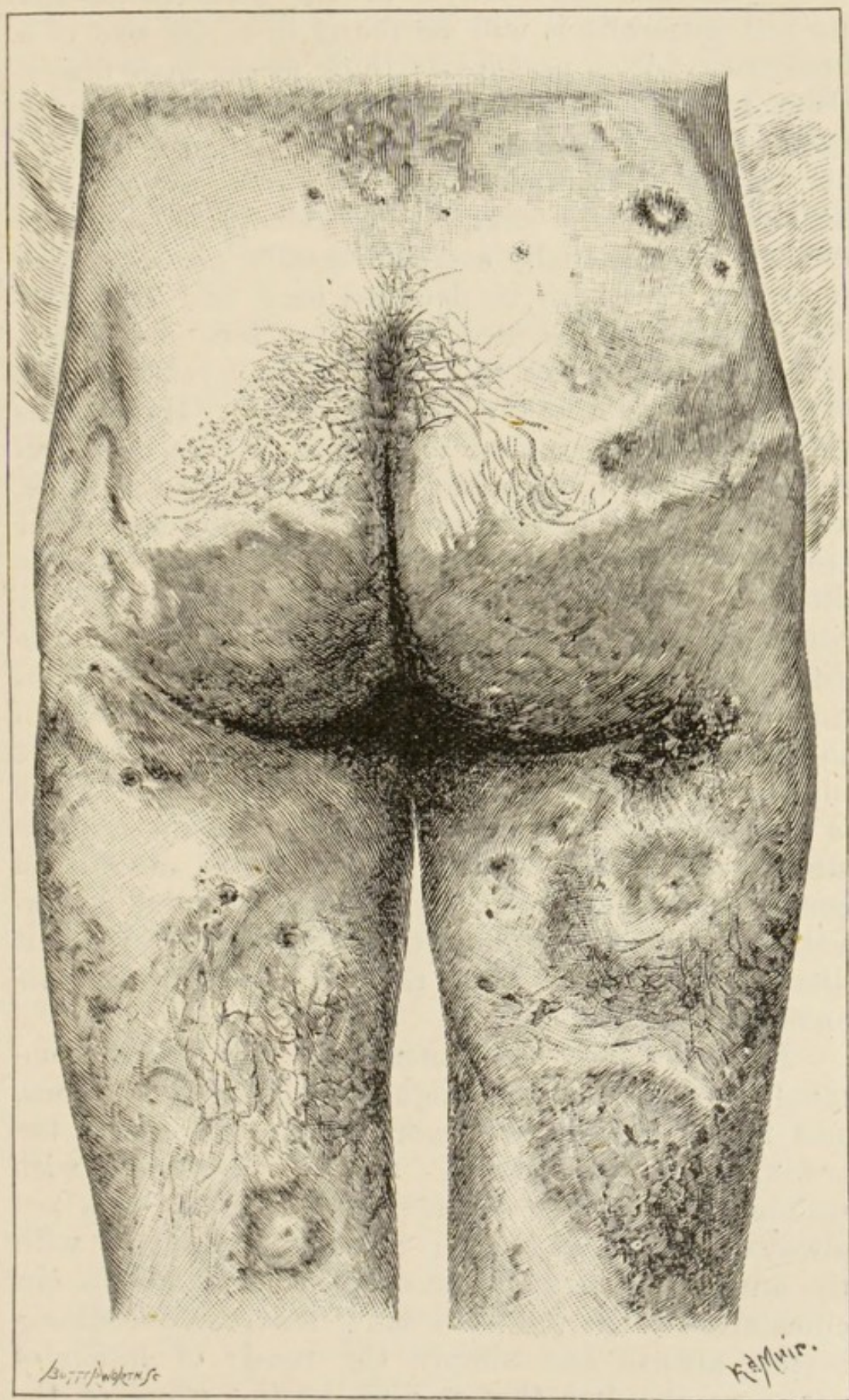


Fig. 45.—NERVE LEPROSY (*Leloir*).



If at this stage the ulnar nerve where it passes round the internal condyle of the humerus be examined, generally it will be found to be the seat of a fusiform swelling perhaps as thick as the little finger. Other nerves, such as the anterior tibial, the peroneal, more rarely the median, radial, brachial, and cervical nerves, especially where they pass over a bone and lie close under the skin, can be felt to be similarly swollen. Occasionally even the smaller nerves, where superficial, can also be detected hard and cord-like. At first these thickened nerves are tender on pressure, and the parts they supply may be the seats of hyperæsthesia and acute neuralgia. By degrees the great thickening of the nerve trunks decreases somewhat, the hyperæsthesia and neuralgia subside, and anæsthesia, paresis, muscular atrophy, and other trophic changes take their place. For a time the condition may fluctuate; the neuritis apparently may come and go with corresponding changes in the condition of the area subserved by the affected nerves. Sooner or later, however, fibrotic changes ensue in the neural leprous deposits, and the nerve tubules ultimately atrophy and disappear. The nerve tissue is now irreparably damaged, and trophic changes steadily advance. In other instances anæsthesia comes on without neuralgic pains, without hyperæsthesia, without constitutional symptoms, without discoloration of the skin, the patient discovering its existence by accident.

In nerve leprosy the anæsthesia begins most commonly in the feet, the thighs, hands, arms, forearms, and face. Later, and more rarely, it affects the trunk. The anæsthesia, though associated with well-marked lesions of the larger nerves, does not always, or even as a rule, coincide accurately with the anatomical distribution of their terminals; a circumstance which tends to show that the anæsthesia is not always and simply the result of lesion of nerve trunks, but that it may be the effect of the destruction by the bacillus of the nerve terminals,



themselves; a suggestion which is strengthened by Gerlach's discovery that in anæsthetic leprosy the bacilli appear first in the skin around the nerve terminals, and only subsequently extend upwards to the nerve trunks. Another, and sometimes a very striking, fact in nerve leprosy is the symmetry observed in the distribution of some of the anæsthetic areas. This symmetry is by no means invariable; in not a few cases, however, it is very perfect and remarkable.

At the outset the anæsthesia in the affected patches may not be absolute; it may also come and go; and it may be very superficial, deep pressure being for a long time appreciable. But when the anæsthesia becomes, as it were, settled in a part, it seems gradually to extend deeper into the tissues; so that after a time it is absolute, and the parts may be pinched, incised, and even seared with fire, and the leper be absolutely unconscious of pain or even of being touched.

Step by step with the progress of the anæsthesia, atrophy of the subjacent muscles supplied by the thickened nerves proceeds. Along with the atrophy there is a corresponding distortion and a corresponding loss of power. There is no ataxia or inco-ordination of movement—simply feebleness. Thus the forearm wastes, the grasp is weakened, the thenar and hypothenar eminences, and the interossei melt away, and the *main-en-griffe* or some such deformity is gradually produced (Fig. 46). Similar changes occur in the legs and feet, so that the power of walking is much impaired. The muscles of the thighs and upper arms, the pectorals, and the muscles of the face follow suit very much as in progressive muscular atrophy, only in the latter disease there is no superjacent anæsthesia.

In the affected nerve areas all the muscles are not simultaneously or equally attacked, so that, especially in the face, curious distortions may ensue. These facial atrophies, whether symmetrical or one-sided,



in time produce a facies as characteristic of nerve leprosy as leontiasis is of nodular leprosy. Owing to muscular atrophy the eyes after a time cannot be closed; the upper lid droops, the lower lid becomes everted, and the eye itself may become fixed. At first, owing to exposure of the organ, there is lachrymation; but by-and-by the secretion of tears dries up, the congested conjunctiva becomes cornified, the cornea ulcerates or turns leucomatous, and in the end sight is entirely lost. Ulceration often occurs in the mucous membrane of the nose, the septum being destroyed as in the nodular form; the tip of the nose may then fall down or be entirely lost. The lips, too, may become paralysed, thereby interfering with articulation and permitting the saliva to dribble from the mouth in a constant stream. Changes occur, too, in the mucous membrane of the mouth; the gums may retract, exposing the maxillary bone, the teeth ultimately dropping out. Anæsthesia of the tongue and buccal mucous membrane, and implication of the muscles of mastication may render eating and articulation very difficult.

In time the skin of anæsthetic patches on the limbs tends to atrophy; it loses its glands and hairs, and, in the end, may become so thinned and tense that it may actually burst into long cracks. The nails are not generally shed, but they become rough, or thinned, or atrophied into minute, hook-like appendages.

Ulcers form over exposed parts of the hands and feet. They may penetrate and disorganise the joints and thus often cause fingers and toes to drop off, one after another. Or, perhaps, an abscess forms around a phalanx, destroys the periosteum, and ultimately leads to loss of the bone. Or a sort of dry gangrene may amputate finger or toe. Or there may be a curious interstitial absorption of one or more phalanges, the shaft of the phalanx wasting more rapidly than the articulating surfaces. In any of these ways the fingers and toes are distorted or



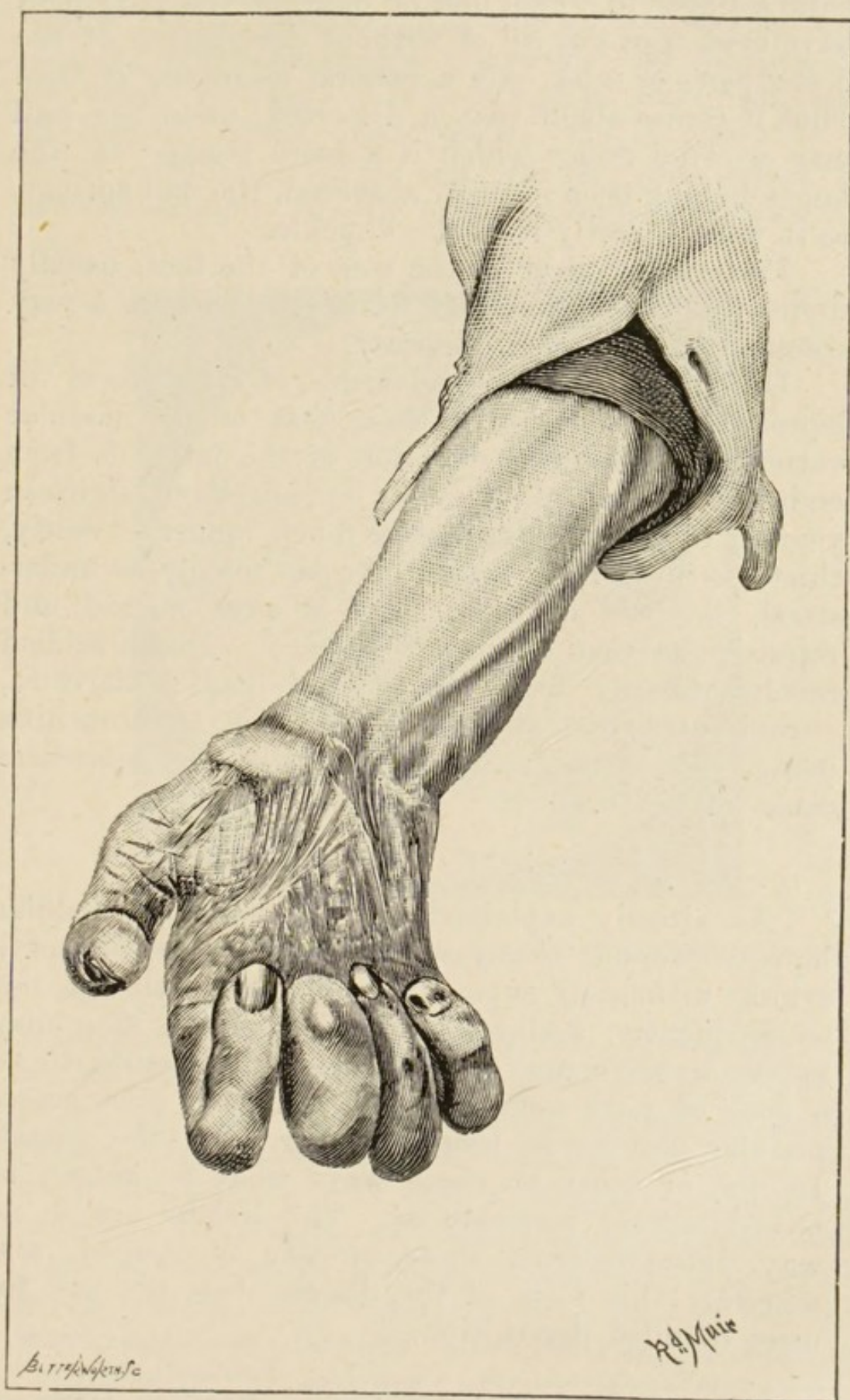


Fig. 46.—NERVE LEPROSY : MAIN-EN-GRIFFE (Leloir).



destroyed. It is no unusual thing to see on a leper's hand a finger in which one or more of the phalanges have been thus got rid of without destruction of the fleshy part, or with only a general shrinking of this. Thus it comes about that a distorted, talon-like nail may crown a finger which is a mere stump; or, the finger having been entirely absorbed, the nail springs, as it were, directly from the knuckle.

Perforating ulcer of the sole of the foot, usually under the ball of the great toe or the heel, is a very common lesion in nerve leprosy.

On the whole, the advance of this form of leprosy is much slower than that of the nodular variety. The average duration of the latter is from eight to nine years, of nerve leprosy about eighteen years. Often such lepers live much longer—twenty, thirty, or even forty years. As can readily be understood, the end of these cases is quite as sad and repulsive as that of nodular leprosy. Death seldom results directly from the disease itself; diarrhœa, chronic nephritis, phthisis, pneumonia, or bronchitis being, one or other of them, usually the immediate cause of death.

#### MIXED LEPROSY.

As already explained, in most cases of nodular leprosy trophic changes from implication of nerve trunks ultimately supervene. Similarly, though not so frequently, nodular infiltration of the skin may appear in the course of what originally seemed to be a case of pure nerve leprosy. In yet other cases nodular and nerve lesions concur from the outset. In one or other of these ways what is known as mixed leprosy is produced. The lesions are in no way different from those already mentioned, and therefore this form of the disease does not call for more detailed description.

**Pathological anatomy.** — *Bacillus lepræ*. — The lesions of leprosy are the result, direct or in-



direct, of the proliferation of the *Bacillus lepræ* in the tissues. This parasite (Fig. 47) in size, shape, and staining reactions closely resembles the bacillus of tubercle. In length it is from half to two-thirds, and in breadth about one-sixteenth the diameter of a blood corpuscle. The ends of the rod—which is always straight—are in many specimens somewhat

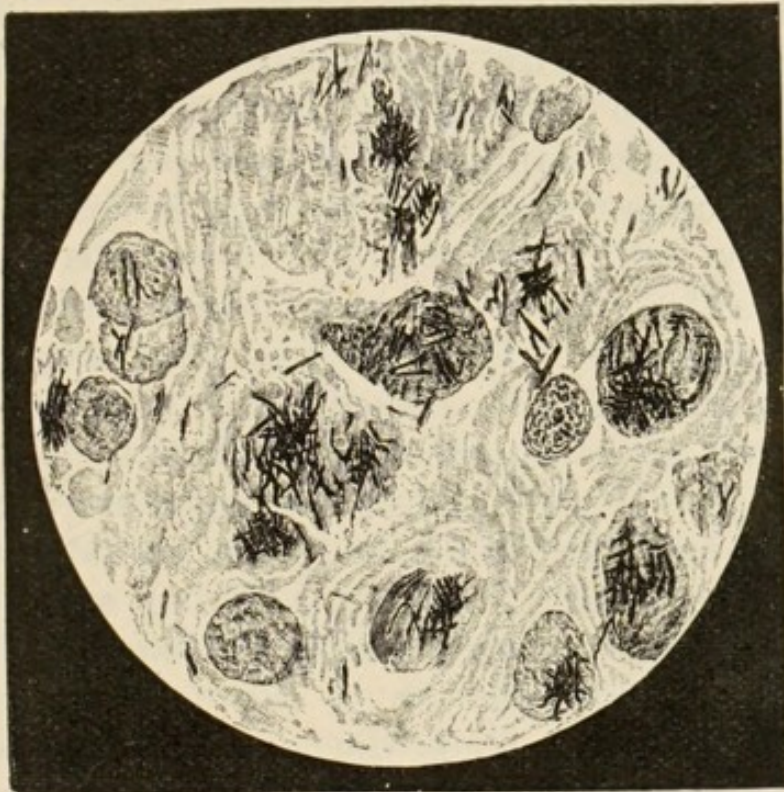


Fig. 47.—*Bacillus lepræ*.  $\times 1000$  (Muir and Ritchie).

attenuated; and in many instances—presumably in old bacilli—a moniliform arrangement of the protoplasm, as if from spore formation or, according to Hansen, from disintegration, can be detected. By some authorities it is said to possess a gelatinous capsule. In common with *Bacillus tuberculosis* and *Bacillus smegma* it retains carbol-fuchsin stains after being treated with mineral acids. It may be distinguished from *Bacillus tuberculosis* by its staining more readily with cold weak solution of carbol fuchsin, and by being decolourised more easily with dilute acids; by the impossibility hitherto experienced of growing



it on the usual or on any culture media, and of inoculating it in man and the lower animals; by its tendency to occur in dense clusters and in greater numbers; and by its very generally being found inside cells or, according to Unna, in zooglœa masses in the lymphatic spaces.

Specimens of the bacillus can be procured readily by excising a portion of a leproma—a proceeding, in consequence of the absence of sensation in most tubercles, not usually much objected to by lepers; or they may be obtained by including a succulent leproma in a pile clamp, slowly screwing up the jaws of the instrument so as to drive out the blood, pricking the now pallid leproma, and then collecting on a cover-glass the droplet of “leper juice” which exudes from the puncture. The juice may be spread out on the cover-glass, fixed, stained, and decolourised as for the demonstration of tubercle bacilli; or it may be examined fresh. Better preparations are made by making with a small scalpel a minute incision into the compressed leproma scraping some of the tissues from the under surface of the skin, and smearing this with the juice on to the cover-glass. One must be careful to exclude the possibility of contamination with *Bacillus tuberculosis*, with which lepers are often infected.

If examined fresh, or if a morsel of leproma be teased up in water, the bacilli may be seen both inside and outside the cells and in active motion. Whether this motion is simply molecular, or whether it is vital, it is hard to say; probably the former, for, whilst osmic acid does not stop it, it is immediately arrested by the addition of viscid fluids, such as glycerine or albumin water.

The bacillus is found in all primary leprous deposits; in the skin leproma—where it occurs in prodigious numbers; in the meagre infiltration of the macular eruptions—where it is much more sparsely distributed; in the early stage of leprous neuritis—where, also, it is present only in small numbers; in



the specific lesions of the liver, spleen, testes, and lymphatic glands. In the blood-vessels it has been found in the endothelium and, occasionally, free in the blood or enclosed in leucocytes. It is abundant in the purulent discharges from ulcerating lepromata, or other forms of primary leprous infiltration. It has very rarely been found in the spinal cord or in the lungs. It is doubtful if it occurs in the brain, the intestinal tract, or in the kidneys, although the latter are prone to inflammation in leprosy. It is not found in muscle, in bone, or in cartilage; and it is not necessarily present in the secondary trophic lesions of nerve leprosy, or in secondary inflammatory effusions.

*The leproma.*—The young leproma presents a smooth, white, glistening section. When the leproma is older the cut surface has a brown tint, and the morbid tissue may become, from fibrotic changes, harder, or, from degeneration, softer. The specific lesion of leprosy differs from that of tubercle, inasmuch as it is well supplied with blood-vessels, contains no giant cells (Hansen), and never undergoes caseation. If hardened, cut, stained, decolourised, and examined under the microscope, the leproma is found to consist principally of small round cells about the size of a leucocyte, epithelioid cells, and fusiform cells—the two latter in increasing numbers with the age of the leproma. It can be seen that these cells have infiltrated and partially dissociated all but the most superficial layer of the derma. It may be further observed that the cells are arranged for the most part in groups, generally around and near blood-vessels; and that a very large proportion of them contain bacilli, some cells having only a few, whilst others are literally crammed with the organisms. Isolated bacilli are also found scattered through the preparation, apparently free in the lymph spaces. The bacilli are never seen inside the nuclei of the implicated cells.

In addition to the bacilli-bearing cells, and increasing in number with the age of the lesion, a number of brown granular bodies, larger and smaller,



which have been named "globi," are to be found. These Hansen holds to be cells in which the bacilli have perished and become granular. It is to them that the brown colour of old lepromata is due.

There has been considerable discussion as to the exact position of the bacilli as regards the lepra cells—whether they lie inside the cells or whether they are free. On the one hand, Unna holds that they lie free in the lymph spaces, and that they are never in the cells, the appearance of cell inclusion being produced by the zooglœa arrangement so common with bacteria. On the other hand, Leloir maintains that some of the bacilli are free, whilst others are inside the cells. A third set of observers, following Hansen, holds that the bacilli are almost invariably included within cells, the nuclei of which can readily be demonstrated surrounded by the parasites.

*Other lesions.*—The histology of the infiltrated macula is practically the same as that of the leproma, the number of bacilli, lepra cells, and globi being proportionately fewer. In old maculæ, as in very old lepromata, the bacilli may be hard to find or entirely absent. In the anæsthetic maculæ the terminal nerve fibres are degenerated.

As the fusiform thickening of the larger nerve trunks in nerve leprosy is a secondary inflammation, bacilli may not always be found in it, although at the very commencement of the nerve disease bacilli, both in cells and, according to Leloir, free between the nerve tubules, are present and may even lie in the nerve tubules themselves. In time the affected nerves become mere fibrous cords destitute of nerve tubules.

The anatomy and histology of the various trophic lesions are such as are found in other examples of destructive neuritis, and are in no way peculiar to leprosy; they do not, therefore, call for description here.

In nodular leprosy the liver and spleen are the subjects, in many instances, of a peculiar infiltration which, in well-marked examples, may be visible to the



naked eye. Fine yellowish-white dots and streaks are seen to occur in the acini of the former. These dots and streaks consist of new growth in which bacilli abound ; according to Leloir, the parasites are never found in the hepatic cells themselves.

In all cases of nodular leprosy the testes atrophy and undergo fibrotic changes, bacilli and globi being found both in and around the tubules, free and in cells.

In all forms of leprosy the lymphatic glands appertaining to parts in which leprous deposit is present are characteristically affected. They are swollen and hard, and on section the gland tissue is seen to have a yellowish tinge from an infiltration which contains numerous bacilli and globi.

Albuminoid disease of the alimentary canal, liver, and spleen, and nephritis occur in a large proportion of the cases of nodular leprosy.

**Diagnosis.**—The touchstone in all doubtful cases is the presence or absence of anæsthesia in some skin lesion, or in some skin area. Anæsthesia is rarely absent in leprosy ; generally, in the implicated spots, it is complete, or nearly so. It should be particularly sought for towards the centre of maculæ, in the pale patches left after the fading of former maculæ, in the hands and feet, and in nodules of some standing. In no other skin disease is definite anæsthesia a symptom. Vitiligo or leucoderma—sometimes called white leprosy and by the vulgar very generally regarded as true leprosy—bears a certain resemblance to the pale post-macular patches referred to ; not to mention other features, the absence of anæsthesia in leucoderma at once settles diagnosis.

Further assistance may sometimes be got in doubtful cases from the fact that leprous spots rarely perspire. A hypodermic injection of pilocarpine is of use in bringing out this point.

The sensory and trophic lesions of syringo-myelia might be mistaken for nerve leprosy ; but the general history of the case, the history or presence of macular



eruption, of thickened nerve trunks, and of enlarged lymphatic glands in leprosy, and their absence in syringo-myelia, are mostly sufficient to establish a diagnosis.

It is hardly necessary to point out the diagnostic marks of leprosy as against syphilis, erythema multiforme, erythema nodosum, lupus vulgaris, lupus erythematosus, psoriasis, eczema, lichen planus, keloid, body-ringworm, erythrasma, pityriasis versicolor, elephantiasis arabum, etc. Mistakes can scarcely be made unless from carelessness, or by someone completely ignorant of the nature, history, and symptoms of these diseases.

In approaching the diagnosis of skin eruptions, localised pareses, muscular atrophies, and anæsthesia in patients living in, or coming from, a country in which leprosy is endemic, the possibility of their being attributable to this disease must be borne in mind. If doubt exist, and it be found feasible, search should be made in eruptions or in thickened nerves for the bacillus. If this be found the diagnosis of leprosy will be infallibly established.

**Prognosis.**—Complete recovery is an event so rare in leprosy that, though it may be hoped for, it must not be expected. Recovery from the actual disease itself—that is, in the sense that fresh leprous infiltration may cease to occur, and old infiltration may be absorbed, and that the bacilli may die out—is perhaps the rule in nerve leprosy ; but the effects of the leprous process are generally permanent, the trophic lesions resulting from nerve destruction being irremediable. Such cases may live, however, for many years—thirty or forty—and die of some other disease ; at best, they are but mutilated specimens of humanity.

Nodular leprosy is usually a much more acute disease than nerve leprosy, sapping the strength and general health much more effectually and more quickly. It rarely runs its full course, death being brought about by some intercurrent disease, such as, and especially, phthisis, nephritis, albuminoid degeneration of



the alimentary tract, dysentery, stenosis of the larynx, and pneumonia. It may prove fatal as a sort of galloping leprosy within a year even of its first declaring itself.

**Ætiology.**—*Age.*—It is open to question if leprosy has ever been seen in the fœtus. It has once or twice been reported in the newly-born. Cases are also on record of its occurrence as early as the first and second years of life ; such, however, are quite exceptional. Leprosy is extremely rare before the fifth or sixth year. In the great majority of instances the disease begins between the tenth and thirtieth year. It rarely commences after forty, although it has been known to begin up to, and even after, seventy.

*Sex ; occupation ; social and hygienic conditions.*—Apart from the associated social conditions as affording opportunity for contagion, sex seems to have little bearing on the liability to leprosy. The same may be said of occupation, and social and hygienic conditions in general. Very probably bad food and bad hygienic circumstances have in this, as in most germ diseases, a predisposing influence ; but they certainly cannot create a lepra bacillus and leprosy, any more than they can create an acarus and itch. This is abundantly shown by the absence of leprosy at an earlier period in countries in which, without alteration in the food or other hygienic conditions, the susceptibility of the natives to the disease was subsequently proved by its rapid spread on being introduced from without, *e.g.* the Sandwich Islands and New Caledonia ; and, also, by the disappearance of the disease, in other instances, under the influence of the segregation and isolation of lepers, without any concurrent material alteration in food or other circumstances, *e.g.* Scotland, Ireland and most European countries.

*Climate.*—Climate can in no way be considered a cause of leprosy, for leprosy exists in all climates and in all latitudes. But it does seem to have some



influence in determining, to a certain extent, the type the disease assumes. It would appear that the nodular form is more common in cold, damp climates; the nerve form in warm or dry climates.

*The lepra bacillus.*—Hansen remarks, "There is hardly anything on earth, or between it and heaven, which has not been regarded as the cause of leprosy." However true this remark may be as regards times prior to Hansen's discovery, we are now practically certain that the *lepra bacillus* is the cause of leprosy. The only gap in the evidence, otherwise conclusive, lies in our present inability to cultivate the bacillus, or to convey it by inoculation or otherwise to the lower animals, or, perhaps, to man himself.

Many attempts have been made to communicate leprosy to man by inoculation, but hitherto, with one questionable exception, all have failed. A Sandwich Islander, apparently at the time free from leprosy, was inoculated from a *lepra tubercle*. Within a month he had symptoms of leprosy; two years later he was a confirmed leper; and in six years from the date of the inoculation he died of leprosy. Unfortunately the subject of the experiment was a native of a country in which leprosy was extensively endemic; and besides, he had lived among lepers—in fact, members of his family were lepers. However possible it may be that the bacillus in this instance had been communicated by the inoculation, the circumstances in which the experiment was made, and the unusual shortness of the incubation period, are against its being regarded as conclusive evidence of the inoculability of the disease.

To bridge over temporarily this important gap in the evidence, we have to fall back on the close analogy that subsists between *Bacillus lepræ* and *Bacillus tuberculosis*, the leproma and the tubercle, leprosy and tuberculosis. In consideration of this and other circumstances, it is generally conceded nowadays that *Bacillus lepræ* is the cause of leprosy, just as *Bacillus tuberculosis* is the cause of tubercle. Authorities



differ, however, as to the way in which the bacillus is acquired.

*How acquired.*—It is absurd to suppose that an organism, no matter how humble its place in the scale of life, can originate *de novo*; such a hypothesis may be at once dismissed. Disregarding this, we have to consider two principal views as to the way in which the bacillus is acquired—heredity and contagion.

*Heredity.*—From the fact that it tends to run in families and that in certain instances it assumes the appearance of atavism, leprosy, until the *Bacillus lepræ* was discovered, was almost universally—as it still is by some—believed to be a hereditary disease. That this belief, in the same sense as that tubercle may be said to be hereditary, was well founded is quite possible; that is to say, that certain physio-pathological qualities predisposing to leprosy may be inherited. But since the discovery of the bacillus it is impossible any longer, if we properly consider it, to believe that the bacillus itself, and therefore the disease it causes, can be hereditary in the scientific sense of the word “hereditary.” Physiological peculiarities and susceptibilities may, but parasites cannot, be inherited. It is true the ovum may be infected by a germ, as in syphilis; but infection is not heredity. That the ovum can be infected at some stage of its existence by the lepra bacillus is proved if it be true that children have been born with the lesions of leprosy on them. But because leprosy is common in the descendants and blood collaterals of lepers, this is no proof of ovum infection in every, or perhaps, in any case; for family liability is quite as explicable by a hypothesis of contagion or outside infection as by a hypothesis of inherited infection. Not only may the individuals of a family inherit a family predisposition of susceptibility to the bacillus, but, as a family, the members of it are generally at one time or another closely associated, exposed to the same hygienic influences, liable to communicate by



contact with each other each other's parasites, or to acquire the parasites latent in their common surroundings. Because the members of a family simultaneously, or one after another, contract scabies, or ringworm, or typhoid, no one supposes on this account that any of these diseases is hereditary.

Without absolutely denying the possibility of ovum infection, the probability is that such an event is very rare. The age at which leprosy usually appears is against such a supposition. The latency of a germ for twenty, thirty, forty, or even seventy years is an extremely improbable thing and without parallel in pathology. Atavism, or, rather, the appearance of atavism, frequently met with in leprosy, is also against such a supposition; for, although we can understand infection of an ovum by a leper parent, we cannot understand the transmission of a germ from a grandparent to a grandchild through a parent who is not, never was, and who may never become, a leper. Such a thing would imply proliferation of the bacillus in the parent without pathological evidence of its presence.

Even admitting that leprosy is sometimes transmitted by ovum infection, this method of transmission cannot be the only one, or even a common one, for many lepers have no leper ancestors; and, as is well known, the healthy European, coming from a country in which leprosy has not been seen for generations, may acquire leprosy on visiting a country in which the disease is endemic.

If leprosy be communicated generally, or even sometimes, by parent to child by heredity, how explain the striking fact, brought out by Hansen, that of the numerous offspring of 160 Norwegian lepers who emigrated to America not one has become a leper? Or, again, the equally well attested fact that children sometimes become lepers first, their parents afterwards?

Another powerful argument against the doctrine of heredity is the circumstance that lepers become



sterile early in the disease. From this it is evident that unless the ranks of leprosy are recruited in some other way than by heredity the disease would inevitably die out in one, or at most, two generations.

From considerations such as these the view that leprosy is a hereditary disease has now few adherents among the well informed.

*Contagion.*—The best authorities believe that leprosy is propagated by contagion and only by contagion. The same unanimity of opinion does not obtain as to the particular way in which, or medium by which, the contagium is applied; but that it passes directly or indirectly from the infecting leper to the infected, nearly all are agreed to regard as being practically proved. The principal facts and considerations on which this important conclusion is founded are as follows:—

Leprosy is a germ disease, and therefore it cannot originate *de novo*. It must come from a pre-existing germ whose habitat may be air, soil, water, plant, beast, food, or man. That the habitat of the infecting germ is man is rendered in the highest degree probable by the fact that the germ is found in the human tissues and hitherto nowhere else; and by the fact that leprosy has never been known to appear on virgin soil independently of the prior advent of a leper. When a leper settles down in virgin country, after a time cases of the disease crop up among his companions and immediate neighbours. Some of these newly-made lepers, proceeding to a different part of the country, in time become centres for other groups of cases. Thus in the early history of the introduction of leprosy into a virgin country—as New Caledonia—the spread of the disease from individual to individual, and from place to place, can be, and has been traced.

In further proof it can be advanced that not only may a native of a non-leper country acquire the disease on visiting a leper country, but he may also communicate the disease to others, his countrymen,



on his return to his own country. There is at least one well-authenticated example of this on record. Dr. Hawtrey Benson, in 1872, showed at the Medical Society of Dublin a leper, an Irishman, who had acquired his disease in the West Indies. After his return to Ireland he slept in the same bed as his brother, who, moreover, sometimes wore the leper's clothes. In time the brother, who had never been out of the United Kingdom, became a leper and was shown to the same medical society in 1877. In this case there can be no question of fact or of diagnosis. Such a case can only be explained by contagion. Many similar, though not quite so well authenticated and conclusive, instances of the communication of leprosy by contagion are on record; but the case just mentioned is alone almost conclusive, for if leprosy is proved to be communicable by contagion in one case, the probabilities are that it is so acquired in every case.

It has been advanced against the contagiousness of leprosy, that it attacks a very small proportion only of the attendants, nurses, and doctors in leper asylums. But might not a similar objection be raised to the contagiousness of scabies or of ringworm? The conditions for successful contagion are known and can be easily avoided in the latter diseases; they are not known, and are therefore not invariably avoided in leprosy. All contagious diseases demand certain conditions for their diffusion. In some diseases these conditions are easily complied with and often concur; in other diseases they are with difficulty complied with and rarely concur. Leprosy belongs to the latter category.

Probably intimate personal contact, and certain concurrences in the phases of the disease with special conditions in the health or physiological state of the recipient—conditions which are as yet unknown, and which, for all we know, may concur only at long intervals in the intercourse of any two individuals—are necessary for the successful communication and



acquisition of leprosy. The simple implantation of the bacillus does not suffice ; for, as already pointed out, of the many inoculations that have been made only one has any claim to be regarded as having been successful.

Articles of diet—such as dried fish—have been incriminated as media for infection. The data on which it is sought to establish this and similar speculations are altogether insufficient, and do not bear investigation.

**Prevention.**—If it be conceded that leprosy is caused by a germ, that it is contagious directly or indirectly, and that it never breaks fresh ground unless first introduced from without and by a leper, then the leper must be regarded as a source of danger, and, *quâ* leprosy, the only source of danger to any community he may live amongst ; and a sure, and the most effectual way of suppressing the disease is the thorough isolation of existing lepers. There are many difficulties, however, especially in such countries as India, in giving practical expression to what appears to be a perfectly logical conclusion—difficulties springing from the rights of the individual, finance difficulties, difficulties arising from concealment or incorrect diagnosis, as well as from the continued introduction of fresh cases from without. These and other obvious obstacles, incident to any attempt at a wholesale system of thorough isolation, are so great that the most that can be hoped for at the present time, and in the present state of public opinion, is some modified system of segregation and isolation, such as has worked so successfully in recent years in Norway.

Where possible, therefore, lepers should be segregated in isolated asylums which should be so conducted as to prove attractive. Those who cannot be made, or persuaded, to enter these asylums should be isolated as much as possible from their families and the public ; scrupulous cleanliness of their persons and houses should also be insisted on. Lepers ought not to be allowed to beg in the streets—as is often the



case in Eastern cities, to keep shops, or to handle food or clothes intended for sale, to wander about the country as pedlars or mendicants, to hire themselves out as servants or prostitutes, or to frequent fairs and public places. All lepers in the ulcerative stage of the disease, when it is to be presumed that myriads of bacilli are being constantly given off from their sores, should be still more scrupulously isolated, their discharges, clothes, and dressings being systematically destroyed or disinfected. A child born of a leper should at once be removed from the diseased parent, and, if necessary, cared for at the public expense.

If laws were enacted to give effect to such common-sense precautions, and if these laws were faithfully carried out, the best results might be looked for. Leprosy is feebly contagious, or rather, the conditions for successful contagion rarely recur; so rarely, that it is more than probable that under such a modified system of segregation and isolation as that indicated, they would recur so seldom that the disease would rapidly die out.

*Vaccination.*—It has not been actually proved that leprosy can be communicated by vaccination, although there is some evidence in favour of such a supposition. But, although this has not been proved, it is an obvious and very desirable precaution, in countries in which the disease is endemic, to take care that the vaccinifer is not only not the subject of actual leprous eruption, but, also, that he or she comes from a family and community free from leprosy. An apparently healthy vaccinifer may contain lepra bacilli in a latent state, be, in fact, a potential leper capable of communicating the disease.

**Treatment.**—Scrupulous and systematic attention to personal and domestic hygiene and cleanliness; frequent bathing and the free use of soap; frequent changes of underclothing; good food; fresh air; light work; the avoidance of over-strain, fatigue, and of exposure to bad weather; these things are all of prime importance in the treatment of leprosy,



and should be insisted on. It has been found that most lepers on being placed in favourable hygienic conditions improve, at all events for a time, and that in a small proportion the disease by these means may sometimes be actually arrested. Europeans who have contracted leprosy in the tropics, almost invariably undergo temporary improvement on return to the more bracing climate and more nutritious diet of their native lands.

Many drugs have been regarded, from time to time, as being more or less of the nature of specifics in the treatment of leprosy. But, though some of these drugs appear for a time to do good, and in consequence acquire a certain degree of popularity, hitherto all of them, one after another, have sooner or later fallen into disfavour. There is no good reason to think that any known medicinal substance is really a specific for leprosy, in anything approaching the sense that mercury and iodide of potassium are specific in syphilis. One is very apt to be deceived in estimating the value of a drug in leprosy. The leper applies for treatment generally during, or soon after, one of the periodical exacerbations of the disease, and when the nodules and other eruptions are active and well pronounced. In the natural course of events, and without treatment of any description, especially if the patient be placed under favourable hygienic conditions, these acute manifestations tend to become quiescent, and the disease temporarily to ameliorate. Observers are too apt to attribute this natural and temporary amelioration to whatever drug the patient may happen to be taking at the time. Moreover, in judging of the value of any drug in leprosy, it must be remembered that the disease may be arrested spontaneously, or even be recovered from, and that without the use of any drug whatever.

Chaulmoogra oil, in doses of from two to ten up to forty drops or more, according to tolerance, three times a day, together with inunction of the same



drug mixed with some oil, is a favourite remedy with English practitioners. Such lepers as can assimilate large doses of this drug appear to derive benefit. Sandwith has reported (*Journ. of Tropical Medicine*, 1900) a case in which marked benefit followed persistent hypodermic administration of chaulmoogra. I have a leper at present under my care who, in addition to 70 minims of chaulmoogra three times a day by the mouth, receives a hypodermic injection daily of one drachm. The improvement in this case is very marked. The bacilli, however, are just as abundant in the nodules as before treatment began, and there is no alteration in the appearance of the bacilli. Gurjun oil, once in favour, seems to have been abandoned.

Unna claims to have cured several cases by the internal administration of ichthyol in increasing doses, combining the internal medication with vigorous rubbing of the arms and legs twice a day with pyrogallie acid (10 per cent.) in lanolin, and the cheeks and trunk with chrysophanic acid (10 per cent.) in lanolin; at the same time applying to the forehead and chin a plaster of chrysophanic and salicylic acids with creasote, changing the plaster every day. The treatment is continued for a month, and is then followed by a course of warm baths before being resumed.

Tuberculin has also been tried. It produces a local and a general reaction, which is sometimes curiously delayed for one or two days. So far from doing good it seems to aggravate the disease, causing fresh eruptions, and, also, causing bacilli to appear in the blood.

Dr. Radcliffe Crocker has recorded (*Lancet*, August 8th, 1896) two cases of leprosy in which great improvement followed weekly hypodermic injections of one-fifth of a grain of perchloride of mercury.

Iodide of potassium aggravates leprosy if given in full doses; it not only affects the general health prejudicially, but it causes fresh eruptions to appear.



Danielssen regards salicylate of soda, combined with cod-liver oil, quinine and iron, good food, and good hygiene, as the best treatment for leprosy. He claims for the salicylate, if commenced within the first few months from the appearance of the disease, that it sometimes effects a cure. He begins with fifteen grains, four times a day, and gradually increases the dose during six months or a year.

I have lately tried thyroidin in a case of nerve leprosy. The patient has improved marvellously during the three years he has taken it.

Hydroxylamin, euophen, naphthol, salol, methylene blue, and aristol have also been tried recently; the results have not proved encouraging.

Nerve stretching, with or without nerve splitting, has been strongly advocated (McLeod) for the cure of leprous neuralgia, anæsthesia, muscular atrophy, and other trophic lesions. At the best they can benefit the local lesion alone, and that but temporarily, and only in the earlier stages of the leprous neuritis before the nerve has undergone fibrous transformation.

In the case of leprous nodules spreading on to the cornea and threatening to interfere with the line of vision, Broeckmann has shown that the extension of the leproma may be arrested by division of the cornea on the pupillary side of the lesion; it is found that the bacilli do not traverse the cicatrix. Tarsorrhaphy for ectropion of the lower lid; iridectomy for iritis, or synechiæ; tracheotomy for laryngeal stenosis; and necrotomy for bone disease, may sometimes have to be performed. Horder strongly recommends amputation for perforating or other forms of ulceration; the general health is much improved by the removal of such sources of sepsis. The existence of leprosy does not materially interfere with the success of surgical operations. I once removed an enormous elephantiasis of the scrotum from a confirmed leper; the presence of the leprosy did not prevent sound healing of the extensive operation wound, the man



making a good recovery so far as the operation was concerned.

If only one tubercle, or one limited lepra macula is present, and there have been no constitutional signs of a general invasion, it is advisable to excise freely the affected spot. It is just possible that in this spot we may be dealing with the primary lesion of leprosy—the point of invasion—and that as yet the disease is limited to this. At all events, to excise this can do no harm; and in face of the terrible fate which is otherwise in store for the victim of this infection, it would be wrong to withhold any possible chance of escape, however small, such a trifling operation might afford. A case has been recorded (*Arch. de Méd. Expér.*, 1st Jan., 1895) in which a child, twenty-seven months old, presented on one temple a minute, red, anæsthetic spot which, on microscopic examination, proved to contain lepra bacilli. The child's brother was a confirmed leper. Six months after the discovery of the spot it was excised and the wound cauterised. This was done in October, 1893; in April, 1894, the child showed no signs of leprosy.

As already mentioned, the occurrence of acute disease may cause absorption of leprous deposit. This has been more particularly observed after erysipelas. It has accordingly been proposed to treat leprosy by inoculations of the erysipelas streptococcus, or by injections of the filtered toxin obtained from cultures of that organism (Impey).



## CHAPTER XXIX.

## YAWS (FRAMBOESIA).

**Definition.**—Yaws is a contagious, inoculable disease characterised by an indefinite incubation period followed usually by fever, by rheumatic-like pains, and by the appearance of papules on the skin, which generally develop into a fungating, granulomatous, encrusted eruption. It runs a chronic course; is mostly protective against a second attack; and, to a certain extent, is influenced by mercury and potassium iodide.

**Geographical distribution.**—Yaws is widely diffused throughout the greater part of the tropical world. In certain places it is very common—as in tropical Africa, particularly on the west coast; in many of the West India islands; in Ceylon, where it is one of perhaps several diseases included under the term *parangi*; in Fiji, where it is known as *coko*; in Java; in Samoa; and in many of the islands of the South Pacific. It is difficult to say to what extent it exists in India; some deny its presence there altogether, but recent observations show that it does occur there to a limited extent. Powell (*Ind. Med. Gaz.*, Sept., 1894, the *Brit. Journ. of Dermat.*, No. 98, Dec., 1896) has recognised and described it as occurring in Assam. Barker, of Borneo, has recently shown that the skin disease of the Eastern peninsula, described by Brown (*Brit. Journ. of Dermat.*, No. 56, vol. v.), under the name of *purru*, as being common in parts of the Malay peninsula, is yaws. If yaws occurs in China, it is certainly rare there—at all events on the coast. In some of the West India islands, and in Fiji, almost every child passes through an attack. In the latter, according to Daniels, those children who do not



acquire the disease in the ordinary way are inoculated with it by their parents, who regard an attack of yaws as an occurrence more or less necessary and wholesome. Nicholls (*Report on Yaws*, Blue Book, 1894) has made a careful and admirable study of West Indian yaws. His inclination is to look upon parangi, koko, and similar Asiatic and Pacific island diseases as specifically different from the African and West Indian disease. Daniels, however—a most accurate observer, who has had extensive experience both in Fiji and in British Guiana—shows very clearly that in both places the diseases are identical. Probably the view that certain forms of the parangi of Ceylon are not yaws is likewise incorrect.

It is impossible at the present day to settle the point, but it seems probable that yaws was originally an African disease, and, so far as America and the West Indies are concerned, that it was introduced by negro slaves. In the days of West Indian slavery the specific and infectious nature of yaws was thoroughly recognised. The planters from commercial, apart from other, considerations, by instituting yaws houses and other repressive measures, took much trouble to keep the disease under. Since emancipation has permitted the West Indian negro to revert to some extent to the state of savagery from which he had partly emerged, yaws has again become very prevalent, and is now a principal and loathsome feature in the morbidity of these islands.

**Symptoms.**—*The initial fever.*—In yaws there is an incubation stage of very variable duration—two weeks to six months\*—the appearance of the characteristic eruptions being preceded by a certain amount of constitutional disturbance. The intensity of the general symptoms varies within wide limits. Sometimes they are hardly perceptible, and are not

\* Paulet, who inoculated fourteen healthy persons with yaws, found the first lesion in from twelve to twenty days; Charlouis, in twenty-eight inoculations observed a papule at the site of inoculation after fourteen days. Naturally acquired yaws is reputed to have a longer incubation period than the inoculated disease.



complained of; usually there is well-marked malaise with rheumatic pains. Occasionally there is severe constitutional disturbance, lasting for about a week, with rigor, smart fever— $100^{\circ}$  to  $103^{\circ}$ —persistent headache, pains—worse at night—in the long bones, joints and loins, and sometimes gastric disturbance and diarrhœa. During the decline of these constitutional symptoms the eruption appears.

*Stage of furfuraceous desquamation.*—The skin becomes harsh and dry, loses its natural gloss, and here and there patches of light-coloured, very fine furfuraceous desquamation, best appreciated with the aid of a lens, are formed. These patches are mostly small and circular; occasionally they are oval, irregular, or form rings encircling islets of healthy skin. Their extent and number are very uncertain. They are scattered irregularly over limbs and trunk; occasionally they may be almost confluent, the patches coalescing and giving rise to an appearance as if the entire skin had been dusted over with flour. On the other hand, this furfuraceous desquamation may be so slight as to be overlooked. In other instances it may be very marked; the heaping up of desquamating epidermic scales producing white marks, very evident on the dark skin of a negro or Oriental.

This patchy, furfuraceous condition of the skin occurs not only at the early stages of yaws, but it may persist throughout the attack, or reappear as a fresh eruption at any period of the disease.

*The yaw* (Fig. 48).—When the furfuraceous patches have been in existence for a few days minute papules appear in them. Describing these papules, Nicholls remarks that, in examining them with a lens, “they are seen to be apparently pushed up from the rete malpighii through the horny epidermis, which breaks over their summits and splits in radiating lines from the centre, the necrosed segments curling away from the increasing papule. When the papules become about a millimetre in height and breadth, a yellow point may be observed on the



summits . . . consisting not of a drop of pus under the epidermis . . . but of a naked, cheesy-looking substance, which cannot be wiped away unless undue force be used. Frequently a hair will be observed

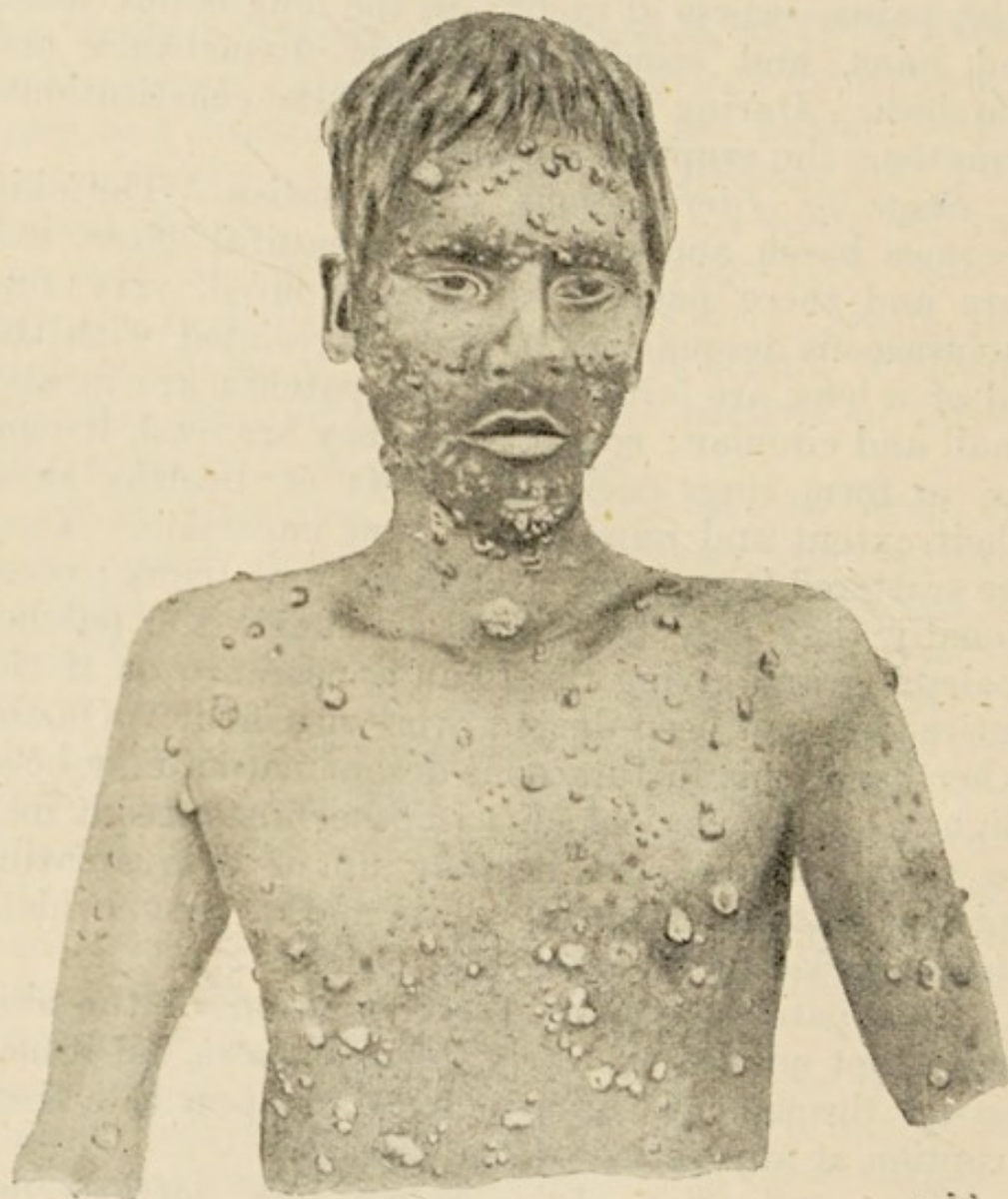


Fig. 48.—Yaws.

issuing from this yellow substance, thereby indicating that the hair follicles are the centres of the change going on." This eruption may persist during the entire attack, or it may appear at any time during the course of the disease. When extensive and occurring late, it indicates a protracted attack.

The papule, having arrived at this stage, may either cease to grow, the apex becoming depressed,



cupped, and lined with the yellow cheesy material alluded to ; or it may go on, increasing in size, to the formation of the typical yaw. In the latter case the lesion gradually grows into a rounded excrescence, the yellow material at the top widening out so as to form a complete cap encrusting the little tumour. The yaw so formed may be no larger than a split pea ; or it may attain the breadth of a crown piece. The smaller tumours are hemispherical ; the larger are more flattened or even depressed at the centre, possessing everted, somewhat overhanging, rounded edges. Occasionally, though rarely, a big yaw may include an area of sound skin. Several yaws may coalesce, and together cover a large and irregular surface, as an entire cheek, a popliteal space, or the dorsum of a foot. In the case of these large yaws, the surface of the growth is apt to be irregular and fissured. The neighbourhood of the mouth and anus are favourite sites for coalescent yaws ; in such situations the moisture of the parts softens and removes the crust wholly or in part, so that the surface, in addition to being fissured, may be more or less bare, sodden, and fungoid.

The crust which caps and encloses an uninjured yaw is yellowish, granular, blotched with blood stains and encrusted dirt. At first the crust is somewhat moist, but gradually it becomes dry, brown, and black even. The crusts are firmly adherent, requiring some force to remove them ; a proceeding which, though painless, may entail a little oozing of blood. Deprived of its crust the little swelling is seen to be red in colour, and generally smooth and rounded on the surface. According to size, it stands out anything from one-eighth to six-eighths of an inch above the surrounding healthy skin. Immediately after removal of the crust the exposed surface begins to pour out a pale, yellowish-grey, viscid fluid, which soon becomes inspissated, rapidly forming a fresh cap to the yaw. Pus, unless as a consequence of irritation, is not, as a rule, found under the crust.



Although the formation of the papules and yaws is attended with much itching, the yaw itself is not at all sensitive; the tumour may be touched with acid even with impunity—a diagnostic point of some importance.

The yaw usually attains its maximum development in two weeks; for several weeks longer it remains stationary before beginning to shrink. The crust then thins, shrinks, darkens, separates at the periphery and at last falls off, disclosing at the site of the former fungating mass a slightly thickened (pale—Nicholls, hyperpigmented—Daniels) spot of fairly sound skin.

*Ulceration.*—Such is the normal process of evolution and involution of a yaw. But it sometimes happens that the tumours, in place of becoming absorbed, break down and ulcerate, the ulceration, however, being confined to the yaw itself. In other instances ulceration goes deeper and extends circumferentially, giving rise to extensive sores with subsequent cicatricial contractions. Such ulcerations may or may not be encrusted. With the development of the deeper and wider forms of ulceration, the typical lesions of yaws may disappear for a time, or perhaps permanently. In the latter case the ulcers are said not to be infective, and do not communicate yaws; they are, therefore, to be regarded rather as complications or, it may be, sequelæ. Such ulcers may persist for years. Ulceration, according to Nicholls, occurs in about 8 per cent. of cases.

*Onychia.*—Yaws may occur around or under a nail and give rise to a troublesome form of onychia.

*Foot yaws.*—When a yaw develops on the sole of a foot, in consequence of being bound down by the dense and thick epidermis it causes much suffering. Spreading laterally under the thick, leathery, and unyielding epidermis, it may attain a large size. After a time the epidermis over the growth gives way, splitting in a radiating fashion. Pressure being thus removed the yaw fungates, and suffering diminishes.



A cracked scaly condition of the hands and feet, sometimes persisting for years, is not unusual in negroes, and must not be confounded with yaws, although not infrequently the two conditions co-exist.\*

*Distribution.*—The yaws may be scattered over the whole body; or the crop may be limited to one or two growths; or they may be confined to a circumscribed region of the skin. They are commonest on exposed parts, on the anterior surface of the body, and on parts especially liable to injury, as the feet and legs. They are most frequently found on the lower extremities; rarely on the scalp, and still more rarely in the axillæ. They are hardly ever seen on mucous surfaces unless about the lips, around the angles of the mouth, and in the nostrils, where they often form clusters.

*Duration and recurrences.*—Yaws lasts for weeks, months or years, its duration depending on the general health, idiosyncrasy, hygienic conditions, and the treatment employed. Mild cases in healthy subjects finish in about six weeks. In other instances, especially in the debilitated, the disease runs on for months, successive crops of eruption being evolved. Sometimes these recurrences may stop short at the

\* In the course of time the West Indian negroes have adopted a peculiar jargon—a mixture of French, English, and Spanish—to designate the various manifestations of yaws. The scaly patches are known in some of the islands as “pian dartres,” in Jamaica as “yaws cacca”; the papular stage of eruption as “pian gratelle”; when the papular eruption occurs as a late symptom, it may be called “pian charaib,” or “guinea-corn yaws.” The developed yaw is sometimes known as “bouton pian.” “Tubboes,” “tubba,” “crabs,” “crappox,” “crabes,” are expressions applied to the painful manifestations on the soles of the feet. Forms of chronic dermatitis on hands and feet are called “dartres,” “tubboe,” “crabs,” “dry tubboes”; or where exudation goes on between cracks in soles or palms, “running crab yaws.” A large persistent yaw is sometimes known as the “mother,” or “grandmother,” or “mama-pian”; smaller yaws as “daughter” or “grand-daughter” yaws. Yaws which show themselves some time after the disease appears to have subsided are called “memba” (remember) yaws. Yaws coalescing in the form of a ring are called “ringworm” yaws.



stage of desquamation, or at the papular stage, or they may proceed to the formation of typical yaws. The recurrences are usually preceded by feverishness, pains in the bones and joints; and the successive crops may either be limited and partial in their distribution, or they may be general. In Fiji, Daniels states, the average duration of an attack of yaws is about one year.

*The general health.*—With the exception of during the initial fever, or during one of the recurring febrile relapses, the general health is not as a rule affected. Occasionally there is debility and cachexia; or there may be enlargement and tenderness of the lymphatic glands. In other instances the rheumatic pains are a principal feature and may be very severe.

*Persistent yaws.*—That yaws sometimes effects a permanent hold is shown by the persistency with which they occasionally continue to recur during many years. In such cases the lesion has always the characters of a true yaw, and cannot be regarded as a “secondary” or “tertiary” manifestation in the sense in which these terms are applied to the late lesions of syphilis.

*Question of sequelæ.*—Mention is often made of nodes, of gummatous-like thickenings, and of punched out and serpiginous ulcerations in connection with yaws. Most recent authorities regard all such phenomena as being generally the results of an independent, though concurrent, syphilitic infection.

It sometimes happens that an individual who, years previously, passed through an attack of yaws is affected with destructive ulceration of the soft palate, or of the mucous membrane and cartilage of the nose. Opinions differ as to the true relationship between this special type of ulceration and the antecedent yaws; some holding that it is a later manifestation of yaws, others regarding it as purely the result of an independent syphilitic taint. As regards the West Indies the question is one which,



considering the great frequency of both acquired and congenital syphilis there, it is hard to decide. Daniels says that in Fiji, where syphilis is unknown among the natives, these destructive ulcerations of palate and nose, together with a skin affection like lupus vulgaris—all of which he says are amenable to potassium iodide—are not uncommon; he is inclined, therefore, to regard them as true sequelæ of yaws. Corney appears to entertain a similar opinion, for in his annual statistical return of the Colonial Hospital, Fiji, 1896, he classifies eleven cases under the heading “Lupoid ulceration of posterior nares and adjoining pharyngeal parts (tertiary frambœsia).” Powell (*Ind. Med. Gaz.*, Aug., 1898) describes two cases, mother and child, in whom, concurrently, a uniform swelling of the proximal phalanges of both hands occurred during the third year of an attack of yaws. The bones to the touch gave the impression of being rarefied. The swellings yielded to mercury.

*Question of a primary sore.*—Another point in the symptomatology of yaws is the question of the occurrence of a primary sore, as in syphilis. Numa Rat says there is such a sore, but that it is usually overlooked. He describes it as a papule with a pale yellow material at its apex, which may remain a papule, or which, after seven days, may ulcerate and subsequently cicatrise. Other observers do not agree with this. They say that though yaws virus applied to a pre-existing ulcer may render it unhealthy-looking and cause it to fungate like an ordinary yaw, yet successful puncture inoculations, although they sometimes give rise to a yaw at the point of inoculation, do not by any means always produce a local lesion, much less an ulcer. As the lower animals appear not to be susceptible to yaws, this and other interesting points cannot be settled by experiment on them.

**Mortality.**—Although in the literature of the subject reference is made to deaths from yaws, yet, judging from the statistics collected by Nicholls, the mortality must be very small indeed. In 7,157 West



Indian cases, treated in various yaws hospitals, there were only 185 deaths—a mortality of 25·8 per thousand; a death-rate, as Nicholls points out, less than the average annual death-rate in one of the islands—Antigua. Doubtless although yaws itself rarely directly proves fatal, intercurrent diseases, such as sloughing phagedæna and phagedænic ulceration, predisposed to by the skin lesions, occasionally do so. If the verruga of Peru be a form of yaws, then, under certain conditions, yaws becomes a very dangerous disease.

**Ætiology.**—*Contagion and heredity.*—As yaws is highly contagious, all circumstances favouring contact with the subject of the disease favour its occurrence. Simple skin contact does not suffice for infection; a breach of surface is necessary. Probably the virus is often conveyed by insect bites, or by insects acting as go-betweens and carrying it from a yaw sore to an ordinary ulcer. Thus the disease often commences in a pre-existing ulcer. Cases are prone to originate in certain dirty houses, the virus from previous yaws patients seemingly impregnating the floors and walls of the filthy huts in which the latter had resided. In this way the disease may be acquired without direct transference from an existing case.

Yaws is neither hereditary nor congenital. A pregnant mother suffering from yaws does not give birth to a child suffering from the same disease; or one which will subsequently develop yaws, unless the virus be first introduced directly through a breach of surface after birth. It is not conveyed by the milk; nor does a suckling suffering from yaws necessarily infect its nurse.

*Age, sex, occupation, race.*—Although two-thirds of the cases in the West Indies occur before puberty, no age is exempt. Three males are infected to every female attacked. Occupation has no manifest influence. In the West Indies, Europeans, Chinese, and Indians catch the disease if exposed to the contagion.



**Morbid anatomy and pathology.**—No visceral changes have been found in yaws, although, of course, when yaws concurs with syphilis, gummata, etc., may be found; but in this case the concurrent gummata belong to the syphilitic and not to the yaws infection.

The tumours on the skin are granulomata made up of round or spindle-shaped cells, held together by a small amount of connective tissue and abundant blood-vessels. The focus of the circumscribed cell proliferation is the papilla which becomes very much swollen, and the malpighian layer. The cause of the proliferation is probably some micro-organism; what this may be has not been satisfactorily determined. Both Pierez and Nicholls found a micrococcus in great profusion in the growth and exudation. This they succeeded in cultivating; but the causal relationship of the bacterium to the disease has not been established, inoculations of cultures into the lower animals proving negative.

**Diagnosis.**—A painless, insensitive, larger or smaller, circular, encrusted, red granulomatous excrescence occurring in the endemic district, is almost certainly yaws. The most important point in connection with yaws, both as regards diagnosis and ætiology, is its relationship to syphilis. It has been, and is still, held by some distinguished authorities, Hutchinson for example, that yaws is possibly syphilis modified by race and climate; and certain features which the two diseases have in common are pointed to in support of the contention. The discussion is bound to continue until the respective germs of yaws and syphilis have been separated, cultivated and inoculated. So far as clinical and microscopical evidence goes, it is decidedly in favour of, not to say conclusive for, regarding the two diseases as specifically distinct. There are many points of contrast in their clinical features. I may mention the primary sore, the infection of the foetus, the adenitis, the exanthem, the alopecia, the absence



of itching, the iritis, the affection of the permanent teeth, the bone and eye affections, the congenital lesions, the polymorphism of the eruptions, the nerve lesions and the gummata of syphilis. All these are wanting in yaws. Moreover, both diseases may concur in the same individual (Powell cites two cases, and Charlouis two, of syphilis supervening on yaws); and antecedent syphilis certainly does not confer immunity as against yaws. Yaws may die out in a community, as in British Guiana (Daniels, *Brit. Journ. of Dermat.*, November, 1896), yet syphilis remain; yaws may be universal in a community, as in Fiji, and yet true syphilis, whether as an acquired or congenital disease, be unknown. Finally, syphilis has never been shown to give rise to yaws, nor yaws to syphilis; neither, so far as known, has yaws been evolved in any community from syphilis, or appeared independently where the possibility of its having been introduced from a recognised yaws centre could be excluded with certainty.

The therapeutical argument for the identity of the two diseases is a very fallacious one. Sulphur will cure scabies and pityriasis versicolor; yet from this circumstance we may not conclude that these diseases are identical. The same may be said in respect of the influence of mercury and iodine on syphilis and on yaws.

**Prophylaxis.**—This resolves itself into the adoption of measures to prevent contagion. These are, the isolation and segregation of the affected; the dressing and treating of wounds in the hitherto unaffected; the application of antiseptic ointments to yaws sores so as to obviate the diffusion of germs; the purifying or destruction by fire of houses or huts notoriously infected; the prevention of pollution of bathing water by yaws discharges.

**Treatment.**—All are agreed as to the propriety of endeavouring by good food, tonics and occasional aperients to improve the general health. Most are agreed as to the propriety of endeavouring to procure



a copious eruption by stimulating the functions of the skin by warm demulcent drinks; by a daily warm bath with plenty of soap; and, during the outcoming of the eruption, by such diaphoretics as liquor ammoniæ acetatis, guaiacum, etc. Confection of sulphur is also recommended as a suitable aperient; it may be taken frequently in the early stages of the disease. All are agreed as to the propriety of avoiding everything—such as chill—tending to repress the eruption; warm clothing is therefore indicated. Many use mercury or potassium iodide, or both, after the eruption is fully developed. These drugs have undoubtedly the power of causing the eruption in yaws to resolve. Some practitioners rarely use them or, if they use them, do so only at the latest stages of the disease, considering that relapses are more prone to occur after their too early employment. Mercury, owing to its proneness to cause anæmia, is less frequently employed than potassium iodide. Where the eruption is persistently squamous, or papular, arsenic is frequently prescribed. Some touch the yaws with sulphate of copper; some apply nitrate of mercury ointment; others iodoform ointment; others leave them alone, confining their local measures to the enforcement of cleanliness. When the soles of the feet are attacked, the feet ought to be soaked in warm water to soften the epidermis, which should then be cut away sufficiently to liberate the subjacent yaw. Ulceration must be treated on ordinary principles. During convalescence, iron, arsenic, and quinine are indicated.



## CHAPTER XXX.

## VERRUGA PERUANA.

IN certain narrow valleys of the Andes, between the ninth and sixteenth parallels of south latitude, and at an elevation of from 3,000 to 10,000 feet, an aggravated form of a disease in some respects closely resembling yaws, and locally known as "verruca," is endemic.

The peculiar initial rheumatic-like pains and fever are apparently the same in character as those of yaws, only more severe. Just as in yaws, one attack of verruga confers practical immunity. The constitutional symptoms likewise subside on the appearance of the skin lesion which, judging by the published descriptions, is a granuloma macroscopically and microscopically identical with that of yaws. Just as in the latter disease, the eruption may be sparse or abundant, discrete or confluent. As in yaws, individual granulomata may fail to erupt; others may subside rapidly; others again may continue to increase, and then, after remaining stationary for a time, gradually wither, shrink, and drop off without leaving a scar. If difference there be in their clinical features between verruga and yaws, apparently it is more one of degree than of kind.

In verruga the initial fever may continue for weeks, or even for months. It is very severe in many instances. Often it exhibits features like those of a malarial infection, including intermittency, profound anæmia, and sometimes enlargement of the spleen and liver. Very probably in such cases it is the outcome of a compound infection—verruca attacking a malarial subject. Not infrequently in the endemic



district a certain type of fever, believed to be verruga fever, proves fatal before the appearance of definite skin manifestations such as would justify a positive diagnosis. This was apparently the case with a medical student, named Carrion, who inoculated himself with blood from a verruga granuloma. The symptoms in his case closely resembled those of the very deadly fever referred to, which is known locally as Oroya fever.

In addition to the severity of the fever and rheumatic pains, the Peruvian disease is remarkable for the tendency to spontaneous hæmorrhage exhibited by the skin lesions. Apparently this peculiarity is attributable, like the hæmorrhages in the affection known as "mountain fever," to the diminished atmospheric pressure at great altitudes; for when the patients descend to the lower valleys, or to the sea level, the tendency to bleeding ceases. Possibly, the unusual vascularity of the swellings, which are sometimes permeated by a network of cavernous sinuses, also arises from the same circumstance.

In yaws we find no mention made of the occurrence of fungating granulomata in any situation but the skin. In verruga it would seem that the tumours may develop on mucous surfaces—in the œsophagus, the stomach, intestine, bladder, uterus, and vagina. Hence the dysphagia—a common symptom—and the occasional occurrence of hæmatemesis, melæna, hæmat-uria, and bleeding from the vagina in the last-named disease.

The geographical distribution of verruga, so far as known, is singularly limited; it is confined to certain valleys, the inhabitants of neighbouring places being exempt. It is said that the disease may be acquired in merely passing through the endemic districts; and that, unlike yaws, the domestic animals in these districts, as well as the human inhabitants, are subject to the disease.\*

\* Two elaborate memoirs on this disease have recently appeared—"La Maladie de Carrion," and an article in *La*



**Treatment.**—It appears that cold tends to repress the development of the eruption, and that until this appears fever and pain persist. For this reason as well as to avoid the hæmorrhage from the lesions when they do erupt, the patients should quit the heights and descend to near the sea level. External hæmorrhages, when they do occur, must be treated by graduated pressure; otherwise, the local as well as the general treatment is the same as for yaws.

*Presse Médicale* (July 27th, 1898), both by Dr. M. E. Andinzola. It is curious that, although animals are said to be subject to the disease, Carrion chose to experiment on himself. No mention is made in the works referred to of experiments on animals, although Carrion is lauded for his enthusiastic devotion. The reader might consult an article in Pasteur's "Annales" (Sept. 25th, 1898), "Note sur la Bacteriologie de Verruge du Pérou," by M. Charles Nicolle.



## CHAPTER XXXI.

## ULCERATING GRANULOMA OF THE PUDENDA.

**Geographical distribution.**—Drs. Neal, Ozzard, Conyers and Daniels (*Brit. Guiana Med. Ann.*, 1896) describe a peculiar form of ulcerating granuloma affecting the pudenda in dark-skinned races. Their observations were made in British Guiana and, principally, on West Indian negroes. Daniels believes that he has seen a similar or the same disease in Fijians. The “serpiginous ulceration of the genitals” referred to by Macleod (*Ind. Med. Gaz.*, 1882) and recently by other writers in India, more especially by Maitland (*Ind. Med. Gaz.*, 1899), is undoubtedly the same disease, examples of which I can recollect having seen in South China. Taylor, of New York, has seen it in whites in the United States, and Goldsmith (*Journ. of Trop. Med.*, 1899) has also met with it in aboriginals in North Australia. Doubtless, therefore, although hitherto little notice has been taken of it, this disease is widely distributed in the tropics.

**Age and sex.**—This form of ulceration has not been observed before puberty; it has been found only after thirteen or fourteen and up to forty or fifty. It occurs in both sexes, but particularly in women.

**Symptoms.**—The disease commences in the great majority of cases somewhere on the genitals or groins as an insignificant, circumscribed, nodular thickening and elevation of the skin. The affected area, being covered with a very delicate, pinkish, easily-rubbed-off epithelium, excoriates readily, exposing a surface prone to bleed and break down, although rarely ulcerating deeply. The disease advances in two ways; by continuous eccentric peripheral extension and by auto-infection of an opposing surface.



In its extension it exhibits a predilection for warm and moist surfaces ; particularly the folds between the scrotum and thighs, the labia, and the flexures of the thighs (Fig. 49). Its extension is very slow, years elapsing before it covers a large area. Concurrently with peripheral extension a dense, contracting, uneven, readily-breaking-down scar forms

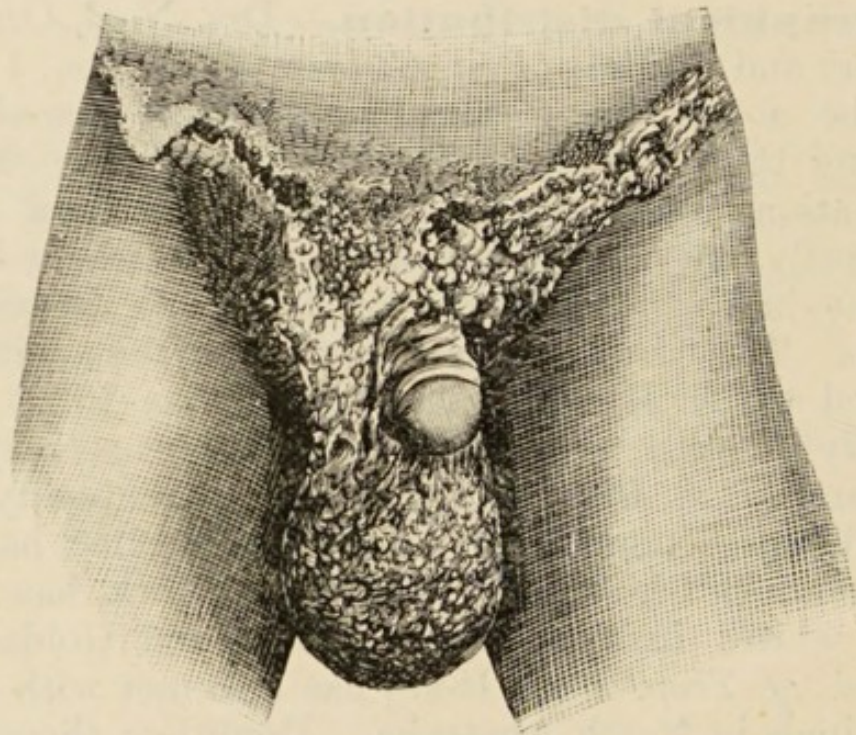


Fig. 49.—Ulcerating granuloma of the pudenda in the male.

on the surface travelled over by the coarsely or finely nodulated active new-growth which constitutes the peripheral part of the diseased area. Occasionally islands of active disease spring up in this scar tissue ; but it is at the margin of the implicated patch that the special features of the affection are to be observed. In a case of some standing there is found a large area of white or irregularly pigmented, perhaps excoriated, unsound, contracting, folded, and dense cicatrix ; surrounded by a narrow, serpiginous, irregular border of nodulated, somewhat raised, red, glazed, delicately skinned or pinkish, superficially ulcerated or cracked new-growth.

In the case of the female (Fig. 50) the disease may



extend into the vagina, over the labia, and along the flexures of the thighs. In the male it may spread over the penis, involve the glans, scrotum, and upper part of the thighs. In either sex it may spread in the course of years to the pubes, over the perineum, and as far back as the region of the coccyx. At times a profuse watery discharge exudes and even

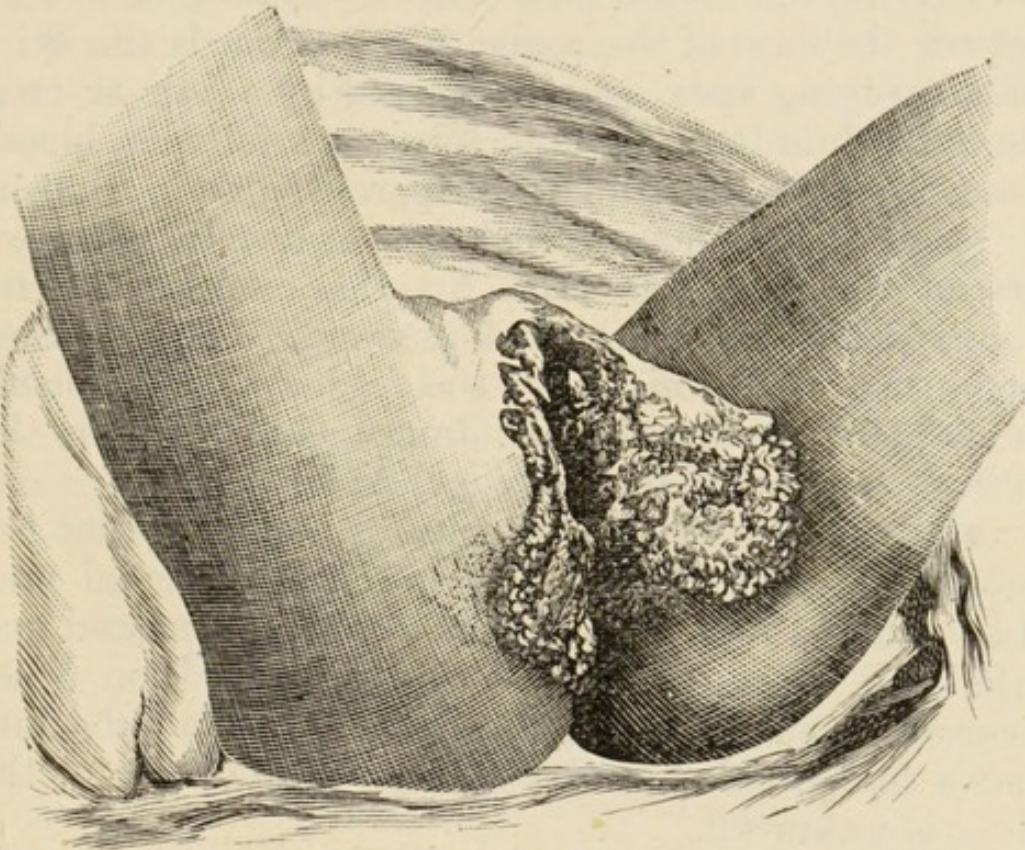


Fig. 50.—Ulcerating granuloma of the pudenda in the female.

drips from the surface of the new-growth, soiling the clothes, soddening the skin, and emitting a peculiarly offensive odour. In this condition the disease, slowly extending, continues for years, giving rise to inconvenience and perhaps seriously implicating the urethra, vagina, or anus, but not otherwise materially impairing the health.

**Histology.**—On microscopical examination the new growth at the margins of the sore is found to be made up of nodules, or masses of nodules, consisting of round cells having large and, usually, badly-staining nuclei. These cells are embedded in a delicate fibrous reticulum. The nodular masses are,



for the most part, covered by epithelium, their under surfaces merging gradually into a dense fibrous stroma in which small clusters of similar round cells are here and there embedded. The growths, though very vascular, contain no hæmorrhages ; and there are no signs of suppuration or of caseation, no giant cells, and no tubercle bacilli. In vertical section of the small nodules the round cell mass will be found to be wedge-shaped, the base of the wedge being towards the skin, the deep-lying apex usually pierced by a hair or two. The growth is found around sebaceous follicles, blood-vessels, lymphatics, and sudoriparous glands ; but it is specially abundant, and most deeply situated, around the hair follicles. No characteristic micro-organism has hitherto been discovered. For a detailed description of the histology the reader should consult an elaborate article by Dr. James Galloway, in the *British Journal of Dermatology*, April, 1897.

**Ætiology.**—There is reason for believing that the disease is often, if not generally, a venereal one. Maitland has seen it in the mouths of a husband and wife. He considers it may be inoculated on other forms of venereal sore, such as an ulcerating bubo, and that a compound sore may result. The nature of the virus is unknown.

**Diagnosis.**—In British Guiana, as elsewhere, malignant and syphilitic ulcerations of the groin are common enough ; the disease under notice, however, differs widely from these clinically, histologically, and therapeutically. It is characterised by extreme chronicity—ten or more years—by absence of cachexia or of any tendency to cause death, by non-implication of the lymphatic system, and by non-amenability to mercury and iodide of potassium. The disease which it most resembles is lupus vulgaris. From this it differs inasmuch as it is practically confined to the pudendal region, affects mucous as well as cutaneous surfaces, tends to follow in its extension the folds of the skin, is not associated with the tubercle bacillus, giant cells, caseation, or other evidences of tuberculous disease.



**Treatment.**—This disease is very rebellious to treatment. Scraping and caustics, including the actual cautery, have been freely employed; but, although some improvement may be effected by these means, new nodules almost invariably spring up in the resulting cicatrix. Complete excision, where practicable, offers the best chance of permanent cure; of course, such a proceeding must be undertaken before large areas and important passages have become involved. Conyers and Daniels found that camphor and carbolic acid in equal parts, and salicylic acid in unguentum creasoti, thirty to forty grains to the ounce, give the best results; although in no instance have they succeeded in effecting a complete cure, the growth invariably recurring in the scars soon after discontinuance of treatment. Maitland recommends the repeated application of Vienna paste followed by boric acid poultices. Mercury and iodide of potassium are useless.



## CHAPTER XXXII.

## ORIENTAL SORE.

**Definition.**—A specific ulcerating granuloma of the skin, endemic within certain limited areas in many warm countries. It is characterised by an initial papule which, after scaling and crusting over, breaks down into a slowly extending and very indolent ulcer. Healing after many months, it leaves a depressed scar. The sore is inoculable and, to a considerable degree, protective against recurrence.

**Geographical and seasonal distribution.**—Among the endemic places may be named Morocco, the Sahara (Biskra, Gafsa), Egypt, Crete, Cyprus, Asia Minor, Syria (Aleppo), Mesopotamia (Bagdad), Arabia, Persia, the Caucasus, Turkestan, India (Lahore, Multan, Delhi, etc.). Locally, Oriental sore is often called after some town or district in which it is specially prevalent; thus we have Delhi boil, Bagdad boil, and so forth. It is much more common in cities than in the country. In Bagdad few escape an attack; visitors, even of a few days only, are almost certain, at particular times of the year, to contract it. Juliano describes (*Journ. des Mal. Cut. et Syph.*, Oct., 1890) the disease as being common in Bahia, Brazil; the name Oriental sore, suggested by Tilbury Fox, is therefore no longer quite appropriate.

According to Hirsch, in the tropics this form of ulceration is specially prevalent about the commencement of the cool season, in more temperate climates towards the end of summer or beginning of autumn. Years of prevalence may be succeeded by years of comparative rarity; possibly in harmony with altered



sanitary conditions. In Delhi, for example, in 1864 from 40 to 70 per cent. of the resident Europeans were affected with the local sore; on certain sanitary improvements being effected, the frequency of the disease was immediately materially reduced.

**Symptoms.**—Oriental sore commences as a minute, itching papule which tends to expand somewhat as a shotty, congested infiltration of the derma. After a few days the surface of the papule becomes covered with fine, papery scales. At first these scales are dry and white; later they are moister, thicker, browner, and adherent. In this way a crust is formed which, on falling off, or on being scratched off, uncovers a shallow ulcer. The sore now slowly extends, discharging a scanty ichorous material which, from time to time, may become inspissated and crust over the sore which continues to spread underneath. The ulcer extends by the erosion of its perpendicular, sharp-cut, and jagged edge, which is surrounded by a slight or more considerable areola of congestion. The surface of the ulcer is irregular. Any granulations which form speedily break down. Subsidiary sores may arise around the parent ulcer, into which they ultimately merge. These sores, usually about an inch or so in diameter, in process of time may come, in some instances, to occupy an area several inches across.

After a variable period, ranging from two or three to twelve, or even more months, healing sets in. Granulation is slow and frequently interrupted. Often it commences at the centre whilst the ulcer may be still extending at the edge; often it is effected under a crust. Ultimately a depressed, white, or pinkish cicatrix is formed. Contraction of the scar, particularly if it happens to be on the face, may cause considerable and unsightly deformity.

Oriental sore may be single or multiple. Two or three are not uncommon; in rare instances as many as forty have been counted on the same patient.



They are mostly situated on uncovered parts—hands, feet, arms, legs, and, especially in young children, on the face ; rarely on the trunk ; never on the palms, soles, or hairy scalp.

In a very few instances the initial papule does not proceed to ulceration but persists as a scaling or scabbing, non-ulcerating, flattened plaque—just as sometimes happens in the case of the primary chancre of syphilis. Occasionally, from contamination with the virus of erysipelas, of sloughing phagedæna, or of some other infectious acute inflammatory skin disease, the primary lesion may become complicated and correspondingly modified and, perhaps, a source of serious danger. Otherwise, Oriental sore is troublesome and unsightly rather than painful or dangerous.

**Histology ; ætiology.**—Section of the papule displays an infiltration of the derma by a mass of small round granulation cells. These lie between the elements of the tissues, particularly about blood-vessels, lymphatics, and sweat glands ; towards the centre of the lesion they completely replace the normal structures. Various micro-organisms have been described in association with Oriental sore. By staining sections in gentian violet and afterwards partly decolourising in spirit, Cunningham and Firth found certain violet-stained bodies, varying in size and grouping, in a proportion of the infiltrating cells. These bodies Cunningham was inclined to regard as parasites. Riehl, however, looks upon them as the result of a hyaline degeneration of protoplasm, and advances a claim for certain micrococci which he found in great profusion in the granulation cells. Other observers have likewise found micrococci in the tissues ; but, so far, inoculations from cultures have failed to produce the sores. As the disease has been proved to be communicable to the lower animals (as well as to man) by inoculation of the discharge from the surface of the ulcers, there can be little doubt that in Oriental sore the discharges contain the specific germ ; and, as Riehl's micrococcus did not



communicate the true type of sore, it is probable that the germ has yet to be discovered.

In what way, under natural conditions, the parasite enters the tissues it is as yet impossible to state definitely. Not improbably it is conveyed by flies or other biting insects, and by them either inserted into the skin or applied to some pre-existing wound or sore.

As a rule, second attacks do not occur. Observing this, the Jews of Bagdad at one time practised on their young children Oriental sore inoculation, selecting for the purpose some part of the body habitually covered by the clothes. They designedly forestalled the infection by natural agencies, which experience had taught them to regard as inevitable; and thereby avoided an ugly scar on the faces, hands or arms of their children.

Neither race, nor sex, nor age, nor occupation, nor social condition influences susceptibility.

**Treatment.**—Some have advocated destruction of the primary papule, and even of the ulcer, by caustics or by the actual cautery. It is doubtful if such a measure would prove effective. A knowledge of the nature and natural progress of the disease suggests a protective and soothing, rather than an irritating line of treatment. A dressing with some mild antiseptic ointment, as of iodoform, boracic or salicylic acid, is indicated. Dr. Andrew Duncan informs me that in India he has seen these sores treated with great success by bandaging over them a piece of thin sheet lead. Tonics when the patient is anæmic or debilitated, attention to the general health, change of climate should the disease persist beyond the usual time for cicatrisation, are indicated.



## SECTION V.—ANIMAL PARASITES AND ASSOCIATED DISEASES.

### CHAPTER XXXIII.

#### FILARIASIS.

HE who would properly qualify himself for medical work in warm countries must acquire something more than a smattering of helminthology. The conditions of life in the tropics are such that not only are the careless natives extremely subject to verminous invasions of many descriptions, but the more carefully living and fastidious European is also constantly exposed to being victimised in the same way. Obscure diseases are very often the expression of some form of helminthiasis. Many diseases which formerly were mysterious and inexplicable can now with confidence be referred to "worms." The ability to recognise the presence of these parasites has, in some instances, enormously enhanced our powers of diagnosis, treatment, and prophylaxis. The physician, therefore, cannot afford any longer to ignore what, not many years ago, was regarded as but an unimportant department of natural history.

#### I. PARASITES OF THE CIRCULATORY AND LYMPHATIC SYSTEMS.

##### THE FILARIÆ SANGUINIS AND FILARIASIS.

**History.**—Our knowledge of this subject dates from the discovery by Demarquay, in 1863, of an embryo nematode—*Filaria nocturna*—in the milky fluid from a case of chylous dropsy of the tunica



vaginalis (p. 530). Later, in 1866, Wücherer found the same organism in the urine of a number of cases of chyluria. In 1870 Lewis made a similar observation in India. Two years later, in 1872, the latter observer discovered that the blood of man was the normal habitat of this embryo parasite which he named, accordingly, *Filaria sanguinis hominis*. Since that time the subject has rapidly expanded, and its great practical importance in tropical pathology is now slowly becoming recognised. Recently the writer has pointed out that Lewis's filaria is not the only blood-worm in man, and that the human circulation is the habitat of the embryos of no fewer than four, possibly of five or even more, distinct species of nematodes.

*Nomenclature.*—In consequence of the discovery of so many additional and similar blood parasites, it has been deemed advisable to modify the original name of Lewis's filaria. This I have proposed to call *Filaria nocturna*. The other filariæ of the blood I have named *Filaria diurna*, *Filaria perstans*, *Filaria demarquaii*, *Filaria ozzardi* (a doubtful species), and a sixth, which may or may not be connected with one of the two last, I have called *Filaria magalhæsi*, after its describer.

*Their pathological importance.*—Only two of these parasites, so far as we know at present, appear to have important pathological bearings—*Filaria nocturna*, the embryonic form of *Filaria bancrofti*, a mature parasite inhabiting the lymphatics of man; and *Filaria perstans*, the embryo of a parasite, the mature form of which has but recently been discovered. The pathological significance of the latter is still doubtful. There can be no question of the importance in tropical pathology of *Filaria nocturna* and of its parental form; there is abundant reason to believe that it is the cause of endemic chyluria, of various forms of lymphatic varix, of tropical elephantiasis arabum, and probably of other obscure tropical diseases.



FILARIA NOCTURNA (*Filaria bancrofti*).

**Geographical distribution and prevalence.**—The geographical distribution of *Filaria nocturna* is very extensive. It has been found as an indigenous parasite in almost every country throughout the tropical and subtropical world as far north as Spain in Europe, and Charleston in the United States of America; and as far south as Brisbane in Australia. In many places quite 10 per cent., and in other places half, of the population harbour it. I have ascertained that it is probable that one-third of the inhabitants of at least one district in India—Cochin—carry blood filariæ. I also find that in some of the South Sea islands, Samoa for example, fully one-half of the people are affected in this way. Thorpe has shown (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, Oct. 3rd, 1896) that in the Friendly Islands 32 per cent. of the people harbour the filaria. The table on p. 483, drawn up from a number of observations on the blood of the natives of certain tropical countries, will convey some idea of the wide area over which this and the other blood filariæ are distributed, and of the degree of their prevalence in the countries mentioned.

**Demonstration of blood filariæ.**—Whoever would investigate the subject of filariasis will find that, in order practically to comprehend the subject and provide himself with abundant material for observation, it is advisable to make a systematic examination of the blood of the inhabitants of some district in which elephantiasis is endemic. If this be done, the observer is sure to come across, sooner or later, cases in which *Filaria nocturna* abounds, and also of the diseases to which it gives rise.

*Technique.*—I commend the following procedure as likely to supply the investigator not only with material but also with much useful information. Let him visit late in the evening some hospital, or prison, or other establishment where he can have an opportunity of examining the inmates, and let him procure slides of the blood of, say, 100 persons. The slides are conveniently prepared by pricking the finger of each



Region.	Locality.	No. of Cases examined.	Day or night blood.	<i>Filaria nocturna.</i>	<i>Filaria diurna.</i>	<i>Filaria demarquaii.</i>	<i>Filaria perstans.</i>	<i>Filaria ozzardi.</i>
West Africa ...	Congo, Dr. Firket ...	54	Day	—	—	—	30	—
	Lukunga (Congo) ...	14		—	—	—	9	—
	Banza Manteka (Congo) ...	61		—	—	—	35	—
	Old Calabar ...	27		1	1	—	15	—
	Lower Niger ...	108	Both	8	16	—	3	—
	Dahomey ...	49	Both	2	—	—	1	—
	Zanzibar ...	1	—	1	—	—	—	—
	Mombasa ...	40	—	1	—	—	—	—
	South-East Africa ...	74	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Morocco ...	6	5 p.m.	—	—	—	—	—
North Africa ...	Madras ...	6	—	1	—	—	—	—
	Cochin ...	88	Night	21	—	—	—	—
India ...	Ceylon ...	55	Both	1	—	—	—	—
	Samoa ...	56	Night	27	—	—	—	—
Ceylon ...	Fiji ...	124	Both	30	—	—	—	—
	Friendly Islands ...	214	Both	69	—	—	—	—
	Georgetown, Dr. Daniels ...	348	Night	52	—	—	—	—
	New Amsterdam, Dr. Ozzard ...	100	—	28	—	—	—	45
	Demerara Indians ...	72	—	—	—	—	—	55
British Guiana ...	Demerara littoral ...	99	—	—	—	—	—	—
	St. Vincent ...	61	Night	9	—	—	—	—
	St. Kitts and Montserrat ...	152	Both	6	—	10	—	—
	Trinidad ...	28	Both	6	—	—	—	—
	St. Lucia ...	70	Both	6	—	—	—	—
West Indies ...	St. Lucia ...	72	Night	—	—	4	—	—



person in turn, transferring large drops of the blood so obtained to ordinary microscope slips by simply dabbing the centre of the slip on the blood. The blood is then spread out with a needle so as to cover in a moderately thin film about a square inch of one surface of each slip. The slips are allowed to dry; they are then labelled and put aside. One preparation of this description may be made from each person, who should be selected simply as a representative of the general population and therefore irrespective of his being physically sound, or of his being the subject of any particular type of disease.

The slides may be examined in various ways, either at once or, if more convenient, weeks or months afterwards; if kept dry they do not spoil. A convenient plan is to dip the slides, without previous fixing, in a weak solution of fuchsine—about three or four drops of the saturated alcoholic solution to the ounce of water. They are left in the stain for about an hour, and then examined wet and without cover-glass. If the slides are old they may stain too deeply; in this case they may be partially decolourised in weak acetic acid—two or three drops to the ounce of water—and afterwards washed.

Another plan is to fix the blood-film with alcohol and then to stain by running on a few drops of saturated watery solution of methylene blue, washing off the superfluous stain after half a minute and, if necessary, decolourising with weak acetic acid; the wet slide is then examined with the microscope. Or, without previous fixing with alcohol, the slide, after it has dried, may be dipped for a few seconds in water so as to wash out the hæmoglobin, dried, and then, with or without fixing, stained with methylene blue, logwood, or other suitable stain.

An inch objective and a mechanical stage with a parallel movement will enable the investigator to pass rapidly in review the whole of the blood on the slide. In unfixed slides if filariæ are present they will be detected readily; the hæmoglobin of the blood corpuscles being dissolved out by the watery stain, the white blood corpuscles and any filariæ that may be present are the only coloured objects visible on the slide, and therefore at once catch the eye.

In any district in which the filaria is moderately common, out of 100 slides prepared in this way from as many persons, probably eight or ten will be found to contain the parasite. When filariæ have been detected, the persons from whom the parasite-bearing slides came may be used afterwards as a source of supply for further examinations and study.

*Demonstration of living filariæ.*—When it is desired to study the living filaria, all that is necessary is to make three or four ordinary wet preparations of the blood of a filaria-infected person—making them during the evening or night, and ringing the cover-glasses with vaseline so as to prevent the



slides from becoming dry. In such preparations the filariæ keep alive for a week, or even longer, and can readily be detected by their movements, an inch objective being used in the first instance as a searcher.

*Permanent preparations.*—Permanent preparations may be made by fixing very thin films of blood with alcohol or heat, staining with methylene blue, eosine, etc., and mounting in xylol balsam. It is generally advisable before fixing to wash out the hæmoglobin with water or very weak acetic acid. Logwood is perhaps the best stain; it brings out the sheath very distinctly, and picks out the nuclei. Double staining with eosine and logwood shows very well the structure of the musculo-cutaneous layer of the worm, in addition to other anatomical details.

**Description of embryonic form.**—Examined in fresh blood, *Filaria nocturna* (Fig. 51, *a*) is seen to be a minute, transparent, colourless, snake-like organism which, without materially changing its position on the slide, wriggles about in a state of great activity, constantly agitating and displacing the corpuscles in its neighbourhood. At first the movements are so active that the anatomical features of the filaria cannot be made out. In the course of a few hours the movement slows down, and then one can see that the little worm is shaped like a snake or an eel—that is to say, that it is a long, slender, cylindrical organism, having one extremity abruptly rounded off, the other for about one-fifth of the entire length gradually tapering to a fine point. On measurement, it is found to be about  $\frac{1}{80}$  of an inch in length by  $\frac{1}{3000}$  to  $\frac{1}{3500}$  of an inch in diameter—about the diameter of a red blood corpuscle.

When examined with a low power, it appears to be structureless; with a high power a certain amount of structure can, on close scrutiny, be made out. In the first place, it can be seen that the entire animal is enclosed in an exceedingly delicate, limp, structureless sack, in which it moves backwards and forwards (Fig. 52, *a*). This sack, or “sheath,” as it is generally called, although closely applied to the body, is considerably longer than the worm it encloses; so that that part of the sack which for the time being is not



occupied is collapsed and trails after the head, or tail, or both, as the case may be. It can be seen also that about the posterior part of the middle third of the parasite, there is what appears to be an irregular

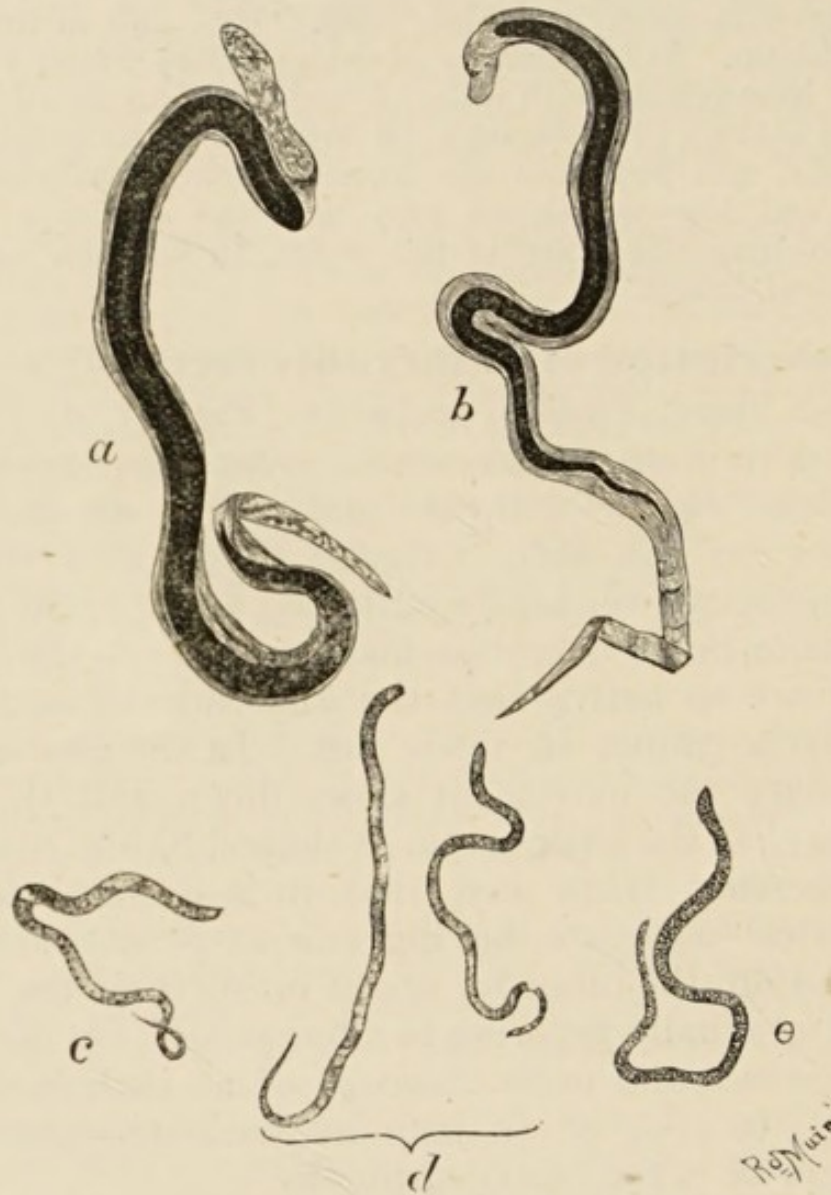


Fig. 51.—(a) *Filaria nocturna*  $\times 300$ ; (b) *F. diurna*, Africa  $\times 300$ ; (c) *F. demarquaii*, St. Vincent  $\times 300$ ; (d) *F. ozzardi* and *F. perstans*, British Guiana  $\times 300$ ; (e) *F. perstans*, Africa  $\times 300$ .

aggregation of granular material which, by suitable staining, can be shown to be a viscus of some sort (b). This organ runs for some distance along the axis of the worm. Further, if a high power be used, a closely set, very delicate transverse striation can be detected in the musculo-cutaneous layer throughout the entire length of the animal. Besides this, if carefully looked



for at a point about one-fifth of the entire length of the organism backwards from the head end, a shining, triangular V-shaped patch (*c*) is always visible. What

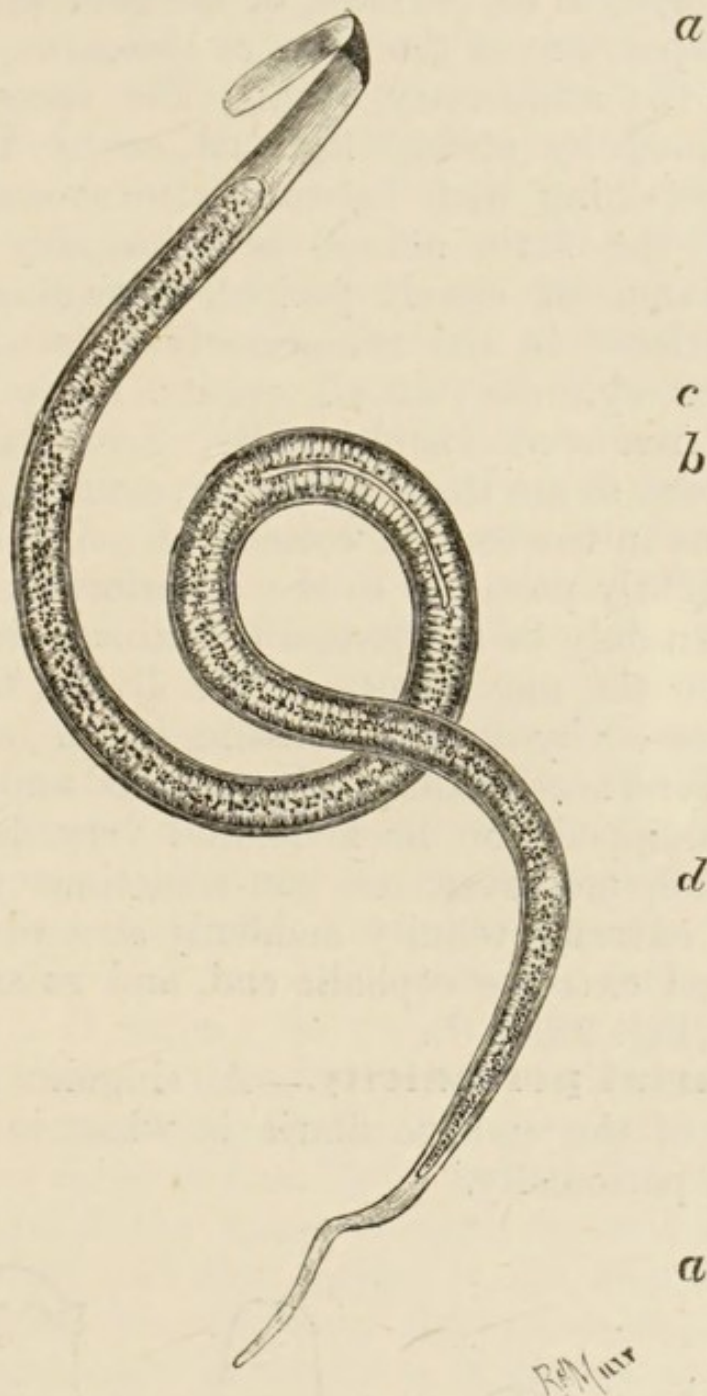


Fig. 52.—Anatomy of *Filaria nocturna*.

*a a*, Sheath ; *b*, central viscus ; *c*, V spot ; *d*, tail spot.

may be this V spot is brought out by very light staining with dilute logwood. The dye brings out yet another spot (*d*), similar to the preceding, though very much smaller ; this second spot is situated a short distance from the end of the tail. The former I have



designated the "V spot," the latter the "tail spot." These spots are probably connected with development, the V spot being the rudiment of the future water-vascular system or, perhaps, of the generative organs, the tail spot that of the anus, or cloaca and posterior part of the alimentary canal. The spots (*c*, *d*) are not stained by strong logwood or by the aniline dyes. Staining with logwood also shows that the body of the little animal is principally composed of a column of closely packed, exceedingly minute cells enclosed in the transversely striated musculo-cutaneous cylinder; at all events, many nuclei are thereby rendered visible. Dr. Low has recently pointed out to me that the break seen in all stained specimens in the central column of nuclei occurs at a point slightly posterior to the anterior V spot. This break can only be recognised in stained preparations.

When the movements of the living filaria have almost ceased, by careful focussing it can be seen that the head end is constantly being covered and uncovered by a six-lipped—or hooked—and very delicate prepuce; and, moreover, one can sometimes see a short fang of extreme tenuity suddenly shot out from the uncovered extreme cephalic end, and as suddenly retracted (Fig. 53, *c*, *d*).

**Filarial periodicity.**—A singular feature in the life of the embryo filaria is what is known as "filarial periodicity."

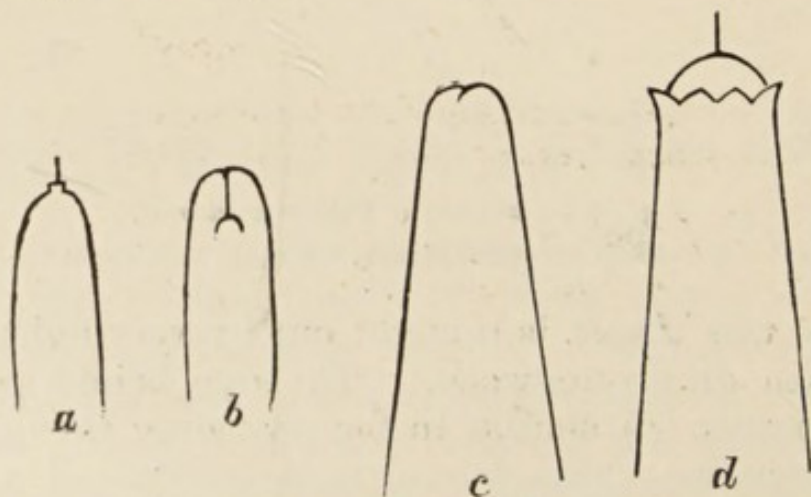


Fig. 53.—Structure of head end of *Filaria perstans* (*a*, *b*), and of *F. nocturna* (*c*, *d*).



If under ordinary conditions of health and habit the blood be examined during the day, the parasite is rarely seen, or, if it be seen, only one or two specimens at most are encountered in a slide. It will be found, however, that as evening approaches, commencing about 5 or 6 o'clock, the filariæ begin to enter the peripheral circulation in gradually increasing numbers. The swarm goes on increasing until about midnight, at which time it is no unusual thing to find as many as three hundred, or even six hundred, in every drop of blood; so that, assuming that the parasites are evenly distributed throughout the circulation, it may be inferred that as many as forty or fifty millions are simultaneously circulating in the blood-vessels. After midnight the numbers begin gradually to decrease; by 8 or 9 o'clock in the morning the filariæ have disappeared from the peripheral blood for the day. This diurnal periodicity is, under normal conditions, maintained with the utmost regularity for years. Should, however, as Mackenzie has shown, a filarial subject be made to sleep during the day and remain awake at night, the periodicity is reversed; that is to say, the parasites come into the blood during the day and disappear from it during the night. It cannot be the sleeping state, as some have conjectured, that brings about this periodicity; for the ingress of the filariæ into the peripheral blood commences three or four hours before the usual time for sleep, and the egress several hours before sleep is concluded, and this egress is not complete until several hours after the usual time of waking.

No reasonable explanation of the cause of filarial periodicity has been given yet. A recent opportunity has enabled me to ascertain that, during their diurnal temporary absence from the cutaneous circulation, the filariæ retire principally to the larger arteries and to the lungs (Fig. 54), where, during the day, they may be found in enormous numbers.

The patient on whom this observation was made was the subject of lymph scrotum and varicose groin glands.



His blood contained large numbers of embryo filariæ, which exhibited the anatomical characters and periodicity characteristic of *F. nocturna*. One morning he committed suicide by swallowing a large quantity of dilute hydrocyanic acid. Death was almost instantaneous. At the *post-mortem* examination, made six hours later, a huge lymphatic varix was found occupying the pelvis and back part of the abdominal cavity. In the dilated lymphatic vessels many adult filariæ—*F. bancrofti*—were found. The distribution of the embryo filariæ was studied by counting them in drops of blood expressed from the various organs and also in sections. The result is summarised in the following tables:—

ENUMERATION OF FILARIÆ IN A DROP OF  
BLOOD EXPRESSED FROM THE FOLLOWING  
ORGANS.

Organ.	No. of Slides.	Aggregate No. of Filariæ.	Average per Slide.
Liver . . . . .	3	2	$\frac{2}{3}$
Spleen . . . . .	3	3	1
Brachial venæ comites .	4	111	28
Bone marrow . . . .	1	0	0
Muscle of heart . . .	3	365	122
Carotid artery . . .	1	612	612
Lung . . . . .	10	6751	675

ENUMERATION OF FILARIÆ IN SECTIONS OF  
THE FOLLOWING ORGANS.

Organs.	No. of Sections.	Aggregate No. of Filariæ.	Average per Section.
Liver . . . . .	10	3	0·3
Spleen . . . . .	4	0	0·0
Kidney . . . . .	8	13	1·6
Brain . . . . .	4	4	1·0
Muscle (voluntary) .	3	2	0·33
Heart muscle . . . .	4	68	17·0
Lung . . . . .	6	301	50·16
Lobe of ear . . . . .	4	1	0·25
Scrotum . . . . .	4	0	0·0



In the lung sections (Fig. 54) the filariæ lay outstretched or variously coiled in the vessels, large and small. In the heart muscle they lay along the capillaries between the fibres; in the kidneys they seemed specially to affect the malpighian tufts; a very few were found in the capillaries of the brain; vast numbers were found in smears from the inner surface of the carotid arteries. The preparations afforded no explanation as to how the filariæ contrive to maintain their position in the blood

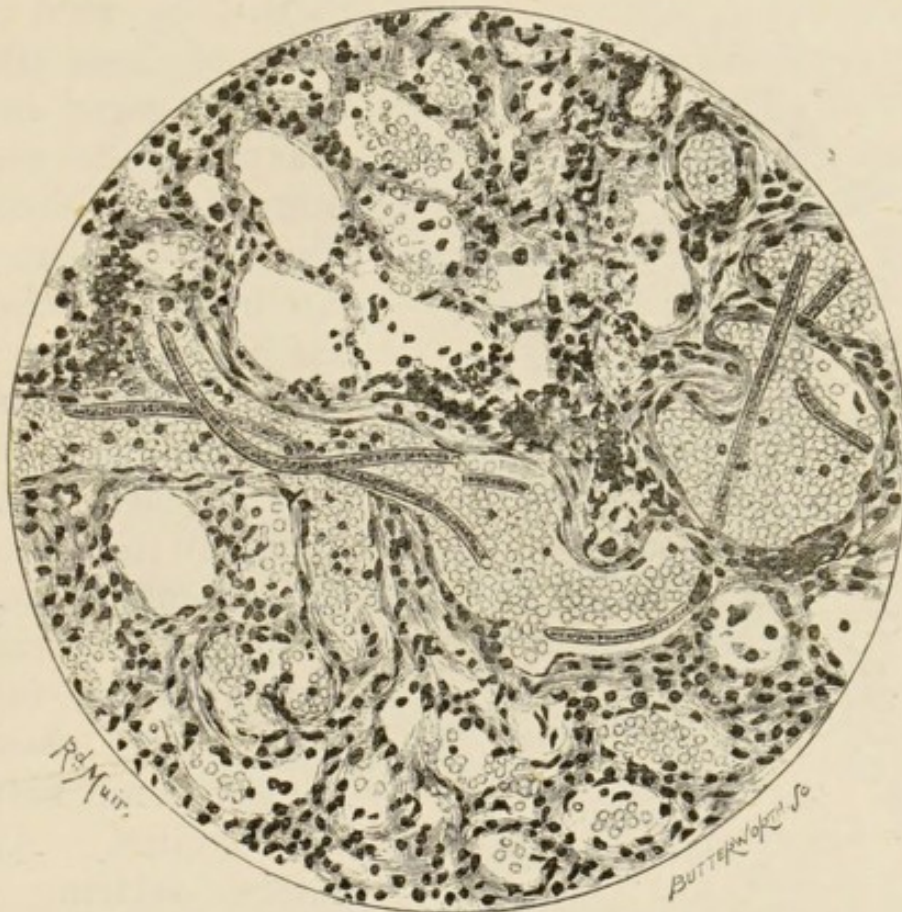


Fig. 54.—Section of lung, showing embryo filariæ in the blood-vessels.  
(From a Microphotogram by Mr. Spitta.)

current, or as to the forces determining their peculiar distribution. Their absence from the liver and spleen is a remarkable fact.

**The mosquito the intermediate host of *Filaria nocturna*.**—Should the females of certain species of mosquito, probably belonging to the genus *Culex* [*C. pipiens* (?), *C. ciliaris*], which had fed on the blood of a filaria-infested individual be examined immediately after feeding, the blood contained in the stomach of the insects will be found to contain large numbers of living filariæ. If one of these mosquitoes



be examined three or four hours after it has similarly fed, it will be found that the blood corpuscles have, in great measure, parted with their hæmoglobin, and that the blood plasma in consequence of this and of dehydration has become thickened, though not coagulated. If attention be directed to the filariæ in

the thickened blood, it will be seen that many of them are actively engaged in endeavouring to escape from their sheaths. The diffused hæmoglobin has so thickened the blood plasma that it has become viscid, and holds, as it were, the sheath. This change in the viscosity of the blood seems to prompt the filariæ to endeavour to escape from their sheaths. They become restless and excited. Alternately retiring towards the tail end and then rushing forward to the head end of the sheath, the imprisoned parasite butts

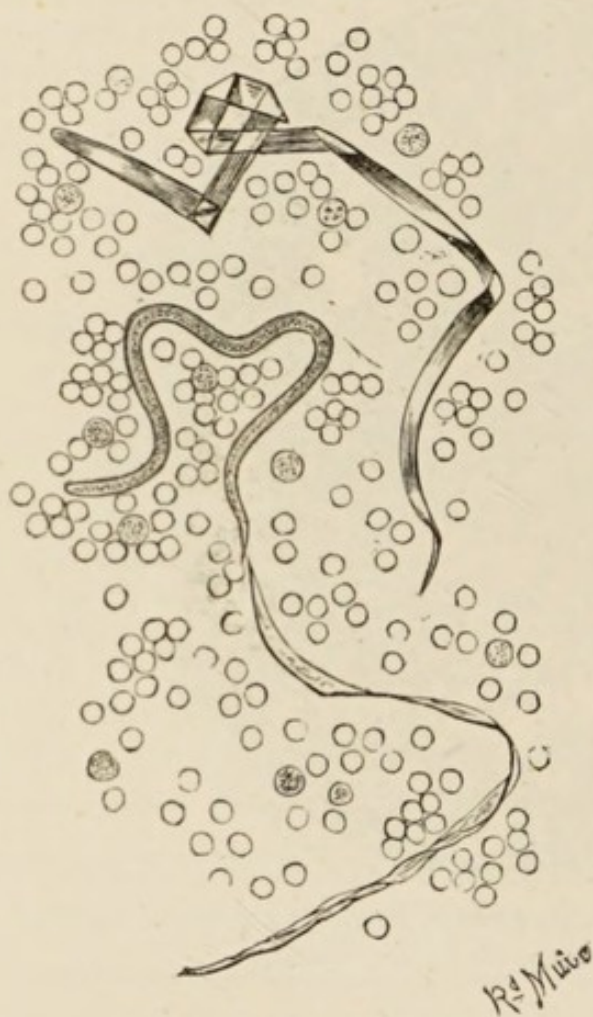


Fig. 55.—Filarial ecdysis.

violently against the latter in frantic effort to escape. After a time, the majority succeed in effecting a breach and in wriggling themselves free from the sheaths which had hitherto enclosed them (Fig. 55).\*

\* This casting of its sheath by the filaria can be induced in ordinary blood slides by simply chilling them on ice, or by otherwise bringing about the diffusion of the hæmoglobin. The following method is usually successful: Ring with vaseline the cover-glasses of several ordinary wet preparations of finger blood obtained at night from a filarial patient; wrap the preparations



filaria now swims free in the blood, the character of its movements once more undergoing a remarkable change. Hitherto, though active enough in wriggling about, the parasite did not change materially its position on the slide; but now, having become free, it moves about from place to place—locomotes, in fact. If we dissect a mosquito at a somewhat later period after feeding, it will be found that the stomach of the insect, though still full of blood, contains very few

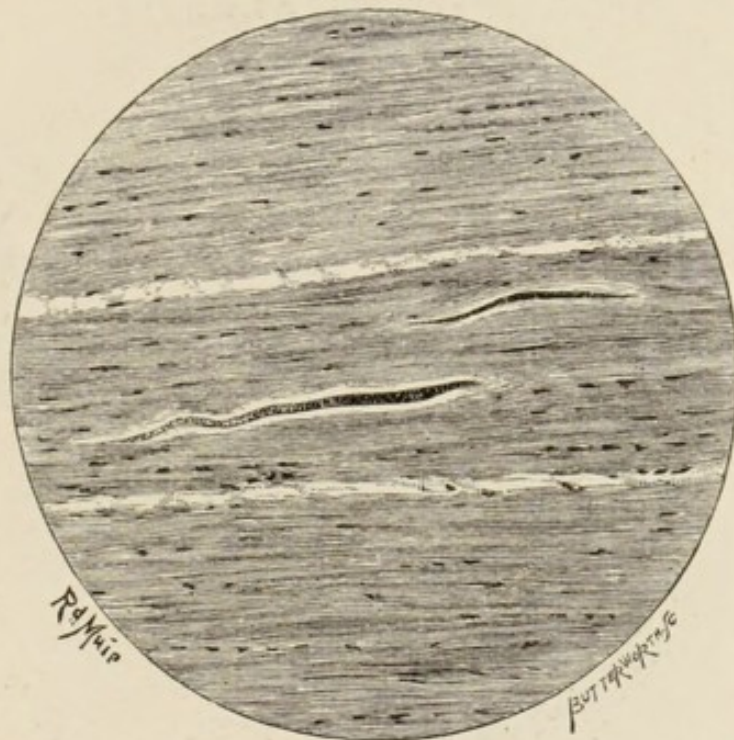


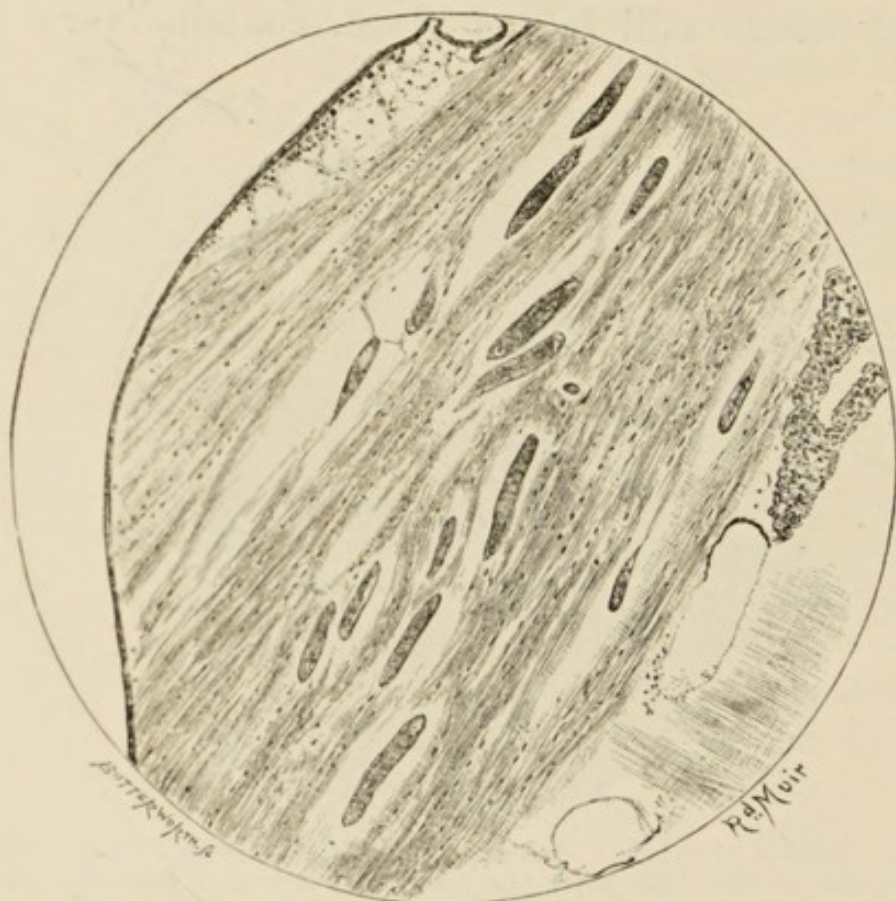
Fig. 56.—Section of thoracic muscles of mosquito, showing filariæ between the fibres: first day after the insect has fed on a filariated patient (From a Microphotogram by Mr. Spitta.)

filariæ, although their empty sheaths can be seen in abundance. If, however, we break up with needles the thorax of the insect and tease out in normal salt solution the muscular tissue, we shall find

separately in filter paper, and lay them, enclosed in a watertight tin box, on a block of ice, for six or eight hours—say overnight. Next morning examine them with the microscope. It will be found, as the chilled slides warm up, that wherever on the slides the hæmoglobin has become diffused and the blood lakey, the filariæ, as they gradually resuscitate from the chilling, begin to endeavour to break through their sheaths. By evening most of them have effected this, and their empty sheaths can be seen lying scattered about in the viscid blood. The blood must not be frozen.



what has become of the filariæ; we shall find that, after discarding their sheaths, they have quitted the stomach and entered the thoracic muscles of the insect, among which they can now be seen moving languidly (Figs. 56—59). By a course of serial dissections of filariated mosquitoes we can ascertain that in the thorax of the insect the parasite enters on a



57.—Section of thoracic muscles of mosquito, seven days after it had fed on a filariated patient. (From a Microphotogram by Mr. Spitta.)

metamorphosis which takes from sixteen to twenty days (longer or shorter according to atmospheric temperature) to complete—a metamorphosis eventuating in the formation of a mouth, of an alimentary canal, and of a peculiar trilobed tail, as well as in an enormous increase in the size (to  $\frac{1}{16}$  of an inch) and activity of the young parasite (Fig. 60, *a—f*). The filariæ now quit the thorax.

A few find their way to the abdomen, where, in properly prepared sections, they may occasionally be







the proboscis) in pairs ; at all events, in those sections which I have examined, two worms were in each instance found together, their heads abreast of each other and close to the tip of the proboscis.

The parasites, it would seem, may remain in this position for an indefinite time, awaiting, it is to be

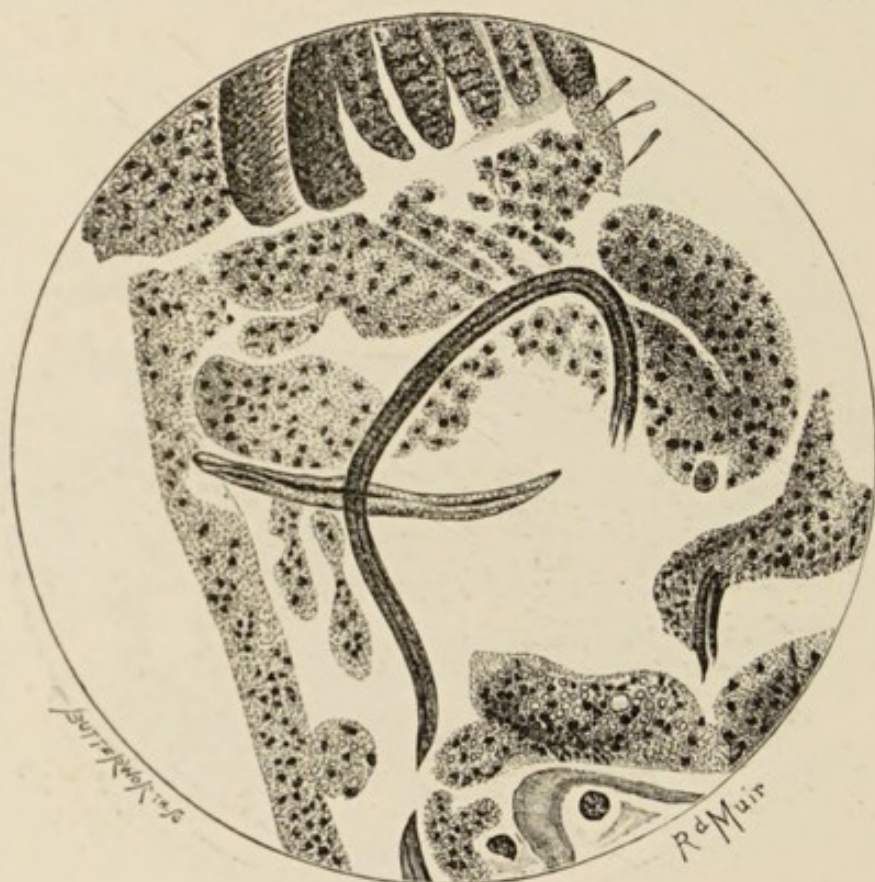


Fig. 59.—Section of mosquito about sixteen days after it had fed on a filariated patient. The filaria has escaped from the thoracic muscles. (From a Microphotogram by Mr. Spitta.)

presumed, an opportunity to enter a warm-blooded vertebrate host when the mosquito next feeds on such. Apparently the filariæ can discriminate between flesh and vegetable, for in mosquitoes fed on bananas they had not been deceived into passing into so inhospitable a medium, for up to forty days after the insect was infected, and after many meals of banana, they could still be found coiled up in the head or stretching along the proboscis.

These observations almost prove that, like the malaria parasite, the filaria is introduced into its



human definitive host by mosquito bite. Whether it may obtain an entrance by any other channel or medium it would be hard to prove and rash to deny. That the young filaria can live in water for a time is

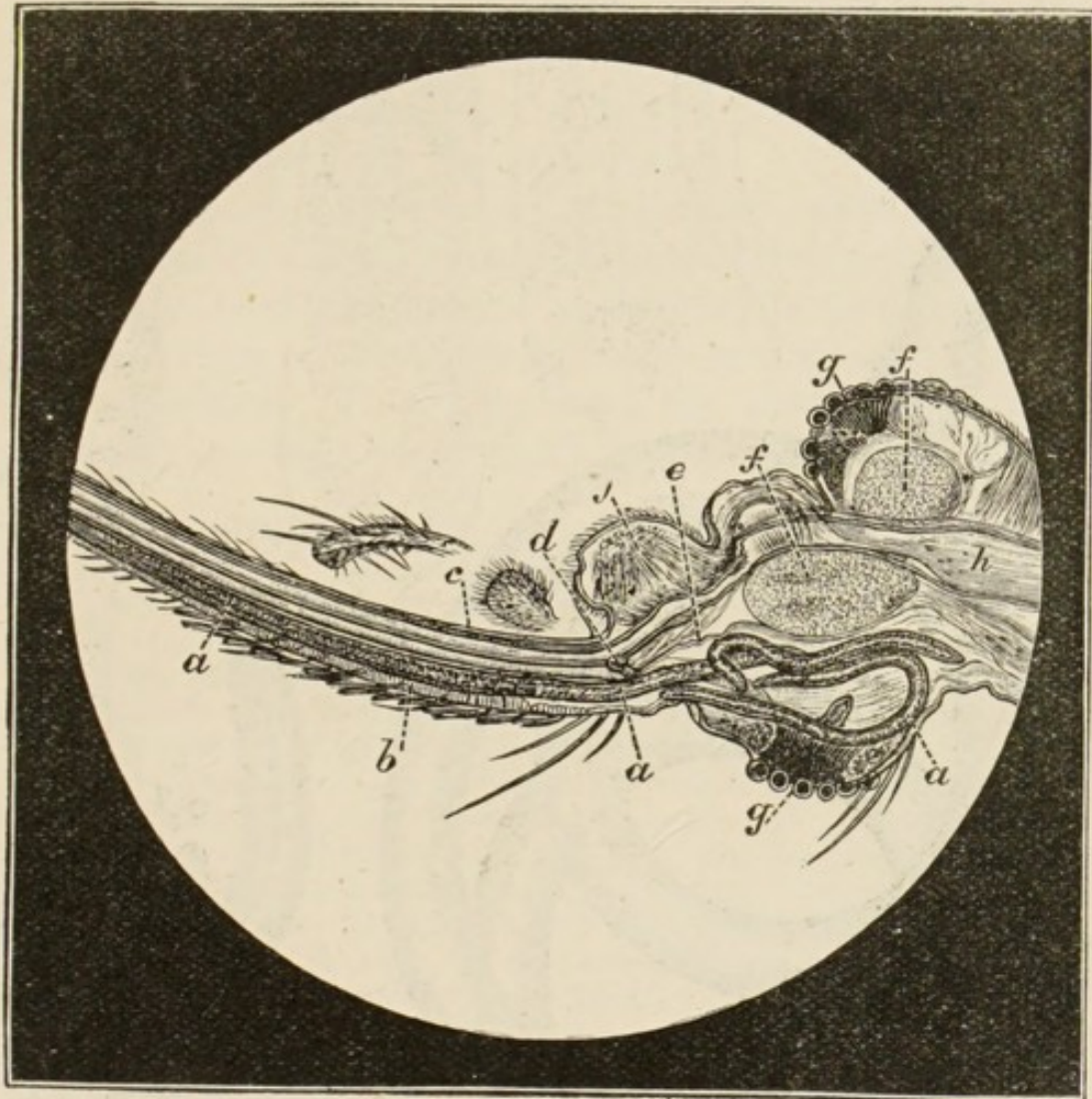


Fig. 59a.—*Filaria nocturna* in head or proboscis of mosquito.  
a, a, a, *Filaria*; b, labium; c, labrum; d, base of hypopharynx; e, duct of venom-salivary gland; f, f, cephalic ganglia; g, g, eye; h, oesophagus; j, pharyngeal muscle.

certain; it is conceivable that some of them, such as those which at the completion of their stage of development in the mosquito find their way into the abdomen of the insect, may escape into water when the mosquito lays her eggs or dies.\*

\* In my original observations on this subject in 1879 and 1883 (Trans. Linnean Soc., 1883), I supposed that filarial metamorphosis, so far as the mosquito was concerned, is completed in from six to seven days. This, I now believe, was too short an estimate. Bancroft (*Journ. of Trop. Med.*, 1899) has lately shown



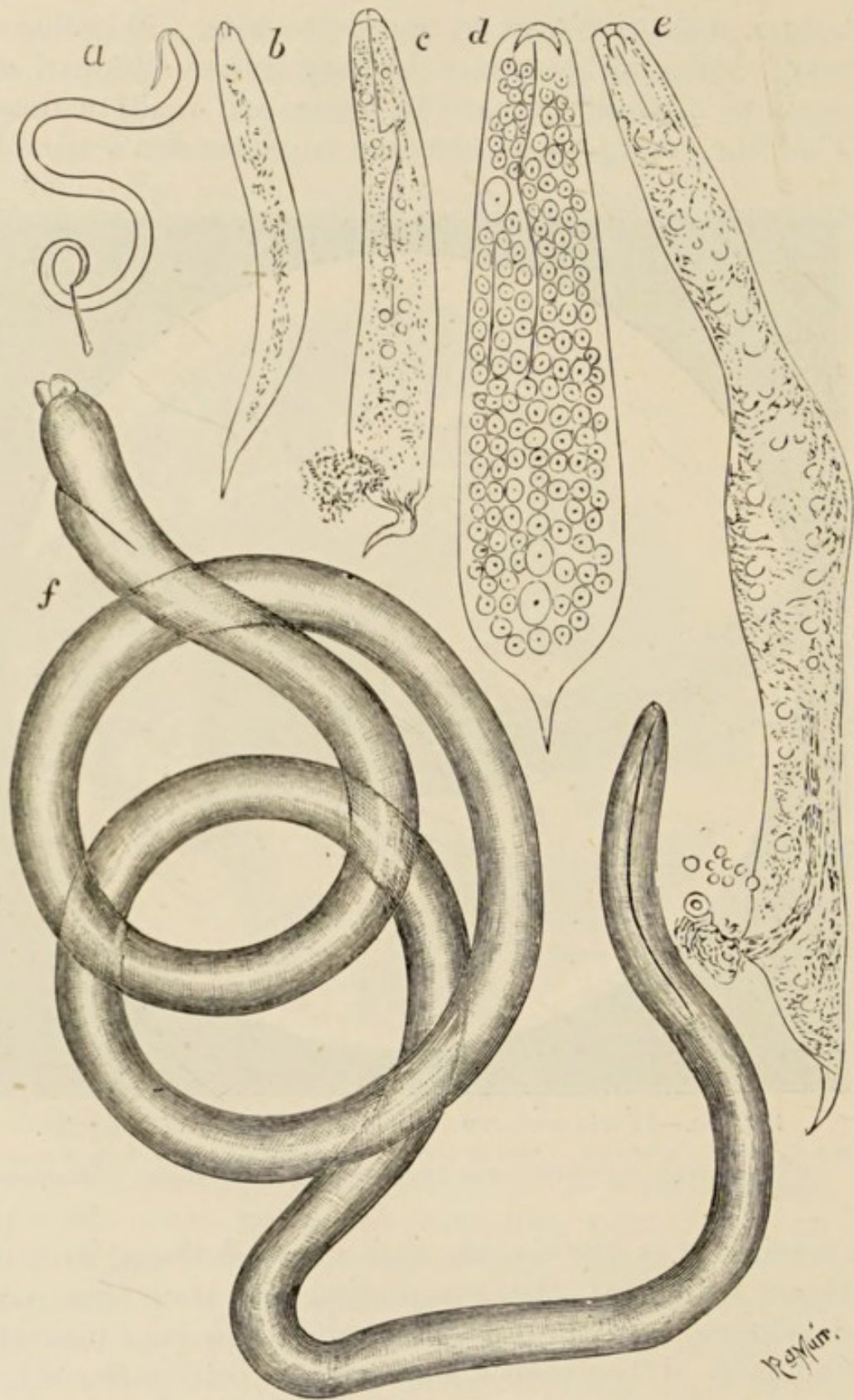


Fig. 60.—Metamorphosis of filaria in mosquito.

that it is necessary to feed the experimental mosquito (at all events, *C. ciliaris*), so as to keep it alive for at least sixteen days, to obtain the final stages of the metamorphosis. I have no doubt now that the insects on which my observations were made had fed



However introduced into the human body, the filaria finds its way into the lymphatics. Arrived in one of these, it attains sexual maturity, fecundation is effected, and in due course new generations of embryo filariæ are poured into the lymph. These, passing through the glands—if such should intervene, by way of the thoracic duct and left subclavian vein, or by the lymphatics of the upper part of the body—finally appear in the circulation.

Such is the life-history of *Filaria nocturna*; man is its definitive host, the mosquito its intermediary host. It is manifest that filarial periodicity is an adaptation of the habits of the parasite to the nocturnal habits of the mosquito. It is also manifest that the purpose of the “sheath” with which it is provided while cir-

repeatedly without my being aware of it, after their meal on the filariated patient. Bancroft has shown that by proper feeding (he uses banana for the purpose) mosquitoes may be kept alive for several months, any filariæ they happen to harbour remaining alive, but not advancing in development beyond the final stage alluded to in the above description. In the observations referred to I conjectured that the fully metamorphosed filaria escaped from the insect either at her death or when she deposited her eggs, and that thus, in drinking water, it obtained a chance of gaining access to the stomach of a human host. Before Low's observation Bancroft had very nearly guessed the truth, for he had expressed the idea that the filaria may be injected into man by the mosquito when it refeeds, or that it may be swallowed by man while it is still enclosed in its intermediary insect host.

*Technique.*—Mr. Max Colquhoun made for me beautiful sections illustrating the metamorphosis of the filaria in mosquito by the following technique. The insects, preserved in glycerine, were soaked in dilute acetic acid 5 per cent. for one day only; then in formalin 50 per cent., water 50 per cent. for one day; next in absolute alcohol for one day; *absolute* alcohol and ether, equal parts, one day; finally in celloidin for one day. They were then sectioned, placed in strong hæmatoxylin for two hours, decolourised in acid hydrochloric (1 per cent.) and alcohol, washed in water, passed through aniline oil, xylol, and mounted in xylol balsam. Paraffin sections are not a success.

In working with fresh mosquitoes, all that is necessary is to tease up the thorax of the insect with needles in normal salt solution, and, after removing the coarse fragments of the integuments of the mosquito, apply a cover-glass and place under an inch objective. The filariæ are readily detected. If the slide is dried, fixed and stained with a watery solution of some aniline dye, or with logwood, and mounted in xylol balsam, beautiful permanent preparations will easily be obtained.



culating in the human host is to muzzle the embryo filaria and prevent its breaking through the blood-vessels, and thereby missing its chance of gaining access to the mosquito. The cephalic armature is adapted for piercing the walls of the mosquito's stomach, and for enabling the parasite to travel through the tissues of the insect.

**Parental forms** (*Filaria bancrofti*). — The parent filariæ have been found many times. They are long, hair-like, transparent nematodes, three or four inches in length (Fig. 61). The sexes live together, often inextricably coiled about each other. Sometimes they are enclosed, coiled up several in a bunch, and tightly packed in little cyst-like dilatations of the distal lymphatics (Maitland); sometimes they

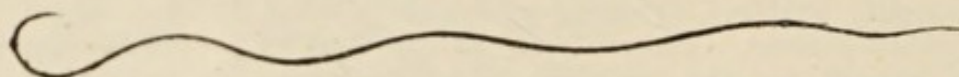


Fig. 61.—Parental form of *Filaria bancrofti*: female. (Natural size.)

lie more loosely in lymphatic varices; sometimes they inhabit the larger lymphatic trunks between the glands, the glands themselves, and, probably not infrequently, the thoracic duct.

The *female filaria* is the larger, both as regards length and thickness. The two uterine tubes, occupying the greater extent of her body, are filled with ova at various stages of development. In both sexes the oral end (Fig. 62, *b*) is slightly tapered, club-shaped, and simple; the tail (Fig. 62, *a*, *c*) also is tapered to comparatively small dimensions, its tip being rounded off abruptly. The vagina opens not very far from the mouth, the anus just in advance of the tip of the tail. The cuticle is smooth and without markings.

To the naked eye the *male worm* is characterised by its slender dimensions, by its marked disposition to curl, and by the peculiar vine-tendril-like tail, the extreme end of which is sharply incurvated (Fig. 62, *a*).<sup>\*</sup> The cloaca gives exit to two slender, unequal spicules.

<sup>\*</sup> According to Maitland this incurvation of the tip of the tail is a *post-mortem* phenomenon.



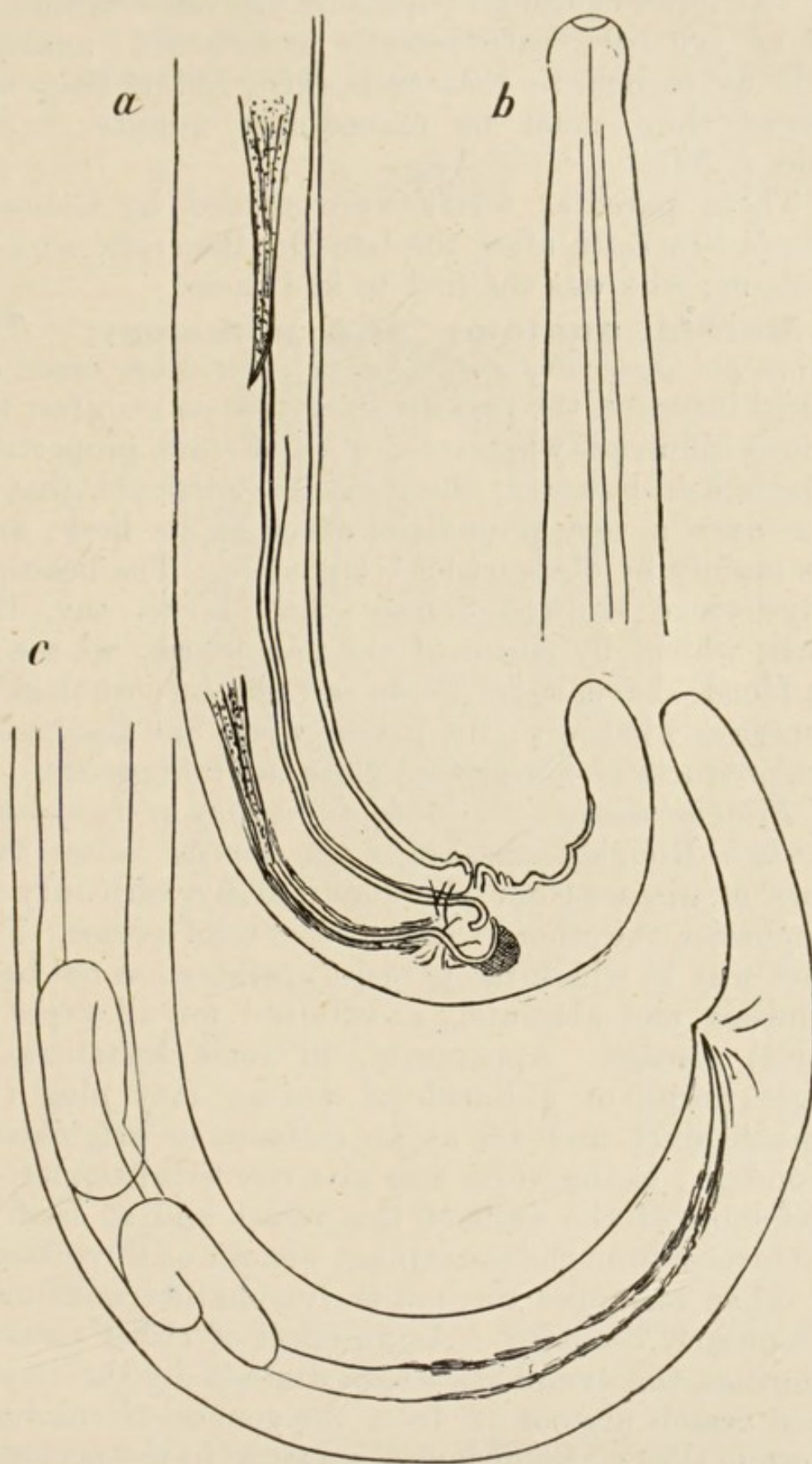


Fig. 62.—Parental forms of *Filaria bancrofti*.  
 a Tail of male; b, head and neck; c, tail of female.



The existence of caudal papillæ in the male worm has not as yet been satisfactorily ascertained; analogy leads us to believe that such exist, but if they are present they must be exceedingly minute. (*See table, p. 535.*)

These parental forms were named by Cobbold *Filaria bancrofti*, after the late Dr. Bancroft, sen., of Brisbane, who was the first to find them.

**Morbid anatomy and pathology.**—*The filaria not generally pathogenetic.*—In most cases of filarial infection the parasite exercises no manifest injurious influence whatever. In a certain proportion of instances, however, there can be no doubt that it does have a very prejudicial effect on its host; and this mainly by obstructing lymphatics. The healthy, fully-formed embryo filariæ—that is to say, the filariæ which, by means of the microscope, we see in the blood—have, so far as we can tell, no pathological properties whatever; the parent worm and the immature products of conception, alone, are dangerous.

*Filarial disease originates in injury of lymphatic trunks.*—Roughly speaking, the filaria causes two types of disease; one characterised by varicosity of lymphatics, the other by more or less solid œdema. The exact way in which the parasite operates has not been definitely and absolutely ascertained for all types of filarial disease. Apparently, in some instances, a single worm, or a bunch of worms, may plug the thoracic duct and act as an embolus or originate a thrombus; or the worm may give rise to inflammatory thickening of the walls of this vessel, and so lead to obstruction from the consequent stenosis or thrombosis. In other instances the minor lymphatic trunks may be similarly occluded. As an effect of either form of occlusion, the lymphatic areas drained by the implicated vessels are cut off from the general circulation. There is then a rise of lymph pressure in the occluded vessels with consequent varicosity; or there may be lymphatic œdema; or there may be a combination of these.



**Pathology of lymphatic varix.**—In consequence of the rich anastomosis existing between the contiguous lymphatic areas, on filarial obstruction

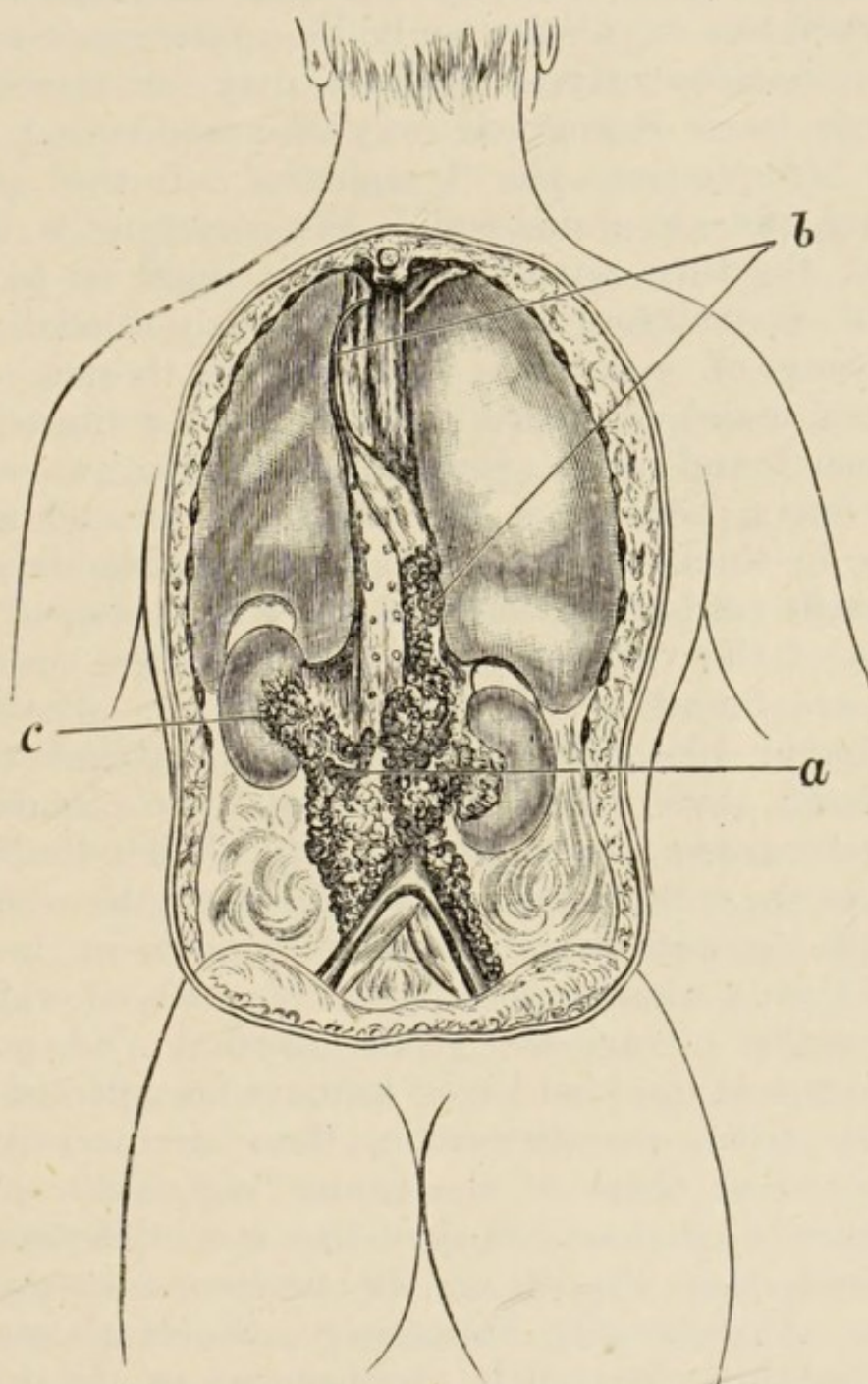


Fig. 63.—Dissection of the lymphatics in a case of chyluria. (Mackenzie, *Trans. Path. Soc., Lond.*)

*a*, Dilated right renal lymphatics; *b*, thoracic duct; *c*, dilated left renal lymphatics

occurring in one of them a compensatory lymphatic circulation is sooner or later established. But before this can be properly effected a rise of lymph pressure and a dilatation of the lymphatics in the



implicated area must take place. This leads to lymphatic varix of different kinds, degrees, and situations. When the seat of filarial obstruction is the thoracic duct, the chyle poured into that vessel can reach the circulation only by a retrograde movement; consequently, this fluid may be forced to traverse in a retrograde way the abdominal and pelvic lymphatics, the lymphatics of the groin, scrotum, and abdominal wall. As a consequence, these vessels, together with the thoracic duct up to the seat of obstruction, become enormously dilated. In dissections of such cases (Fig. 63) the thoracic duct has been found distended to the size of a finger, the abdominal and pelvic lymphatics forming an enormous varix, perhaps a foot in diameter and many inches in thickness, concealing kidneys, bladder, and spermatic cords. In such cases, when one of the vessels of the varix is pricked or ruptures, the contents are found to be white or pinkish. They are not limpid like ordinary lymph. They are chyle therefore; chyle on its way to enter the circulation by a retrograde compensatory track. When the varix involves the integuments of the scrotum, the result is "lymph scrotum"; when most prominent in the groin, then a condition of glands is produced which I have called "varicose groin glands"; when the lymphatics of the bladder or kidneys are affected and rupture from over-distension, then chyluria is the result; when those of the tunica vaginalis rupture, then there is chylous dropsy of that sac—"chylocele"; the same may happen in the peritoneum—chylous ascites. Occasionally varicose lymphatic glands, resembling those frequently encountered in the groins, are found in the axilla. Occasionally limited portions of the lymphatic trunks of the limbs are similarly and temporarily or more permanently distended. This, doubtless, is the pathology of all those forms of filarial disease characterised by visible varicosity of lymphatics, with or without lymphorrhagia.

*Filaria* may disappear from the blood in such



*cases.*—In filarial disease associated with lymphatic varix embryo filariæ are generally present in the blood as well as in the contents of the dilated vessels. Sometimes, it is true, the embryo is not found. Such cases are probably of long standing; had the filaria been looked for at the commencement of the disease, it would have been discovered. I have watched cases in which the embryo has disappeared in this way; though at first found in abundance in the blood, after a year or longer it ceased to appear there. The reason for this disappearance is doubtless the death of the parent parasites, an occurrence I have seen associated with an attack of lymphangitis. It must be borne in mind that, although the original cause of the varix may disappear, the effects of its operation are permanent.

**Pathology of elephantiasis arabum.**—

*Embryos not usually present in the blood in elephantiasis.*—In those cases of filaria disease in which elephantiasis arabum is the leading feature, it is not usual at any stage of the established disease to find filariæ in the blood or elsewhere, unless it be in countries in which filariasis is extremely common and reinfection, or extensive infection, highly probable.

*Reasons for regarding elephantiasis as a filarial disease.*—From this circumstance—the absence of filaria embryos from the blood in elephantiasis—the question naturally arises, Why attribute this disease to the filaria? The answer to this is: (1) The geographical distribution of *Filaria nocturna* and of elephantiasis arabum correspond; where elephantiasis abounds there the filaria abounds, and *vice versa*. (2) Filarial lymphatic varix and elephantiasis occur in the same districts, and frequently concur in the same individual. (3) Lymph scrotum, an unquestionably filarial disease, often terminates in elephantiasis of the scrotum. (4) Elephantiasis of the leg sometimes supervenes on the surgical removal of a lymph scrotum. (5) Elephantiasis and lymphatic varix are essentially diseases of the lymphatics. (6) Filarial



lymphatic varix and true elephantiasis are both accompanied by the same type of recurring lymphangitis. (7) As filarial lymphatic varix is practically proved to be caused by the filaria, the inference that true elephantiasis—the disease with which the former is so often associated and has so many affinities—is attributable to the same cause, appears to be warranted.

*Explanation of the absence of filariæ in the blood in elephantiasis.*—If the filaria be the cause of tropical elephantiasis, how account for the absence of filaria embryos in the blood, as is the case in the vast majority of instances of this disease? The answer to this is:—Either the disease-producing filariæ have died; or the lymphatics draining the affected area are so effectually obstructed by the filaria, its products, or its effects, that any embryo filariæ they may contain, or may have contained, cannot pass along these vessels to the circulation.

We have already seen that in filarial lymphatic varix the parasite which produced the disease may die, particularly during attacks of lymphangitis; the same may occur in elephantiasis, and I believe that this does happen. I do not think, however, that this is the entire explanation.

*Lymph stasis produced by filaria ova.*—I have twice in filariasis found ova of the filaria in lymph; once in the lymph from a lymph scrotum, once in lymph procured by aspirating a varicose groin gland. Therefore, at times, the filaria may produce ova instead of swimming embryos. The ova of the filaria are not like the long, supple, slim, active, swimming embryo; they are passive, more or less rigid, oval bodies nearly five times the diameter of the embryo coiled up in their interior. In consequence of their size and passive character the ova, unlike the normal free swimming embryos, are quite incapable of traversing such lymphatic glands as, in the event of their escape from the parental worm, they may be passively carried to by the lymph stream. It is an



accepted fact in pathology that an essential element in the causation of elephantiasis is lymph stasis. I have ventured to conjecture that the stasis of lymph which eventuates in *tropical* elephantiasis is produced by embolism of the lymphatic glands by ova of the filaria.

But, it may be asked, why should ova enter the lymph stream? In normal conditions the embryo filaria at birth is already fully outstretched. If ova are expelled by the parent filaria, it must be as a result of some hurrying of the process of filarial parturition. That this does occur sometimes the discovery, already mentioned, of filaria ova in the lymph fully proves; and I believe that this is really what does occur, and that it is the initial step in the development of filarial elephantiasis. We can readily understand how, in consequence of mechanical injury, to which from her exposed position in the limbs she must be frequently subjected, or of some other cause, the parent filaria may miscarry. Should this happen, then the contents of her uterus will be expelled prematurely and before the ova normally lying at the upper part of her uterus have become the long, outstretched, active embryos we see in the blood. If a crowd of these passive, massive ova are carried by the lymph stream to the lymphatic glands of a limb, in the lymphatic trunks of which a female filaria is lying aborting, embolism of the afferent lymphatics of the glands must result and stasis of lymph in the limb ensue.

*Inflammation necessary for the production of elephantiasis.*—Lymph stasis alone does not produce elephantiasis; this has been proved by experimental ligature of lymphatic trunks. It may produce a form of œdema, but not true elephantoid hypertrophy. Should inflammation occur in an area of lymphatic congestion so produced, as it is very apt to do on the slightest injury, then elephantiasis will supervene; for, unless the lymphatics of an inflamed area are patent, the products of inflammation are not completely



absorbed. Erysipelatoid inflammation, frequently recurring, is a well-recognised feature in almost every case of elephantiasis arabum.

*Sequence of events in elephantiasis.*—The sequence of events in the production of elephantiasis is, I believe, as follows:—Parent female filaria in the lymphatic system of the affected part; injury of the filaria; premature expulsions of ova in consequence of injury; embolism of lymphatic glands by ova; stasis of lymph; lymphangitis from subsequent traumatism or other cause in the congested area; imperfect absorption of the products of inflammation; recurring attacks of inflammation leading to gradual, intermittingly progressive, inflammatory hypertrophy of the part.

In this way I explain the production of elephantiasis by the filaria. And in this way I explain the absence from the blood of the embryos of the parasite which started the disease; they cannot pass the occluded glands. Very likely the parent worm dies at an early stage of the disease; killed by the cause which led to premature parturition, or by the subsequent lymphangitis.

*The subjects of elephantiasis less liable than others to filariæ in the blood.*—Some years ago I made a curious observation which supports the view just stated. I received from Surgeon-Major Elcum eighty-eight slides of night blood from eighty-eight natives of Cochin. Of these eighty-eight persons fourteen were affected with elephantiasis, seventy-four were not so affected. Of the slides coming from the seventy-four non-elephantiasis cases twenty contained filariæ, about one in every three and a half; of the fourteen elephantiasis cases only one had filariæ. Why should the elephantiasis cases have proportionately fewer filariæ than the non-elephantiasis cases? Because in the former the existence of elephantiasis implied that a large area of their lymphatic systems was blocked, and that the blood could be stocked with embryo filariæ carried by the lymph from only



a relatively small lymphatic area; there was, therefore, a proportionately lesser likelihood of the presence of parent filariæ having for their young an unobstructed passage to the blood.

#### FILARIAL DISEASES.

*Enumeration of the filarial diseases.*—The diseases known to be produced by *Filaria nocturna* are abscess; lymphangitis; varicose groin glands; varicose axillary glands; lymph scrotum; cutaneous and deep lymphatic varix; orchitis; chyluria; elephantiasis of the leg, scrotum, vulva, arm, mamma, and elsewhere; chylous dropsy of the tunica vaginalis; chylous ascites; chylous diarrhœa, and probably other forms of disease depending on obstruction or varicosity of the lymphatics, or on death of the parent filaria.

**Abscess.**—Occasionally, as already mentioned, whether in consequence of blows or other injuries, of lymphangitis, or of unknown causes, the parent filaria dies. Generally the dead body is absorbed, just as a piece of aseptic catgut would be. Sometimes the dead worm acts as an irritant and causes abscess, in the contents of which fragments of the dead filaria may be found. Such abscesses, occurring in the limbs or scrotum, will discharge in due course, or may be opened; they lead to no further trouble. Should they form in the thorax or abdomen, serious consequences and even death may ensue.

Probably, in certain instances, abscess forms at times independently of the death of the parasite—in varicose glands, in lymph scrotum, in elephantiasis, or in similar areas of weakened tissues and lymphatic congestion.

The death of the parental filariæ is apt to be lost sight of as a possible cause of abscess in the subjects of filarial infection. Deep-seated pain in the thorax or abdomen, with inflammatory fever followed by hectic, and a diminution in the number of embryo filariæ in, or their entire disappearance from, the



peripheral blood should, in such circumstances, suggest a diagnosis of filarial abscess and indicate exploration and, if feasible, active surgical interference.

**Lymphangitis and elephantoid fever.—**

*Symptoms.*—Lymphangitis is a common occurrence in all forms of filarial disease, particularly in elephantiasis, varicose glands, and lymph scrotum. When occurring in the limbs the characteristic painful, cord-like swelling of the lymphatic trunks and associated glands, and the red congested streak in the superjacent skin, are usually apparent at the commencement of the attack. Very soon, however, the connective tissue and skin of the implicated area become inflamed and tense, and high fever, preceded by severe and prolonged rigor, sets in. The attack may continue for several days, and is accompanied by severe headache, anorexia, often vomiting, and sometimes delirium. After a time the tension of the inflamed integuments may relieve itself by a lymphous discharge from the surface. Usually the attack ends in profuse general diaphoresis. The swelling then subsides gradually though not entirely, the parts remaining permanently somewhat thickened. Lymphangitis may be confined to groin glands, testis, spermatic cord, or abdominal lymphatics.

*Diagnosis.*—This fever, appropriately named by Fayrer “elephantoid fever,” occurs habitually, at varying intervals of weeks, months, or years, in nearly all forms of elephantoid disease. Its tendency to recur, the severe rigor ushering it in, and the terminal diaphoresis cause it to be mistaken for ague. The implication of the lymphatics, the local pain, the erysipelatoid swelling, the prolonged pyrexial stage, the absence of the *Plasmodium malarie* from the blood, the presence there very possibly of the filaria, and the powerlessness of quinine to control the fever, suffice for diagnosis. Nevertheless, error in diagnosis is common, particularly when the attacks recur frequently, and with a certain degree of regularity, as is usually the case.



*Treatment.*—The treatment should consist in removing any cause of irritation, and in rest, elevation of the affected part, cooling lotions or warm fomentations, mild aperients, opium to relieve pain, and, if tension

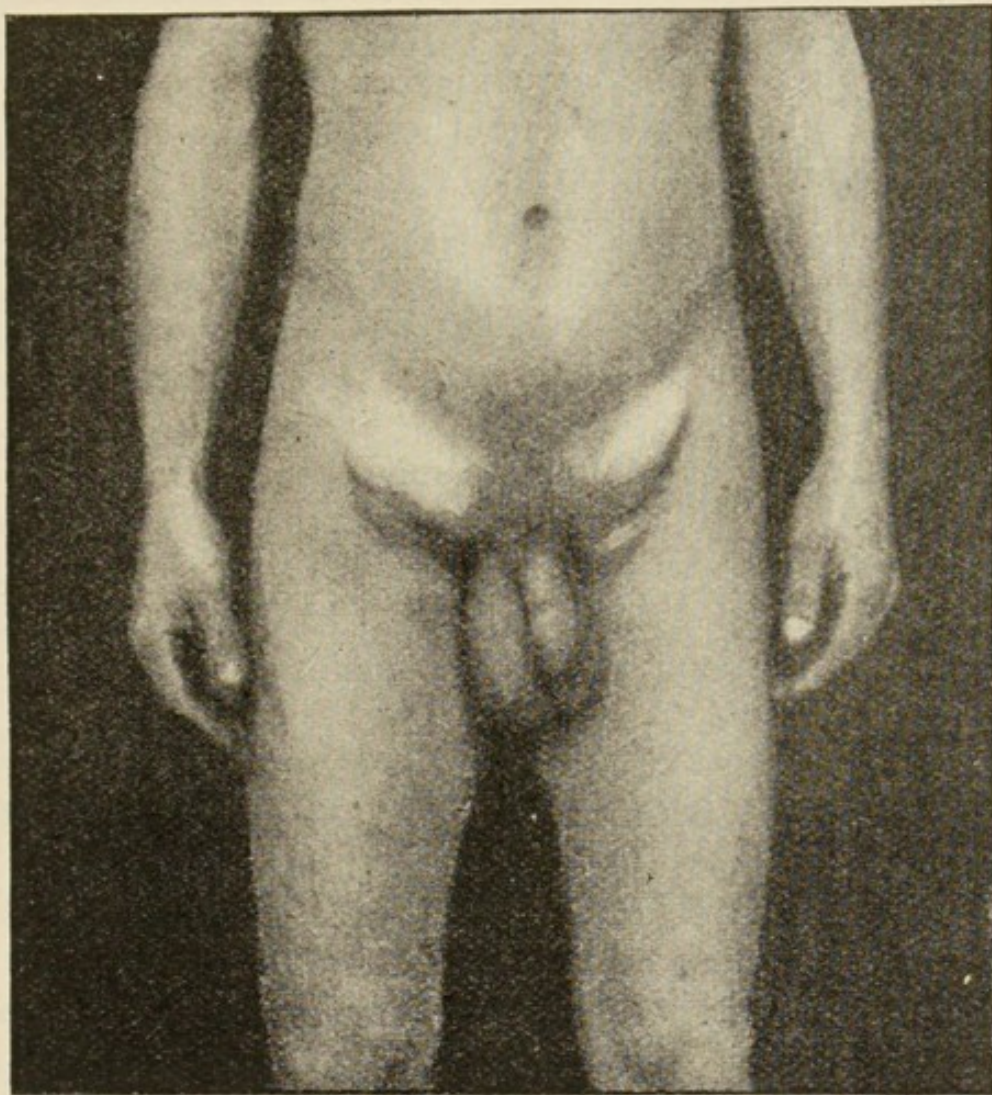


Fig. 64.—Varicose groin glands and chylocele. (*From a patient under the care of Mr. Johnson Smith.*)

is great, pricking or scarifying the swollen area under suitable aseptic conditions.

**Varicose groin glands** (Fig. 64).—*Associated conditions.*—Varicose groin glands are frequently associated with lymph scrotum; sometimes with chylous dropsy of the tunica vaginalis; sometimes with chyluria. Occasionally all four conditions co-exist in the same individual.

*Symptoms.*—As a rule, commencing painlessly, the patient is not aware of the existence of these varicose



glands until they have attained considerable dimensions. Then, a sense of tension, or an attack of lymphangitis, calls attention to the state of the groins, where certain soft swellings are discovered. These swellings may be of insignificant dimensions, or they may attain the size of a fist. They may involve both groins, or only one groin; they may affect the inguinal glands alone, or the femoral glands alone, or, and generally, both sets together.

To the touch they feel soft, doughy, and obscurely lobulated. The skin, natural in appearance, can be glided over the surface, but the tumours themselves are not movable over the subjacent fascia. Occasionally hard, kernel-like pieces can be felt in their interior, or the entire mass may be more or less indurated. On thrusting a hypodermic needle into the swellings, white or reddish chylous, or clear lymphous fluid can be aspirated in abundance. This fluid coagulates rapidly and usually contains living filaria embryos.

*Diagnosis.*—It is important to be able to diagnose these tumours from hernia, for which they are often mistaken. This can be done by observing that they are not tympanitic on percussion; that though pressure causes them to diminish, they do so slowly; that there is no sudden dispersion accompanied by gurgling, as in hernia, on taxis being employed; that they convey a relatively slight, or no impulse on coughing; that they slowly subside on the patient lying down, and slowly return, even if pressure be applied over the saphenous or inguinal openings, on the erect posture being resumed. The cautious use of the hypodermic needle will confirm diagnosis; which would be further strengthened by the co-existence of lymph scrotum, chyluria, or chylous hydrocele, and the presence of filariæ in the blood. *Chronic swellings about the groin, cords, testes, and scrotum in patients from the tropics should always be regarded as being possibly filarial.*

*Pathological anatomy.* — On dissection these tumours are found to consist of bunches of varicose



lymphatics, and to form part of a vast lymphatic varix involving the pelvic and abdominal lymphatics.

*Treatment.*—Unless they give rise to an incapacitating amount of discomfort, and are the seat of frequent attacks of lymphangitis, varicose groin glands are best left alone. It must always be remembered that they are part of an anastomosis necessary to life. Should they be very troublesome and incapacitate for work, they may be removed (Maitland, *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1897). In operating, strict aseptic methods must be practised, as septic lymphangitis readily occurs, and has frequently proved fatal in such cases. Excision is not always satisfactory, as it may be followed by lymphorrhagia at the seat of the wound, by excessive dilatation of some other part of the implicated lymphatic area, by chyluria, or by elephantiasis in one or both legs.

It is said (Azema) that these glands tend to diminish in size after forty. I cannot confirm this statement from personal observation.

Similar varicose dilation of the axillary glands is sometimes, though much more rarely, found. Bancroft designated these varicose axillary and groin glands “*helminthoma elastica*.”

**Cutaneous and deeper lymphatic varices.**—Occasionally cutaneous lymphatic varices are met with on the surface of the abdomen, on the legs, arms, and probably elsewhere. Sometimes they are permanent; sometimes, when more deeply situated, they constitute little swellings which come and go in a few hours. I believe these latter often depend on the actual presence of parent filariæ in the tumour. Such varices are evidence of lymphatic obstruction. Filarial lymphangiectasis of the spermatic cord is not uncommon. The contents may be milky and chylous, or straw-coloured and lymphous, according to situation and connections.

**Thickened lymphatic trunks.**—Surgeon-Lieut.-Col. Maitland (*loc. cit.*) has frequently seen in Madras cases of lymphangitis in which, after the



initial swelling and inflammation had subsided, a line of thickening remained. On excising this thickened tissue and carefully dissecting it, he has found minute cyst-like dilatations of the lymphatic involved, and in these cysts adult filariæ coiled up, sometimes dead, sometimes alive. The lymphangitis, he believes, is caused in these cases by the death of the filariæ. Daniels has made similar observations in British Guiana. Such a case I recently saw under the care of Dr. Abercrombie at Charing Cross Hospital in London. On the subsidence of a filarial lymphangitis of the arm a thickening, about the size of a finger-tip, remained on the forearm. Believing that it contained adult filariæ, this thickening was excised by Mr. Young and placed in normal salt solution. Eight hours later the mass was carefully dissected, and a living female filaria, about four inches in length, was turned out. The parasite continued to live and swim about actively in the salt solution for nearly two hours (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, April 24th, 1897).

**Lymph scrotum** (Fig. 65).—*Symptoms*.—In this disease the scrotum is more or less enlarged. Though usually silky to the touch, on inspection the skin presents a few, or a large number of, smaller or larger lymphatic varices which, when pricked or when they open spontaneously, discharge large quantities of milky, or sanguineous-looking, or straw-coloured, rapidly coagulating lymph or chyle. In some cases eight or ten ounces of this substance will escape from a puncture in the course of an hour or two; it may go on running for many hours on end, soiling the clothes of the patient and exhausting him. Usually embryo filariæ can be discovered in the lymph so obtained, as well as in the blood of the patient. In a large proportion of cases of lymph scrotum the inguinal and femoral glands, either on one or on both sides, are varicose.

Probably provoked by injury in rubbing against the thighs and clothes, erysipelatoid inflammation



and elephantoid fever are frequent occurrences. Abscess is not uncommon. In time, in a proportion of cases, the scrotum tends to become permanently

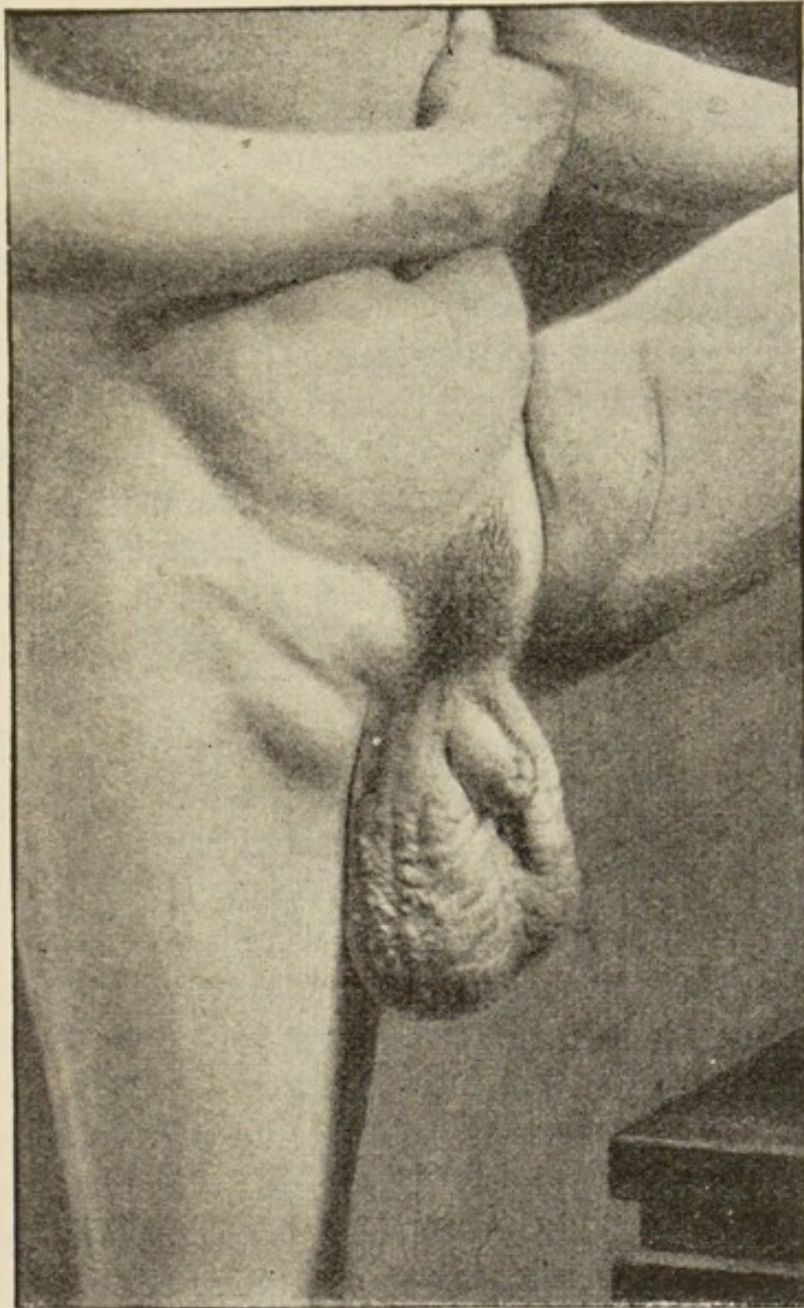


Fig. 65.—Lymph scrotum and varicose groin glands. (*From a photograph by Dr. Rennie, Foochow.*)

thickened and to pass into a state of true elephantiasis.

*Treatment.*—Unless inflammation be a frequent occurrence, or there be frequent and debilitating lymphorrhagia, or unless the disease is tending to pass into true elephantiasis, lymph scrotum—kept



scrupulously clean, powdered, suspended, and protected—had better be left alone. Should, however, for these or other reasons, it be deemed expedient to remove the diseased tissues, this can be effected easily. The scrotum should be well dragged down by an assistant whilst the testes are pushed up out of the way of injury. A finger knife is then passed through the scrotum, and in sound tissues, just clear of the testes, and the mass excised by cutting backwards and forwards. No diseased tissues, and hardly any flap, should be left. Sufficient covering for the testes can be got by dragging on the skin of the thighs, which readily yields and affords ample covering. It is a very common, but a very great mistake to remove too little. As a rule, the wound, if carefully stitched and dressed antiseptically, heals rapidly.

In consequence of this sudden and violent interference with an extensive varix, of which that in the scrotum is but a part, chyluria and sometimes elephantiasis of a leg may supervene. The patient should be warned of this possibility.

**Chyluria.**—*Pathology.*—When a lymphatic varix in the walls of the bladder, the consequence of filarial obstruction in the thoracic duct, ruptures, there is an escape of the contents of the varicose lymphatics into the urine. Chyluria is the result.

*Symptoms.*—This disease frequently appears without warning; usually, however, pain in the back and aching sensations about the pelvis and groins—probably caused by great distension of the pre-existing lymphatic varix—precede it. Retention of urine, from the presence of chylous coagula, is sometimes the first indication of serious trouble. Whether preceded by aching, or by retention, or by other symptoms, the patient becomes suddenly aware that he is passing milky urine. Sometimes instead of being white the urine is pinkish or even red; sometimes white in the morning, it is reddish in the evening, or *vice versâ*. Sometimes whilst chylous at



one part of the day, it is perfectly limpid at another. Great variety in this respect exists in different cases, and even in the same case from time to time, depending on temporary closure of the rupture in the lymphatic, and also on the nature of the food.\*

*Physical characters of chylous urine.*—If chylous urine be passed into a urine glass and allowed to stand, as a rule, within a very short time, the whole of the urine becomes coagulated. Gradually the coagulum contracts until, at the end of some hours, a small, more or less globular clot, usually bright red or pinkish in colour, is floating about in a milky fluid. Later, the milky fluid separates into three layers. On the top there is formed a cream-like pellicle; at the bottom a scanty reddish sediment, sometimes including minute red clots; in the centre the mass of the urine forms a thick, intermediate stratum, milky white or reddish white in colour, in which floats the contracted coagulum. If a little of the sediment be taken up with a pipette and examined with the microscope, it is found to contain cells like red blood cells, lymphocytes, granular fatty matter, epithelium and urinary salts, and, mixed with these in a large proportion of cases though not in all, filaria embryos. The middle layer contains much granular fatty matter; whilst the upper cream-like layer consists of the same fatty material in greater abundance, the granules tending to aggregate into larger oil globules. If a small portion of the coagulum be teased out, pressed between two slides, and examined with the microscope, filariæ, more or less active, may be found in the meshes of the fibrine. If ether be shaken up with the milky urine, the fat particles are dissolved out and the urine becomes clear; the fat may be recovered by decanting and evaporating the

\* The sanguineous appearance so frequently seen in chylous urine and in other forms of filarial lymphorrhagia, depends on the formation of blood corpuscles in lymph long retained in the varicose vessels, and is a result of the normal evolution of the formed elements in that fluid. There is no rupture of blood-vessels, as some have asserted.



ether which floats on the urine. Boiling the urine throws down a considerable precipitate of albumin.

*Recovery and relapse.*—Chyluria comes and goes in a very capricious manner. Sometimes the urine remains steadily chylous for weeks and months, and then suddenly, without obvious cause, becomes limpid and natural-looking, and free from fat or albumin. Later a relapse will occur, again to disappear after an uncertain time; and so on during a long course of years.

*Retention of urine.*—Retention of urine is not an unusual occurrence; it is produced by the formation of coagulum in the bladder. The retention usually gives way after a few hours of distress, worm-like clots being passed.

*Constitutional effects.*—Although chyluria is not directly dangerous to life, yet, being prolonged, it gives rise to pronounced anæmia, depression of spirits, and feelings of weakness and debility, and tends to incapacitate the patient for active, vigorous life.

*Exciting causes of chyluria.* — Chyluria is very liable to occur, either for the first time, or as a relapse, in pregnancy or after childbirth; the disturbance of the pelvic lymphatics in pregnancy, and the muscular efforts attending labour apparently causing rupture of pelvic lymphatics previously rendered varicose by filarial obstruction of the thoracic duct. In men, running, leaping, and violent efforts generally, are sometimes assigned as its cause; usually the exciting cause is not discoverable.

*Treatment.*—The treatment of chyluria should be conducted on the same lines as the treatment for inaccessible varix elsewhere; that is to say, by resting and elevating the affected part, and thereby diminishing as far as possible the hydrostatic pressure in the distended vessels. Many forms of medicinal treatment have been advocated. Because during treatment with some drug a chyluria has subsided, curative properties are apt to be attributed to the drug which was being taken at the time. The best results are got by sending the patient to bed, elevating the pelvis,



restricting the amount of food and fluid—especially fatty food, gentle purgation, and absolute rest. It will be found that a day or two of treatment on these lines is often followed by temporary, perhaps prolonged, cessation of the chyluria. The drugs which have been particularly lauded in the treatment of this disease are gallic acid in large doses, benzoic acid in large doses, glycerine, the tincture of the perchloride of iron, decoction of mangrove bark, chromic acid, quinine, salicylate of soda, ichthyol, and *Nigella sativa*. I do not believe that these substances have any influence whatever in stopping the lymphorrhagia. Neither do I believe that thymol, recommended by Lawrie, or methylene blue, recommended by American writers, has any effect whatever, either on the filaria or on the disease it gives rise to; since their first recommendation both drugs have been tried, but in other hands have failed.

**Filarial orchitis.**—Several French writers describe under the name “malarial orchitis” a special form of inflammation of the testes, and here and there in Indian medical literature allusion is made to the same, or a similar subject. I have many times seen filarial orchitis, but I cannot say I have seen orchitis of purely and unquestionably malarial origin. The fever attending filarial orchitis—which is usually associated with lymphangitis of the spermatic cord and perhaps with inflammation of the scrotum, like ordinary elephantoid fever resembles very closely a malarial attack and may be mistaken for this. Without absolutely denying the existence of such a disease as malarial orchitis, I would suggest that the affection described by the French and Indian writers referred to, and endemic inflammations of testes, spermatic cords, and scrotum generally, are of filarial origin.

**Filarial synovitis.**—Maitland (*Ind. Med. Gaz.*, Oct., 1898) mentions acute synovitis of the knee-joint as one of the filarial diseases, and gives the particulars of five cases. He considers the concurrence



of synovitis with filarial invasion too common to be accidental.

#### ELEPHANTIASIS.

*Its prevalence.*—Elephantiasis is by far the most frequent manifestation of filarial infection, and is exceedingly common in some of the endemic districts. Thus in certain districts in Cochin about 5 per cent. of the population; in Samoa about every second individual; in Huahine seven-tenths of the adult male population are affected. In many other tropical and sub-tropical countries, if not so common as in those just mentioned, elephantiasis is, nevertheless, common enough.

*Parts affected.*—In 95 per cent. of the cases the lower extremities—either one or both—alone, or in combination with the scrotum or arms, are the seat of the disease. The foot and ankle only; or the foot and leg; or the foot, leg, and thigh; may, each or all, be involved. The scrotum is also a common situation for elephantiasis. The arms are more rarely attacked; still more rarely the mammæ, vulva, and circumscribed portions of the integuments of the limbs, trunk, or neck.

*The recurring erysipelatoid attacks.*—The disease in any of these situations commences with a rapidly evolved lymphangitis, dermatitis, and cellulitis, accompanied by elephantoid fever. On the subsidence of the acute symptoms the skin and subcutaneous fascia of the affected part do not quite resume their original proportions; the inflammatory effusion not being completely absorbed, some permanent thickening remains. Recurrences of this inflammation once or twice a month, or perhaps once in six months, or every twelve months, or even at longer intervals, add a little each time to the bulk of the limb or scrotum; thus, gradually, an enormous swelling may be built up. Occasionally, though very rarely, enlargement may progress after one, two or more initial inflammatory attacks and without further recurrence of these.



*Clinical characters of the swelling.*—The affected part is greatly increased in bulk. The surface of the skin, in confirmed elephantiasis especially, is rough and coarse; the mouths of the follicles are sometimes unusually distinct; the papillæ and glands are either hypertrophied or atrophied; the hair is coarse and



Fig. 66.—Elephantiasis of legs; scrotum and right arm slightly affected. (From a photograph by Dr. Turner, Samoa.)

sparse; the nails are rough, thick, and deformed. Around joints the thickened integuments are thrown into folds, the comparatively smooth-sided and deep interlying sulci permitting limited movement. There is no distinct line of demarcation between healthy and diseased skin. The implicated integuments are hard, dense, pit but slightly if at all on pressure, and cannot be pinched up or freely glided over the deeper parts.



*Its macroscopic anatomy.*—On cutting into the swelling, the derma is found to be dense, fibrous, and enormously hypertrophied. The subjacent connective tissue is increased in bulk, having, especially in the case of the scrotum, a yellowish, blubbery appearance from lymphous infiltration. A large quantity of fluid wells out on division of such tissues. The muscles, nerves, and bones are not necessarily diseased, although in rare instances they may be degenerated and slightly or considerably atrophied from pressure. The blood-vessels are large; the lymphatics dilated; the associated lymphatic glands, both of the same side and very often of the opposite side, enlarged and dense.

*True elephantiasis is permanent.* — Though in recent cases elephantiasis of the limbs may be much reduced by treatment, the disease is never permanently recovered from. Lymphatic œdema in areas which have never inflamed subsides readily enough on pressure or elevation.

**Elephantiasis of the legs** (Fig. 66).—Elephantiasis of the lower extremities is usually, though by no means always, confined to below the knee. The swelling may attain enormous dimensions and involve the entire extremity, the leg or legs attaining a circumference, in aggravated cases, of several feet.

*Treatment.*—In the treatment of elephantiasis of the leg the patient should be encouraged to persevere with elastic bandaging, massage, and elevation of the limb. Ligature of the femoral artery has been practised; it is probably useless, and is certainly not a justifiable method of treatment. Sometimes, in extreme cases, good results are got from excision of redundant masses of skin, a longitudinal strip of three or four inches in breadth by a foot or more in length being dissected off. Electrolysis and mercury have also been used; I question their value. During the acute attacks, tension may be relieved by aseptic punctures with a sharp lancet. At all times the limb must be carefully guarded from injury, and shoes



and trousers worn. Slight injuries provoke the inflammatory recurrences. Wading in water, prolonged standing, violent exercise, and exposure to a hot sun are injurious, and should be avoided as far as possible.

**Elephantiasis of the scrotum** (Fig. 67).  
*Weight of tumours.*—Elephantiasis of the scrotum, or

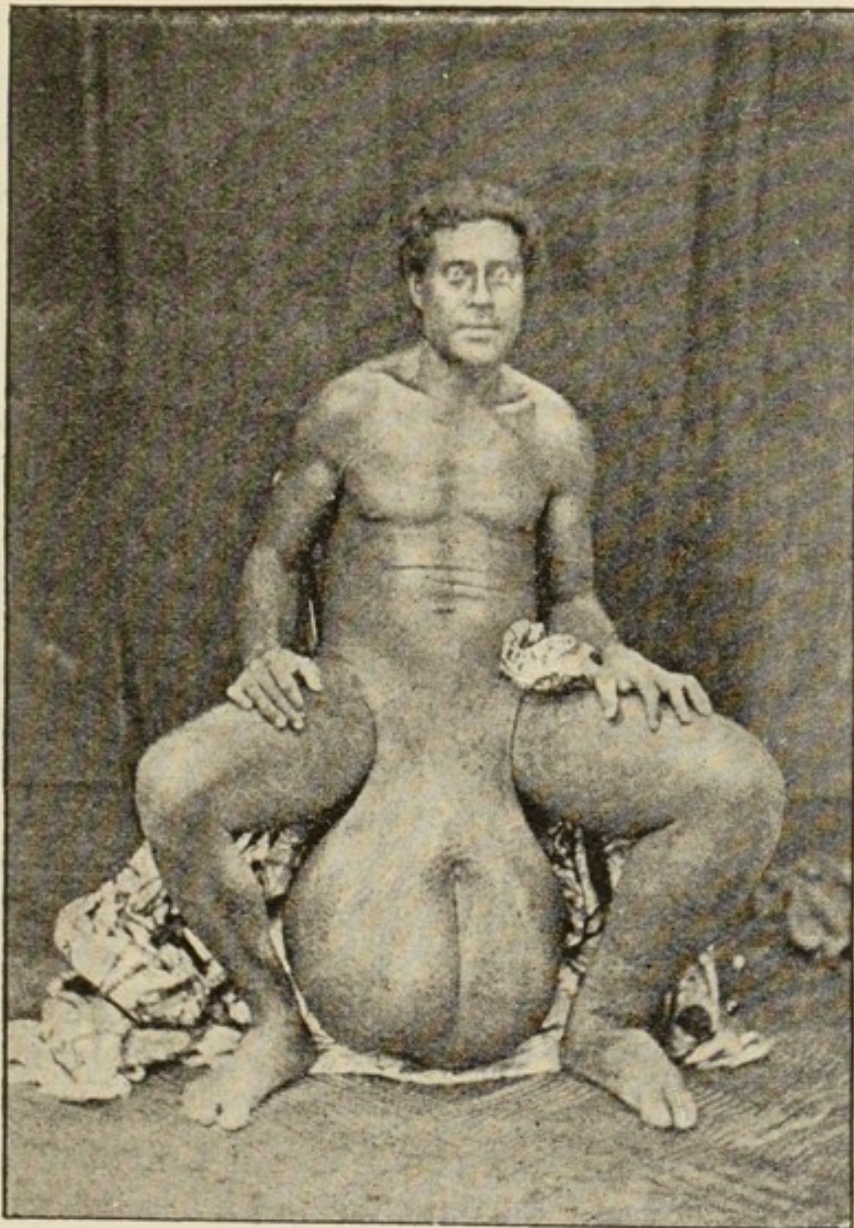


Fig. 67.—Elephantiasis of the scrotum : left leg slightly affected.  
(From a photograph by Dr. Turner, Samoa.)

“scrotal tumour” as it is sometimes called, may attain an enormous size. Ten, fifteen, or twenty pounds are common weights for these tumours, and forty or fifty pounds is by no means uncommon; the largest recorded weighed 224 lbs.



*Anatomical characters.*—There are certain points in the anatomy of scrotal tumour which the operating surgeon must bear in mind. These tumours consist of two portions (Fig. 68): First, a dense rind of hypertrophied skin (A *e*), thickest towards the lower part

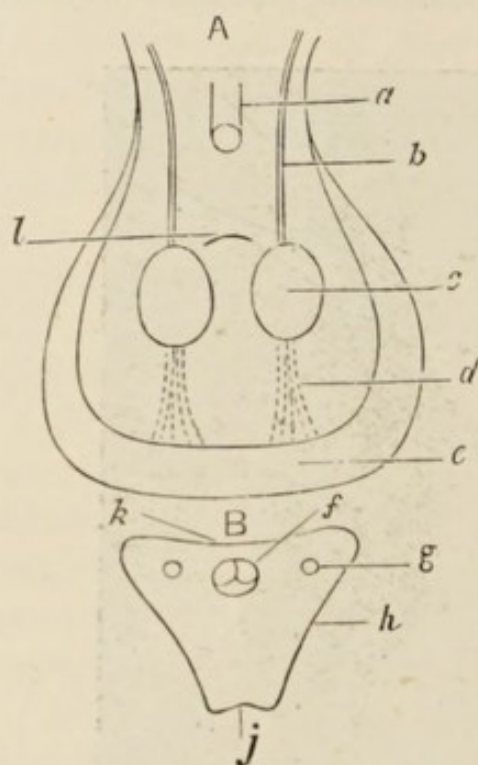


Fig. 68.—Diagram of the anatomy of elephantiasis of the scrotum.

and gradually thinning out as it merges above into the sound skin of the pubes and thighs; second, enclosed in this rind, a mass of lax, blubbery, dropsical, easily torn through, areolar tissue, in which testes, cords, and penis are embedded. The shape of the tumour is more or less pyriform. The upper part, or neck, on transverse section (B) is triangular, the base (B *k*) of the triangle being in front, the apex (B *j*)—usually somewhat bifid from dragging on the gluteal folds—towards the

anus, the sides (B *h*) towards the thighs. In the latter situation the skin, though usually more or less diseased, is, from pressure, softer and thinner than elsewhere, tempting the surgeon to utilise it for the formation of flaps—not always a wise proceeding. The penis (A *a*, B *f*) always lies in the upper and fore part of the neck of the mass; it is firmly attached to the pubes by the suspensory ligament. The sheath of the penis is sometimes specially hypertrophied, standing out as a sort of twisted ram's horn-like projection on the anterior surface of the tumour; this, however, is unusual. Generally, the sheath of the penis is incorporated in the scrotal mass, the prepuce being dragged on and inverted so as to form a long channel leading to the glans penis and opening (A *l*) half-way down, or even lower, on the face of the



tumour. The testes (A c), buried in the central blubbery tissue, usually lie towards the back of the tumour, one on each side, in large tumours generally nearer the lower than the upper part. They are more or less firmly attached to the under part of the scrotum by the hypertrophied remains of the gubernaculum testis (A d); a feature to be specially borne in mind by the surgeon. As a rule, both testes carry large hydroceles with thickened tunicae vaginales. The spermatic cords, also (A b, B g), are thickened and greatly elongated. The arteries supplying these enormous growths are of considerable size; the veins, too, are very large and, as they permit regurgitation of blood from the trunk, are apt to bleed freely.

*Their importance.*—Beyond inconvenience from their weight, the presence of the cumbersome mass between the legs, the suffering attendant on recurring attacks of inflammation and elephantoid fever, the sexual disability, and the unsightliness, these tumours are not of great importance; they do not, as a rule, directly endanger life. They may grow rapidly or slowly; they may attain a large size in two or three years, or they may be in existence for years and at the end of this time amount to little more than a slight thickening of the scrotum. Occasionally, in large tumours, portions of the mass become gangrenous, or abscess may form, and in this way life may be endangered; this is not usual, however.

*Treatment.*—Scrotal tumour, as soon as it becomes unsightly or inconvenient, should be removed. Often after thorough removal of all the diseased integuments, elephantoid fever, which before may have been frequent, ceases to recur.

*Treatment preliminary to operation.*—If the tumour is of considerable size, the patient should keep his bed for a day or two before operation, the mass being suspended so as to drain it of fluid and blood. It is thus rendered lax, and the operator is enabled to ascertain by palpation the position of the testes and, if such chance to be present, of hernia—



a not very unusual complication. The possibility of undescended testes should not be overlooked.

*Operation.*—Before making provision for the prevention of hæmorrhage the operator should mark out by shallow cuts the line at which he proposes to separate the tumour, care being taken that these guiding incisions run through and include only absolutely sound skin. If the latter precaution be neglected, disease is very liable to recur in the scar or flaps. First, the tumour is turned up and a shallow

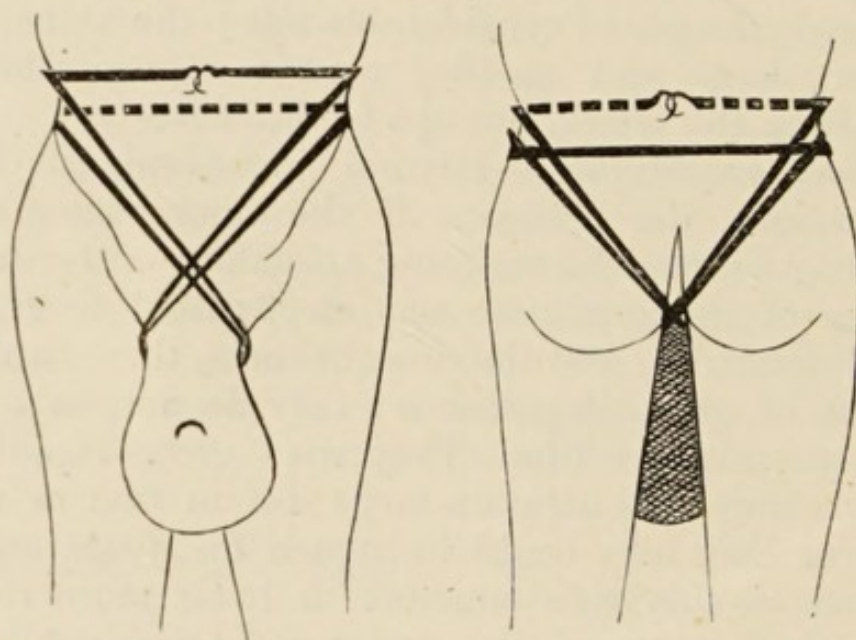


Fig. 69.—Rubber cord in position.

transverse cut is drawn in sound skin across the perineum in front of the anus. The tumour being allowed to fall down, a similar shallow cut is made across the pubes. The corresponding extremities of these two cuts are then united either by a straight cut, or, if there be a little sound skin on the thigh aspects of the tumour, by semilunar incisions.

Assistants then firmly draw down the scrotum as far as possible, and the surgeon, if he deem it desirable, applies elastic webbing over the mass so as to expel the blood it contains. Next, a stout rubber cord is wound, figure of 8 fashion, round the neck of the tumour, well above the guiding incisions, and over the pelvis, and firmly secured (McLeod) (Fig. 69). Or



the rubber cord is wound round the neck of the tumour only, being kept in place by four strips of bandage passing under the cord, one on each side of the scrotum before and behind, and firmly tied over another strip of bandage encircling the waist.

The testes and cord are first dissected out through long perpendicular incisions made in front, the remains of the gubernacula testis being hooked up with the finger and snipped through with scissors. The channel of the prepuce is next slit up, the incision being carried up to the pubic limiting mark. The penis can then be shelled out, the prepuce being first cut through around the corona glandis. If lateral flaps can be formed of sound skin they are then dissected up. The perineal and pubic incisions are now deepened and, assistants holding the testes and penis well out of the way, the neck of the tumour is cut through close to the perineum and pubes. Gaping vessels are all carefully ligatured, and redundant tunica vaginalis—if hydroceles be present—excised. The rubber cord is then removed.

When hæmorrhage has been controlled, the posterior halves of the flaps are brought together by sutures, the anterior halves being united over the testes to the pubic cut. The penis will therefore emerge from the point where the horizontal line meets the perpendicular line of what is now a T- or Y-shaped wound. If no flaps have been made, the testes may be fixed by stitching any tag of tissue connected with them to the perineum, and the dimensions of the wound reduced as much as possible by stitching up the corners at the pubes and perineum.

In dressing it is of importance that the raw surfaces be covered by some aseptic *non-fibrous* protective—such as oiled silk—before the antiseptic dressing is applied. A fibrous dressing next the raw surfaces is troublesome, as it sticks to the wound and is painful and difficult to remove. The dressing should be massive, well padded, and kept in place by an eight-tailed bandage secured in front and behind to a strap round



the waist, a hole being cut in front for the penis to emerge. The large wound generally does well. Skin grafting should be practised freely and early, especially round the root of the penis.

*Mortality from operation.*—The mortality from these formidable-looking operations, if they are carefully done, is small, and need not exceed 5 per cent. The results are very satisfactory, as a rule, the functions of the organs being retained or restored.

**Elephantiasis of the arms.**—This is comparatively rare. Allowing for the differences between the upper and lower extremities as regards gravitation of fluids, the symptoms and pathology of elephantiasis of the arm are the same as those of elephantiasis of the legs. Beyond the judicious employment of massage and elastic bandaging, little can be done in the way of treatment.

**Elephantiasis of the vulva and mammæ.**—Elephantiasis of the vulva (Fig. 70) and mammæ (Fig. 72) is still rarer. Where growth has become inconveniently large the diseased tissues should be removed. Instances are on record in which the integuments of the mammæ have become so thickened, heavy and elongated, that the organ has descended to the pubes and even to the knee. One such tumour weighed twenty-one pounds after removal. Tumours of the labia or of the clitoris, similarly, may attain a great size—eight or ten pounds, or even more.

**Elephantiasis of limited skin areas.**—Dr. Corney, of Fiji (*Lancet*, April 6th, 1889), states that pedunculated elephantoid tumours, springing from the groin or from the anterior surface of the thigh, are not uncommon in Fiji. One such tumour which he removed weighed twenty pounds. Dr. Daniels (*Brit. Guiana Med. Ann.*, 1896) has seen, both in Fiji and in Demerara, several cases of this description. (Fig. 71.) Dr. Silcock (*Indian Med. Gaz.*, July, 1895) describes a pedunculated tumour of this nature which he removed from the neck of an East Indian, and which weighed, after removal, thirty pounds. I have



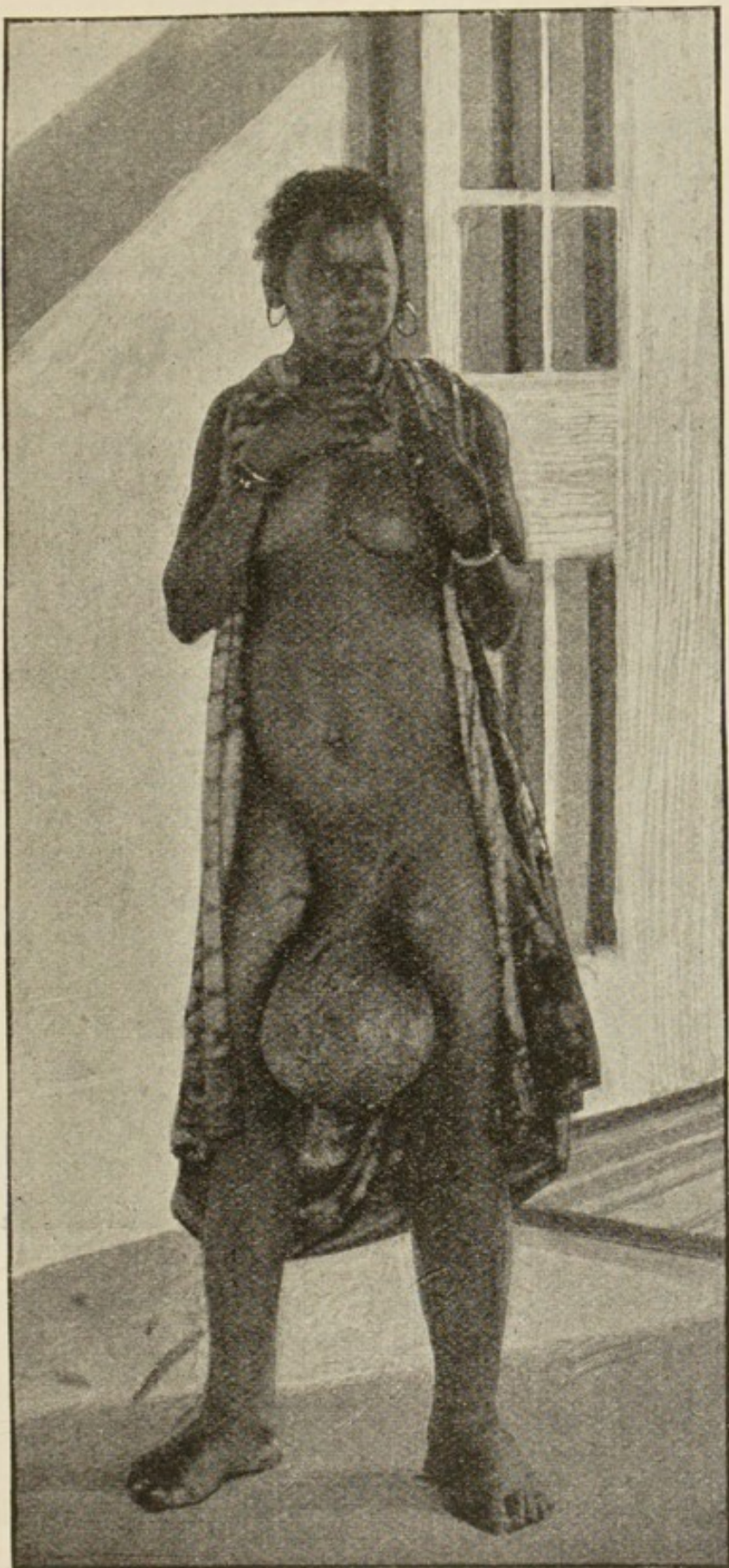


FIG. 70.—ELEPHANTIASIS OF VULVA.

(From a photograph by Dr. Walter H. B. Macdonald.)



often seen limited areas of elephantoid thickening of the skin, particularly on the thighs. These conditions are easily dealt with by simple operations.

**Chylous dropsy of the tunica vaginalis, and of the peritoneum; chylous diarrhœa.**—

Chylous dropsy of the tunica vaginalis is not an

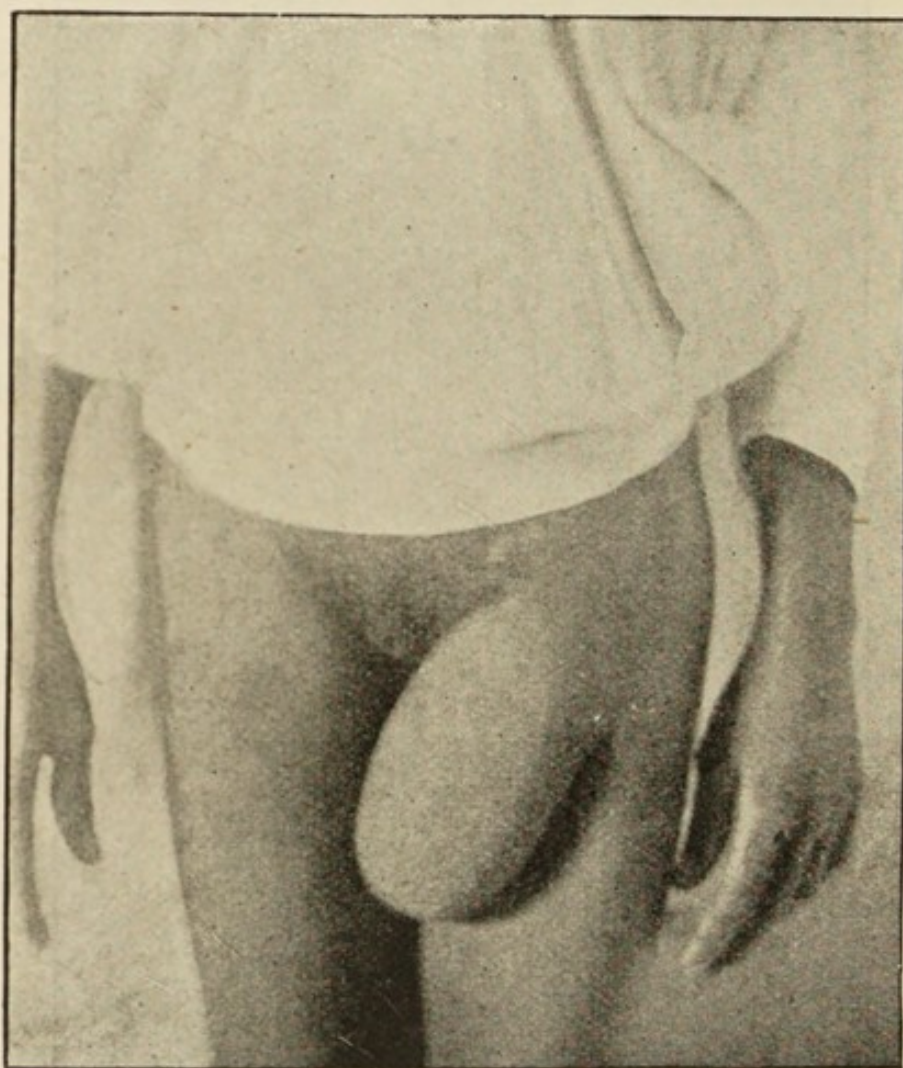


FIG 71.—PEDUNCULATED GROIN ELEPHANTIASIS.

(From a photograph by Dr. Daniels, Demerara.)

unusual occurrence in the tropics. A fluctuating swelling of the tunica vaginalis, which does not transmit light, and which is associated possibly with lymph scrotum, with varicose groin glands, with chyluria, or with filariæ in the blood, would suggest a diagnosis of this condition. These collections of chylous fluid in the tunica vaginalis generally contain



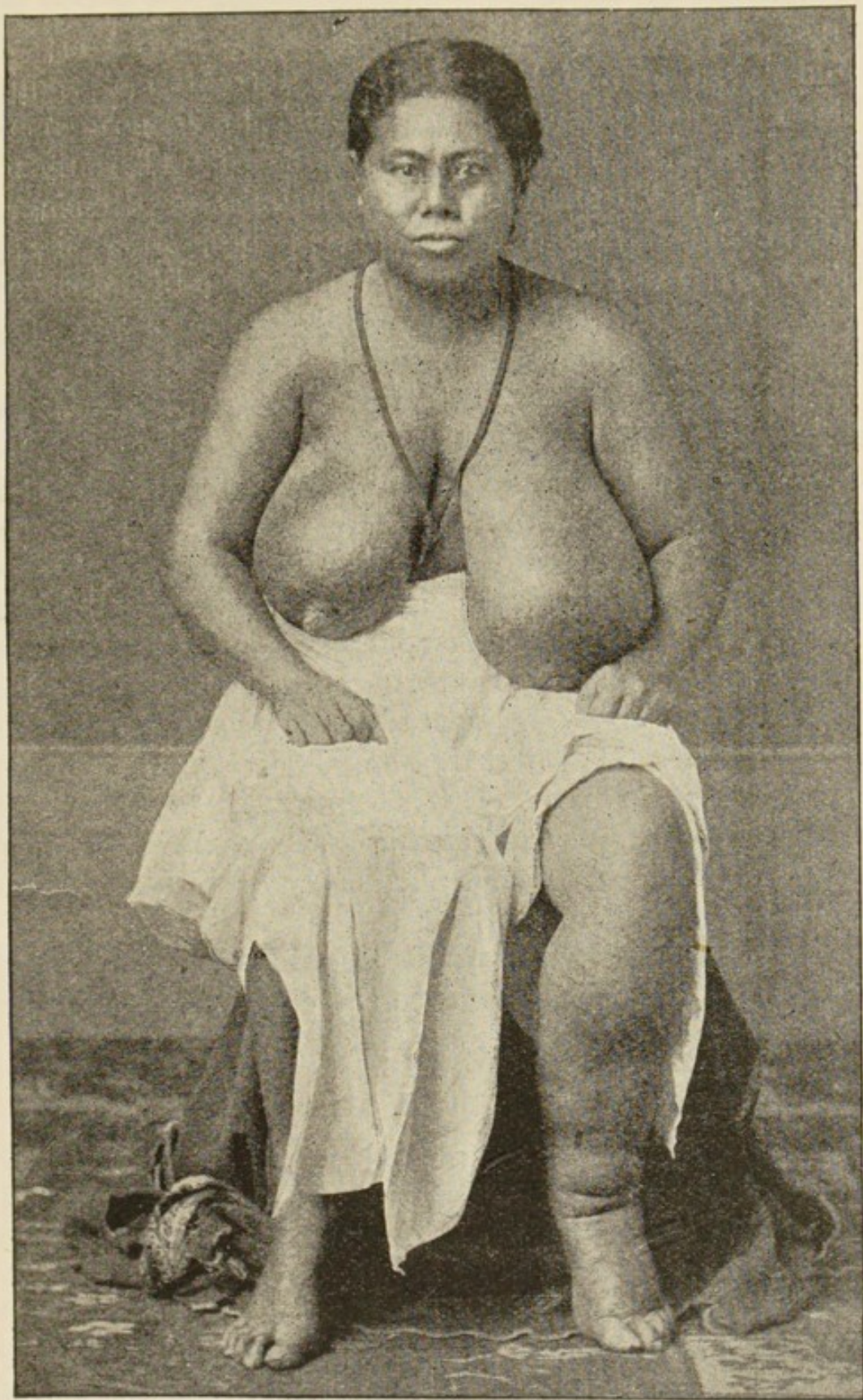


FIG. 72.—ELEPHANTIASIS OF MAMMÆ: LEFT LEG AND FOOT ALSO AFFECTED.

*(From a photograph by Dr. Davies, Samoa.)*



enormous numbers of filaria embryos. They may be treated as ordinary hydroceles, either by aseptic incision or by injection.

Filarial orchitis with effusion into the tunica vaginalis, according to Maitland is best treated by incision of the tunica vaginalis, turning out any clot that may be found in the sac, and stuffing the latter with iodoform gauze. This procedure, he says, gives immediate relief.

Chylous dropsy of the peritoneum, and chylous diarrhoea of filarial origin are very rare.

**Prophylaxis of filarial disease.**—The prevention of filarial disease resolves itself into protection from mosquito bites and securing a water supply uncontaminated by these insects. With this in view, unprotected wells, tanks, or stagnant pools must not be permitted in the neighbourhood of dwelling-houses or used as sources of drinking water; tanks and buckets for storing domestic water (the influence of these in spreading filarial disease has been ably demonstrated by Daniels in Demerara, *loc. cit.*) should be covered with fine wire netting, or regularly emptied and cleaned every three or four days. Water that is not absolutely beyond suspicion should be boiled or filtered.

The subjects of filariasis should be regarded as dangers to themselves and to the community, and be compelled to sleep under mosquito nets.

FILARIA DIURNA. (Fig. 51, *b.*)

I have twice encountered in negroes a blood worm with the same dimensions and anatomical characters, so far as these have been made out, as *F. nocturna*, but differing from this latter parasite inasmuch as it comes into the blood during the day and disappears from it during the night. One of these patients came from Old Calabar, the other from the Congo. The periodicity observed by the parasite was thoroughly made out by prolonged observation in one of the cases. As the man was in good health at the



time, and was observing ordinary habits as regards the hours of sleeping and waking, there can be little doubt that the parasite was not *F. nocturna*. Some years previously this patient had a *F. loa* in one of his eyes; it is just possible, therefore, that *F. diurna*, as I name this blood worm, is the embryonic form of the sexually mature *F. loa* (p. 559). This is merely a conjecture. I have no further observations to support it; indeed, the negative results as far as finding embryo filariæ in the blood in four cases of *F. loa* which I have examined, are against it.

Nothing is known about its life-history, or pathological significance. From recent observations I believe it to be very common (1 in 4) in certain districts on the lower Niger, where it seems to take the place among the natives that *F. perstans* holds among the Congo negroes.

FILARIA DEMARQUAII. (Fig. 51, c.)

In examining blood sent me by Dr. Newsam from natives of St. Vincent, West Indies, I found this blood worm in several individuals—in 10 out of 152 examined. It resembles *F. nocturna* and *F. diurna* so far as shape is concerned, but differs from them in size. I have had no opportunity of making trustworthy measurements of living specimens in suitably prepared slides, but, judging from rough preparations, *F. demarquaii* appears to be rather more than half the size of *F. nocturna* and *F. diurna*. It is sharp-tailed like these, but, in addition to the size, it differs from them inasmuch as it observes no periodicity, being present in the peripheral circulation both by day and by night, and, also, in not being enclosed in a sheath. Nothing is known of its life-history, minute anatomy, or pathological bearings. Possibly it is the embryonic form of *F. magalhæsi*—also a tropical American blood parasite.

I have recently met with, apparently, the same parasite in the blood of natives of St. Lucia, W.I., where Dr. Galgey has still more recently shown that



either it, or a similar blood worm, is very common. It is quite possible that the sharp-tailed filaria (*F. ozzardi*) of British Guiana is the same species.

I have also found a minute, non-sheathed, sharp-tailed embryo filaria in the blood of natives of New Guinea, likewise closely resembling *F. demarquaii*. Whether these various embryos belong to one or to several species it is impossible to decide until the parental forms of each have been discovered and compared.

FILARIA OZZARDI. (Fig. 51, d.)

Some time ago I received from Dr. Ozzard, of the Colonial Medical Service, British Guiana, a number of blood films prepared from aboriginal Carib Indians inhabiting the back-country of that colony. Although the negroes and other inhabitants of the littoral and settled districts of British Guiana are very subject to *F. nocturna* and to elephantiasis, in none of the considerable number of slides of Carib blood from time to time received from Dr. Ozzard and Dr. Daniels have I once encountered *F. nocturna*. Dr. Daniels records an identical experience. I am assured by Dr. Ozzard that elephantiasis is unknown amongst these people. On examining the blood slides referred to, I discovered certain nematode embryos with characters so peculiar that I suspected they represented at least one new species of blood worm, which I called, provisionally, *F. ozzardi*. At least half of the slides examined contained these parasites, some slides only one or two, other slides as many as forty or fifty. In size and shape five out of six of the embryos resembled very closely *F. perstans* (p. 536)—that is to say, they were blunt-tailed, had no sheath, and were very minute ( $\cdot 173$  to  $\cdot 240$  mm. by  $\cdot 0043$  to  $\cdot 005$  mm., Daniels). But along with the blunt-tailed filariæ and on the same slides there occurred a sharp-tailed form, also very minute, and resembling *F. demarquaii*. There were about five blunt-tailed parasites to every sharp-tailed parasite. Drs. Ozzard and



Daniels (*Brit. Guiana Med. Ann.*, 1897) confirmed this discovery. Both of these observers have had abundant opportunity of examining these filariæ alive. They found that the sharp-tailed and the blunt-tailed worms behave in fresh blood on the microscope slide much in the same way that *F. perstans* (p. 537) does; that is, they wriggle about very actively, at the same time retracting, elongating, and locomoting in the blood.

*Parental form.*—For a time the relationship of these embryo filariæ, both to each other and to *F. demarquaii*, remained undetermined. Recently Dr. Daniels found parental filariæ—male and female—at the *post-mortem* examination of two Demerara Indians whose blood, during life, contained both blunt- and sharp-tailed embryos. The mature worms, apparently

TABLE.

	Filaria bancrofti.	Filaria perstans.	Filaria ozzardi.
	Mm.	Mm.	Mm.
Length ... ..	85 to 90	70 to 80	81
Greatest thickness ... ..	0·20 to 0·26	0·120	0·210
Diameter of head ... ..	0·055	0·070	0·050
Diameter of neck ... ..	0·049	0·054	0·039
Distance from head—			
(1) Of vaginal outlet ... ..	0·710	0·600	0·710
(2) Of ovarian opening ... ..	0·920	?	0·850
Distance from tail of anal papilla ... ..	0·225	0·145	0·230
Termination of tail ... ..	Blunt, circular, not bulbous.	Slightly bulbous; covered by thickened cuticle prolonged into two triangular appendages.	Bulbous cuticle not thickened.

numerous, were about three inches in length and very slender—about one-third the diameter of *F. bancrofti*. They were, therefore, not *F. magalhæsi* (p. 538). The head was somewhat club-shaped and showed no papillæ. The tail of the male was much coiled and carried at least one long protruding spicule. These



worms were found in one case in the mesentery and in the fat at the base of the mesentery; in the other "not only in mesentery and abdominal fat, but also in the subpericardial fat." The embryos *in utero*, Dr. Daniels stated, were all blunt-tailed. I had an opportunity of comparing these worms with unquestionable parental *F. perstans*. I found them to be identical. The peculiar bifid arrangement of the termination of the tail was quite characteristic of that parasite (p. 537).

Later, Dr. Daniels (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, June 17th, 1899) found at the *post-mortem* examination of a third aboriginal in whose blood both the blunt-tailed (*F. perstans*) and the sharp-tailed filariæ had been found (and no others) a few adult *F. perstans* and, in addition, a female and portion of a male worm of quite a different species—presumably the parental form of the sharp-tailed embryo. The two latter parental worms lay close together and were believed to have been located in the sub-peritoneal connective tissues in the anterior abdominal wall. Except in the matter of the caudal extremity, which was bulbous, in size and structure they closely resembled *F. bancrofti*. Dr. Daniels has drawn up the table (on p. 535) of the leading dimensions of the three species—*F. bancrofti*, *F. perstans*, and of this possibly new filaria for which I propose to retain provisionally the name *F. ozzardi*.

FILARIA PERSTANS. (Fig. 51, e.)

*Geographical range.*—This parasite is very common in the blood of the natives of large districts in West Africa. I have found it in natives from Old Calabar and from the basin of the Congo—both in the coast negroes and in those from the interior. Daniels informs me that he has found it in a native of British Central Africa residing on the east side of Lake Nyassa. In many parts of the endemic districts it occurs in about half the population. Prof. Firket, of Liège, has confirmed this observation as



regards the Congo district. Sometimes it occurs along with *F. diurna* and *F. nocturna* in the same individual. I have never found it in West Indian negroes, nor, in fact, in natives of any country except West tropical Africa, and in the aborigines of Demerara. I have twice found it in Europeans who had resided on the Congo.

*Its characters.*—*Filaria perstans* observes no periodicity, being present in the blood both by day and by night. In this respect it resembles *F. demarquaii* and *F. ozzardi*; and, like these, in size, shape, and anatomical detail differs very materially from *F. nocturna* and *F. diurna*.

The embryo in the blood measures, on an average,  $\frac{1}{125}$  inch in length by  $\frac{1}{5500}$  inch in breadth; but, as it possesses to a remarkable degree the power to elongate and to shorten itself, these measurements do not always apply. On the whole, however, it is manifestly much smaller than *F. nocturna* and *F. diurna*. It is further distinguished from these filariæ by the entire absence of a sheath, and by the characters of its caudal end, which is invariably truncated and abruptly rounded off. The taper terminating in the tail extends through quite two-thirds of the entire length of the animal. Further, if the head be carefully observed with a high power, a fang can generally be easily seen—much more easily than the corresponding structure in *F. nocturna*—in constant play, shot out and retracted. From indications in stained specimens I judge that it possesses a V- and a tail-spot; this point, however, I have not carefully studied. No hooked cephalic prepuce can be made out. Its movements also differ from those of *F. nocturna*, for it not only wriggles about, just as that parasite does, but it indulges from time to time in long excursions through the blood, moving freely all over the slide, locomoting in fact very much in the same way as *F. nocturna* does in the mosquito's stomach after it has cast its sheath.

*Parental form.*—The parental form, discovered by



Daniels in Demerara Indians, and subsequently identified by myself as that of *F. perstans*, like *F. bancrofti*, is a long, cylindrical, filiform nematode of the dimensions given in the foregoing table (p. 535). The body is smooth, without markings, the mouth simple and unarmed. The tail in both sexes is peculiar and characteristic; it is incurvated, and the

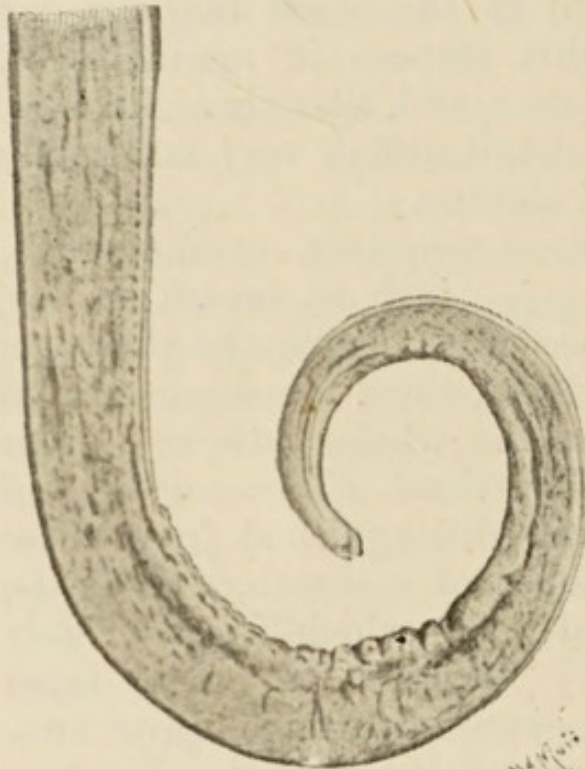


Fig. 73.—Tail of adult *Filaria perstans*.

chitinous covering at the extreme tip is split up as it were into two minute triangular appendages, giving it a mitred appearance (Fig. 73). The male is smaller than the female, but the specimens hitherto obtained did not permit of accurate observation on spicules and papillæ. It is open to question if the latter are present. So far the parental forms have been found in the connective

tissues at the root of the mesentery, behind the abdominal aorta, and beneath the pericardium.

*Pathology.*—What pathological rôle *F. perstans* may play is still uncertain. I have conjectured, for reasons stated elsewhere (p. 286), that it may in some way be the cause of negro lethargy and of one of the forms of African craw-craw (p. 563).

#### FILARIA MAGALHÃESI.

Professor Magalhães describes (*Rev. des Cursos theoreticos e prat. da Fac. de Med. de R. de Janeiro*, No. 3, An. III., 1886) two sexually mature filarial



hæmatozoa, male and female, which were found lying in the left ventricle of the heart of a child that died in Rio de Janeiro. No information was received as to the nature of the disease of which the child died, nor had any examination of the blood been made during life. The parasites were cylindrical, capillary, opalescent, white, uniform in thickness except where the body tapered towards the tail and at the club-shaped oral end. The mouth was simple, circular, unarmed; the cuticle marked with fine transparent striations. The female worm measured 155 mm. in length by 0.7 mm. in diameter, the male 83 mm. in length by 0.4 mm. in diameter. The tail of the latter was provided with four pairs of pre-anal and four pairs of post-anal papillæ, and two spicules. Manifestly this parasite is specifically distinct from *F. bancrofti*. The fact that it occurred in the Western hemisphere would suggest the possibility that it may be the parental form either of *F. demarquaii* or of *F. ozzardi*. Nothing is known of its life-history, nor of the associated pathology.



## CHAPTER XXXIV.

## ENDEMIC HÆMATURIA (BILHARZIA DISEASE).

**Definition.**—A form of hæmaturia caused by *Bilharzia hæmatobia* (*Distomum hæmatobium*), and characterised by the presence of the ova of that parasite in the urine.

**History and geographical distribution.**—The frequency of hæmaturia in the natives of Egypt, and in visitors to that country, has long been remarked. The explanation of this peculiar circumstance was supplied by Bilharz who, in 1851, discovered the cause in a peculiar trematode, subsequently named by Cobbold, in honour of its discoverer, *Bilharzia hæmatobia*.

So far as known, with the exception of Mesopotamia (Sturrock, *Brit. Med. Journ.*, Dec. 2nd, 1899), and possibly of Arabia, this parasite is limited to Africa and its island dependencies. Dr. John Harley discovered, in 1864, the characteristic ova in cases of hæmaturia from Natal. It has many times been found in patients from Mauritius. It has been found on the Gold Coast, in Tunis, and it probably exists in many other parts of Africa, more particularly along the eastern side of the continent. Egypt, however, is its favourite haunt; there, judging from Bilharz's, Griesinger's, and Sonsino's *post-mortem* records, it is present in quite one-half of the population.

**Ætiology.**—*The parasite* (Fig. 74).—*Bilharzia hæmatobia* belongs to the *Distomida*; but, unlike the majority of distomes, which are nearly all of them hermaphrodite, bilharzia presents the peculiarity of being bisexual. The *male* is white, cylindroid, measuring



15 mm. in length by 1 mm. in breadth. It possesses an oral and a ventral sucker placed close together. The cylindrical appearance of the worm is produced by the ventral infolding of the two sides of what would otherwise be a flat body. By this infolding a gynæcophoric canal is formed, in which the female can be partially enclosed. The female is rather darker in colour than the male, considerably longer (20mm.), more filiform, her middle being embraced during coitus by the gynæcophoric canal referred to, whilst her anterior and posterior portions remain free. The genital openings of the sexes face each other, and are placed immediately posterior to the ventral sucker.

These parasites are found in the blood of the portal vein, in its mesenteric and splenic branches, and in the vesical, uterine, and hæmorrhoidal veins. They have also been found in the vena cava; Sonsino considers that, if searched for, they would probably be found elsewhere in the circulation. Their numbers vary considerably. Sonsino reports finding in one case forty; in another case Kartulis found 300 in the portal vein and its branches.

*The ovum* (Fig. 75).—On microscopical examination the uterus of the female bilharzia is found to be stuffed with ova of a peculiar and characteristic shape. They are oval, each egg on an average measuring about 0.16 mm. in length by 0.06 mm. in breadth, one end of the ovum being provided with a short, stout,

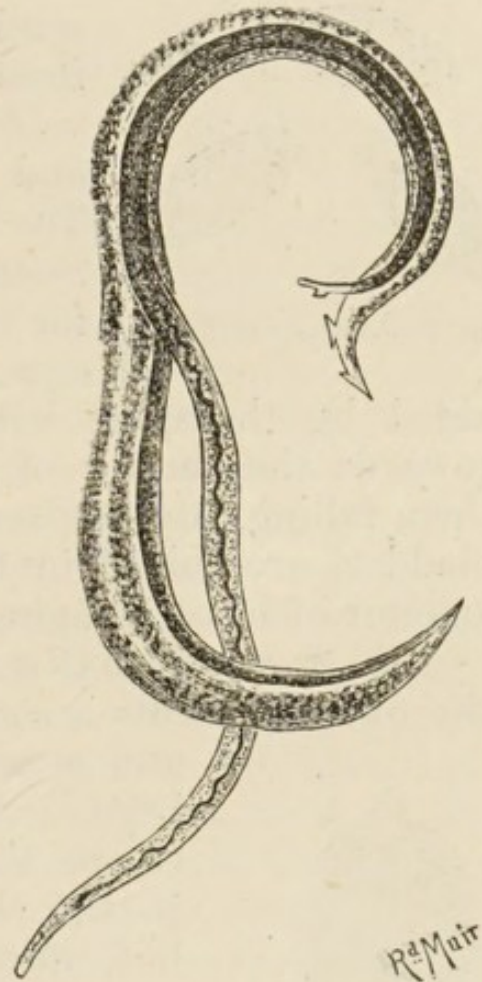


Fig. 74.—*Bilharzia hæmatobia*, male and female, the latter in the gynæcophoric canal of the former. (After Leuckart.)



and very definite spine. In certain instances, hereafter to be mentioned, this spine is not terminal but is placed laterally.

The exact nature of the process by which the ova leave the body of the human host has not been satisfactorily explained. Apparently, the female worm migrates from time to time from the larger veins to their smaller radicles, and in these deposits her ova. The walls of the bladder and rectum are the favourite situations for this purpose. Afterwards the eggs are somehow carried, possibly

aided by the spine with which they are provided, towards the surface of the mucous membrane, and then, falling into the lumen of the bowel or into the bladder, are voided in the fæces or urine, a certain amount of blood escaping at the same time.

*The free embryo* (Fig. 76).—In newly voided urine the ovum presents a somewhat brownish appearance, and generally contains a ciliated embryo. After a time the embryo may escape through a longitudinal rupture in the shell. It then swims about; but, unless supplied with fresh water, soon perishes. If the urine be freely diluted with water, the embryo not only escapes more quickly from the shell but also continues to live, swimming and gyrating very actively for a considerable time. While swimming, the body of the little animal undergoes many changes of shape. For the most part, when advancing,

it is oblong, tapering somewhat posteriorly; when more stationary it tends to assume a spherical form. It moves by means of the cilia which, with the exception of the minute papillary beak, thickly cover the entire body. On carefully examining the em-

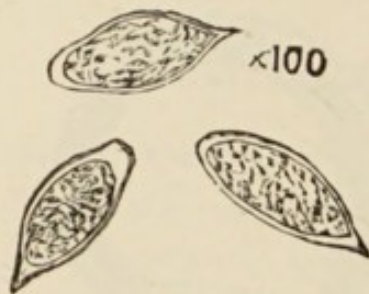


Fig. 75.—Ova of Bilharzia.



Fig. 76.—Free embryo of Bilharzia.



bryo, a canal may be traced from the beak into what looks like a rudimentary stomach; on both sides of this two much smaller gland-like organs can be seen, from each of which a delicate tube passes forward and opens, apparently, somewhere in the neighbourhood of the beak. The bulk of the embryo is occupied by a number of sarcode globules. A careful description of the embryo is given by Dr. G. S. Brock in the *Lancet* of Sept. 9th, 1893, p. 625, to which the reader is referred for further details.

*Life-history.*—Beyond its first stage of free-swimming ciliated embryo the extracorporeal life of bilharzia is quite unknown, notwithstanding the many attempts that have been made to trace its future progress. Sonsino believed at one time that he had discovered its intermediate host in a fresh-water arthropode; this view he afterwards abandoned. Judging from analogy, the embryo bilharzia probably passes into the body of some fresh-water mollusc, into some crustacean, or into some larval arthropode; there, it is conjectured, it undergoes the developmental changes into redia and cercaria usually exhibited by the distomes. Later, it probably becomes encysted and then, either free or still in the body of the intermediate host, it gains access to man in drinking water and so, through the stomach, passes to the veins of the portal system.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms produced by bilharzia vary in degree within very wide limits. Sometimes the patient experiences no trouble whatever; in other instances the suffering is very great. Indirectly, from the serious nature of the lesions of the urinary organs to which it may give rise, bilharzia is not an infrequent cause of death.

The most characteristic symptom of its presence in the wall of the bladder is the passage of blood at the end of micturition, with or without a sense of urinary irritation. The amount of blood so passed varies from a few drops of slightly tinged urine, to a considerable quantity of pure blood. The quantity of



blood passed and the degree of irritation are increased by exercise, by dietetic indiscretions, and by all such causes as are calculated to aggravate cystitis. As a rule, it is only the last few drops of urine that contain blood; sometimes, however, the hæmorrhage is more extensive, and then the entire bulk of the urine may be blood tinged. Occasionally, clots even are passed.

If in a case of moderate bilharzia infection the urine be passed into a glass and held up to the light, minute flocculi, or coiled-up mucoid-looking threads will be seen floating about in the fluid. If it be allowed to stand, the flocculi, and perhaps minute clots, will subside to the bottom of the vessel; these, on being taken up with a pipette and placed under the microscope, will be found to contain, besides blood corpuscles and the usual catarrhal products, large numbers of the characteristic spined ova.

In doubtful cases, where ova are few, the best way to find them is to get the patient to empty the bladder and to catch in a watch-glass the last few drops of urine which can be forced out by straining; these invariably contain ova. A low power of the microscope suffices and is best for diagnosis.

Endemic hæmaturia lasts for months or years. Recovery is rarely complete. In ordinary cases, provided no reinfection take place, the hæmaturia tends to decrease, although ova may continue for years to be found in the last few drops of urine passed. In severe cases, sooner or later, signs of cystitis supervene and give rise to a great deal of suffering. Not infrequently the ova become the nuclei for stone, and then symptoms of urinary calculus are superadded. Sometimes the pathological changes induced by the presence of the parasite in the bladder lead to the development of new growth, in which event the symptoms become more urgent and the hæmaturia perhaps excessive. Hypertrophy, contraction, or even dilatation of the bladder, are not unusual. Besides the bladder symptoms there may be signs of prostatic disease, or of disease of the vesiculæ seminales causing



spermatorrhœa. In the latter case, ova may be detected in the semen. In other instances the ureters and kidneys become involved, and grave disease of these organs ultimately ensues. In consequence of the suffering which these aggravated forms of infection produce, the patients become anæmic, wasted, debilitated, and a ready prey to intercurrent disease.

When the rectum is involved dysenteric-like symptoms may supervene, mucus with blood being passed from time to time, the stools becoming frequent and their passage being attended with tenesmus. In such cases small, soft growths are to be felt inside the sphincter ani. On removing one of these and breaking it up with needles, the spined ova can be readily made out in the *débris*.

In the female, vaginitis and cervicitis have been known to be produced by this parasite. The ova have also been found in the liver and in the lungs; so far as known, their presence in the latter organs gives rise to no active symptoms.

**Pathological anatomy.**—The character of the changes brought about by bilharzia varies very much according to the degree and the duration of the infection. In almost every case the walls of the urinary bladder are early affected. All that may be apparent to the naked eye at this stage of the disease is a certain amount of injection of the small vessels of the mucosa vesicæ, and, according to Sonsino, certain exceedingly minute vesicular or papular elevations of the surface of this membrane. When these minute elevations are examined microscopically they are found to contain ova. Ova are also to be found in the dilated minute blood-vessels. Later, especially in the trigone of the bladder, there are found rounded patches of inflammatory thickening which project somewhat, are granular on the surface, and dense in consistence; on section they creak under the knife as if they contained gritty particles. It is evident that these elevated, thickened patches are the result of an inflammatory process provoked by the clusters of ova



which the microscope reveals scattered throughout their entire extent. The ova are principally deposited in the submucosa, less extensively in the mucous membrane itself, still less abundantly in the muscular walls of the organ or in its subserous connective tissue. They tend to occur in groups, each of which is invested by a sort of connective-tissue capsule ; or they may be lying in small blood-vessels which they occlude. Some ova are seen to have undergone calcification ; others are still fresh, either segmenting, or already containing a ciliated embryo. On the surface of the rounded patches already mentioned, phosphatic deposits, also containing ova, are not uncommon ; sometimes the patches present minute sloughs. In addition to these indurated patches, various forms of polypoid excrescence—sometimes ulcerated—may protrude from the mucous surface into the cavity of the bladder. These various hyperplasiæ frequently contain the adult parasite as well as ova.

In addition to what may be called the specific changes in the mucosa, the muscular coats of the bladder are generally hypertrophied. In consequence of this, as well as of the ingrowth of villousities and different forms of new growth, the capacity of the organ may be much diminished. Its mucous surface is generally coated with a sanguineous mucus containing myriads of ova. Gravel, or small stones are sometimes found either embedded in lacunæ in the hypertrophied and roughened bladder wall, or free in the cavity. Not infrequently a similar hyperplasia occurs in the ureters, particularly towards their lower ends. In rare instances the pelvis of the kidney itself is affected. Obliteration of the ureter, both from small stones and, also, from thickening of the mucous membrane, has sometimes been met with ; this leads to dilatation of the pelvis and atrophy of the parenchyma of the kidney. It is easy to understand how, in time, these changes of the bladder and ureters may give rise to hydronephrosis, pyelitis, abscess of the kidney, and similar secondary affections.



Hyperplasia from bilharzia infection may also occur in the vesiculæ seminales, in the walls of the vagina, and in the cervix of the uterus, leading to corresponding bloody, ova-containing discharges.

In bilharzia disease, as regards practical importance, next to the bladder and consequent kidney affections rank the changes occurring in the large intestine, particularly in the lower part of the rectum. In this situation polypoid growths, apt to be mistaken for piles, are frequent. Large extravasations of blood under the mucous coat may also occur.

Strange to say, in ova found in the bowel, according to Sonsino and Mackie, the spine is generally placed laterally; whereas in ova coming from the walls of the bladder the spine is invariably terminal. This lateral situation of the spine has been explained in various ways, the most probable suggestion being that it is a consequence of the compression exercised by the muscular coat of the intestine on the parent worm while the ova are passing the shell glands; the relations of certain of the reproductive organs of the worm are supposed to be altered by this compression.

It may be mentioned that ova in small numbers have been found in the liver, in gall-stones, in the lungs, in the heart, and in the kidneys. We have no knowledge of any definite pathological change entailed by their presence there.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of bilharzia disease is easy; the presence of ova in the urine is decisive. In countries like Egypt, where the disease must often concur with chyluria, with stone, with vesical tumour, with gonorrhœal cystitis, and with pyelitis, as well as with prostatic disease, care must be exercised in each particular case to separate the special factors to which the different symptoms are attributable. Thus in chyluria concurring with bilharzia disease there will be chyle in the urine in addition to blood. In such a combination the clot which forms will be large, will contain oil granules and globules and, very probably,



filaria embryos in addition to bilharzia ova ; moreover, the filaria will generally be detectable in the finger blood if looked for at night. Stone in the bladder, when suspected, has to be searched for with the sound. In gonorrhœal cystitis the history of gonorrhœa will be forthcoming. In prostatic disease, enlargement of this organ may be made out. Difficulty may sometimes arise when ova are few in number, or when they have ceased altogether to come away in consequence of the death of the parent worms. The mischief wrought by the parasite remains, although the ova—the most certain evidence of the parasite's previous presence—may be discharged no longer. But, even if ova are very few, they may still be found in the last drop or two of urine passed. If they are no longer to be found in the urine, sometimes, by scratching the surface of the bladder with a sound and examining the shreds of mucus so obtained, a few, calcified it may be, but presenting the characteristic spine, may be seen with the microscope. In rectal disease, if bilharzia be suspected, the mucus and the fæces, or, failing these, one of the polypoid growths after removal by finger or forceps, as well as the urine, should be examined for ova.

**Prognosis.**—An important element to be considered in venturing on a prognosis is the long life of the parasite. Sonsino mentions a case in which living ova were still being passed nine years after their first appearance, and after all chance of reinfection had ceased. Another important element in prognosis is the degree of infection ; the greater the number of worms the more severe and the more extensive the disease they produce. As with filarial infection, the greater the number of cases in a district the greater will be the probability of severe infections being met with. The prognosis is practically that of a chronic cystitis depending on an irremediable, but not in itself fatal, cause. Much suffering may often be looked for and, as a consequence, anæmia and debility ; possibly calculus may be formed ; possibly



grave renal disease may ensue. In the milder degrees of infection, which fortunately are the commonest, the patient seems to be in no way inconvenienced by the parasite, and generally escapes all serious consequences. In any case, mild or severe, there may be attacks of hæmaturia from time to time ; as a rule, the quantity of blood lost is insignificant.

**Treatment.**—Our knowledge of the situations occupied by the parasite indicates the futility of attempting a radical cure by means of poisonous substances, whether introduced by the bladder, by the rectum, or by the stomach. As yet we know of no direct, or other, means by which the bilharzia can be destroyed. Harm only can result from attempts at a radical cure of endemic hæmaturia on such lines. Our efforts must, therefore, be confined to palliating the effects of the presence of the parasite. Practically, the treatment resolves itself into that of chronic cystitis. The diet should be bland but nutritious ; stimulants and spices are to be avoided. Excess of all kinds, violent muscular efforts, cold and other causes of catarrh must also be guarded against. During exacerbations of hæmaturia, or of cystitis, rest should be enjoined and diluents freely partaken of. Pain may demand anodynes. Excessive catarrh of the bladder suggests washing out with weak boric acid lotion, and the internal administration of uva ursi, buchu, perhaps small doses of cubebs, copaiba, or sandalwood oil, salol, benzoic acid, and so forth. Stone, and troublesome new growths, are to be removed by operation. Where distress was extreme, Mackie had good results from cystotomy. Polypoid growths in the rectum, where accessible, should be removed. Hyperplasia in the vagina and cervix is best treated by scraping.

**Prevention.**—Since analogy justifies the belief that the embryo of bilharzia, on obtaining access to fresh water, enters a fresh-water animal and by it obtains access to another human host, it is evident that if the embryo be kept from getting into the



water, or, if drinking water be boiled or filtered, the spread of the disease from man to man would be effectually prevented.

In the endemic districts, children, in particular, should be carefully and repeatedly warned against drinking the water of ponds and canals. Provided reinfection be avoided by the exercise of prudence in the matter of drinking water, there is no necessity for sending the patient with bilharzia disease away from the country in which the parasite was acquired.



## CHAPTER XXXV.

## II. PARASITES OF THE CONNECTIVE TISSUE.

GUINEA WORM (*FILARIA MEDINENSIS*).

**Geographical distribution.**—This important parasite is found in certain parts of India—the Deccan, Scinde, etc.—in Persia, Turkestan, Arabia, tropical Africa—particularly on the west coast, and in a very limited part of Brazil (Feira de Santa Anna). Formerly it was supposed to be endemic in Curaçoa, Demerara, and Surinam; apparently it has now disappeared from these places. Guinea worm is not equally diffused throughout this extensive area; it tends to special prevalence in limited districts, in some of which it is excessively common. In parts of the Deccan, for example, at certain seasons of the year, nearly half the population is affected; and in places on the West Coast of Africa nearly every negro has one or more specimens about him. Although guinea worm is sometimes seen in Europe, this is only in natives of, or in recent visitors from, the endemic area. Though frequently introduced in this way it has not become acclimatised either in Europe or in North America. We have no account of the parasite as endemic in any part of Asia east of Hindustan, in the Eastern Archipelago, Australia, or in the Pacific Islands.

Guinea worm occurs occasionally in the lower animals—horse, dog, ox, etc. Possibly, some of the parasites in the lower animals described as guinea worm may belong to quite a different species.

**The parasite** (Fig. 77).—*Anatomical features.*—The female guinea worm alone is known; the male has not been recognised with certainty. She



is reputed to attain in some instances enormous dimensions; it is probable, however, that worms of

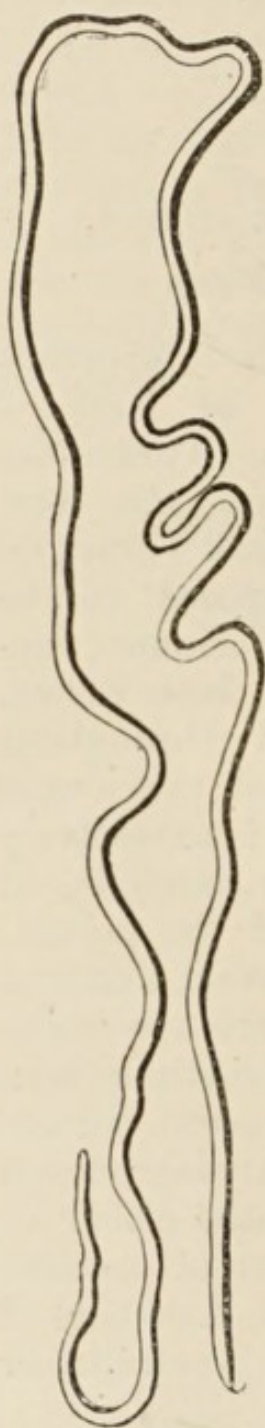


Fig. 77.—Guinea worm. (Reduced.) (Leuckart.)

five or six feet in length owe their size to errors of observation, two worms, or their fragments, having been regarded as one. According to Ewart, in forty carefully measured specimens, the smallest was  $12\frac{3}{4}$  inches, the largest 40 inches in length; 30 inches is probably an average length. The diameter of the worm is about one-tenth of an inch. The body is cylindrical, milky-white, smooth, and without markings. The tip of the tail is abruptly bent, forming a sort of blunted hook, perhaps functioning as a "holdfast." The head end is rounded off, terminating in what is known as the cephalic shield. The mouth is triangular, very small, and surrounded by six papillæ—two large and four small. The alimentary canal is relatively small, being compressed and thrust to one side by the uterus; it is probably cæcal, for it has not been traced to an anus. The vagina, which must have existed at an early stage, at maturity has also become obliterated by the growth of the enormous uterus which, filled with coiled-up embryos (Fig. 78), extends from the head to the tail of the worm.

*Habits.*—The habitat of the female guinea worm is the connective tissue of the limbs and trunk.

When mature, in obedience to instinct, she proceeds to bore her way through this tissue, and, finally, travelling downwards, reaches a leg or foot. In 85 per cent. of cases she presents in some part of the



lower extremities ; occasionally in the scrotum ; rarely in the arms ; very exceptionally in other parts of the body, or even in the head. Arrived at her destination she pierces the derma. Probably in consequence of some irritating secretion, a small blister now forms and elevates the epidermis over the site of the hole in the derma. By-and-by the blister ruptures, disclosing a small superficial ulcer half to three-quarters of an inch in diameter. At the centre of the ulcer,

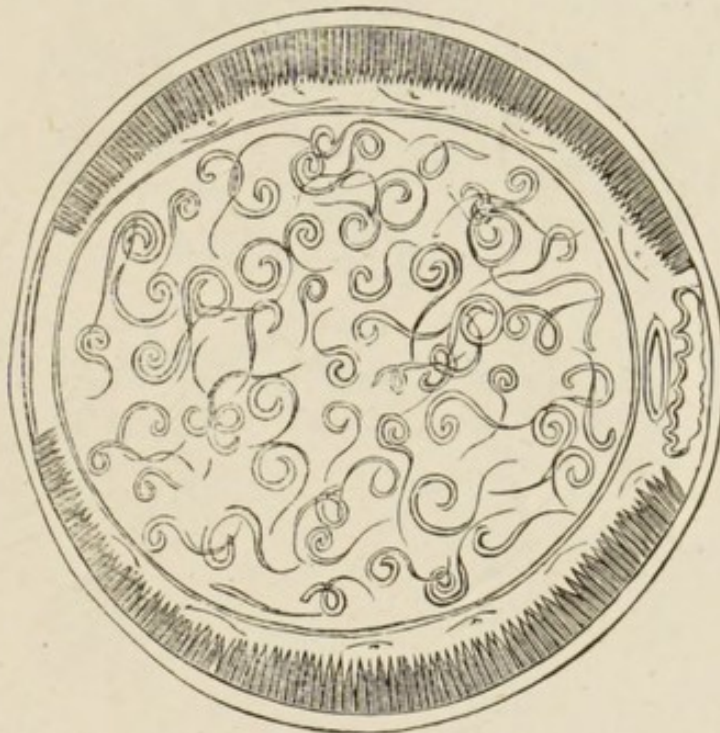


Fig. 78.—Section of guinea worm. (*Leuckart.*)

which sometimes quickly heals spontaneously, a minute hole, large enough to admit an ordinary probe, can be seen. Sometimes when the blister ruptures, the head of the worm is seen protruding from this hole ; as a rule, however, at first the worm does not show herself. If now we douche the neighbourhood of the ulcer with a stream of cold water expressed from a sponge and, as the water falls, watch the little hole in the centre of the ulcer, we shall see in a few seconds a droplet of fluid—at first clear, later milky—well up through the hole and flow over the ulcer. Sometimes, instead of this fluid, a small, beautifully pellucid tube, about  $\frac{1}{16}$  of an



inch in diameter, doubtless the uterus of the worm prolapsed through her mouth, is projected through the hole in response to the stimulus of the cold

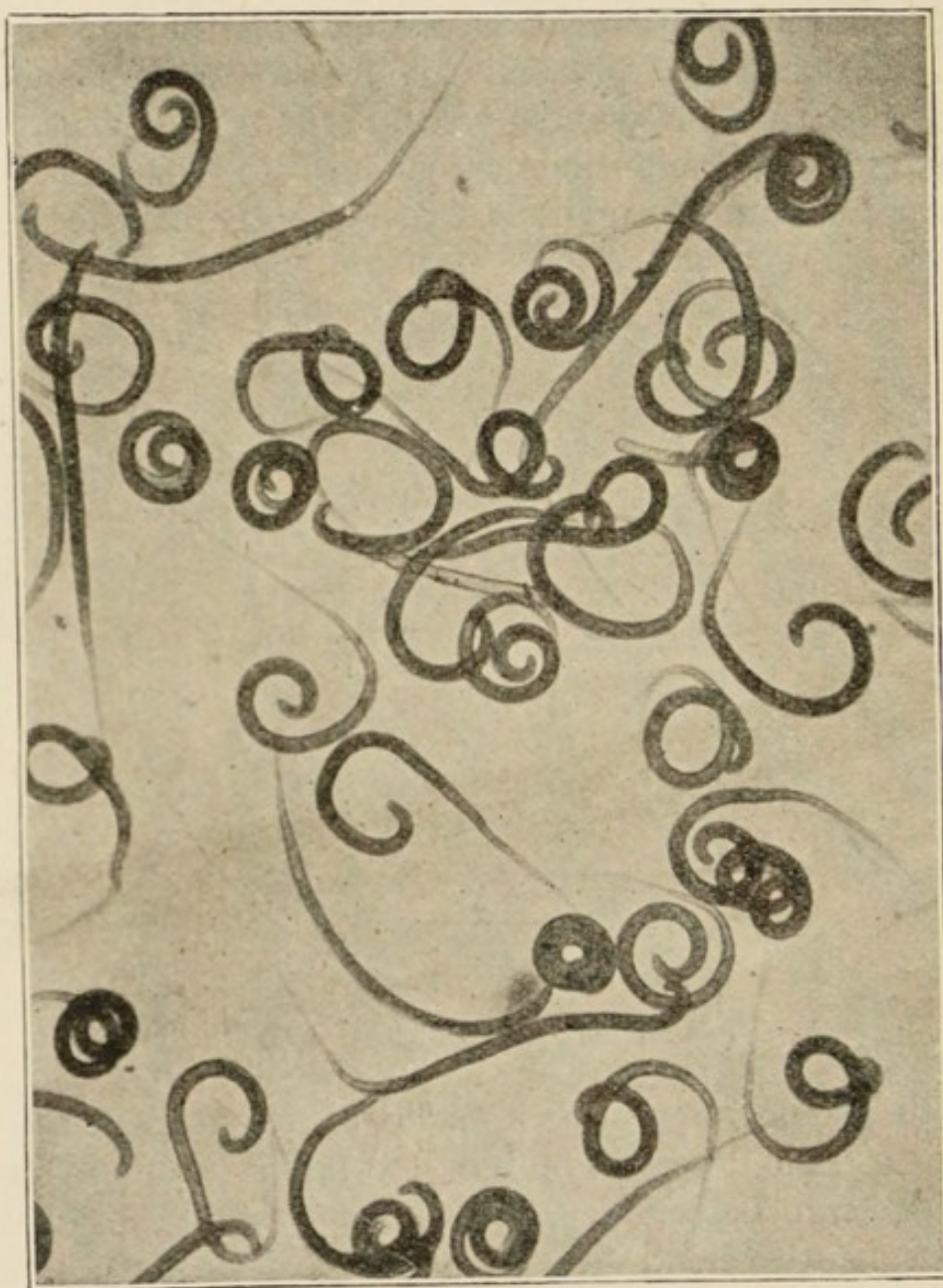


Fig. 79.—Embryos of guinea worm.  
(From a photogram by Mr. H. B. Bristow.)

water. When this tube has been extruded an inch or thereabouts, it suddenly fills with an opaque whitish material, ruptures and collapses, the fluid spreading over the surface of the ulcer. If a little of the fluid, either that which has welled up through the hole, or that which has escaped from the ruptured



tube, is placed under the microscope, it is seen to contain myriads of embryo guinea worms lying coiled up, almost motionless, with their tails projecting in a very characteristic manner (Fig. 79). If now a drop of water be instilled below the cover-glass the embryos may be observed to unroll themselves and, in a very short time, to swim about, *more suo*, with great activity. Manifestly these embryos come from a guinea worm lying in the tissues and communicating with the surface through the little hole in the derma.

*The embryo* (Fig. 80).—The embryos are not cylindrical; they are distinctly flattened. In swimming they move by a sort of side-to-side lashing of the tail, and tadpole-like motion of the body. The movements are intermittent; sudden, short swims alternating with brief pauses. When progressing the longer transverse axis of the body is perpendicular to the plane travelled over; but when, from time to time, the little worms pause they gradually roll over on to their flat surfaces. As soon as they come to rest on the flat they suddenly recover themselves with a jerk, and turn quickly on to their edges and begin swimming about again. This series of movements is constantly repeated.

The embryo of the guinea worm measures about  $\frac{1}{30}$  of an inch in length, by  $\frac{1}{1000}$  of an inch at its greatest breadth. The head is

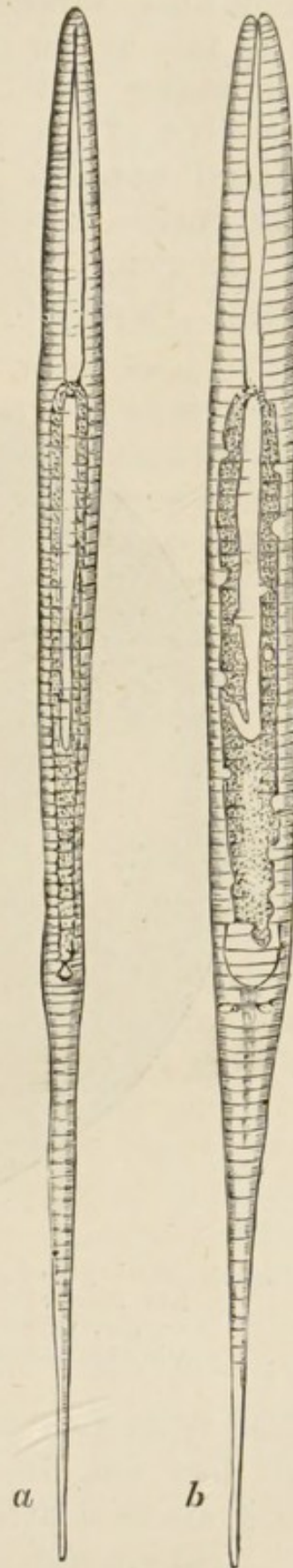


Fig. 80.—Embryos of guinea worm.

*a*, Side view; *b*, front view. ( $\times 250$ .)



somewhat tapered and then abruptly rounded off. The tail is long, slender, and sharp-pointed. The alimentary canal can be readily detected. Towards the root of the tail two peculiar gland-like organs, placed opposite to each other, can be made out. The cuticle is very distinctly transversely striated.

In clean water the embryo remains alive for six days; in muddy water, or in moist earth, it will

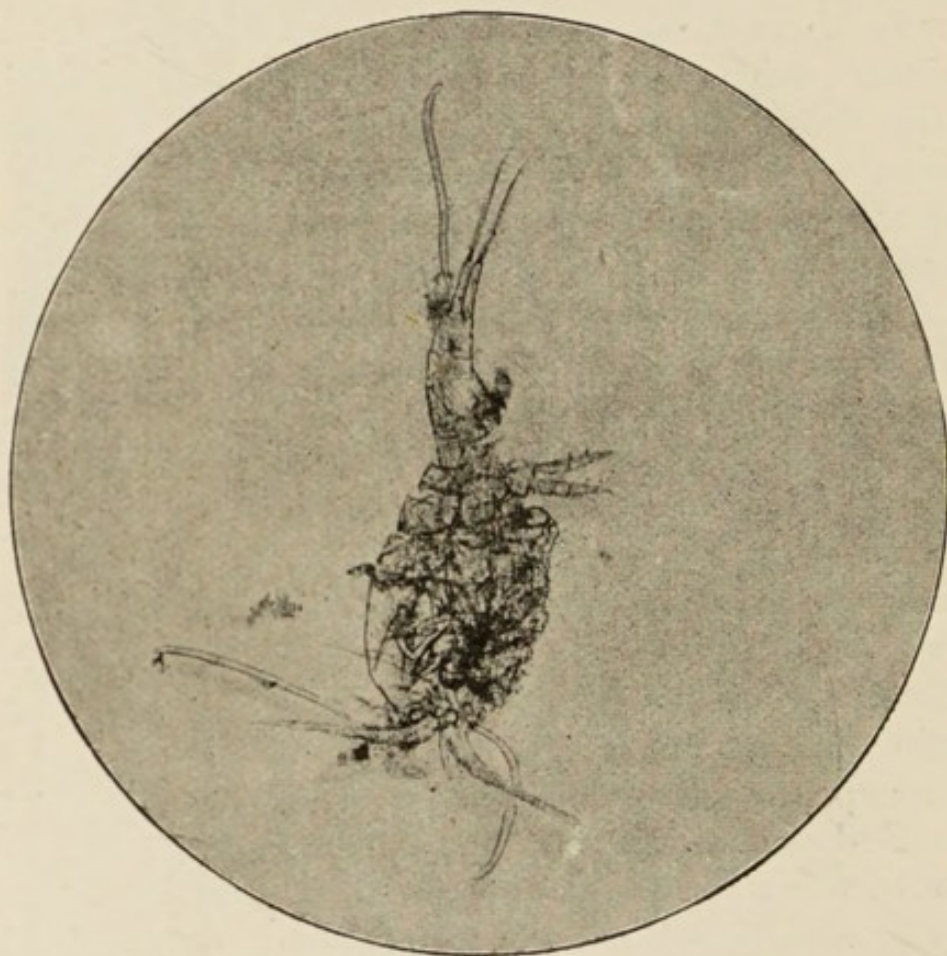


Fig. 81.—Embryos of guinea worm in body-cavity of cyclops. The cyclops has been slightly compressed so as to force out some of the worms, which can be seen escaping from ruptures at the head and tail. (From a photogram by Mr. Andrew Pringle.)

live from two to three weeks. If slowly desiccated it does not die; it may be resuscitated by placing it again in a little water.

*Intermediary host.*—If, by way of experiment, we place some guinea worm embryos along with *Cyclops quadricornis* in a watch-glass we shall find that, after a few hours, the embryos have transferred themselves



to the interior of the body-cavity of the cyclops, where they can be seen moving about, coiling and uncoiling themselves, with considerable activity (Fig. 81). As many as fifteen or twenty young guinea worms may be counted in each of the little crustaceans, which, unless the infection is excessive, seem in no way inconvenienced. After a time, the embryos so transferred undergo a metamorphosis. They cast their skins two or three times, get rid of their long swimming tails, acquire a cylindrical shape and, ultimately, along with increased size, develop a tripartite arrangement of the extreme posterior end, which recalls a similar arrangement in the tail of *F. nocturna* and of *F. recondita* towards the termination of the stay of the former nematode in the mosquito, and of the latter in the dog flea (Grassi).

*Mode of infection.*—The metamorphosis of guinea worm in cyclops was discovered by Fedschenko in Turkestan. His observations I have been able to confirm in England; but, in the colder climate of the latter country, in English cyclops the metamorphosis takes somewhat longer to complete; eight or nine weeks, instead of five weeks as in Turkestan. Fedschenko supposed that the cyclops containing the embryo guinea worm, on being swallowed by man in drinking water, was digested; and that the parasite, being then set free, worked its way into the tissues of its new and definitive host. It is possible, however, that the embryo may have to undergo further changes before it is fitted for life in man. Considering the peculiar geographical limitations of this helminthiasis, and the very general distribution of cyclops, such an arrangement as I suggest seems likely enough. However this may be, Fedschenko's discovery makes it almost certain that it is in drinking water that the guinea worm is acquired.

*The male worm.*—Nothing certain is known, as already stated, about the male worm; nor as to when or where impregnation of the female is effected. Impregnation probably occurs at an early stage of



parasitic life, and long before the female worm has grown to the great length which she subsequently attains. The male worm, his function fulfilled, probably dies and is absorbed.

*Biological peculiarities explained.*—The little we now know of the life-history of the guinea worm explains many things that were formerly mysterious. We now understand why the parasite, on attaining maturity, makes for the legs and feet; these are the parts of the human body most likely, in tropical countries, to come in contact with puddles of water, the medium in which cyclops—the intermediary host—lives. We can understand, also, why it is that the contact of water with the skin of the host causes the guinea worm to expel her young; and we can understand the rationale of the douching, so much practised by the natives of certain of the endemic districts, in their attempts at extraction.

*Premature death of parasite.*—Occasionally the guinea worm fails to pierce the integument of her host; sometimes she dies before arriving at maturity. In either case she may give rise to abscess; or she may become cretified, and in this condition may be felt, years afterwards, as a hard convoluted cord under the skin of the leg, or be discovered only on dissection.

**Treatment.**—Formerly it was the custom, so soon as a guinea worm showed itself, to attach the protruding part to a piece of wood and endeavour to wind her out by making a turn or two of this daily. Sometimes these attempts succeeded; but, just as often, the worm snapped under the strain. The consequences of this accident were often disastrous. Myriads of young escaped from the ruptured ends into the tissues, and violent inflammation and fever, followed by abscess and sloughing, ensued; weeks, or months, perhaps, elapsed before the unhappy victims of this rough surgery were able to get about. Too often serious contractions and ankyloses, from loss of tissue and inflammation and even death from septic trouble, resulted.



If a guinea worm be protected from injury, and the part she occupies frequently douched with water, her uterus will be gradually and naturally emptied of embryos. Until this process is completed she resists extraction; possibly the hook at the end of her tail assists her to maintain her hold. But when parturition, in from fifteen to twenty days, is completed, the worm is absorbed or tends to emerge spontaneously. A little traction if practised then may aid extrusion. Traction, however, must not be employed so long as the embryos are being emitted. The completion of parturition can be easily ascertained by the douching experiment already described.

Lately Emily, a French naval surgeon, has introduced a system of managing guinea worm cases which bids fair to shorten treatment and obviate the serious risks of the old winding-out system. By means of a Pravaz's syringe he injects the body of the worm, if she chances to be protruding, with solution of bichloride of mercury, 1 in 1,000. This kills the parasite; after twenty-four hours, extraction is generally easily effected. If the worm has not shown herself externally, but can be felt coiled up under the skin, he injects as near the coil as possible, and through several punctures, a few drops of the same solution. This, too, kills the parasite. Her body is then absorbed, as a piece of aseptic catgut would be, without inflammation or reaction of any description; or she may be cut down on, and easily extracted. Others have confirmed the value of Emily's method, which saves much time and suffering and, with due care, is devoid of risk.

*FILARIA LOA* (Fig. 82).

This parasite is peculiar to the West Coast of Africa where, in many parts, it is not uncommon. The male worm measures about 25 to 30 mm. in length by 0·3 mm. in breadth, the female 30 to

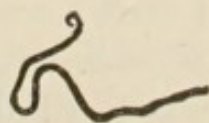


Fig. 82—*Filaria loa*. (Nat. size.)  
(Dr. Argyll Robertson.)



40 mm. in length by 0.5 mm. in breadth. Both sexes are filiform, cylindrical, colourless, like fine fishing-gut, tapering slightly at the head, more decidedly at the tail. The body is dotted over with minute chitinous bosses. The anus is subterminal. The tail of the male (Fig. 83) is markedly incurvated and provided with five large papillæ on each side of the anus, and two rather short, unequal spicules. The mouth is simple, punctiform, and without armature.

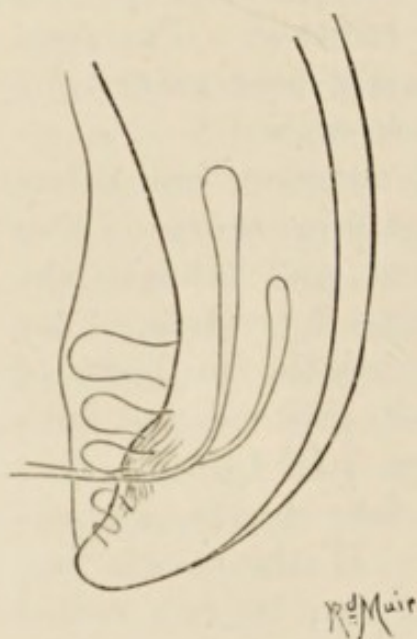


Fig. 83.—Tail of male *Filaria loa*.

The habitat of *Filaria loa* appears to be the connective tissue, which it traverses freely. When, in the course of its wanderings, it crosses the sub-conjunctival connective tissue, and the delicate integuments about the orbit, it becomes distinctly visible. When passing under such thin structures as the skin of the eyelids, or that over the bridge of the nose, or when moving about under the skin of the fingers and occasionally of other parts, the slight elevations it gives rise to, as well as its movements, are

sometimes appreciable, and may be both seen and felt.

From the circumstance that this parasite has occasionally been seen in individuals who have been ten or more years away from the endemic area in which alone it can be contracted, we may conclude that the loa is long-lived.

The female produces sheathed embryos closely resembling *F. nocturna* and *F. diurna*. At one time I had a negro patient under my care in whose blood *F. diurna* abounded. This man remembered that, when a lad, he had a loa in his eye. I have thought, therefore, that *F. diurna* may be the embryonic form of *F. loa*. On the other hand, Dr. Argyll Robertson has placed on record a remarkable case of *F. loa* in



which the parasites, a male and a pregnant female, were removed from the eye. The patient's blood was frequently examined, but no embryos were found. Lately I have had opportunities of examining the blood of other patients known to be the subject of loa infection, but failed to find in any of them hæmatozoal embryos. We do not know in what way the embryo escapes from the human body, nor do we know anything about its life-history outside of the human body. Notwithstanding the failures to find the embryo in the peripheral blood, analogy suggests that it probably circulates for a time in this fluid and, like *F. nocturna*, that it is removed from this medium by some suctorial insect which acts as intermediary host.

*Filaria loa*, as stated, is very active in wandering about the body, but it seems to have a predilection for the eyes and neighbourhood. It comes and goes there at irregular intervals of days, weeks, or months, traversing the subconjunctival tissue, and moving across the bridge of the nose from one eye to the other. Warmth seems to solicit its presence near the surface. The sexes appear to hunt each other about; at all events, in Dr. Argyll Robertson's case (*Trans. of the Ophthalmological Soc.*, 1895) a male worm was removed from the eye, and not long afterwards a female worm appeared about the same situation and was also removed. Blanchard (*Arch. de Parasit.*, October, 1899) has recorded a similar case.

The worm gives rise to pricking, itching, creeping sensations and, occasionally, transient œdematous swellings in different parts of the body. When it appears under the conjunctiva, it may cause a considerable amount of irritation and congestion. There may be actual pain even, associated with swelling and inability to use the eye and, perhaps, tumefaction of the eyelids.

**Calabar swellings.**—Under this name Mr. Thompstone describes (*Journ. of Trop. Med.*, Nov., 1899) certain fugitive swellings which, in the course



of six years' practice in Lower Nigeria he has encountered in three black and in four white men. The swellings, he says, are "about the size of half a goose egg, painless, though somewhat hot, both objectively and subjectively, not pitting on pressure, and usually disappear in three days. They come suddenly and disappear gradually, and occur in any part of the body." He never saw in the same individual more than one such swelling at a time, but they recur at irregular intervals even when the subject is in Europe. Plehn has seen similar swellings at Cameroon. Indeed, a lady, long resident in Old Calabar, informed me that if rubbing or scratching is not indulged in when a loa approaches the surface there will be no swelling, and that Calabar swellings are produced by the rubbing solicited by the irritation caused by *F. loa*. She herself had a loa extracted from under the skin over the right clavicle, and spoke from personal experience. Mr. Thompstone failed to find embryo filariæ in his patients. I had an opportunity of examining the blood of such a case recently and also failed to find hæmatozoa. The character of the swellings and the geographical range of this singular affection are not incompatible with filarial infection, possibly with *F. loa*.

**Treatment.**—The negroes treat loa in two ways—either by dropping a grain of common salt into the conjunctival sac, which has the effect of driving the filaria away, for a time at least; or they extract it with a sharp thorn, or by some other rude surgical means. With proper instruments there is no difficulty in removing the parasite from under the conjunctiva or from the eyelid—that is, if the operator is possessed of the requisite deftness in operating. All that is necessary, on the parasite showing itself, is, after cocainising the eye, to seize the conjunctiva with a pair of forceps, taking care to include the worm and the subconjunctival connective tissue in the grasp of the instrument. Having fixed



the parasite in this way, the conjunctiva may be snipped through with scissors; when, with the aid of another pair of forceps, and after releasing the first pair, the parasite may be withdrawn. In the case of the parasite showing itself elsewhere, I would suggest that it might be killed, as in the case of the guinea worm, by local hypodermic injection of bichloride of mercury solution (1 in 1,000).

#### FILARIA VOLVULUS.

A medical missionary sent Prof. Leuckart two tumours, the size of a pigeon's egg, which had been removed, one from the scalp, the other from the chest, of Gold Coast negroes. The tumours contained several male and female filariæ, the former 60 to 70 cm., the latter 30 to 35 cm. in length. The worms were coiled up in the form of a ball, and were bathed in a fluid full of embryos resembling *F. nocturna* and *F. diurna*; no sheath, however, was visible. Nothing further is known of these parasites and the diseases, if any, to which they may give rise.

MM. Labadie-Lagrave and Deguy describe (*Arch. de Parasitologie*, July, 1899) a nematode worm found in a small tumour excised from the arm of a French soldier who had served in Dahomey some years previously. The worm occupied, apparently, a lymphatic vessel, and was coiled up and embedded in a tunnel in a circumscribed mass of connective tissue about the size of a pigeon's egg. It is difficult from the description to be sure that the authors are correct in assuming that the parasite in question was *F. volvulus*.

#### CRAW-CRAW.

Most itching papular and pustular eruptions are termed kra-kra by the natives of the West Coast of Africa. Dr. John O'Neil describes (*Lancet*, Feb., 1875) under this name a pustular affection which he says is common in certain parts of the West Coast,



and which he found to be associated with the presence of a filariform parasite in the papules. O'Neil says that this form of crawl-crawl resembles scabies; but he adds that symptoms subside in a cooler climate, to return, however, when the negro revisits the hot and damp atmosphere of his native country. The papules occur all over the limbs and body, either singly or in rings. In two days from its appearance the papule, he says, becomes a vesicle, and in two more a pustule.

On paring off the top of the papule with a sharp knife, and teasing up the little piece of integument in water, he found a number of minute filaria-like organisms wriggling about with great activity. Their activity speedily slowed down and in a short time the worms died. These organisms, according to O'Neil's drawings and description, resemble somewhat *F. nocturna*. The measurements, however, do not quite correspond, the crawl-crawl filaria being shorter and broader ( $\frac{1}{100}$  inch by  $\frac{1}{2000}$  inch) than *F. nocturna*; moreover, unlike the latter, it presented two black markings at the cephalic end. He says that if the section of the papule be made sufficiently deep, five or six of these parasites may be seen in a field.

Crawl-crawl is said to be contagious. It appears after an incubation period of three days, and is not curable by sulphur inunction.

O'Neil's observations have not been confirmed. I think it is quite possible that the parasite he found was one of the several blood filariæ we now know to be so common on the West Coast of Africa. It is comprehensible that in a country in which *F. perstans* occurs in every second individual, it would be frequently found in such preparations as Dr. John O'Neil examined. The removal of the top of a scabies papule would certainly be attended with some degree of hæmorrhage; in which case, should the patient chance to be the subject of any form of filarial infection, these parasites would be found in the preparation. Immersion in water would, as in the case of O'Neil's parasite, quickly kill the parasites. I do not



wish to assert that O'Neil's parasite was *F. perstans*, but the possibility of this must not be overlooked.

A disease resembling O'Neil's crawl-crawl was described some time ago (*Archives de Méd.*, April, 1882) by Prof. Nielly under the title "dermatose parasitaire." A French lad, who had never been abroad, became affected with a papulo-vesicular itching eruption resembling scabies, in which Nielly found a filariform parasite somewhat like that discovered by O'Neil in crawl-crawl. It had the same peculiar cephalic markings; in addition, it had a well-defined alimentary canal and rudimentary organs of generation. Nielly found nematode embryos in the blood in this case; so that we are justified in believing that the parasite in the skin was an advanced developmental form of the embryo in the blood, and that both were the progeny of a mature parental worm living somewhere in the tissues. Possibly Nielly's dermatose parasitaire and O'Neil's crawl-crawl were of the same nature. I have suggested that, as the skin parasite in O'Neil's disease may have been an advanced form of *F. perstans*, this parasite normally, and in pursuance of its evolution, escapes from the human body through the skin after undergoing there a certain measure of developmental advance. Further investigations on this subject are much wanted.

**Treatment.**—The term crawl-crawl is very loosely applied. Emily (*Arch. de Méd. Navale*, January, 1899) has described under this name a papulopustular skin affection which is common in certain parts of tropical Africa, and which is often the cause of much suffering to the traveller. It, or a similar disease, is by no means confined to Africa, for I have seen it in patients from India and was at one time very familiar with it in South China. At the earliest stage the disease begins as an itching papule, very possibly at the seat of a mosquito bite. The itching provokes scratching, whereby some form of pyogenic micro-organism is inoculated. Pustulation follows, and is



spread over feet and legs by soiled shoes and stockings and auto-inoculation. In this way an ulcerating, pustulating dermatitis is kept up. Emily describes a very efficient treatment. Pustules are opened, crusts removed, and ulcers scraped. Boric acid powder is then dusted freely on the parts after a thorough scrubbing with sublimate lotion (1-1000), boricated vaseline applied on lint, and over all absorbent cotton and a bandage. The dressings are not disturbed for a week, when the parts will be found soundly healed. Such and similar auto-infective diseases of the hands and feet, so common in the tropics, I used to treat with a foot-bath of warm carbolic acid lotion (1-20), and dry dressing with abundance of boric acid powder, at the same time insisting on destruction of infected slippers, shoes, and stockings.



## CHAPTER XXXVI.

## III. PARASITES OF THE LUNGS.

## ENDEMIC HÆMOPTYSIS : DISTOMUM RINGERI.

(*v. D. Westermanni, v. pulmonale.*)

**Geographical distribution.**—So far as known, this disease is confined to Japan, Corea, and Formosa. A doubtful case has been reported by Maxwell (*Journ. Trop. Med.*, December, 1899) in Changpoo, Fokien, China. In the endemic districts a notable percentage of the population is affected. It is not improbable that, as knowledge extends, the disease will be found to exist in other countries. Recently the parasite which gives rise to this peculiar form of blood-spitting has been found in the United States, both in the cat and in the dog. It is not at all unlikely, therefore, that ere long we may hear of endemic hæmoptysis from America. The Chinese and Japanese are nowadays to be found in almost every land, and doubtless they carry with them their peculiar parasites—*D. sinense*, *D. crassum*, and also *D. ringeri*.

**Symptoms.**—The subjects of endemic hæmoptysis have a chronic cough, which is usually most urgent in the morning on rising. The fits of coughing eventuate in the expulsion of a peculiar rusty brown, pneumonic-like sputum. This sputum can be produced at will almost at any time, and often in considerable quantity. In addition to the chronic cough and the rusty expectoration referred to, the patient is liable to irregular attacks of hæmoptysis. Though usually induced by violent exertion, occasionally such attacks come on without apparent cause. The hæmoptysis may be trifling; on the other hand,



it may be so profuse as to threaten life—at all events, to cause intense anæmia.

*The sputum.*—On placing a minute portion of the viscid, pneumonic-like sputum under the microscope, its peculiar colour is found to be due partly to red blood corpuscles, partly to a crowd of dark brown, thick-shelled, operculated ova (Fig. 84). These ova

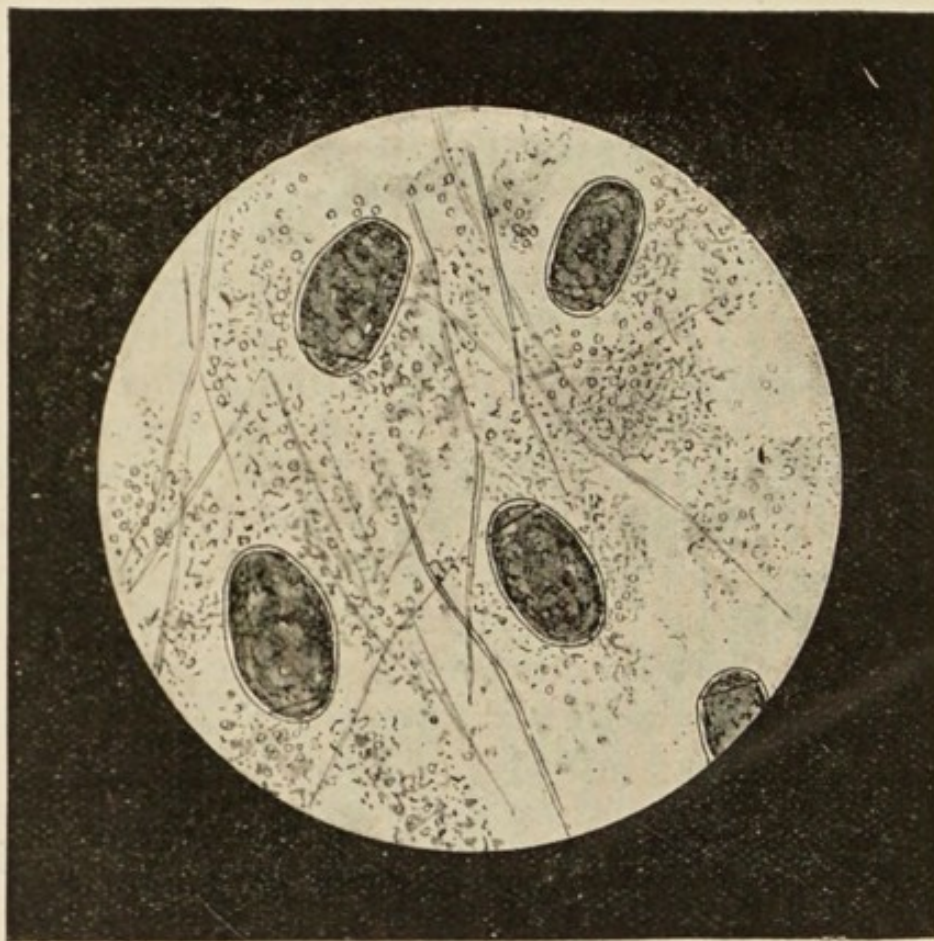


Fig. 84.—Ova of *Distomum ringeri* in sputum.

vary a good deal in size and shape; they are all distinctly oval, smooth, double-outlined, and measure from 80 to 100  $\mu$  in length, by 40 to 60  $\mu$  in breadth. If the sputum is shaken up in water, and the water be renewed from time to time, in the course of a month or six weeks—longer or shorter according to temperature—a ciliated embryo is developed in each ovum. When the ovum is mature, on placing it on a slide and exercising slight pressure on the cover-glass,



the operculum will be forced back, and the embryo will immediately emerge and at once begin to swim and gyrate in the water. Farther than this the life-history of the embryo has not been traced; but, doubtless, it is continued in some fresh-water animal through which it finds its way back, in a more or less direct way, to man.

**Pathological anatomy.**—On making a section of the lungs in this disease, a larger or smaller number of what are known as “burrows” are discovered scattered about this organ, particularly towards the periphery. These burrows consist of areas, somewhat larger than a filbert, of infiltrated lung tissue in which can be seen a number of tunnels filled with the same material that constitutes the characteristic sputum, and also containing one, two, or more small distomes. The septa between the tunnels may break down and a considerable cavity be thus produced; and as this occurs in connection with one of the bronchi, with which the tunnels always communicate, it may give rise to the appearance of a dilated bronchus. One burrow may communicate with another.

When first discovered it was supposed that *D. ringeri* (or *D. pulmonale*, Leuck.) was confined to the lungs. Later investigation has shown that it may affect the liver, peritoneum, testes, and even the brain. In the latter it forms a sort of tunnelled tumour similar to those in the lungs; and, by the pressure or irritation proceeding from this tumour, may give rise to a peculiar and ultimately fatal form of Jacksonian epilepsy.

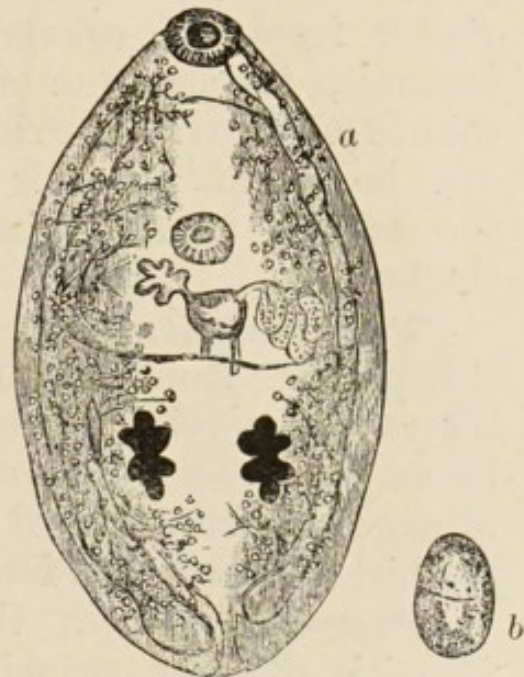


Fig. 85.—*Distomum ringeri*.  
(Leuckart.)  
*a*, Magnified; *b*, natural size.



**The parasite** (Fig. 85).—The parasite itself is reddish brown in colour, thick and fleshy, and oval in form. So thick is it that its transverse section is almost round. It measures 8 to 10 mm. in length by 4 to 6 mm. in breadth, and is covered with minute spines.

**Diagnosis.**—Diagnosis of endemic hæmoptysis is at once established by the discovery of the characteristic ova in the almost equally characteristic sputum. Râles and other physical signs of lung consolidation are not usually discoverable.

In the case of one-sided convulsions, or in hemiplegic affections occurring in a native of, or in a visitor from, the countries in which this distome is endemic, the sputum should be examined on the chance of discovering evidence of the parasite. Should ova be found, there is a strong presumption that the cerebral trouble arises from distomum tumour in the brain.

**Treatment.**—Hitherto no means of expelling this parasite from the lungs has been discovered. In the case of cerebral distomiasis it might be possible by an operation to remove the parasite and associated tumour, and thus afford a chance of recovery in what has hitherto proved a fatal condition.

**Prophylaxis** in this, as in so many animal parasitic diseases, principally lies in the direction of securing a pure water-supply and avoiding all uncooked articles of diet which might be supposed to contain the young parasites.



## CHAPTER XXXVII.

## IV. PARASITES OF THE LIVER.

## DISTOMUM CONJUNCTUM.

*DISTOMUM CONJUNCTUM* (Fig. 86, *a*, *c*) was discovered by MacConnell in an East Indian in 1874. It is leaf-shaped, narrower in front than behind, and measures 9 to 12 mm. in length by  $2\frac{1}{2}$  mm. in breadth. Its surface is covered with minute spines. The eggs (Fig. 66, *b*) are oval, operculated, and measure  $34\ \mu$  in length by  $19\ \mu$  in breadth. This parasite inhabits the bile ducts, which it thickens and sacculates. Apparently *D. conjunctum* is but of slight importance pathologically.

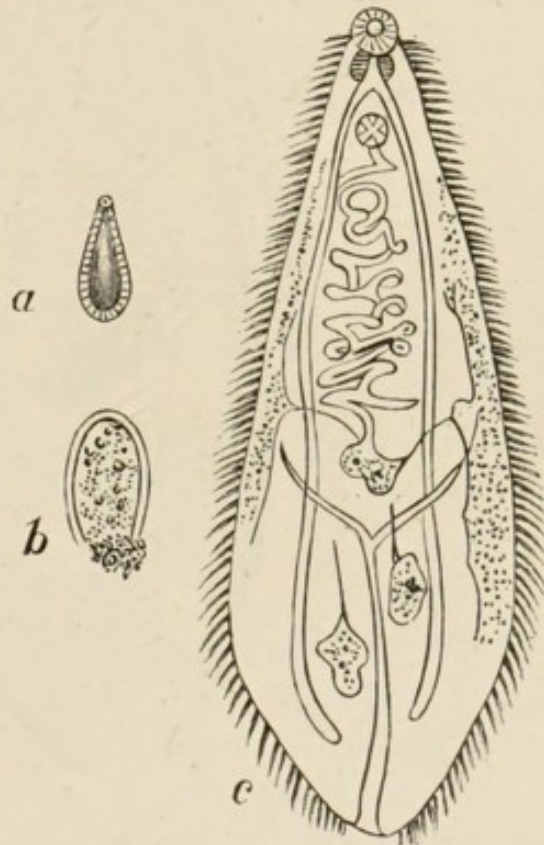


Fig. 86.—*Distomum conjunctum*.  
*a*, Natural size; *b*, ovum; *c*, magnified.

*DISTOMUM SINENSE.*

*Distomum sinense* was discovered almost simultaneously by MacConnell in India and MacGregor in Mauritius, in 1874.

It has been found in many Eastern countries, including India, Mauritius, Japan, Corea, Formosa, China, and Tonkin. In the last-named country it appears to be very common.

*D. sinense* (Fig. 87, *a*, *c*) measures from 20 to 22 mm. in length; it is oblong, narrow, and some-



what pointed anteriorly, reddish in colour, and almost transparent. The eggs (Fig. 87, *b*) are 28 to 30  $\mu$  in length by 16 to 17  $\mu$  in breadth, operculated, almost

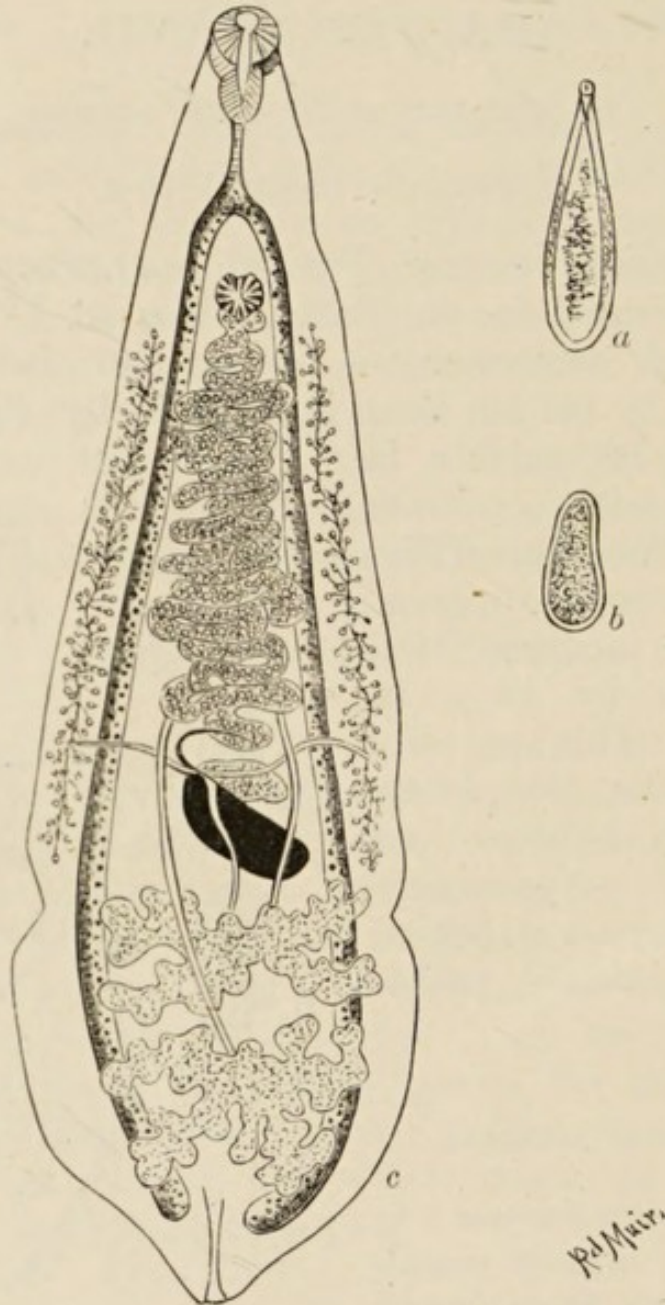


Fig. 87.—*Distomum sinense*  
*a*, Natural size; *b*, ovum; *c*, magnified.

black in colour, and contain a ciliated embryo. Nothing is known of the life-history of the parasite farther than that it may occur in some of the lower animals—in the cat, for example. Probably its immature stages are passed in a mollusc or other small, soft-skinned, fresh-water animal.



*D. sinense* inhabits the bile ducts and gall-bladder. It dilates and thickens the biliary canals, expanding them in places into cavities and diverticula as large as a filbert. In these cavities vast numbers of parasites are sometimes found. The diverticula communicate with the bile ducts, along which the ova of the parasites, and sometimes the parasites themselves, escape into the intestine. The affected liver is enlarged on the whole, although the tissue in the immediate neighbourhood of the diseased bile ducts is atrophied. The spleen, also, may be hypertrophied, and the intestine in a condition of chronic catarrh.

This parasite, which for long was supposed to be practically innocuous, is now known to be the cause of a serious disease of the liver which may terminate fatally.

Baelz discovered that in certain low-lying, unhygienic villages in Japan this helminthiasis was exceedingly common, quite 20 per cent. of the inhabitants being affected. When the infection is severe the liver becomes enlarged, and chronic diarrhoea, with recurring attacks of jaundice, sets in. Later, anasarca appears, and gradually a cachexia resembling that of sheep-rot is established which, in the course of several years, may prove fatal.

It would be well to bear this parasite in mind in approaching the diagnosis of obscure hepatic disease, associated with diarrhoea and jaundice, in patients from the East. It is just possible that the discovery of the ova in the stools might guide to a correct diagnosis.

PENTASTOMUM CONSTRICTUM (Fig. 88).

This, which is probably a formidable parasite, has now been found a number of times encysted in the liver, and occasionally in the lungs, of African negroes. It appears to give rise to a considerable amount of irritation, perhaps to peritonitis and to



pneumonia. Nothing is known as to the way in which man becomes infected with the parasite, of which the larval form alone has been recognised. This is of a milky white colour, from 1 to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch in length, cylindrical, flattened on the ventral surface,

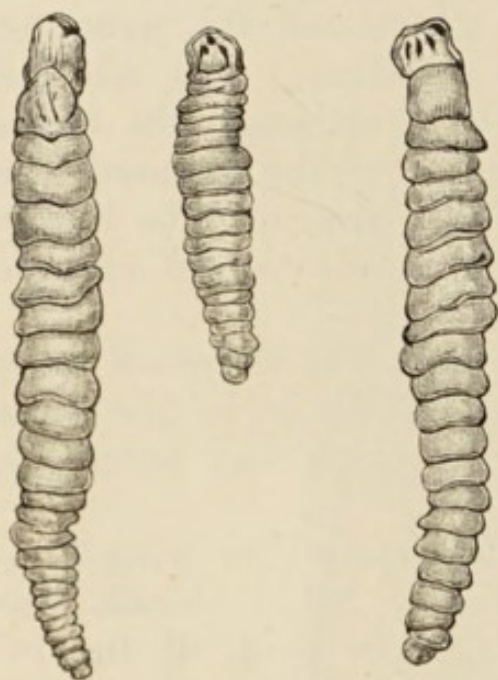


Fig. 88.—*Pentastomum constrictum*.  
(Aitken.)

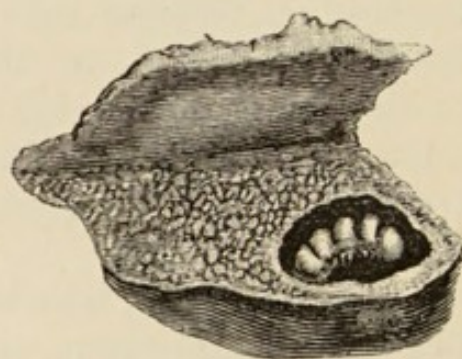


Fig. 89.—*Pentastomum constrictum* encysted in the liver.  
(Aitken.)

ringed, rounded anteriorly, and terminating posteriorly in a blunt cone. The anterior end is provided with two pairs of hooks arranged on each side of the pit-like mouth. The posterior aspect of the rings, twenty-three in number, carries a number of minute spinous projections. The parasites, surrounded by their integumental exuviae, are found each coiled up in a cyst-like pouch, and scattered through the substance of the liver (Fig. 89), or projecting as nodules on the surface of the gland. Aitken ("Principles and Practice of Medicine," 4th ed., 1866) gives a very complete account of a case of a negro in whom the pentastomum seemed to be the cause of death. He gives a drawing from another case showing the cysts in the liver, from the surface of which one of the parasites is protruding into the peritoneal cavity.



## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

## V. INTESTINAL PARASITES.

## NEMATODES.

**Microscopical examination of the fæces for ova of intestinal parasites.**—If the fæces of the natives of warm climates, and of Europeans coming from warm climates, are systematically examined with the microscope, it will be astonishing how frequently they are found to contain the ova of three species of nematode worms—*Ascaris lumbricoides*, *Trichocephalus dispar*, and *Ankylostomum duodenale*. The ova of the tapeworms and of the common threadworm (*Oxyuris vermicularis*), are rarely found in the stools, as these parasites do not, as a rule, part with their ova until the joints of the former, or the entire body of the latter, have left the alimentary canal; but as the three nematodes mentioned pass their eggs directly into the bowel, these eggs habitually appear in the fæces, and constitute unequivocal evidence of the presence of their respective parental forms. Occasionally the ova of the rarer hepatic and intestinal parasites—such as *Bilharzia hæmatobia*, *Distomum sinense*, *Distomum crassum*, *Distomum hepaticum*, and one or two still rarer helminths are encountered; as these, with the exception of bilharzia, are very rare, from a practical point of view they may be disregarded. Without large experience, the ova of the rarer parasites cannot be identified off-hand; but if the practitioner has learned to recognise those of the three common species, he will at once know when he comes across the ova of any of the rarer species and, on referring



to some special work on helminthology, will have little difficulty in arriving at a correct diagnosis.

The microscopic examination of fæces for ova, though somewhat disagreeable, is by no means a difficult matter. All that is necessary, by way of preparation, is to place on the slip a minute portion of the suspected fæces—about the size of a hemp seed—and then to apply the cover-glass, gently gliding it over the slip so as to spread out the mass in a thin, fairly uniform; and transparent layer. If the bit of fæces prove too consistent, a little water may be added so as to soften it. If the stools are loose and watery, the sediment should be taken up with a pipette and examined. It is well to make two or three preparations. The microscopic examination must, in the first instance, be made with a low power—an inch, or better, a half-inch objective. Search must be made in every part of the slide, and every suspicious body carefully scrutinised, a higher power being used if necessary. A very little practice suffices for the identification not only of ova but of the species of parasite to which the ova belong.

The points to be attended to in the diagnosis of ova are size, shape, colour, thickness, roughness, smoothness, and markings on the surface of the shell; the presence or otherwise of yolk spheres, of a differentiated embryo, or, in the case of the tæniæ, of the three pairs of embryonic hooklets; the existence of an operculum in the case of certain distomes and of bothriocephalus. The ova of the same species of parasite vary but slightly, and are in every instance sufficiently stable and definite for correct diagnosis.

*Ova of Trichocephalus dispar* (Fig. 90, a).—Of the three common nematodes mentioned—*Trichocephalus dispar*, *Ascaris lumbricoides*, and *Ankylostomum duodenale*—the ova of the first are those most frequently met with. They occur sometimes in enormous numbers, as many as six or eight specimens being visible in one field of an inch objective. They form rather a striking object under the microscope. They are oval, measuring



from  $56\ \mu$  by  $24\ \mu$  to  $36\ \mu$  by  $26\ \mu$ , the ends of the long axis of the oval being slightly pointed and tipped with a little shining projection or plug. Their general appearance suggests an elongated oval tray, the projections at the poles of the ovum representing the handles of the tray. They are dark brown in colour, sharply defined, double outlined, and contain no differentiated embryo.

The ova of *Ascaris lumbricoides* (Fig. 90, *b*) are considerably larger ( $60$  to  $75\ \mu$  by  $36$  to  $55\ \mu$ ) than those of *Trichocephalus dispar* (Fig. 90, *a*). They are

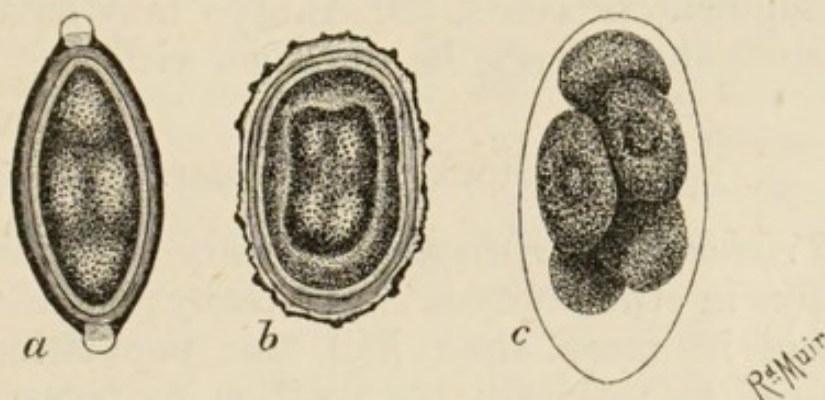


Fig. 90.—Ova of *a*, *Trichocephalus dispar*; *b*, *Ascaris lumbricoides*; *c*, *Ankylostomum duodenale*. (Sonsino.)

also, as a rule, more spherical or, rather, more broadly oval; occasionally they are almost barrel-shaped. Like those of *trichocephalus*, they are dark brown in colour from bile staining, but they are much less sharply and smoothly defined, possessing a coarse thick shell which is roughened by many warty excrescences. The yolk contents are not always easily made out, nor, when made out, can any sign of embryo or segmentation be discovered.

A point of practical importance to be attended to lies in the circumstance that the rough outer layer on the shell of the ovum of *ascaris* is very easily detached, leaving the egg with a sharp, smooth outline suggestive of some other form of parasite. Therefore, to obviate this, in mounting fæces it is well to avoid too much gliding of the cover-glass over the slip.



The ova of *Ankylostomum duodenale* (Fig. 90, c) contrast very markedly with both the foregoing, particularly in the matter of colour. *Trichocephalus* and *ascaris* ova are invariably dark and bile-stained; those of the *ankylostomum* are beautifully clear and transparent. They measure  $55\mu$  to  $65\mu$  by  $32\mu$  to  $43\mu$ ; have a regular, somewhat elongated oval form, with a delicate, smooth, transparent shell, through which two or four light grey yolk segments can be distinctly seen. It is well to search for these ova soon after the fæces have been passed; otherwise, owing to the rapidity with which, in favourable circumstances, development proceeds, the embryo may have quitted the shell and the egg be no longer visible.

#### TRICHOCEPHALUS DISPAR.

*Trichocephalus dispar*, the whip-worm, lives principally in the cæcum. In many countries it is present in more than half the population. It is believed to maintain its position by transfixing, pin fashion, with its long slender neck a superficial fold of the mucous membrane. According to Powell, the females very much preponderate, the proportion to males being as 466 to 1. Excepting that the practitioner should be familiar with the appearance of its eggs in the stool, so that he may be able to distinguish them from those of *ascaris*, of *ankylostomum*, and of other parasites, its presence is of no practical moment. So far as known, it gives rise to no serious pathological lesion; a fortunate circumstance, seeing that hitherto it has been found impossible, with any degree of certainty, to dislodge it by anthelmintics.

#### ASCARIS LUMBRICOIDES.

Though not quite so common in tropical countries as *trichocephalus*, the *ascaris* is nevertheless very common indeed, especially in children, who often harbour these loathsome creatures in enormous numbers



—in dozens, or even in hundreds. In those countries, at one time or another, nearly every child gets them ; so much so that, when doubt exists about the nature of some obscure affection, a dose or two of santonin often produces results which will seem to justify a diagnosis of “ worms,” and, for the time being perhaps, satisfy an anxious mother.

**Mode of infection.**—The reason for the great frequency of *Ascaris lumbricoides* in tropical countries is probably twofold—the warmth of the climate, and the habits of the people with regard to the disposal of night-soil. In the fæces the ova exhibit no trace of segmentation or of differentiated embryo ; but if placed in water, or kept moist and in a warm place, in the course of from five or six months—longer or shorter according to temperature—the embryo is developed, and can be seen coiled up and moving about inside the egg-shell. If such an egg is accidentally or intentionally swallowed, on arrival in the stomach the shell is dissolved away and the contained embryo is set free. In a month it grows into a sexually mature animal, and, if both sexes are present, eggs in countless numbers are soon produced and appear in the fæces. Desiccation of the egg at atmospheric temperatures does not destroy the embryo, which will quickly revive on becoming moistened. In many warm countries night-soil is the favourite fertiliser, and is regularly preserved and spread upon the fields. In this way the ova of ascaris obtain an opportunity of maturing, and thus, too, they have an opportunity of being swallowed by man. They may also be washed into drinking water ; or, becoming desiccated on the drying up of the fields, be blown about as dust ; or they may become attached to fruit or vegetables. In one of these, or in similar ways, they finally reach the human stomach and there attain maturity.

**Symptoms.**—In many instances the ascaris gives rise to no very noticeable symptom ; in other instances it is to be credited with a number of ill-defined



gastric and perhaps nervous troubles—capricious appetite, foul breath, restless sleep, peevishness, vague abdominal pains, nausea, and so forth. Sometimes the worms get into the stomach and are vomited, their appearance giving rise to no inconsiderable alarm. They may even creep up the œsophagus and into the mouth, or out by the nostrils. Cases are on record in which they caused suffocation by wandering, in this way, into the rima glottidis. They have also been known to enter the bile ducts and give rise to jaundice; to penetrate the intestinal wall and escape into the peritoneum, causing peritonitis; or to burrow into the abdominal walls and cause abscess. Fortunately these accidents are of rare occurrence; their possibility, however, should be borne in mind and, apart from other obvious considerations, ought to make us endeavour to rid patients of these troublesome guests as soon as possible. With this object in view, it was my practice in China to give my little patients, as a matter of routine, a few doses of santonin twice a year; very often the precaution received its justification by the appearance in the stools of one or more ascarides.

Adults, especially young adults, although to a much smaller degree than children, are liable to entertain these verminous visitors. Sometimes certain obscure dyspeptic symptoms in grown-up people will resist all treatment until three or four grains of santonin and a purgative have been administered. I had a patient once, who for a long time had been troubled with unaccountable nausea. One day, while he was sitting at breakfast, the feeling of sickness came on with unusual intensity. He had to leave the table and, after one or two retching efforts, brought up an *Ascaris lumbricoides*. After this he was no more troubled with nausea. It is well, therefore, when puzzled over some obscure dyspeptic condition in tropical patients, to bear the ascaris in mind. If, for some reason, it is undesirable to give santonin unnecessarily, the stools ought first to be examined



with the microscope. If ova (Fig. 90, *b*) are found, a dose or two of santonin may clear up diagnosis and cure the patient; if no ova are found, the drug may be withheld and the idea of ascarides abandoned.

**Treatment.**—The ascaris is readily expelled by a few grains of santonin. The dose is from half a grain to one grain for a child, three to four grains for an adult. A good plan of giving the drug is to prescribe three such doses on successive nights, the first and last dose to be followed by castor oil next morning. Patients, or mothers, ought to be warned about the peculiar effect santonin has on the urine and sometimes on the vision. I have only once seen any bad effects; in this instance a peculiar sort of intoxication, attended with delirium, which did not quite pass away for several days, followed its exhibition.

#### ANKYLOSTOMUM DUODENALE AND ANKYLOSTOMIASIS.

*Ascaris lumbricoides*, though an unpleasant parasite, cannot be considered a dangerous one, unless in very exceptional circumstances. It is otherwise with the ankylostomum (sometimes called *Dochmius duodenalis*) which, in many countries, on account of the dangerous cachexia, called ankylostomiasis, it gives rise to, amounts to a positive curse.

**Nomenclature.**—The form of endemic anæmia with which this parasite is associated is of so marked a character that it has received a variety of distinctive names. Thus, in the French West Indies, severe ankylostomiasis is known as *cachexia aqueuse*; sometimes as *malcœur*, or as *mal d'estomac des negres*; in Colombia it is called *tuntun*, the sufferers being known as *tunientos*; in Brazil it has been called *oppilatio*, *opilação*, and *canção*; in Europe it is sometimes known as “miners’ anæmia,” or “tunnel disease,” the latter in allusion to the notorious Saint Gothard epidemic; the form occurring in Egypt is spoken of as Egyptian chlorosis; in Ceylon it has



been called beriberi; and, doubtless, elsewhere there are local names for this peculiar verminous anæmia.

**Geographical distribution.**—Since its discovery by Dubini in 1838, the ankylostomum has been found so widely diffused that it may be said to occur in all tropical and subtropical countries. Besides being abundantly present in the south of Europe, and in the tropical and subtropical regions of Asia and America, it has been ascertained to exist in North and South Queensland, Australia (*Trans. Intercolonial Med. Cong. of Australia*, 1893, Drs. Gibson and Turner), and in several of the islands of the Pacific. So prevalent is it in many parts of India that, according to Dobson (*Trans. First Ind. Med. Cong., Calcutta*, 1895), quite 75 per cent. of the inhabitants are affected. In Egypt it is found at nearly every *post-mortem* examination; and there the anæmia it gives rise to is one of the most common

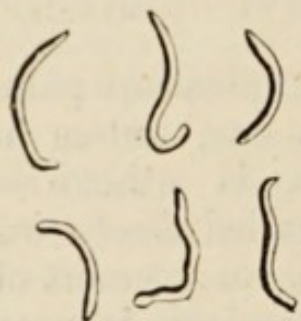


Fig. 91.—*Ankylostomum duodenale*, male and female. (Blanchard.)

causes for the rejection of recruits in the army. Thornhill (*Trans. First Ind. Med. Cong., Calcutta*, 1895) regarded its ravages in Ceylon as far more serious than those of cholera; this, not on account of the number of deaths it causes directly, but on account of the vast numbers affected, the chronic nature of the disease, and the aggregate mortality, direct, and especially indirect, for which it is responsible.

**The parasite** (Fig. 91).—The normal habitat of *A. duodenale* is the small intestine of man, particularly the jejunum, less so the duodenum, rarely the ileum or lower reaches of the alimentary canal; very occasionally it is found in the stomach. In these situations it attaches itself by means of its powerful buccal armature to the mucous membrane, from the blood of which it obtains a plentiful supply of nourishment. It is supposed to shift its hold from time to time, the abandoned bite continuing to



ooze blood for a short period. It is said to be very prodigal of the blood it imbibes, the red corpuscles passing through its alimentary canal unchanged, the plasma alone being utilised.

The male and female ankylostomes—present generally in the proportion of one of the former to three of the latter—do not differ so much in size as is the case with many of the other nematodes. The male (Fig. 92) measures from 6 to 11 mm. in length by .4 to .5 mm. in breadth; the female 7 to 15 mm. in length by 1 mm. in breadth. Both sexes are cylindrical in form, white when they are alive, grey when dead, reddish brown when full of blood. In both sexes the posterior end is the broadest part,

whence the body tapers forwards to a narrow neck ending in a powerfully armed, bulging and distinct mouth capsule. The margin of this remarkable organ is furnished with four strong, claw-like hooks—two on each side of the ventral line, and two conical teeth—one on each side of the dorsal line. The tail of the female is conical, and ends in a short delicate

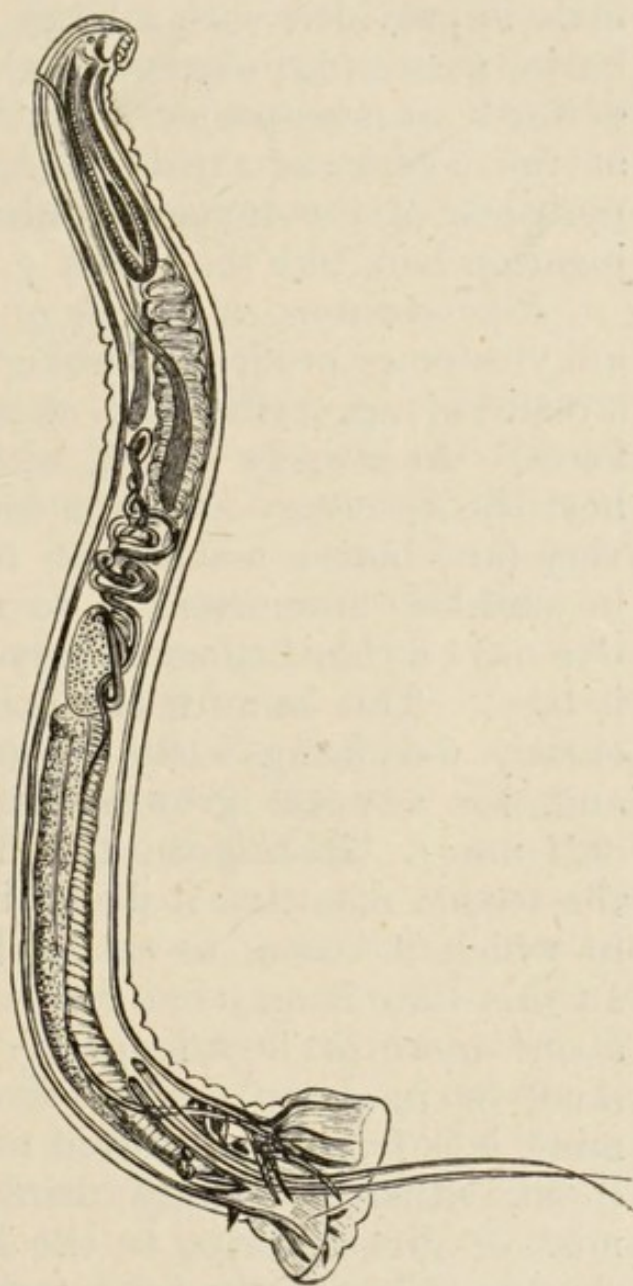


Fig. 92.—Male *Ankylostomum duodenale*.



spine; the anus being subterminal, and the vagina opening on the ventral surface at the commencement of the posterior third of the body. The tail of the male is provided with a large umbrella-like, trilobate bursa possessing eleven ribs. Two long and very delicate spicules project from the cloaca which opens at the bottom of the bursa. Owing to the relative positions of the sexual openings, the worms in conjugation look like the Greek  $\gamma$ .

*Reproduction and mode of infection.*—The female ankylostomes produce a prodigious and never-ending stream of eggs (Fig. 90, c) which pass out in the fæces. As already stated, while in the body of the host the development of the embryo does not advance very far; but on leaving the human host it proceeds, in suitable circumstances, so rapidly that in one to two days a rhabditiform embryo (.2 mm. by .014 mm.) is born. This minute organism is very active, voraciously devouring what organic matter it can find and, for a week, growing rapidly (to .56 mm. by .024 mm.). During this time it moults twice. After the second moulting it passes into a torpid condition, in which it ceases to eat, and growth is suspended. In this state it may live for weeks or months, moving about more or less languidly in muddy water, in mud, or in damp earth. Should chance so determine, it is finally transferred to the human alimentary canal, either in muddy drinking water, or in the mud or dirt adhering to the hands or food dishes of the agriculturist, the brick-maker, or other operative engaged in handling the soil; or, it may be, in earth deliberately eaten by the geophagist and children. Arrived in its final host, after moulting again at the end of five weeks (Leichtenstern) it acquires sexual characters and the permanent adult form. The duration of the life of *A. duodenale* in the intestine has not been determined; some state it in months, others in years (Sonsino)—one to three. On account of liability to reinfection, this point, an important one as affecting prognosis, is difficult to determine.



Giles holds that *A. duodenale* may become sexually mature, assuming rhabditiform characters while outside the human body and in the free state; in other words, that it is heterogenetic, an abundant supply of food favouring non-parasitic multiplication. His observations, so far as we are aware, have not been confirmed; though partially upheld by Sandwith, doubt has been thrown on their relevancy by Sonsino and Macdonald.

## ANKYLOSTOMIASIS.

**History.**—Although Griesinger had previously shown that Egyptian chlorosis was due to the presence of the ankylostomum in the small intestine, and although similar observations had been made on negroes in America, it was not until the very fatal epidemic of anæmia among the miners in the Saint Gothard tunnel (in 1880) had called the attention of European observers to the subject, that the real pathological importance of this parasite began to be properly apprehended. Multiplied observations have now shown that, although very minute, this blood-sucking parasite, if present in large numbers and for a length of time, more especially if its victims are poorly fed, is a very dangerous one indeed. The constant drain of blood which its presence entails, the catarrh arising from the irritation caused by the wounds it inflicts on the mucous membrane, the consequent impairment of nutrition, and, possibly, as has been suggested, the absorption of some hæmolytic toxin—the product of the parasite—give rise to a grave cachexia, disqualifying to a greater or lesser extent the subject of it for work, and, not infrequently, leading to a fatal issue.

**Its importance.**—It is not in every instance in which the ankylostomum is present that consequences so serious ensue. There may be dozens of ankylostomes in the intestine without any appreciable anæmia, or, indeed, symptoms of any description whatever. Grave symptoms are the exception. One



must be careful, therefore, to avoid concluding that the ankylostomum is the cause of every pathological condition with which it may chance to concur.

On the other hand, many inhabitants of tropical and subtropical countries are in a state of chronic starvation. Living on coarse, bulky, innutritious food, they are prone to dilatation of the stomach and dyspeptic troubles. In such, any additional cause of malnutrition, as a swarm of ankylostomes, and a daily though perhaps small loss of blood, may be sufficient to turn the scale against them. In those countries, as elsewhere, there are many who live just on the borderland between health and disease; to such the ankylostomum may prove the last straw that breaks the camel's back.

It is evident that as a complication in typhoid, in kidney disease, in dysentery, in malaria, in fact in any chronic or exhausting disease, the importance of this anæmia-producing parasite cannot be ignored.

The practitioner in the tropics, therefore, must be constantly on the outlook in all cases of anæmia, of dyspepsia, and of debilitated conditions generally, for the ankylostomum. He must bear in mind that this parasite, as will be presently pointed out, if permitted to remain in the intestine for a length of time, may be the cause, not only of remediable anæmia, but of anæmia-produced degenerations of various organs from which recovery is impossible. On this account, also, its early recognition becomes a matter of the first importance.

Further, ankylostomiasis is an important disease from the standpoint of the employer of native labour. The invaliding and inefficiency which it causes among coolies, not to mention the deaths, are often financially a serious matter to the planter and the mine-owner. To them, any wisely directed expense or trouble undertaken for the treating and controlling of this helminthiasis will be abundantly repaid by the increased efficiency of the labourer.

**Symptoms.**—The essential symptoms of ankylo-



stomiasis are those of a progressive anæmia ; an anæmia which is generally associated with dyspeptic trouble, but which, in uncomplicated cases, is not associated with wasting. If the progress of a case be unchecked, serous effusions in different organs and fatty degeneration of the heart ensue, and death may occur from syncope or from intercurrent complication.

One of the earliest symptoms of an extensive ankylostomum invasion is pain or uneasiness in the epigastrium. This is generally increased by pressure, but, for the time, may be relieved by food. The appetite, sometimes defective, is more often ravenous ; but its gratification is apt to give rise to dyspeptic trouble of various kinds, to colic, to borborygmus, and perhaps to diarrhœa of imperfectly-digested food. Constipation may be present in some instances, irregularity of the bowels in others. The taste may be perverted, some patients exhibiting and persistently gratifying an unnatural craving for such things as earth, mud, lime—what is called pica or geophagy. The stools sometimes, though rarely, have a reddish brown tinge from admixture of half-digested blood. Sometimes they may contain small flakes of blood-tinged mucus. Pure blood is rarely passed. An extensive hæmorrhage, unless there be concurrent colitis, is still more rare, although *post mortem* considerable quantities of blood may be found in the small intestine. Fever of an irregular, intermitting, or even of a sub-continued type, is common. On the other hand, the temperature may be constantly sub-normal. Or these conditions may alternate. After a longer or shorter time, symptoms of profound anæmia gradually disclose themselves. The mucous surfaces and the skin become pallid, the face is puffy, and the feet and ankles are swollen. All the subjective symptoms of a definite anæmia now become more and more apparent ; there is lassitude, breathlessness, palpitations, tinnitus, vertigo, dimness of sight, mental apathy and depression, liability to syncope, and so forth. The circulation is irritable and hæmic bruits



can be heard over the heart and larger blood-vessels. Ophthalmoscopic examination may reveal retinal hæmorrhages.

From some of these symptoms, were it not that with the advancing anæmia there is no loss of weight, one might be led to suspect the possibility of tuberculous or cancerous disease or of Bright's disease. So far from losing weight, the patient may appear quite plump and, though hæmocytometric estimates testify to a slow and steady fall in the corpuscular richness of the blood until the lowest limit compatible with life is reached, there is no true poikilocytosis as in idiopathic pernicious anæmia, no excessive leucocytosis as in leucocythæmia, and not necessarily any enlargement of lymphatic glands, liver, or spleen. The hæmoglobin value of the corpuscles is not depressed correspondingly to the fall in their numbers.

The rate of progress is very different in different cases. In a few a high degree of anæmia may be attained, and even a fatal issue ensue, within a few weeks or months of the appearance of the first symptoms. Such rapid cases are rare; more frequently the disease is an exceedingly chronic one, ebbing, or flowing, or slowly progressing through a long series of years.

Should serious ankylostomiasis occur before puberty, the growth and development are apt to be delayed and stunted.

**Diagnosis.**—Provided its presence be suspected, ankylostomiasis is easily diagnosed. In tropical countries, anæmia without apparent cause should always suggest a microscopical examination of the fæces. If the ova (Fig. 90, c) of *Ankylostomum duodenale* are discovered, and no other reason for the anæmia be made out, the presumption is that the parasite is at the root of the mischief; at all events, no harm is likely to result from treatment based on this supposition. On the other hand, if no ova are found it must not be concluded that the case is not one of ankylostomiasis; for it sometimes happens that, in



the later stages of the disease, symptoms will persist although the parasites which caused them in the first instance have disappeared spontaneously, or have been got rid of by treatment. Permanent degeneration of the alimentary canal, of the heart, liver, kidneys, and blood-forming organs may remain, and even prove fatal, although the primary cause is no longer present. The history of the absence of other sources of anæmia is all we may have to go upon in such circumstances.

Ankylostomiasis is sometimes confounded with beriberi, and *vice versa*. The presence of paretic and cardiac symptoms not accounted for by the moderate degree of anæmia in beriberi, and their absence in ankylostomiasis, suffice for diagnosis. The anæmia of ankylostomiasis differs from that of malaria, inasmuch as the latter is accompanied by enlargement of the spleen, a sallow and perhaps pigmented complexion, an icteric tint of the scleræ, occasional attacks of well-marked periodic fever controlled by quinine, and, especially, the presence at such times of the plasmodium in the blood. Of course, ankylostomiasis and malarial cachexia may concur, and often do concur, in the same individual.

Some idea of the intensity of the affection may be got from an enumeration of the eggs in a given quantity of fæces; according to Grassi and Parona, 150 to 180 eggs per cubic centigramme indicate an infection of about a thousand worms, male and female.

**Pathological anatomy and pathology.—**

As already mentioned, the bodies of the victims of ankylostomiasis are not wasted; on the contrary, there is plenty of fat in the usual situations. The appearance of plumpness is further increased by a greater or lesser amount of general œdema. There may be effusions in one or more of the serous cavities. All the organs are anæmic. The heart is dilated and flabby, its muscular tissue being in a state of pronounced fatty degeneration. The liver, also, is fatty and so are the kidneys.



If the *post-mortem* examination be made within an hour or two of death, the ankylostomes, in numbers ranging from a few dozens up to many hundreds, will be found still attached by their mouths to the mucous surfaces of the lower part of the duodenum, the jejunum and, perhaps, of the upper part of the ileum; but if the examination has been delayed for some hours, the parasites will have dropped their hold, and are then to be found lying in the mucus coating the inner surface of the bowel. Many minute extravasations of blood—some fresh, others of long standing—are seen in the mucous membrane, a minute wound in the centre of each extravasation representing the point at which the parasite had been attached. Sometimes blood-filled cavities, as large as filberts, are found in the mucosa; each cavity enclosing one or two worms and, probably, communicating by means of a small hole with the interior of the intestine. Old extravasations are indicated by punctiform pigmentations. There may be evidence, in the shape of vesiculations and thickening of the mucosa, of a greater or lesser degree of catarrh. Occasionally, streaks or large clots of blood are found in the lumen of the bowel.

Daniels (*British Guiana Medical Annual*, 7th issue, 1895) and others report that microscopic examination of the liver and kidneys shows the presence, within the cells of the parenchyma, of grains of yellow pigment having the reactions of hæmatoidin; indicating an intravascular blood destruction, such as occurs in pernicious anæmia and other diseases in which excessive hæmolysis is a feature. On this account, and also because he finds granules of a ferrous nature in the liver cells, Daniels concludes that the anæmia in ankylostomiasis is, in a measure, the result of blood destruction within the vessels by some toxic substance produced by the parasite and absorbed from the bowel. These results have not been confirmed by other observers; on the contrary, the late Dr. Beaven Rake (*Journal of Pathology*, Nov., 1894)



concluded, from careful estimates of the amount of iron in the livers of five cases of ankylostomiasis, that in this disease the hepatic iron is below the normal average, and that the anæmia is entirely owing to the direct abstraction of blood by the parasites. The occurrence of the condition known as bothriocephalus anæmia lends a certain amount of probability to the toxin-hæmolysis theory. Further observations are necessary before this question can be decided.

**Treatment.**—*Male fern.*—Until the introduction of thymol by Bozzolo in 1880, extract of male fern was the anthelmintic usually employed in ankylostomiasis. Male fern has still its advocates. It may be used where thymol fails—an occasional occurrence.

*Thymol.*—Before the administration of thymol the patient should be put on liquid diet for a day or two, and have the bowels well cleared out by an aperient. In the morning, and following the action of the aperient, three or four ten- to thirty-grain doses of well triturated thymol, in cachets, in capsules, or in emulsion, are given on an empty stomach at intervals of an hour. If the bowels do not open spontaneously within four or five hours of the last dose another aperient dose should be given. Usually, by this treatment many ankylostomes are expelled and may be found in the motions. One such course of thymol may suffice; but it is well, after a week has elapsed, again to examine the stools microscopically, and, if it be found that ova are still being passed, to repeat the course of thymol once or oftener.

Certain precautions have to be observed in employing this drug. At times it gives rise to a very unpleasant form of intoxication—vertigo, excitement, etc., and the urine may become dark, as in carbolic acid poisoning. It is advisable therefore for the patient, while taking the drug, to keep his bed and to lie down for several hours after the last dose. Thymol is very insoluble in water and is therefore, in ordinary circumstances, not readily absorbed in poisonous quantities; should, however, the patient, while thymol is



present in the stomach, partake of any alcoholic drink, there is considerable risk of poisoning ensuing. Alcohol, ether, glycerine, turpentine, chloroform and oils are all solvents of thymol, and must therefore be avoided when this drug is being exhibited. Thornhill related an instance in which a fatal result was brought about, apparently, by neglect of the obvious precautions suggested by these facts. A man had received thirty grains of thymol in water at 7 a.m. "He experienced no special symptoms after it, and at 9 a.m. the nurse gave him a second dose of thirty grains. As this man was supplied with arrack as an extra, and as in such cases a portion of the arrack was usually given at 9 a.m., the nurse gave it to him just after administering the second dose of thymol. The result was that intense collapse set in almost at once, and, notwithstanding all efforts, the man died within twenty-four hours, the collapse manifestly being due to the arrack dissolving the thymol which was thus absorbed." Thornhill mentions two additional fatal cases of thymol poisoning occurring in his experience; other writers have recorded similar fatalities. For this reason, and because it is an extremely unpleasant drug to take—sometimes giving rise to severe burning in the stomach, throat and gullet, and, not infrequently, to excitement, giddiness, fainting and vomiting—an equally efficient but safer drug is a desideratum.

Without careful preparation by rest and judicious feeding, thymol must on no account be used in advanced cases of ankylostomiasis and where prostration is extreme.

*Other drugs.*—Thornhill seemed to prefer male fern to thymol as being somewhat less dangerous, less disagreeable to swallow, and, possibly, equally if not more efficacious. When male fern is given, the preparation of the patient, the dose, and the mode of administration are the same as for thymol. Oil of peppermint, kerosene in thirty-drop doses, and carbonate of guaiacol have all been suggested as



substitutes for thymol and male fern ; as yet we have no report of any extensive trials having been made of these drugs.

Powell (*Ind. Med. Gaz.*, 1899) considers that betel-nut chewing acts as a prophylactic to ankylostomiasis, and recommends supplementing the thymol treatment by ounce doses of powdered areca nut.

*Convalescence.*—The dieting of convalescents from ankylostomum disease must, for a time, be very carefully conducted. A rich, full dietary is to be avoided until the powers of digestion have in a measure become re-established ; otherwise, enteritis and diarrhœa may prove very troublesome and retard recovery—perhaps prevent it altogether. Iron and arsenic are indicated as blood restorers.

**Prophylaxis.**—In devising a system of prophylaxis for ankylostomiasis, the fact that it is by means of the fæces of the already infected that the parasite is spread must be kept prominently in view. Fæcal contamination of the soil and water must therefore be prevented. The promiscuous depositing of fæces about huts, villages, and fields must be interdicted. Abundant and easily accessible privy accommodation must be provided in coolie lines, in miners' camps, in native villages, and along the highways of traffic. In the absence of a more elaborate system of conservancy, pits or trenches will suffice. They may be filled up with earth and fresh ones opened from time to time. I believe the Chinese plan of storing night-soil in large, cemented, water-tight pits is a good one. It is known that if the ova of the ankylostomum are kept in pure fæces the embryo is developed and escapes from the egg in due course ; but it is also known that, unless the embryo be supplied with a certain amount of air and earth, it soon dies. The thing to be avoided, therefore, is the mixing of *fresh* fæces with earth. In the Chinese system, night-soil is first stored in the pits for months on end ; in these it ferments and rots before being finally spread on the fields. In this way the embryos



of the ankylostomum are killed and, at the same time, a valuable fertiliser is secured for the agriculturist.

It is manifest that in devising privies and sanitary regulations, the habits of the people they are intended to benefit must be taken into account ; if this be not attended to, if native habits and prejudices are ignored, any system, no matter how perfect it may be in theory, will fail in practice.

The water supply should also be carefully guarded from all possible sources of fæcal contamination. Drinking water should be boiled or strained. So far as possible, facilities for removing all earth and mud from the hands and dishes before food is partaken of, should also be provided and their use encouraged.

Badly contaminated ground had better be abandoned. If this should be found impracticable, the soil had better be turned over with the plough, or roasted with grass fires, or treated in such a manner that any ova or embryos it may contain are destroyed or buried. The systematic periodical inspection of plantation coolies is to be recommended. At these inspections, all subjects of anæmia or dyspepsia should be put aside for more careful examination ; if the ova of ankylostomes are found in their fæces a judicious dosing with thymol may avert serious disease in the individual, and also prevent him from becoming a source of danger to his companions.

In view of the great danger to health that exists in certain countries from this and similar parasites, the sanitary authorities in such places ought to circulate among the people, by means of printed leaflets or posters, a few simple directions for the prevention of ankylostomiasis and kindred diseases.

#### RHABDONEMA INTESTINALE.

It sometimes happens that, while searching the fæces for the ova of the ankylostomum, the observer is astonished by seeing a small, snake-like animal (Fig.



93, *a*) suddenly rush across the field of the microscope. On careful examination, this animal is found to be about 0·2 mm. or 0·3 mm. in length by 0·013 mm. in breadth; to have a sharply pointed tail and a

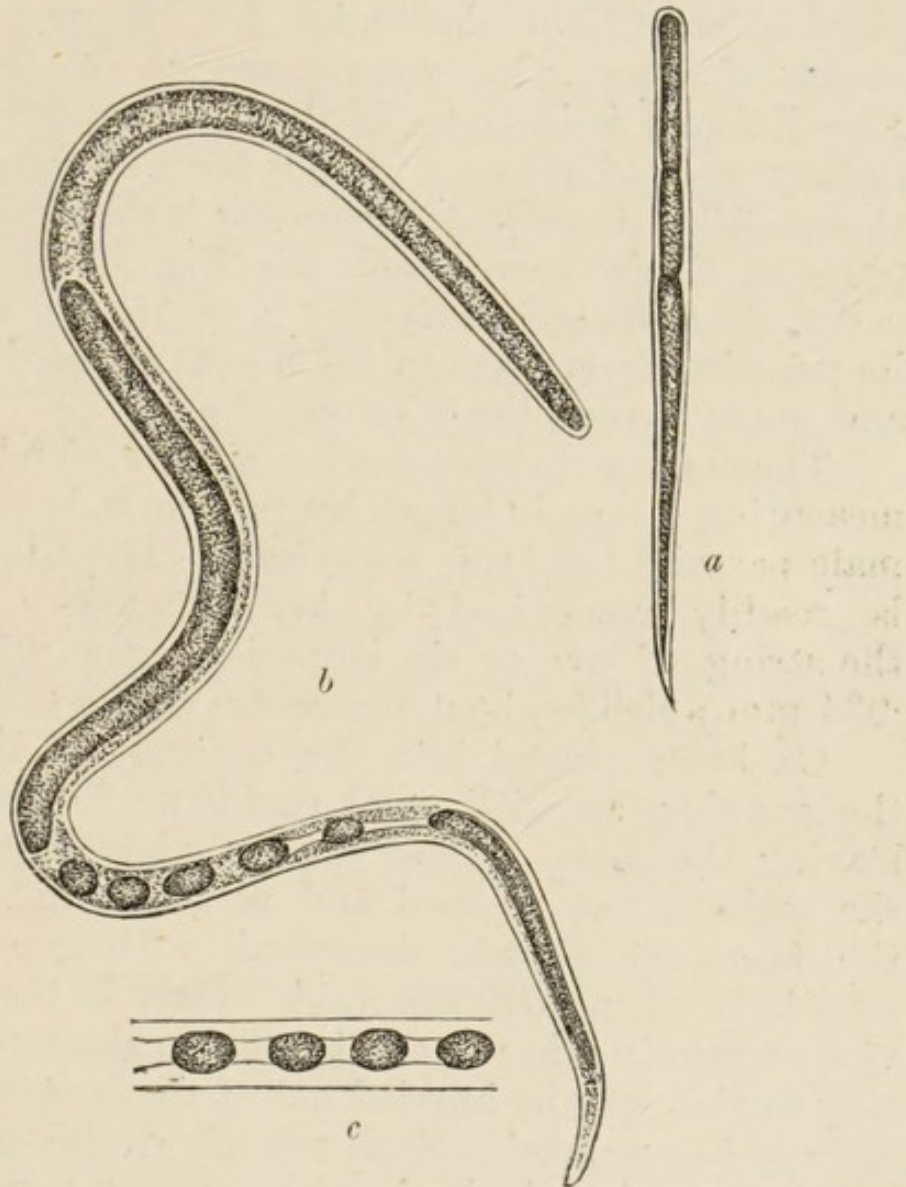


Fig. 93.—*Rhabdonema intestinale*.

rounded head; to be transparent; and to exhibit a short œsophagus which terminates in a double œsophageal bulb, the posterior end of which is provided with three tooth-like segments. This is, or rather was, called *Anguillula stercoralis*.

*Anguillula stercoralis* was discovered by Normand in 1876. For a time it was supposed to be a cause of a form of chronic diarrhœa very prevalent in Cochin China. Later investigations, while clearing up the



natural history of the parasite, have robbed it of any claim to pathological importance. It has been found that, though the anguillula is not so common, its geographical distribution is about coextensive with that of *Ankylostomum duodenale*, and that the physical conditions demanded for the non-parasitic stages of these two worms are about the same. Powell found it in India in about fifteen out of every twenty cases of anæmia. It has been established that this so-called *Anguillula stercoralis* is the rhabditiform phase of *Rhabdonema intestinale* (Fig. 93, *b*) (formerly called *Anguillula intestinalis*), a nematode which, in its parasitic form, lives in the mucus of the duodenum and upper part of the jejunum of man.

The mature rhabdonema is a minute, slender worm, measuring 2 mm. in length by .06 mm. in breadth. No male parasite has been discovered. The adult female is readily recognised by her dimensions, and by the string of five or six ellipsoidal eggs (.01 mm. by .034 mm.) visible about the centre of the body.

On being passed into the contents of the bowel the ova develop with great rapidity; so that before leaving the host, unless during violent purgation, the embryo has escaped and is swimming about in the fæces, as already described, with great vigour, especially when these are fluid. Only in the event of violent purging do the ova appear in the stools; they may in this way be hurried out of the host before the embryo has escaped. Such ova are readily recognised by the way in which they are strung together, end on end, inside a delicate tube (Fig. 93, *c*). On leaving the host, unless they have access to some non-putrefying fluid, the embryos soon die; it is necessary, therefore, if we would follow their further development, to mix the fæces with water. If this mixture be kept at a low temperature the young rhabdonema develops into a filariform larva which, on being swallowed by man in drinking water, quickly assumes the mature parasitic form already alluded to. If, on the contrary, the cultivating medium be kept



at a higher temperature, the embryos develop into male (.7 mm.) and female (1.0 mm.) rhabditic forms which, in time, produce in their turn filariform larvæ, similar to those obtained directly from the embryo in cold climates and capable, on being swallowed by man, of developing into mature *Rhabdonema intestinale*.

The rhabdonema may produce some slight degree of catarrhal irritation of the bowel, though even this is doubtful. They have been found occasionally coiled up in the intestinal follicles, but no serious lesion can with certainty be attributed to their presence; a fortunate circumstance, as hitherto the use of anthelmintics has not proved effectual in procuring their expulsion. Sonsino recommends the prolonged exhibition of liquor ferri perchloridi in combination with small doses of thymol. It is probable that catarrhal conditions of the bowel favour these parasites, and that this is the reason for their being so frequently encountered in cases of chronic tropical intestinal flux. Treatment should therefore be directed to the cure of the catarrh.

The prophylaxis for rhabdonema is the same as that recommended for *Ankylostomum duodenale*.

#### STRONGYLUS SUBTILIS.

Looss (*Centralblatt für Bakteriolog.*, xviii., p. 161, 1895) has described a very delicate nematode frequently encountered in Egyptian fellahs. Its habitat is the upper part of the small intestine. The male, which is provided with two spicules, is from 4 to 5 mm. in length by 0.07 mm. in breadth; the female is slightly larger and is much more abundant than the male. The eggs are oval, thin-shelled, with an unsegmented vitellus, and measure  $63\ \mu$  by  $41\ \mu$ . This parasite does not occur in large numbers; and, as its mouth is unarmed and its dimensions are exceedingly minute, it does not appear calculated to give rise to any particular symptoms.



## TREMATODES.

## AMPHISTOMUM HOMINIS (Fig. 94).

This minute trematode, discovered in the cæcum and colon of two Indians in Calcutta by Lewis and MacConnell in 1876, measures 5 to 8 mm. in length by 3 to 4 mm. in breadth.

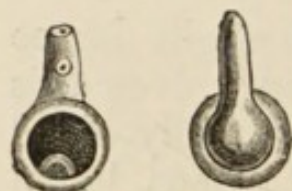


Fig. 94.—*Amphistomum hominis*.  
(Nat. size.)

It is readily recognised by its large posterior sucker, which is terminal and greatly exceeds in breadth the rest of the body. It attaches itself to the mucous membrane of the bowel by means of this sucker. The

ova, which are operculated at the smaller end, average  $150\ \mu$  in length by  $72\ \mu$  in breadth. Nothing is known of the life-history.

This trematode has been found by Giles in natives of Assam, and by Law in an East Indian immigrant in British Guiana.

## DISTOMUM BUSKI (V. CRASSUM) (Fig. 95).

*Distomum buski*, over an inch in length, is the largest of the distomes inhabiting man. It has



Fig. 95.—*Distomum buski*. (Nat. size.)

been found in China, Sumatra, the Straits Settlements, Assam, India, and by Law in an East Indian immigrant in British Guiana. It is an elongated oval in shape, rather narrower anteriorly than posteriorly, fleshy, and covered with minute spines. The suckers are placed close together. The ova are oval,  $125\ \mu$  by  $75\ \mu$ , and are closed, I find, by a very delicate operculum. In two recorded instances (Cobbold) *D. buski* was associated with attacks of recurring diarrhœa and other signs of intestinal irritation. It probably inhabits the upper part of the small intestine. Nothing is known of



the life-history. It may be expelled by thymol given as for ankylostomum.

DISTOMUM HETEROPHYES (Fig. 96).

*Distomum heterophyes* is the smallest distome, so far as known, inhabiting man. It measures 1 to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mm. in length by 0.7 mm. in breadth. It is of a bright red colour. The anterior, narrower, and more mobile part of its body is covered with minute spines. The eggs are reddish brown, and measure  $26\ \mu$  by  $15\ \mu$ . It was discovered by Bilharz in 1851, in Cairo, in the small intestine of a child, the little parasites looking like red points on the mucous surface. Since that time it has been found in Egyptians by other observers. Nothing is known of its life-history. It is believed to be innocuous.



Fig. 96.—*Distomum heterophyes*. (Magnified.)

CESTODES.

The ordinary tape-worms, *Tænia saginata* and *Tænia solium*, and their respective cystic forms, are common enough in the tropics and sub-tropics, their distribution being regulated by the presence or absence of their proper intermediary hosts—the ox in the one case, the pig in the other—and by the habits of the people as regards cooking and conservancy. *Tænia echinococcus* of the dog, and its cystic form—hydatids—are found wherever the dog and sheep are found, that is, practically, everywhere. *Bothriocephalus latus* is known to occur in Turk-estan, in Japan—where the natives are in the habit of eating raw fish—and among the natives on the shores of Lake 'Ngami, South Africa. Ichthyophagous habits are probably responsible for the occurrence of the large tape-worm described by Blanchard



under the name *Krabbea grandis*, which Ijima and Kurimoto found in a Japanese from the province of Hizen (*Comptes rendus de la Soc. de Biologie*, I., p. 609, I., 94).

The only cestodes of man which, so far as known, have any claim to be regarded as more or less special to warm climates are *Tænia nana*, *Tænia madagascariensis*, and *Bothrioccephalus mansonii*. Doubtless there are other species which, so far, have escaped observation.



Fig. 97.—*Tænia nana*. (Magnified.)

#### TÆNIA NANA (Fig. 97).

This minutest of the tape-worms inhabiting man was first found as a human parasite by Bilharz, in Cairo, in 1852. In recent years it has been identified with *Tænia murina* of the rat and other rodents. It has a somewhat extensive geographical distribution. In the case of man, at all events, it seems to have a predilection for warm countries. Besides Egypt, it has been found in Italy, Buenos Ayres, and in Bangkok, Siam. It is readily recognised by its small size—10 to 15 mm. in length with a maximum breadth of 0.7 mm. It has from 150 to 200 joints, the head being furnished with a retractile proboscis surrounded by a single row of from twenty-four to twenty-eight hooklets. The ova are oval or round,  $30\ \mu$  to  $37\ \mu$  in diameter; they are possessed of three membranes, within which the hexacanth embryo can with difficulty be made out.

Grassi has shown that in the rat the embryo of this cestode can dispense with an intermediary host, and that it penetrates the mucous membrane of the intestine, and there develops into its cysticercus.



After a time this cysticercus ruptures, permitting the head to escape and attach itself to the mucous membrane, where it speedily grows into the mature tape-worm.

Cases are on record in which the human intestine was beset with hundreds of these minute parasites which, by their presence, gave rise to marked symptoms of gastro-intestinal irritation. They are readily expelled by male fern.

TENIA (DAVAINEA) MADAGASCARIENSIS.

Discovered by Grenet in Mayotte (Madagascar), this parasite has since been found in Mauritius, in Bangkok, and by Dr. Daniels (*Lancet*, vol. ii., p. 1455, 1896) in a Demerara Indian. On account of its wide geographical range Blanchard (*Bul. de l'Acad. de Méd.*, Jan. 12, 1897; *Archives de Parasitologie*, April, 1899) shrewdly remarks that its intermediary host is probably some insect of similar distribution; possibly, he suggests, one intimately associated with ships—the cockroach (*Periplaneta orientalis*), for example.

*Tenia madagascariensis* attains a length of from 25 to 30 cm., and is made up of from 500 to 600 trapezoid joints. The head terminates in a massive rostellum surrounded by a double circle of ninety hooklets 18  $\mu$  in length. The suckers are round and of considerable size. The genital pore is unilateral. In the ripe segments the ova are agglomerated into a number of separate rounded masses.

So far as is known, the symptoms produced by this parasite correspond with those caused by the more familiar tape-worms. It is probably amenable to filix mas.

BOTHRIOCEPHALUS MANSONI (Fig. 98).

This parasite, the larval form of an unknown species of bothriocephalus, was discovered by the writer in making the *post-mortem* examination of a



Chinese in Amoy. A number of specimens were found lying under the peritoneum in the neighbour-

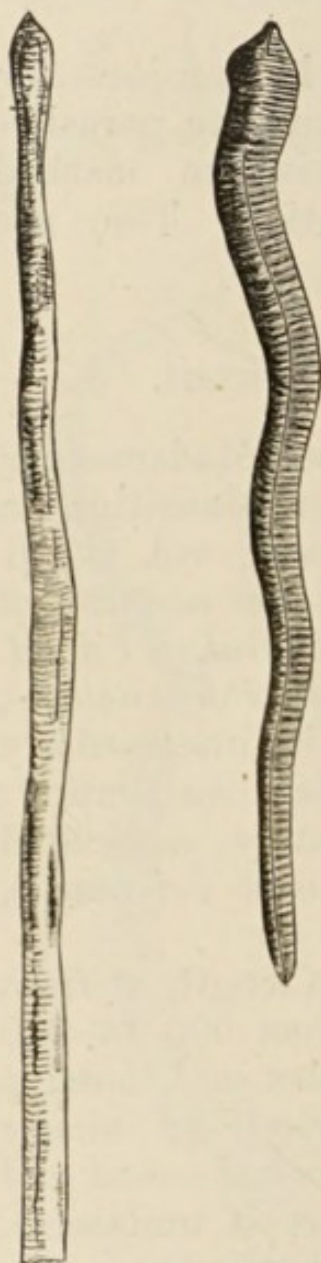


Fig. 98.—*Bothriocephalus mansoni*. (From specimens preserved in spirits and therefore shrunken.)

hood of the kidneys and iliac fossæ, and also one, apparently a free specimen, in the pleural cavity. They were more or less coiled up and irregularly disposed in the subperitoneal fascia, looking like ribbon strings of fat until they were turned out, when they exhibited feeble yet distinct movements. No differentiated head, no definite structure, and no evidence of sexual organs could be discovered; neither was there any attempt at segmentation visible. When fresh, the parasites measured about 30 to 35 cm. in length by about 2.5 mm. in breadth. They were flat, and tapered slightly towards one end. At the broader end there was a sort of papilla which, in some instances, was retracted. Scheube extracted a similar parasite from the urethra of a Japanese; it has also been found in Bathurst, Australia. Daniels has quite recently found this or a similar parasite in a Carib in British Guiana.

Leuckart suggests that the definitive host is probably a carnivorous animal closely associated with man.

#### LARVÆ OF DIPTEROUS INSECTS.

A residence in the alimentary canal of some vertebrate animal is a regular feature in the life-history of many dipterous insects. The ova of the insect are



either licked from the skin, or swallowed in the food on which they had been deposited. In this way they get transferred to the stomach where, after a time the larva is hatched out and proceeds in development. In due course it appears in the fæces. Man is not infrequently victimised in this way, especially in tropical countries. Sometimes, until a correct diagnosis is arrived at, not a little alarm is caused by the appearance of these creatures in the stools. They are easily recognised. The ringed, cylindrical body, from  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch to 1 inch in length according to species, broad at one end, tapering at the other, and usually beset with little spines or hairs, is sufficiently diagnostic (Fig. 99). A dose of castor oil will probably expel any that may not have been passed spontaneously.

A rational prophylaxis would consist in the covering up of food after it has been cooked, in order to prevent the access of flies.

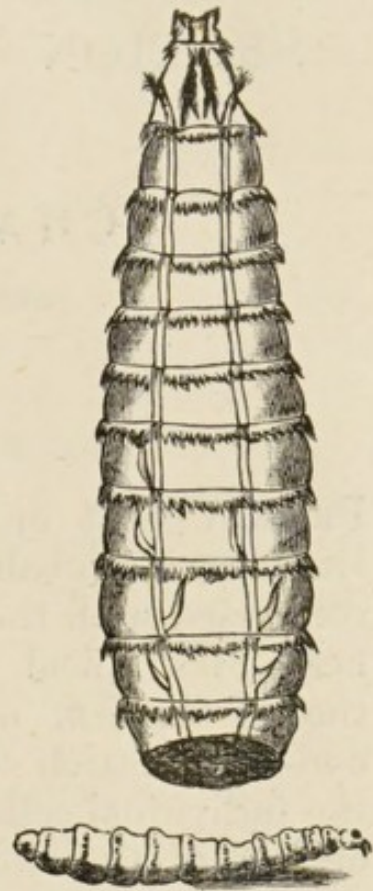


Fig. 99.—Larvæ of *Musca vomitoria*, the blue-bottle fly. (Upper figure magnified.) (Leuckart.)



## SECTION VI.—SKIN DISEASES.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

## DISEASES OF THE SKIN.

I.—*Non-specific.*

## PRICKLY HEAT.

PRICKLY heat or, as it is sometimes called, lichen tropicus, is probably a form of miliaria (not of lichen) connected with the excessive sweating incident to the heat of tropical climates. According to Pollitzer, the mechanism of its production depends on the non-cornification of the cells of the stratum corneum, the individual cells of which swell and so obstruct the orifices of the sweat glands, thereby leading to accumulation of sweat in the ducts. The swollen condition of the cells of the stratum corneum and their non-cornification arise, he maintains, from their being sodden by constant perspiration. Pearse (*Journ. Trop. Med.*, June and October, 1899) regards the disease as an acute distension of the sebaceous glands by their own secretion; the glands, he holds, are over-stimulated in order to supply an adequate amount of sebum to the skin, so as to make up for the loss of that material washed away by inordinate sweating.

Nearly every European in the tropics suffers from prickly heat, particularly during the earlier years of residence. Some never seem to become acclimatised in this respect, but continue year after year to exhibit their crop of prickly heat when the hot season comes round.

Though sufficiently annoying in the robust and healthy, in them prickly heat is not a grave affair. It



is otherwise in the case of the invalid, of delicate sickly children, of hysterical and, especially, of parturient women; to these it may prove, by interfering with sleep and provoking restlessness, a very serious matter. Prickly heat is also a common though indirect cause of boils; for the breaches of surface, following on the scratching it induces, afford many opportunities for the invasion of the micro-organisms of that disease.

Prickly heat consists of a miliary-like eruption, generally most profuse on those parts of the body, as around the waist, which are closely covered with clothing; but it also occurs on the backs of the hands, arms, legs, forehead, occasionally on the face, the scalp, in fact on any part of the surface of the body except the palms and soles. The minute, shining, glass-like vesicles, and the numerous, closely set, and slightly inflamed papules give the skin the feeling as if thickly sprinkled with grains of sand. The eruption may keep out for months on end, becoming better or worse according to circumstances. The pricking and itching are often exceedingly distressing. Anything leading to perspiration immediately provokes an outburst of this almost intolerable itching—nothing more certainly than a cup of hot tea or a plate of hot soup. Long drinks, exposure to the hot sun, close rooms, warm clothing, all aggravate the distress. Sometimes the little vesicles may pustulate, doubtless from micrococcus infection. So soon as the weather becomes cool the eruption and the irritation quickly subside.

**Treatment.**—Manifestly the most important thing is the avoidance of all causes of perspiration—particularly the copious consumption of fluids especially hot fluids, moderation in exercise, avoiding close rooms, warm clothing, and so forth. Soap should not be used in the bath. The sleeping mattress and pillow should be covered with a finely woven grass mat, and the bed provided with what is known in the East as a “Dutch-wife”—that is, a hollow cylinder, 4 feet by 8 or 10 inches, of open rattan



work, over which the arms and legs can be thrown and unnecessary apposition of sweating surfaces so avoided. A punkah at night is a great comfort. Many things have been recommended as preventives; for example, rubbing the body over after the bath with the juice of a lemon, Jeyes' fluid or bran in the bath, etc. Every bath-room in the tropics should be provided with some mildly astringent and antiseptic dusting powder. A very good one consists of equal parts of boric acid, oxide of zinc and starch. This should be freely applied after careful drying of the skin, particularly to the axillæ, crutch, under the mammæ in women, and between the folds of skin in fat children and adults. A simple precaution of this sort saves much suffering both from prickly heat and epiphytic skin disease. Pearse strongly recommends the inunction of a mixture of almond oil and lanoline in the proportion of 8 to 1, and scented according to fancy. St. George Gray finds thin flannel a better wear than cotton or linen as a preventive of prickly heat. Sometimes the following powder, gently rubbed in for five or ten minutes with a damp sponge, cures bad patches of prickly heat: Sublimed sulphur, 80 parts; magnesia, 15 parts; oxide of zinc, 5 parts. Lotions of calamine, with or without hydrocyanic acid, or of carbolic acid, relieve the itching temporarily.

## II.—*Caused by bacteria.*

### TROPICAL SLOUGHING PHAGEDÆNA.

**Definition.**—A rapidly spreading, but generally after a time spontaneously arrested, gangrene of the skin and subjacent tissues, resulting in the formation of a large sloughing sore. Though occasionally fatal, these sores, as a rule, under favourable conditions, granulate and cicatrise, or become chronic ulcers.

**Geographical distribution.** — Sloughing phagedæna is common in most tropical countries, particularly in those with a hot, damp climate.



These sores are often named after those districts in which they are specially prevalent; thus we hear of Mozambique ulcer, Yemen ulcer, etc. They are found principally in jungle lands, less frequently in towns and well-settled districts. Whether tropical sloughing phagedæna, and the hospital gangrene at one time so prevalent in the hospitals of Europe, are the same disease, it is difficult to say. They agree in some respects; but in the marked tendency of the tropical sore to self-limitation, and, possibly, as Scheube points out, in its relatively feebly infective power, there is some indication of a specific difference.

**Ætiology.**—Doubtless depending on the proliferation in the affected tissues of some specific micro-organism, not yet satisfactorily separated, the germ of sloughing phagedæna finds its special opportunity in the bodies of men who from overwork, underfeeding, exposure, malaria, dysentery, scorbutus, and the like, are physically depressed. Thus it is apt to attack the half-starved, malaria-stricken pioneers in jungle lands, overdriven slave gangs, and soldiers campaigning in the tropics. In such circumstances a slight wound, an abrasion, even an insect bite, or an old chronic ulcer may serve as the starting-point for one of these terrible sores. Where yaws and sloughing phagedæna are co-endemic, the sores of the former may become infected with the virus of the latter, and serious sloughing and cicatricial contractions result. The feet and legs, being most exposed to injury, are the most frequent locations for this form of ulceration; but the arms or any other part of the body may also be attacked.

**Symptoms.**—If the disease occur in previously sound skin the first indication is the formation of a large bleb with sero-sanguinolent contents. The formation of this may be attended with some pain and constitutional irritation. When, in the course of a few hours, the bulla ruptures, an ash-grey, moist slough is exposed. The sloughing process rapidly extends in all directions until the skin and



subcutaneous fascia, over an area many inches in diameter, are converted into a yellowish, moist, horribly stinking slough. After a few days the centre of the slough begins to liquefy, the sore still continuing to extend at the periphery. In the course of a week or longer the sloughing process may cease and the slough be gradually thrown off. Then it is seen that not only have the skin and superficial fascia been destroyed, but that possibly muscles, tendons, nerves, vessels, and even the periosteum of the bones have shared in the gangrenous process. Fortunately in many instances the deeper structures are spared, the disease being relatively superficial. Sometimes, however, important structures, including joints, bones and large blood-vessels, are destroyed; in such cases, even if life be spared, great deformity may ensue from different forms of ankylosis, or from strangulation of a distal part by a contracting cicatrix.

When the disease attacks a pre-existing wound or sore, the granulating surface of this becomes dry, and rapidly assumes the appearance and characters of a slough.

In sloughing phagedæna the neighbourhood of the sore is somewhat congested and swollen, particularly so if the patient has been obliged to use the limb. Constitutional disturbance may be considerable and of an adynamic type. On the other hand, it occasionally happens that large sores are attended with singularly slight local or general reaction. In bad cases a sapræmic condition is apt to supervene and carry off the patient; or death may occur from bleeding from the opening of a large blood-vessel.

**Treatment.**—It is of the first importance to endeavour to correct any cachectic state which may be present. Thus good food, fresh vegetables, lime juice, and quinine are almost invariably indicated. Opium in full doses, not merely to assuage pain, but on account of its special action on the phagedænic process, is usually of great service. Locally, an endeavour must be made effectually to destroy the



germ by the application of some powerful and penetrating caustic to the diseased surface. With this view, on the strength of considerable experience, I recommend that the patient be put under chloroform and the slough thoroughly dissolved off by the free application of pure carbolic acid, a piece of lint on a stout stick being used as a mop for the purpose. Thereafter the limb should be elevated and placed under some improvised irrigator from which a weak, warm antiseptic solution should continuously trickle over the now clean surface. If the phagedænic action recur the carbolic acid must be promptly reapplied as often as may be necessary. On healthy granulations springing up the ulcer is to be treated on ordinary principles.

Patients with this disease should be regarded as infective, and, so far as possible, isolated.

#### BOILS.

The anatomical and clinical features of this painful affection are too familiar to require detailed description. Suffice it to say that a boil is produced by the proliferation of *Torula pyogenica* or other pyogenic micro-organisms in the skin and subcutaneous tissue; that the organism gives rise to local and limited infiltration of the tissues with lymph which subsequently and rapidly necroses, the necrotic core being surrounded by an areola of acute inflammation; that this core is separated by a process of sloughing and so got rid of, the resulting ulcer speedily healing and leaving a depressed scar, which, when occurring about the legs, may become pigmented. Though a self-limiting disease locally, it is nevertheless capable of being inoculated elsewhere in the same individual, both through a breach of surface and, also, by simple contact of the discharges with the skin, the micro-organism apparently entering by a hair follicle. This auto-inoculability of boils is apt to be overlooked.



Conditions of debility, presumably by lowering resistance, predispose to boils; the subjects of diabetes are specially prone to them, the saccharine state of the blood or secretions seeming to be particularly favourable to growth of the specific germ.

At one time or another few Europeans in the tropics escape an attack of boils. In some instances crop after crop succeeds one another, the individual boils being so numerous that the patient is quite unfitted for work by the attendant pain and fever. In certain years so many members of a community are attacked that the disease may be described as being epidemic. These epidemics, occurring when some particular fruit is in season, are very generally, but probably incorrectly, attributed to the use of the particular fruit in question. Mangos, probably erroneously, are frequently held responsible.

**Treatment.**—Any constitutional irregularity must be treated appropriately. Malaria demands quinine; anæmia and debility, iron and wine; constipation, aperients; diabetes, a suitable diet. I have never seen any good from such vaunted specifics as calcium sulphuret, tar water, or yeast.

Boils ought never, unless in very exceptional circumstances, to be poulticed. Poulticing, although it may relieve the pain of the existing boil, is prone to be followed by more boils in the area sodden by the heat and moisture. Neither should boils be incised or squeezed. The only exception to the rule for not cutting is in the case of boils occurring in the scalp or in the axilla. In the former situation, unless opened early, they are apt, especially in young children, to burrow and cause troublesome abscesses; in the latter situation boils tend to be very indolent and painful, and do not readily spontaneously break through the lax integuments.

In any situation in which the boil is liable to be irritated by pressure or clothing, it is sometimes a good plan to cover the part with a circle of wash-leather spread with soap plaster, and having a small



hole cut in its centre corresponding to the apex of the boil. When a boil opens, the discharge must be kept from soiling the adjoining skin, and the patient must be warned against touching the skin elsewhere with pus-soiled fingers. The parts must be frequently cleansed with 1 in 1,000 corrosive sublimate lotion, powdered with boracic acid and covered with a dry, absorbent antiseptic dressing. A threatening boil may often be aborted by touching the little initial itching or vesiculated papule with some penetrating antiseptic, as iodine tincture, or by painting it with collodion. A very successful method is to drill slowly into the centre of the papule with a pointed pencil of hard wood dipped in pure carbolic acid. The point of the pencil should penetrate at least an eighth of an inch, and should be frequently recharged with the acid during the drilling process; the pain is trifling. In this way, in a severe attack of furunculosis, boil after boil may be aborted and the attack brought to an end.

Change of air is found necessary at times in severe cases.

#### PEMPHIGUS CONTAGIOSUS.

**Definition.**—A non-febrile, highly contagious skin disease peculiar to warm countries. It is characterised by the formation of large vesicles or bullæ which are unattended by marked inflammation, ulceration, or the formation of crusts or scars.

**Geographical distribution.**—Pemphigus contagiosus is very common in south China during the hot weather; in some years it may be described as being epidemic. It is perennial in the Straits Settlements, and it is known in Madras, in North Queensland (Finlay), Japan (Munro), and America (Corlett). Doubtless, although it has escaped notice by most medical writers, it is common enough elsewhere in the tropics, or wherever heat and moisture combine to bring about a state of skin favouring its development on the infective material being applied. It is



especially common in schools and similar institutions where large numbers of children are thrown much together; they readily pass the disease one to the other. European children are more prone to it than native children; European adults are by no means exempt, but the native adult is rarely affected.

**Symptoms.** — Pempigus contagiosus closely resembles certain forms of the impetigo contagiosa of temperate countries, and is doubtless a variety of this class of skin disease. The individual lesions, as can readily be ascertained by inoculation experiments, begin as minute erythematous specks which rapidly proceed to the formation of vesicles, bullæ, or even large pemphigus-like blebs. The little blister springs abruptly from sound skin; there is no, or very little, areola of congestion. For a short time the hemispherical bleb is beautifully pellucid, tense, and shining. Presently the serous contents become somewhat turbid, and the blister gets flaccid and dull. At this stage, either from scratching or pressure, the blister is generally ruptured. The morbid process does not at once come to an end, but proceeds as an advancing, eccentrically-spreading exfoliation of the epidermis; an exfoliation which may not cease to advance until an area an inch or more in diameter is denuded of epithelium. Then, in that particular spot, the disease stops, a pinkish, slightly glazed-looking patch, rarely covered with a tissue paper-like scale, remaining for some time. Occasionally, after the rupture of the primary bleb, vesication may continue in the peripheral portion of its remains. Only one or two blebs may be visible on the entire surface of the body; generally there are many, the disease being spread by the fingers in scratching or rubbing.

Pempigus contagiosus may occur in almost any part of the body. In young children it is usually diffuse; in adults it is mostly confined to the axillæ and crutch. In these latter situations it gives rise to much irritation and discomfort, owing to the suc-



cessive crops of bullæ running into each other and rendering the parts raw and tender, and predisposed to boils or some form of eczematous intertrigo. During warm, moist weather it may be kept up indefinitely by auto-inoculation.

Assistant-Surgeon Soorjee Narain Singh describes (*Trans. First Ind. Med. Cong.*, 1895) a series of cases of a form of contagious pemphigus occurring in rapid succession in the children of three families in India (exact locality not specified), which bears some resemblance to the pemphigus contagiosus above described. It differs, however, inasmuch as in the Indian disease the bullæ were very large—often larger than hen's eggs, and persisted for from one to three weeks. In one of the thirteen cases described there followed a certain amount of sloughing at the seat of the bullæ; in the others there was neither ulceration nor constitutional disturbance.

**Ætiology and pathology.**—Like ordinary impetigo contagiosa, this is undoubtedly a germ disease. I have found a diplococcus in the epidermis and fluid of the blister; whether this is the special bacterium responsible for the disease, cultivation and inoculation experiment have not yet decided.

**Diagnosis.**—Absence of constitutional symptoms, or a history of such, distinguishes pemphigus contagiosus from chicken-pox. Absence of trichophyton elements and of a well-defined, slightly raised, festooned, and itching margin, together with the presence of large blebs and scaling of the epidermis, distinguish it from ordinary forms of body ringworm; a disease with which, when occurring in the armpits and crutch in adults, it is so frequently confounded.

**Treatment.**—Cleanliness, the frequent use of a bichloride of mercury lotion (1 to 1,000), and a dusting powder of equal parts of boracic acid, starch, and zinc oxide are speedily effective. In the school and nursery those responsible for the care of children must be informed of the contagiousness of



this unpleasant affection, and measures be instituted accordingly.

### III.—*Caused by vegetable parasites.*

#### MYCETOMA, OR THE FUNGUS FOOT OF INDIA.

**Definition.**—A disease of warm climates, particularly of India, affecting principally the foot, occasionally the hand, rarely other parts of the body, never the internal organs. It is characterised by enlargement and deformity of the part; an oily degeneration and general fusion of the affected tissues; the formation of cyst-like cavities communicating by sinuses, and containing peculiar mycotic aggregations in an oily purulent fluid which escapes from fistulous openings on the surface. The disease runs a slow course, is never recovered from spontaneously, and, unless removed, terminates after many years in death from exhaustion.

#### **History and geographical distribution.**—

The earliest notice of this disease we owe to Kæmpfer (1712). Its more modern history commenced with Godfrey, of Madras, who, in the *Lancet* of June 10th, 1843, gave a description of several unquestionable examples under the title, "Tubercular Disease of the Foot." Subsequently Balingall (1855), who was the first to suggest its parasitic nature, Eyre (1860), and others added considerably to our knowledge of the subject. The merit of bringing the disease prominently before the profession, and of distinctly describing its clinical and anatomical features, as well as of suggesting its probable pathology, belongs entirely to Vandyke Carter, who, from 1860 to 1874, in a series of important papers, furnished the information on which all later descriptions have been principally founded. Carter was the first to point out the presence of mycotic elements in the discharges coming from the implicated structures, and in the contents of the characteristic cysts and sinuses with which they are honeycombed. Since the date of Carter's



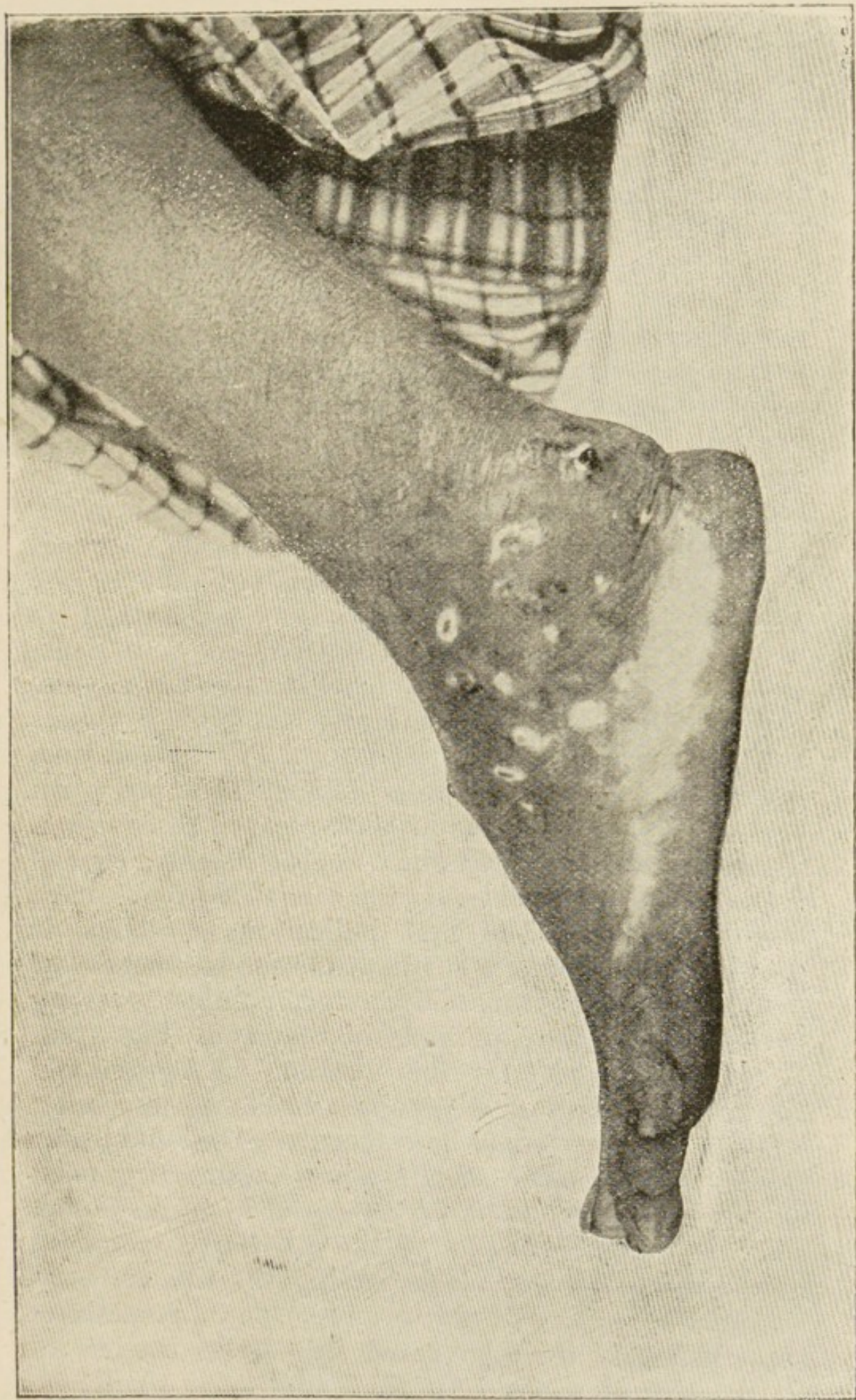


Fig. 100.—MYCETOMA OF ABOUT TWO YEARS' STANDING. (After Legrain.)



papers, beyond the discovery that the associated fungus, in at least one variety of mycetoma, possesses affinities to actinomyces, as suggested by him in 1886, and that the disease is not confined to India, there has been no very important addition to our knowledge.

In India mycetoma is endemic in districts more or less limited. These districts are scattered over a wide area, the intervening regions—in some instances whole provinces, as that of Lower Bengal—enjoying an almost complete immunity. It appears to be acquired only in rural districts, the inhabitants of the towns being exempt. Among the most afflicted districts may be mentioned Madura—hence the name “Madura foot” by which mycetoma is often known—Hirsar, Ajmeer, Delhi, various places in the Punjab, Kashmir, and Rajputana. In recent years we have accounts of its occurrence with some degree of frequency in Senegambia, and, also, of a very few examples in Algeria, the Soudan, Cochin China, Italy, the United States and in South America. It is probable that in time mycetoma will be found to be endemic in many warm countries in which it has hitherto escaped recognition.

**Symptoms.**—Mycetoma begins usually, though by no means invariably, on the sole of the foot—most often the right. The first indication of disease is the slow formation of a small, firm, rounded, somewhat hemispherical, slightly discoloured, painless swelling perhaps about half an inch in diameter (Fig. 100). After a month or more this swelling may soften and rupture, discharging a peculiar viscid, syrupy, oily, slightly purulent, sometimes blood-streaked fluid containing in suspension certain minute, rounded, greyish or yellowish particles, often compared to grains of fish roe. In other examples of the disease the particles in the discharge are black, having the size and appearance of grains of coarse gunpowder. Sometimes these particles are aggregated into larger masses up to the size of a pea. In time additional swellings, some of which break down and form similar sinuses,



appear in the neighbourhood of the first or elsewhere about the foot. For the most part the sinuses are permanent, healing up in a very few instances only. Gradually the bulk of the foot increases to perhaps two or three times the normal volume (Fig. 101). There is comparatively little lengthening of the foot; but there

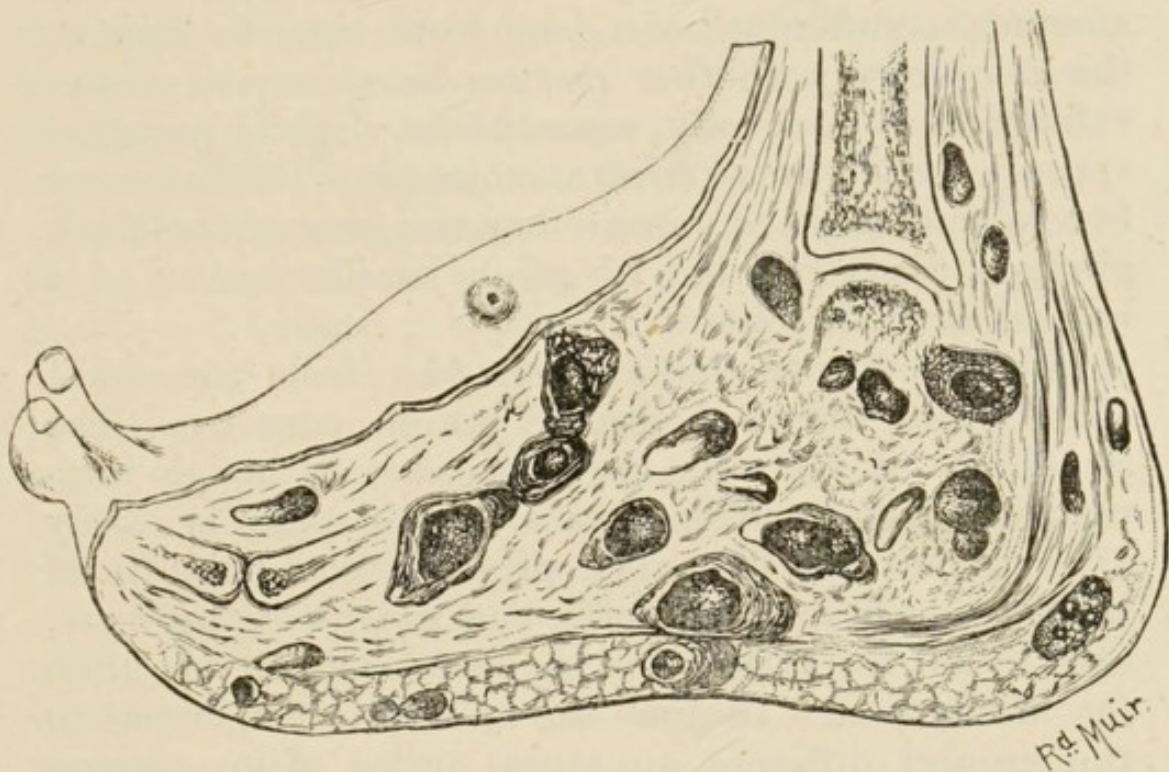


Fig. 101.—Section of a "Madura foot." (T. R. Lewis.)

is a general increase in thickness, so that in time the mass comes to assume an ovoid form, the sole of the member becoming convex, the sides rounded, and the anatomical points obliterated. The toes may be forced apart, bent upwards at the tarso-phalangeal joints or otherwise misdirected; so that, on the foot being placed on the ground, the toes do not touch it. The surface of the skin is roughened by a number of larger or smaller, firmer or softer, hemispherical elevations, in some of which the orifices of the numerous sinuses open. Most of these orifices are easily made out; others are not so apparent, their position being indicated and, at the same time, concealed by a bunch of pale, flabby, fungating, and but slightly vascular granulations. In the latter the orifice may



be hard to find. Once the probe is got to enter, the instrument readily passes to a considerable depth, even to the bone; in advanced cases it can be carried through the softened tissues with the greatest ease in almost any direction, and without causing much pain and hæmorrhage.

The discharge issuing from the sinuses differs in amount in different cases, and from time to time in the same case; whether profuse or scanty it always exhibits the same oily, mucoid-like, slightly purulent appearance, and may stink abominably. With a very few exceptions it contains either the grey or the black grains already referred to, rarely similar bodies of a reddish or pink colour.

To the touch the swollen foot feels somewhat elastic, and does not readily pit on pressure. The sensibility of the skin is preserved. Although complained of in some instances, severe pain is rarely a prominent feature. The principal complaint is of inconvenience from the bulk and weight of the mass, and, in advanced cases, of the uselessness of the limb for locomotion. In time the foot is no longer put to the ground, different unnatural styles of progression being adopted by different patients.

As the foot enlarges the leg atrophies from disuse; so that in the advanced disease an enormously enlarged and misshapen foot, flexed or extended, is attached to an attenuated leg consisting of little more than skin and bone. In some the tibia, or the bones of the forearm, as the case may be, become involved; in others the disease may be at first confined to a toe, or a finger, or other limited area. In a very few instances the seat of the disease is the knee, thigh, jaw, or neck. The internal organs are never specifically implicated, either primarily or secondarily; neither are the lymphatic glands, although these may be the subject of adenitis from secondary septic infection.

After ten or twenty years the patient dies, worn out by the continued drain, or carried off more suddenly by diarrhœa or other intercurrent disease.



*Classification.*—Although the broad clinical features, and the progress of all cases of mycetoma are practically identical, it is customary to divide them into three varieties according to the colour of the particles suspended in the discharge; which particles, as will be presently explained, proceed from larger masses of the same coloured material lodged in the diseased tissues. Thus we have the white or ochroid, the black or melanoid, and the red forms of mycetoma. The first is the most common form, the second is somewhat less common, the third is very rare.

**Morbid anatomy.**—On cutting into a mycetomatous foot or hand the knife passes readily through the mass, exposing a section with an oily, greasy surface, in which the anatomical elements in many places are unrecognisable, being, as it were, fused together, forming a pale, greyish-yellow mass. The bones in parts have entirely disappeared; where their remains can still be made out the cancellated structure is very friable, thinned, opened out, and infiltrated with oleaginous material. Of all the structures the tendons and fasciæ seem to be the most resistant.

The most remarkable feature revealed by section is a network of sinuses and communicating cyst-like cavities of various dimensions, from a mere speck to a cavity an inch or more in diameter. Sinuses and cysts are occupied by a material unlike anything else in human morbid anatomy. In the black variety of mycetoma this material consists of a black or dark brown, firm, friable substance which, in many places, stuffs the sinuses and cysts; manifestly it is from this that the black particles in the discharge are derived. In the white variety the sinuses and cysts are also more or less stuffed by a white or yellowish roe-like substance, evidently an aggregation of particles identical with those escaping in the corresponding discharge. The black substance, which can be readily turned out, is moulded into truffle-like masses ranging in size from a mere grain



to a small apple, according to the capacity of the cysts or sinuses containing it. The roe-like particles in the white variety are held together by a softer cheesy-looking material. The sinuses and cysts occupy the bones, muscles, or fasciæ indiscriminately; they are found principally in the fat and connective tissue. They are lined by a smooth membrane, adherent when in the soft tissues, but capable of being enucleated when in the bones. Some of the cysts do not communicate with sinuses; most of them, however, do so and with each other, opening on the surface of the skin at the mammillated fistulæ already referred to. In the very rare red variety the colour of the accretions is red or pink. In a few instances—as in those recorded by Lewis and Cunningham—no concretions of any description can be discovered, the cysts and sinuses being occupied by an oleaginous purulent material alone.

Under the microscope mycotic elements can be discovered both in the white and black concretions. In microscopical sections of the tissues evidences of extensive degenerative changes, the result of a chronic inflammation, can be readily made out. An important feature as bearing on the pathology of the disease, and one which was long ago described by Lewis and Cunningham, has been insisted on by Cunningham (*Scient. Mem. by the Med. Off. with the Army of India*, Part 9, 1895), namely, a sort of arteritis obliterans or extensive proliferation of the endothelium of the arteries and, according to Vincent (*Ann. de l'Institut. Pasteur*, 1895), a thickening of the adventitia of the vessels as well as of the capillaries in the more affected areas.

**Histology, pathology, and ætiology.**—*White variety.*—The white particles suspended in the discharge from the white or ochroid variety of mycetoma are soft, easily crushed, insoluble in caustic potash, alcohol, chloroform, or acids. They are round or somewhat reniform in shape and, under the microscope, are seen to be made up of an agglomeration



of several colonies of a ray fungus—closely resembling actinomyces—in the meshes of which cellular products of inflammation are entangled.

As in actinomyces, there is a central reticulum of an exceedingly fine and interwoven mycelium surrounded by a closely set radiation of delicate, straight filaments ( $1\ \mu$  to  $1.5\ \mu$ ) many of which terminate in well-marked club-shaped ends. These clubs thus constitute the peripheral layer in a three-zoned body, the intermediate zone being the straight filaments, the central zone the interwoven mycelium. The roe-like masses in the cysts and sinuses are but aggregations of the rounded fungus group constituting the individual granule.

Sections show the same parasite in the diseased and softened tissues outside the cysts and tunnels. Thus Vincent (*Ann. de l'Inst. Pasteur*, No. 8, 1894) found it in the unbroken tuberosc swellings under the skin; Boyce and Surveyor (*Proc. Roy. Soc.*, March 9th, 1893; *Brit. Med. Journ.*, September 22nd, 1894) in the muscles and elsewhere. Kanthack (*Journ. of Path. and Bact.*, 1892-93) describes the tissue changes which it produces in this situation as follows:—"In the earliest stages we have simply a reactive inflammation, the fungus being surrounded by round cells. Gradually the latter are replaced by typical granulation tissue, epithelioid cells, and vessels which appear in large numbers. At this time the various degeneration forms of the fungus"—the clubbing of the rays, pigmentation of mycelium, vitreous changes, loss of tinctorial qualities, and so forth—"are observed, and a pigment, varying in colour from yellow to dark brown, is observed in the tissues around the fungus. Gradually the granulation cells give rise to fibrous tissue and we may then see the typical microscopical cysts or abscesses composed of the following structures passing from without inwards: (a) A fibrous ring (pigmented or not); (b) granulation cells; (c) pus cells or leucocytes, perhaps invading the fungus; (d) a finely granular detritus



immediately around the organism; (e) the fungus itself. The latter may be at any stage of degeneration." The exact process by which the cysts and sinuses are formed has not been fully worked out; presumably, it is an extension of the process described by Kanthack, the lining membrane of the cysts and sinuses being the outcome of an inflammation which is excited in the tissues by the fungus, and which is evidence of an effort on the part of the body to protect itself by shutting off and extruding the invading parasite.

This fungus, so closely allied to actinomyces, has been successfully cultivated by Boyce and Surveyor, and also by Vincent; hitherto, all attempts to grow it in the lower animals have failed. Unlike actinomyces, it will not grow readily in animal substances but flourishes in vegetable infusions, or in media containing a proportion of vegetable matter. It differs also from actinomyces in certain minute morphological and tinctorial qualities; so that though closely allied to the better-known fungus, apparently it is not specifically identical with it. Vincent has named it *Nocardia* or *Streptothrix maduræ*.

*Black variety.*—Although all observers are practically agreed in recognising the presence of a ray fungus in the white or ochroid form of mycetoma, there is not the same unanimity in regard to the presence and characters of fungus elements in the black or melanoid variety.

The individual black grains, floating in the discharge or lying in the tissues, in this form of mycetoma, vary in size from microscopic grains to masses of considerable bulk, as already mentioned. The surfaces of the smaller grains are distinctly mammillated, and the bodies themselves are firm and friable. Their colour is not discharged by alcohol or chloroform, and is but slightly affected by caustic potash; but it is discharged by first boiling in caustic potash and subsequently transferring to distilled water. Certain of the grains—presumably the oldest—reveal no fungus



under the microscope ; but others, as Kanthack and Boyce have pointed out, show a distinct network of interlacing, broad, varicose, moniliform tubes with a manifest radiated arrangement. At the periphery these tubes may end in minute clubs. The walls of the tubes, as well as the intermediate substance, are pigmented. Such bodies do not specially suggest a ray fungus ; but Kanthack, in one specimen of melanoid Madura foot, found examples in which a central interwoven mycelium was surrounded by a zone of characteristically clubbed rays. In this specimen the filaments were broad, often interrupted, not uniform in diameter, and presented small varicosities. Transition forms, connecting the more or less perfect type with the structureless black masses, could be traced. From this circumstance Kanthack concludes that the black masses are really the product or remains of the fungus described. The black pigment is never found free in the softened tissues, but is always closely surrounded by a dense, fibrous tissue, or it lies in cysts or sinuses.

*The relationship of the white to the black variety.*—The question suggests itself are the two forms of Madura foot, the ochroid and the melanoid, caused by the same parasite, by varieties of the same parasite, or by a distinct species? In favour of the specific identity of the forms are the facts that black and white masses have been found together in the same case (Lewis and Cunningham and Boccaro) ; that they are co-endemic ; that, with the sole exception of the colour, the clinical features and progress of the disease are identical in both forms ; that pigment is often found in the tissues in the white variety ; that the fungus of the latter often undergoes distinct pigmentary degeneration such as is often seen in human and bovine actinomycosis. Against their identity are the rarity of their concurrence in the same individual ; the large size of the mycelial filaments in the melanoid form ; and the fact that the latter, unlike the white fungus, has hitherto resisted all attempts at cultivation.



*The pathological significance of the fungus.*—Most pathologists agree in regarding the ray fungus as the cause of the disease in, at least, the white variety of mycetoma. Cunningham, however, has demurred (*Sc. Mem. by the Med. Off. with the Army of India*, No. 9, 1895) to this conclusion, on the following grounds:—"1st, that a certain number of cases occur in which, whilst all the essential symptoms of the disease are present, there is an entire absence of any concretions of either the black or white variety and of the fungal elements ordinarily associated with them; 2nd, that the fungal elements which ordinarily occur in connection with the two varieties of the disease are of absolutely unlike character, those associated with the white variety resembling those of actinomyces, and those of the black variety forming sclerotia like those of the sclerotiniæ and other allied ascomycetes; 3rd, that the very formation of scleroid bodies is a process which is normally indicative of a cessation of vegetative growth dependent on exhaustion of nutritive supply, and therefore one which could not occur were the normal tissues the proper site for the development of the parasitic elements." Cunningham suggests that the fungus vegetates on a soil previously prepared for it by the true, and as yet undiscovered, cause of the disease; and hints that possibly the endarteritis already referred to may be the primary effect of the true germ, and the cause of the softening of the tissues, which thus become a suitable nidus for the actinomyces-like fungus that subsequently enters accidentally from without. According to this view, the ray fungus is not a necessary element in the pathological process, but merely an accidental epiphenomenon.

Until irrefutable evidence, such as can only be supplied by the successful inoculation of cultures of the ray fungus taken from both the white and the black varieties, is obtained, similar objections can always be raised to accepting these parasites as the true cause of mycetoma. Nevertheless, the intimacy



and frequency of their association with this disease are so marked that the provisional assumption of such a relationship seems to be justifiable.

*Mode of entrance of the fungus.*—Nothing is known on this point. It is conjectured that the fungus may be a usual parasite on some plant, and that it finds an entrance into the tissues of man through a wound in the skin. The facts of its occurring almost invariably on the feet or hands, and principally in bare-footed agriculturists, favour this view. No distinct relationship has been traced between the disease and any particular type of soil or vegetation.

**Treatment.**—The only effective treatment, in the case of implication of a considerable part of the foot or hand, is amputation. This must be performed well above the seat of the disease ; for it must be borne in mind that the long bones may be implicated as well as the small bones, and that unless the entire disease be removed it will recur in the stump. Complete removal is not followed by relapse. If a toe, or a small portion of the foot or hand, is alone involved, this may be excised with success. Iodide of potassium, which seems to be so potent a remedy in actinomycosis, has been tried in madura foot, but without success.

#### DHOBIE ITCH.

In view of the recent researches of Sabouraud and others on the ringworms of Europe, there can be little doubt that the ringworms of warm countries are attributable to a large variety of fungus forms, probably many of them derived from the lower animals. Although, in a general way, we are familiar enough with the clinical features of these ringworms, their specific germs have not as yet been very closely studied. By the lay public all epiphytic skin diseases, more especially all forms of intertrigo, are spoken of as dhobie (washer-man's) itch, in the belief, probably not very well founded, that they are contracted from clothes which



have been contaminated by the washerman. There are many sources of ringworm infection in warm climates besides the much maligned dhobie.

In the tropics, native children often exhibit dry, scurfy patches of ringworm on the scalp; and the skin of the trunk and limbs of adults is not infrequently affected with red, slightly raised, itching rings, or segments of rings, of trichophyton infection. Sometimes these rings enclose areas many inches in diameter.

Pityriasis versicolor is also very common in the tropics. It is the usual cause of the pale, fawn-coloured, scurfy patches so frequently a feature on the dark-skinned bodies of natives. On the dark-pigmented skins of negroes, Indians, and dark-complexioned Chinese, the patch of pityriasis—contrary to what obtains in Europeans and light-skinned Chinese—is paler than the healthy integument surrounding it. The pigment in the fungus (*Microsporon furfur*) and the profuse growth of the latter conceal, as a coat of yellow paint might do, the dark underlying natural pigment of the skin.

The expression *dhobie itch*, although applied to any itching, ringworm-like affection of any part of the skin, most commonly refers to some form of epiphytic disease of the crutch or axilla. There are at least three species of vegetable or bacterial parasites which in the tropics are prone to attack these situations—namely, the trichophytons or ordinary body ringworms, the *Microsporon minutissimum* of erythrasma, and the germ of the disease I have described under the name pemphigus contagiosus.

The suffering which some of the forms of dhobie itch gives rise to is often very great. In hot, damp weather especially, the various germs proliferate very actively, producing what is often a severe dermatitis. The excessive irritation leads to scratching and, very likely, from secondary bacterial invasion, to boils or small abscesses. The crutch or axillæ, or both, are sometimes rendered so raw and tender that the patient



may be unable to walk or to dress even. The irritation and itching are usually worse at night, and may keep the patient awake for hours. Even in the absence of treatment, when the cold season comes round the dermatitis and irritation subside spontaneously. The affected parts then become dry, pigmented, and scurfy, and the fungus remains quiescent until the return of the next hot weather.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of mycotic dermatitis is usually easily made. The festooned margin is almost conclusive. In the case of pemphigus contagiosus the characteristic blebs, the smooth, raw, or glazed surfaces, and undermined epidermic rings are usually very apparent and render diagnosis easy. When doubt exists the microscope may be necessary; but, owing to the inflamed condition of the parts, there may be much difficulty in finding fungus elements even when the case is certainly epiphytic. A negative result is, therefore, not always conclusive against ringworm.

I am convinced that many cases of dhobie itch are produced by *Microsporon minutissimum*, and that they are really inflamed erythrasma and not trichophyton ringworm. During cold weather one often sees in the site of what, during the summer, had been a troublesome dhobie itch, a brownish furfuraceous discoloration of the crutch or axilla. The same appearance I have remarked in Europe in Europeans who had suffered from dhobie itch in the East, and on examining scrapings from the parts have found *M. minutissimum* in abundance. It would seem, therefore, that during the heat and moisture of a tropical summer this generally very unirritating parasite becomes more active and excites smart dermatitis. The same may sometimes be seen in pityriasis versicolor. I believe that those cases of *microsporon-furfur* and *minutissimum*—dhobie itch are more easily cured than the trichophyton varieties.

**Treatment.**—After a thorough use of soap and water, the application of Vleminck's solution of



sulphuret of calcium (1 oz. quicklime, 2 oz. precipitated sulphur, 15 oz. water, boiled together in an earthenware vessel till reduced to 10 oz.; decant the clear sherry-coloured fluid after subsidence) every night for three or four times, generally brings about a rapid cure. A tincture of the leaves of *Cassia alata* painted on, or the crushed leaves themselves well rubbed in, are equally successful. If these fail, chrysophanic acid ointment, twenty grains to the ounce of vaseline, rubbed in twice a day till a slight erythema shows at the edge of the diseased patch, is almost invariably successful. When prescribing chrysophanic acid the physician must be careful to inform the patient of its staining effect on clothes; to warn him to stop its use so soon as the erythematous ring shows; and to be careful not to apply the ointment to the face. A writer in the *Indian Med. Gaz.* (Jan., 1898) strongly recommends the application of glacial acetic acid. It cures, he affirms, with, at most, two applications. The smarting its use entails is relieved by laying a lump of ice in a handkerchief on the part. For the ringworms of the thick-skinned natives linimentum iodi freely applied, and of double strength, is the best, and a most efficient, remedy.

**Prophylaxis.**—The various forms of crutch dhobie itch may be avoided by wearing next the skin short cotton bathing-drawers and changing them daily, at the same time powdering, after the daily bath, the axillæ and crutch with equal parts of boric acid, oxide of zinc, and starch.

TINEA IMBRICATA\* (Fig. 102).

**Definition.**—A form of body ringworm peculiar to certain Eastern oceanic tropical climates, produced by a *Trichophyton* (*Lepidophyton*, Tribondeau),

\* *Brit. Journ. of Dermatology*, No. 39, vol. iv.; Bonnafy, *Arch. de Méd. Nav.*, Oct., 1893; Tribondeau, *Arch. de Méd. Nav.*, July, 1899.







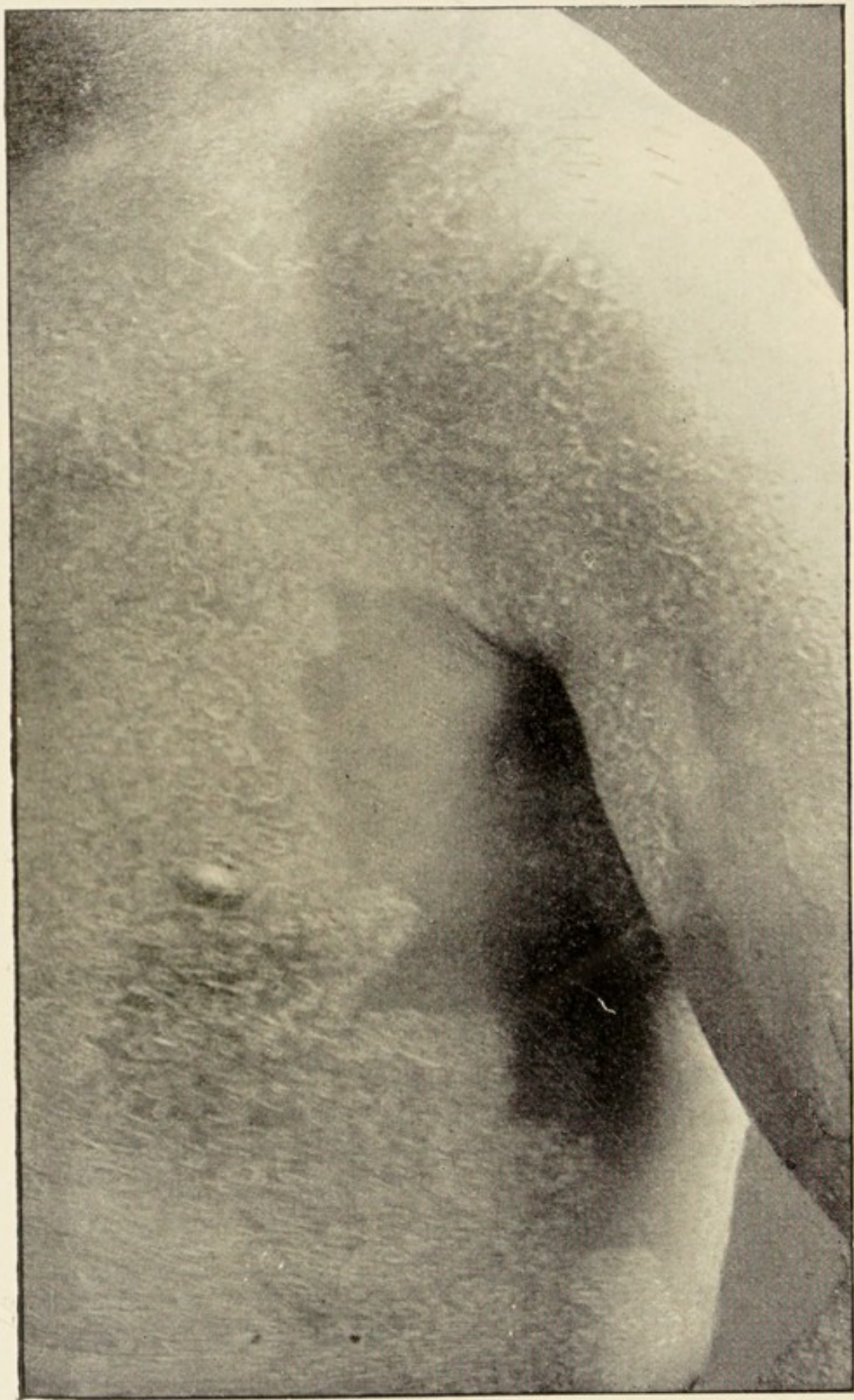


Fig. 102.—TINEA IMBRICATA.

[To face p. 629.



and characterised by a concentric arrangement of closely set rings of scaling epidermis.

**Geographical distribution.**—This peculiar form of epiphytic disease is strictly confined to warm climates. It is principally met with in the Eastern Archipelago and in the islands of the South Pacific, although it has been found to extend westward as far as Burma, and northward as far as Foochow and Formosa on the coast of China. In many of the islands of the South Pacific it affects a large proportion of the inhabitants; in some islands quite one-half. There is good reason to believe that its area of distribution is gradually extending. Thus Turner and Königer tell us that it was formerly unknown in Samoa and Bowditch Islands, where it is now very prevalent. Dr. Daniels also informs me that it was introduced for the first time into Fiji by some Solomon Islanders in 1870; by 1872, he says, it had become general among the Fijians. It was recently introduced into Tahiti and rapidly spread there among the natives. We have no accounts of such a disease in Africa or America; it is probable, however, that ere long it will be introduced into the tropical parts of both of these continents. Once introduced, it spreads very rapidly in countries with a damp, equable climate and a temperature of between 80° and 90° Fahr. Very high or low temperatures and a dry atmosphere are inimical to its extension.

**Symptoms.**—*Tinea imbricata* is easily recognised. At first it may be confined to one or two spots on the surface of the body; usually, in a short time, it comes to occupy a very large area. It does not generally affect the soles and palms, although it may do so; nor is the scalp a favourite site. Dr. Oswald Baker, confirmed by Tribondeau, remarks that it avoids the crutch, the axillæ, and the nails. With these exceptions it may, and commonly does, sweep over and keep its hold on nearly the entire surface of the body; so that after a year or two a large part of the skin is covered with the dry, tissue-paper-like



scales, arranged in more or less confused systems of concentric parallel lines, absolutely characteristic of the disease.

An inoculation experiment readily explains the production of the scales, their concentric parallel arrangement, and the mode of extension of the patches. About ten days after the successful inoculation of a healthy skin with *tinea imbricata*, the epidermis at the seat of inoculation is seen to be very slightly raised and to have a brownish tinge. Presently the centre of this brownish patch—perhaps a quarter of an inch in diameter—gives way and a ring of scaling epidermis, attached at the periphery but free, ragged, and slightly elevated towards the centre of the spot, is formed. In a few days this ring of epidermis has extended so as to include a larger area. A second brown spot then appears at the site of the first brown spot and in the centre of the primary scaling, expanding ring. This second spot, in its turn, gives way, producing a second and similar scaling ring, which also expands, following the first ring in its extension. Later a third and fourth ring form in the same way; and so on, until a large area of skin is covered with one or more systems of concentric parallel scaling rings, which follow each other over the surface of the body like the concentric ripples produced by a stone falling into a pool of water.

The scales, if not broken by rubbing, may attain considerable length and breadth; but, of course, their dimensions are in a measure determined by the amount of friction they are subjected to. Usually they are largest between the shoulders—that is, where the patient has a difficulty in scratching himself. The lines of scales are from one-eighth of an inch to half an inch apart. The hair of the scalp is not injured.

*The fungus.*—On detaching a scale and placing it under the microscope, after moistening with liquor potassæ, a trichophyton-like fungus can be seen in enormous profusion. This fungus has not been cultivated, but Tribondeau, on the evidence of finding



fructification in one observation pronounces it to be a *Lepidophyton* and not a *Trichophyton*. The parasite evidently lies between epidermis and rete, and by its abundance causes the former to peel up. As the fungus does not die out in the skin travelled over, it burrows under the young epithelium almost as soon as the latter is reproduced. Hence the peculiar concentric scaling and the persistency of the disease throughout the area involved. When the scales are washed off by the vigorous use of soft soap and hot water, the surface of the skin is seen to be covered with parallel lines of a brownish colour—evidently the slightly pigmented fungus proliferating and advancing under the young epidermis.

**Diagnosis.**—From ordinary ringworm it is easily distinguished by the absence of marked inflammation or congestion of the rings, by the abundance of the fungus, by the large size of the scales, by the concentric arrangement of the many rings or systems of rings, by the non-implication of the hair, and, according to Dr. Oswald Baker, by the avoidance of crutch and axillæ. From ichthyosis it is distinguished by the concentric arrangement of the scaling, by the peripheral attachment of the scales, and by the presence of abundant fungus elements.

**Treatment.**—The best treatment for *tinea imbricata* in natives is the free application of strong linimentum iodi. Limited patches might be treated with chrysophanic acid ointment (twenty grains to one ounce) or by the inrubbing of bruised *Cassia alata* leaves. Sulphur ointment, or sulphur fumes, act very slowly and unsatisfactorily. Clothes should be boiled or burned.

**Prophylaxis.**—Dr. Daniels informs me that *tinea imbricata* is comparatively rare in Tonga. This circumstance the natives attribute to their custom of oiling the body. Dr. Daniels remarks that since the Fijians adopted of late years the same practice, the disease has become somewhat less prevalent among them. Cleanliness, and the immediate and active



treatment of any scaling spot, should be carefully practised in the endemic countries.

In Tahiti the use of chrysophanic acid is now general among the natives; as a consequence the disease is not so prevalent there as it was only a few years ago.

#### PINTA.

**Definition.**—An epiphytic disease characterised by peculiar pigmented patches on the skin.

**Geographical distribution.**—In certain districts in tropical America—especially along the river banks in Mexico, Central America, Venezuela, Colombia, Bolivia, and one or two places in Peru, Chili, and Brazil—the district between the Juciparana and the Santo Antonio rivers (Magalhães, private letter)—there occurs an epiphytic skin disease characterised by peculiar red, or blue, or black, or white piebald spotting of the skin of a part, or of the whole, of the body. The patient emits an offensive odour, sometimes compared to that of a mangy dog, or of dirty linen. Desquamation and itching of the patches are also features of the disease. It entails no constitutional disturbance and no danger to life. Like other epiphytic diseases, want of personal cleanliness has a great deal to do with the prevalence of pinta in the districts mentioned, for it is rare in cleanly whites or well-to-do negroes; the dirty Indians and the poor half-castes are those most frequently affected. In some districts it occurs in nearly a tenth part of the inhabitants, in others nearly the entire population is affected. Lately a somewhat similar disease has been seen in North Africa (Legrain, *Arch. de Parasit.*, Jan., 1898.)\*

\* It is difficult from his description to determine the exact nature of the disease alluded to by Legrain. It commences with pronounced fever lasting for one week, and is followed by malaise persisting for several weeks. This is followed by itching and, by-and-by, by furfuraceous desquamation of the itching parts and gradually developed achromia. He positively affirms the disease is not ordinary vitiligo. He also says that he has seen in Tripoli a coloured skin affection with the clinical features of true



Pinta commences at one or two points, the rest of the surface becoming infected in turn by extension or by auto-contagion. In the first instance the hands, or face, or some other exposed parts, are attacked. The original patch may be white, red, blue, or black. It gradually increases in size, becoming scurfy and itchy, particularly when the surface is warm. As the patches spread they assume a variety of shapes. Fresh spots appear in the neighbourhood of the parent spots, into which, in course of time, they tend to merge; so that ultimately large patches of discoloured skin are formed. The palms of the hands and the soles of the feet are not attacked. On the scalp becoming affected the hair turns white and thin, and ultimately falls out. When fully developed, the disease produces a very grotesque appearance. It is probable that the white patches in a proportion of cases are not epiphytic, as they neither itch nor desquamate; very likely they are ordinary leucodermia, brought about by disturbance of the natural pigmentation of the skin by a parasite which had subsequently died out. Sensation and the glandular functions of the skin are not affected. In consequence of the scratching, the implicated parts may become cracked or ulcerated.

Two types of the disease have been named—the superficial epidermic and the deep epidermic; the former being represented by black and blue patches which spread rapidly; the latter including the red and white patches, apparently involving the rete and deeper layers of the epidermis, spreading more slowly, and, at the same time, being more difficult to cure. The various forms and colours may concur in the same individual; but a given patch, once established, does not change colour.

pinta, occurring in little epidemics in particular houses. The results of microscopical examinations of scrapings of the affected skin were negative. Possibly this is the disease referred to in the *Journ. of Trop. Med.*, Nov., 1899, by Sandwith, as having been seen by him in Egypt.



Pinta is contagious, and attacks both sexes and any age. Unless properly treated it may last for years.

**Pathology.**—If one of the scales is moistened with liquor potassæ and placed under the microscope, black spores and a white, highly refracting mycelium are found. The spores are round or oval, measuring  $8\mu$  to  $12\mu$  in diameter. Abundant pigment is seen floating in a yellowish fluid in the interior of the spore. The mycelial filaments are short, non-branching, tapering from a broad base to a blunt point by which each filament is attached to a single spore, like the stalk to a cherry. The mycelium measures from  $18\mu$  to  $20\mu$  in length by  $2\mu$  in breadth. The differences in the colour of the patches probably depend on differences in the pigmentation, or kind, of the fungus. Such is Gastambide's description of the parasite, a description which, to some extent, is borne out by Dr. Osborne Browne in the *Journ. of Trop. Med.*, Jan., 1900.

Montoya y Florez (*Recherches sur les Caratés de Colombie*, 1898) has published an elaborate and careful description of the disease and of the various mycotic growths he found in the several varieties of pinta which he has studied. He says that he has never seen a fungus answering to Gastambide's description. On placing the scales moistened with liquor potassæ under the microscope long, dichotomous filaments, generally very fine and cylindrical, in certain conditions granular and beaded, are seen. In places this mycelium forms a dense network. Here and there veritable ropes of mycelium are visible, or broad, short filaments with fructification characteristic of the particular variety of the disease may be detected (Fig. 103). He has succeeded in cultivating the various fungi which apparently belong to a plurality of genera—*Penicillium*, *Aspergillus*, *Monilia*.

**Diagnosis.**—This disease is readily diagnosed from leprosy by the absence of anæsthesia in the patches, and by the colour of the spots; from



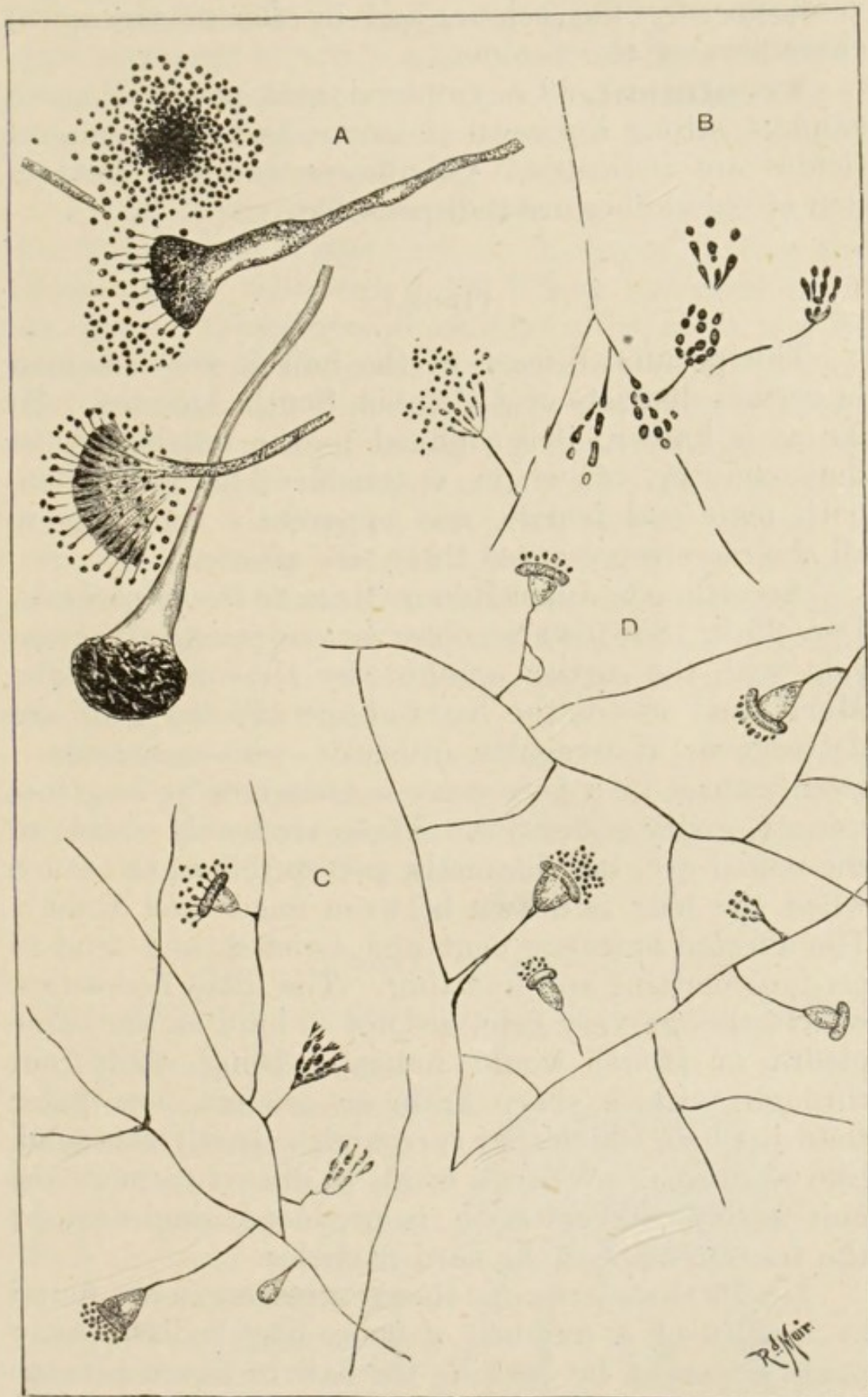


Fig. 103.—FRUCTIFICATION OF CRYPTOGAMIC EPIPHYTES IN PINTA.  
 (After Montoya y Florez.)  
 A, Red pinta ; B, dark violet pinta ; C, grey violet pinta ; D, blue pinta.



erythrasma, from ringworm, and from pityriasis versicolor by the colour, and by the microscopical characters of the fungus.

**Treatment.**—Chrysophanic acid, preparations of sulphur, strong liniment of iodine, and other epiphytides are indicated. Cleanliness and the destruction of old clothes are indispensable.

#### PIEDRA.

This peculiar disease of the hair is very common in certain districts of Colombia, South America. So far as is known, it is confined to the inhabitants of that country, of whom a considerable proportion, both male and female, and apparently belonging to all the races represented there, are affected.

According to Juhel-Rénoy (*Ann. de Derm. et Syph.*, Dec. 25th, 1888), whose observations practically coincide with the earlier accounts by Desenne, Cheadle, Morris and others, the hairs of the affected scalp are dotted over at irregular intervals with numerous—twenty-three in a hair sixty centimetres in length—minute, gritty nodosities. These are barely visible to the naked eye, but distinctly perceptible to the touch when the hair is drawn between finger and thumb. The affected hairs are bent and twisted, and tend to produce matting and knotting. The little nodosities, which, though very firm, are not so hard as the name piedra (a stone) would indicate, being easily cut through with a sharp knife or scissors, are paler than the hair which they surround, or partly surround, like a sheath. When a comb is drawn through the hair a sort of crepitation is produced, doubtless by the friction against the hard particles.

Under the microscope these excrescences are found to consist of a number of spore-like bodies, easily made apparent by soaking the hair in liquor potassæ after washing in ether. The spores (which are twice the size of trichophyton spores and remarkably refringent) from mutual pressure are polyhedral, and



together form a sort of tessellated mosaic, the elements of which seem to be held together by a greenish soluble cement in which a number of minute bacteria-like rods are incorporated. The shaft of the hair is not eroded or affected in any way; it can be seen intact through the encrusting fungus.

Piedra is supposed by some to be induced by the mucilaginous hair applications in vogue among the Colombians. Although Juhel-Rénoy has given to it the name "trichomycose nodulaire," it must not be confounded with the trichomycosis nodosa of Paterson (the leptothrix of Wilson), which is quite a different affection and common enough on the axillary, scrotal, and face hair in Europe and elsewhere. Neither must it be confounded with trichorexis nodosa, a non-parasitic disease of the hair-shaft, which is split up at different points into brush-like bundles of fibres and is thus easily fractured; nor with moniliform hair (monilethrix, Crocker), a congenital, hereditary, and also non-parasitic disease.

**Treatment.**—Cleanliness, the free use of soap, and the application of some epiphyticide should suffice for cure. Should such means fail, doubtless shaving the scalp would be effectual.

#### IV.—*Caused by animals.*

##### THE CHIGGER OR SAND FLEA (*Pulex penetrans*).

This insect, formerly confined to the tropical parts of America (30° N. to 30° S.) and to the West Indies, appeared on the West Coast of Africa for the first time about the year 1872. Since that date not only has it spread all over the tropical parts of that continent but, according to

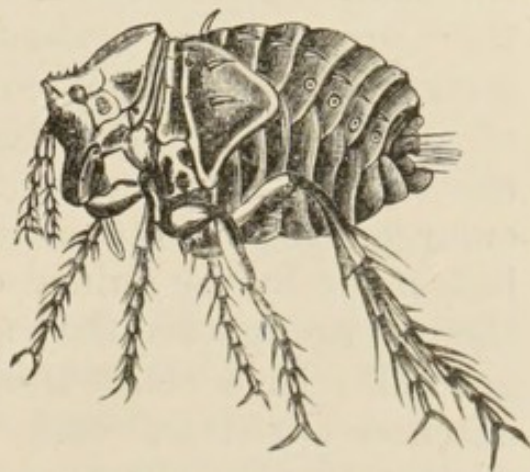


Fig. 104.—Chigger (*Pulex penetrans*).  
(Blanchard.)



Blandford (*Entomologists' Monthly Mag.*, May, 1894), has made its appearance in China. As a cause of suffering, invaliding, and indirectly of death, it is an insect of some importance. It is now extremely prevalent on the East Coast of Africa, and is causing a large amount of invaliding amongst the Indian coolies there, by whom, it is to be feared, it may be introduced into Bombay.

The chigger (Fig. 104) is not unlike the common flea (*Pulex irritans*) both in appearance and, with one exception, in habit. It is

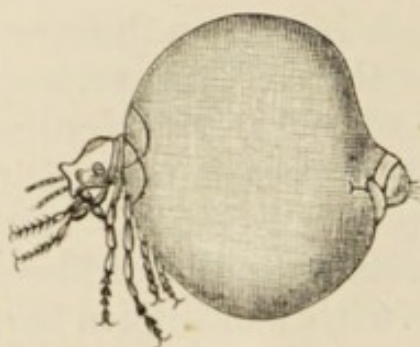


Fig. 105.—Chigger; impregnated female. (Blanchard.)

somewhat smaller in size, the head being proportionately larger and the abdomen deeper than in the latter insect. In colour it is red or reddish brown. Like the flea, its favourite haunt is in dry, sandy soil, the dust and ashes in badly kept native huts, the stables of cattle, poultry

pens, and the like. It greedily attacks all warm-blooded animals, including birds and man. Until impregnated, the female, as well as the male, is free, feeding intermittently as opportunity offers. So soon as she becomes impregnated she avails herself of the first animal she encounters to burrow diagonally into its skin, where, being well nourished by the blood of the host, she proceeds to ovulation. By the end of this process her abdomen, in consequence of the growth of the eggs it contains, has attained the size of a small pea. (Fig. 105.) The first anterior and the two posterior segments do not participate in the enlargement, the latter acting as a plug to the little hole made by the animal on entering the skin. When the ova are mature they are expelled and fall on the ground. In a short time a thirteen-ringed larva is hatched out from each egg. This larva presently encloses itself in a cocoon, from which, in eight to ten days, the perfect insect emerges.



During her gestation the chigger causes a considerable amount of irritation. In consequence of this pus forms around the distended abdomen, which now raises the inflamed integument into a pea-like elevation. After the eggs are laid (according to some,

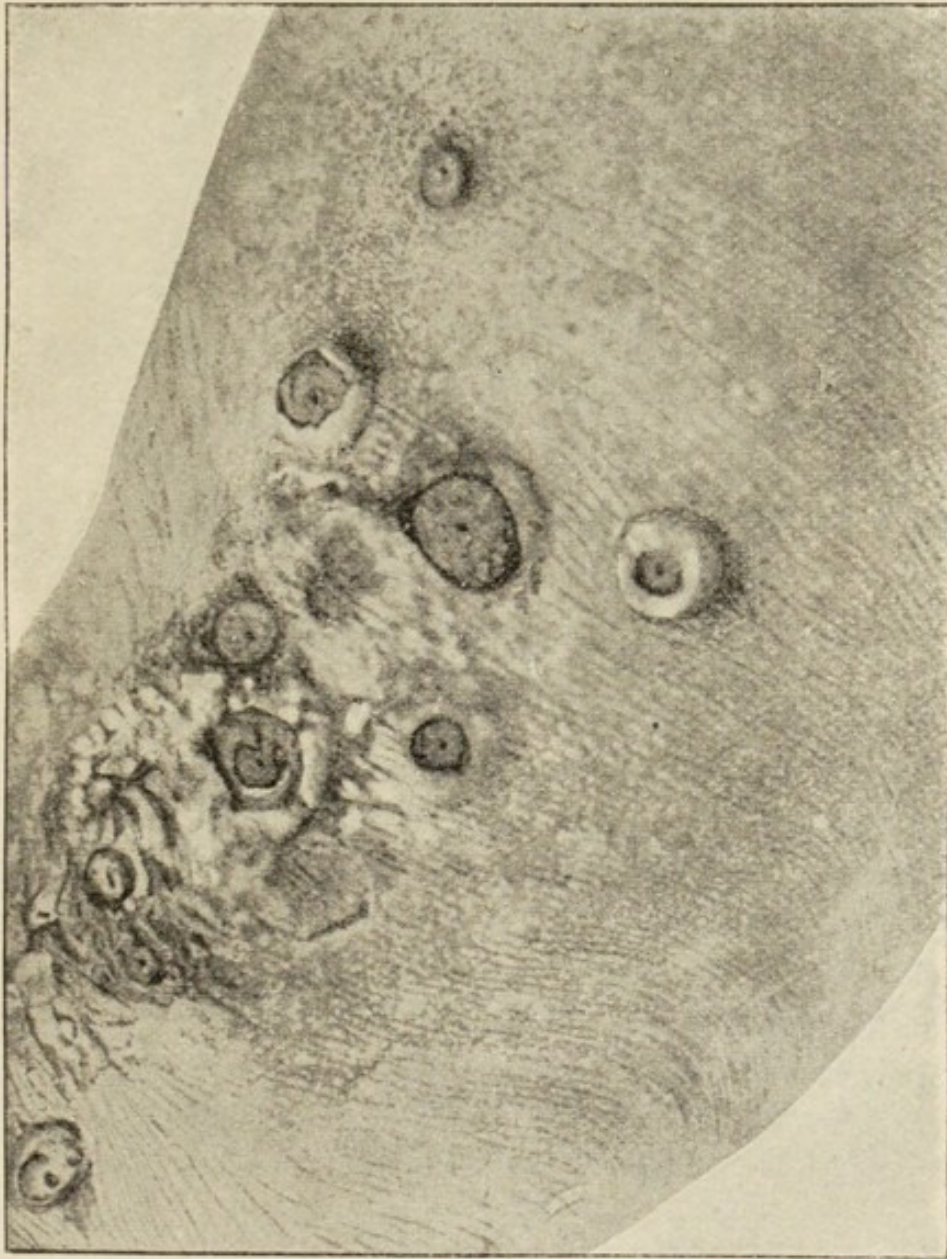


Fig. 106.—CHIGGERS IN SOLE OF FOOT.  
(From a photograph by Dr. Daniels.)

before this process) the superjacent skin ulcerates and the chigger is expelled, leaving a small sore which, if infected by any pathogenic micro-organism, as the bacterium of phagedæna or of tetanus, may lead to grave consequences.



Naturally, being nearest the ground, the feet are the parts most commonly infested by chiggers. The soles of the feet (Fig. 106), the skin between the toes, and that at the roots of the nails are favourite situations.



Fig. 107.—Chigger lesions of hands and feet.  
(From a photograph by Dr. Daniels.)

Other parts of the body are by no means exempt ; the scrotum, penis, the skin around the anus, the thighs, and even the hands (Fig. 107) and face are often attacked. Usually only one or two chiggers are found at a time ; occasionally they are present in hundreds, the little pits left after their extraction being sometimes so closely set that parts of the surface may look like a honeycomb.

**Treatment.**—In chigger countries, houses, par-



ticularly the ground floors, must be frequently swept and accumulation of dust and *débris* be prevented. The housing of cattle and poultry must be similarly attended to. The floors should be sprinkled often with carbolic water, insect powder, or similar insecticide. Walking barefooted must be avoided. Bathing must be practised daily, and any chiggers that may have fastened themselves on the skin at once removed. They may be killed by pricking them with a needle, or by the application of chloroform, turpentine, mercurial ointment, or similar means, after which they are expelled by ulceration. The best treatment, however, is not to wait for ulceration, but to enlarge the orifice of entrance with a sharp, clean needle and neatly to enucleate the insect entire. Some native women, from long practice, are experts at this little operation. The part must be carefully dressed and protected until whole.

## MYIASIS.

THE SCREWORM (*Lucilia macellaria*).

This is the larva of a dipterous insect (Fig. 108) common in certain parts of America, from the United States to the Argentine. The insect lays her eggs on

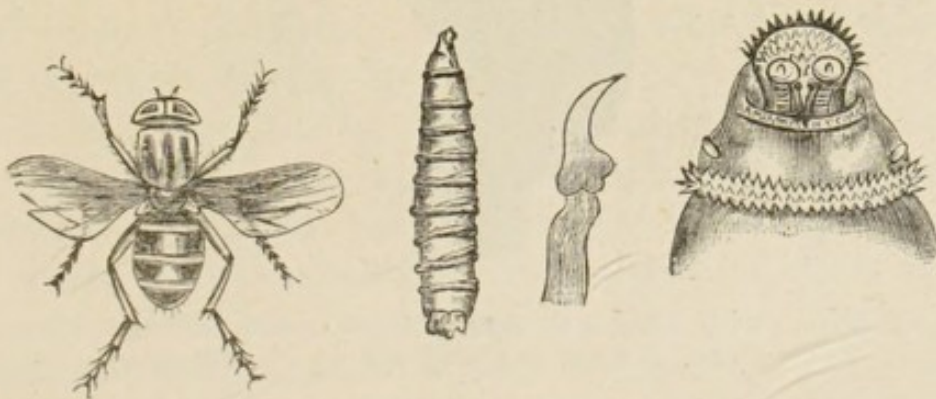


Fig. 108.—Screwworm. (Blanchard.)

the surface of wounds, and in the ears and nasal fossæ of persons sleeping in the open air. From these eggs the larvæ are hatched. The latter are white, about three quarters of an inch in length, and formed of twelve segments carrying circles of minute spines so



arranged as to give the creature a screw-like appearance; hence the vulgar name. They burrow in the tissues, devouring the mucous membrane, muscles,

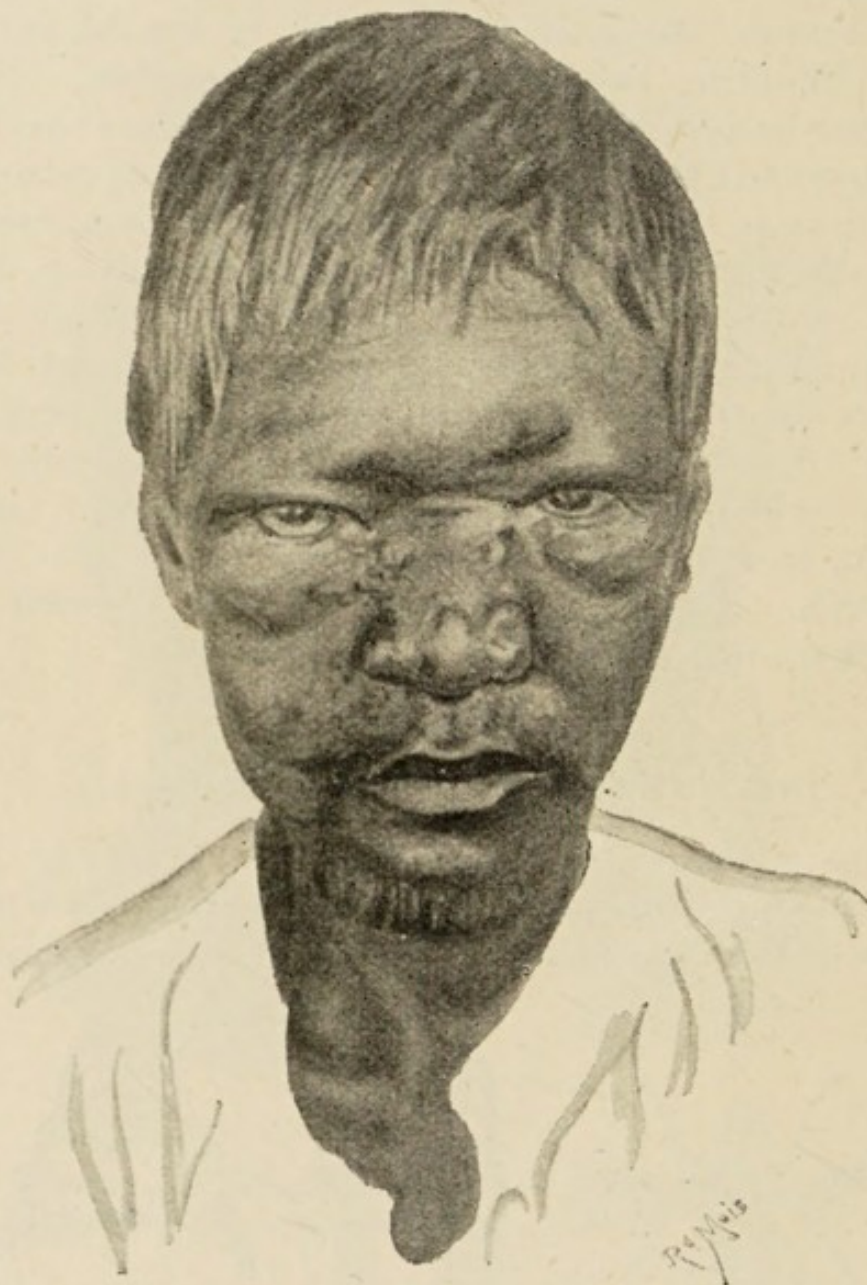


Fig. 109.—Native with *Lucilia macellaria* in nostrils and frontal sinuses; early stage. (From a photograph by Dr. Daniels.)

cartilages, periosteum, and even the bones, thereby causing terrible sores, and not infrequently, particularly when they attack the ear or nasal fossæ, by penetrating to the brain, death. (Fig. 109.) In thirteen cases collected by Laboulbène nine proved fatal; in thirty-one collected by Maillard twenty-one died.



If treated properly and in time by injections of chloroform, carbolic acid, turpentine, and similar substances, the patient may be saved; neglected, he will most probably die. If necessary the frontal sinuses, the antrum, and other bony cavities must be opened to secure the expulsion of the larvæ. In countries where this pest occurs bloody and offensive discharges from the nostrils should be carefully investigated, and if found to be caused by the screwworm vigorously treated.

VER MACAQUE (*Dermatobia noxialis*) (Fig. 110).

This is the larva of an American fly the identity of which, until it was studied by Blanchard (*Bul.*



Fig. 110. — *Dermatobia noxialis*. (Blanchard.)

*de la Soc. Cent. de Méd. Vétérinaire*, July 9th, 1896), was rather doubtful, some naturalists considering that it might be the larva of *D. cyaniventris*. Blanchard has now shown that the latter never attacks man or domestic animals. Though *D. cyaniventris* is somewhat larger than *D. noxialis*, it is much less formidable. *D. noxialis* occurs about wooded lands, and deposits her eggs on cattle and dogs and occasionally on man. When hatched out the larvæ penetrate the skin and produce an inflamed swelling about the aperture of entrance, from which a sero-purulent fluid, containing the black fæces of the larva, exudes. Depied (*Arch. de Méd. Nav.*, February, 1897) says that he has twice encountered this larva (the identity of which he ascertained by developing the insect) in the scalp of Tonquinese.



VER DU CAYOR (*Ochromyia anthropophaga*).

This insect and larva occur in the district of Cayor, Senegambia. The larva burrows into the skin and produces a small inflamed swelling, from which it emerges in from six to seven days.

In Africa, and in many other parts of the tropical world, similar anthropophagous larvæ, which, however, have not yet been satisfactorily identified, are frequently encountered.

## IXODIASIS.

The numerous observations which in recent years have established the fact that many of the blood parasites of vertebrates habitually employ blood-eating arthropodes as intermediary hosts, either for the completion of their development or for passage from host to host, countenance the notion that those essentially blood-eating animals, the ticks, may fill a similar rôle. Indeed, this has already been proved as regards the parasite (*Pirosoma bigeminum*) of Texas cattle fever (p. 4), which, as originally shown by Smith and Kilborne and confirmed by Koch, after being abstracted by the tick (*Rhipicephalus sanguineus* v. *Boophilus bovis*) passes into the egg, and so into the young of this acarus by which, when the acarus comes to feed, it is in turn introduced into the body of another bovine. Certain imperfect observations in respect of two species of tick, *Acarus persicus* and *Acarus moubata*, point to a similar transmission of pathogenic organisms by them to man. In the hope that by calling attention to the subject something more definite may be elicited, I have condensed the little that is known about the pathological effects sometimes, though not invariably, produced by the bites of these animals. The facts that these bites are not invariably followed by serious consequences, that when serious consequences do ensue these are not evanescent, and that they confer immunity, suggest that something more than simple



poisoning by an animal secretion occurs, most likely something of the nature of the introduction of a living germ.

The ticks, or wood-lice, are allied to the spiders, and belong to the order *Acarus*, of which they are the largest specimens. They are all of them parasitic on land vertebrates, most of them having special zoological distributions, although each may have a limited variety of hosts. Consequently most species have a restricted geographical range; a few, being parasitic on migratory birds and on domestic animals, are more cosmopolitan.

Briefly, their life-history is as follows:—The newly-hatched *larva* possesses only six legs, and breathes through stigmata placed behind each pair of limbs. The *larvæ* ascend plants, from which they transfer themselves to any passing animal. If this prove a suitable host the ticks attach themselves to its skin by means of their beaks for two or three days. After thus feeding they fall off and, lying concealed in the ground, undergo a first metamorphosis, during which they acquire a fourth pair of legs and additional stigmata. Thus furnished, the *pupa* ascends some plant, again feeds on a vertebrate host, and once more drops on the ground to undergo a final metamorphosis and acquire sexual organs. After impregnation, the male dying, the female finds her host, fills herself with blood, and, dropping off, lays many thousands of eggs. The life-span of the individual tick depends on circumstances. If unfed it may remain alive, though inactive, for several years.

#### ARGAS PERSICUS.

Several travellers have reported on a peculiar disease, especially common in Miana in the north of Persia, which the natives confidently attribute to the bite of *A. persicus*. According to Kotzebue and Waldheim, the bite of this tick is followed by severe pain, delirium, convulsions, and sometimes even by death. Schlimmer says the symptoms resemble those “of remittent fever—extreme lassitude, disinclination to work, yawning, fever, perspiration not accompanied by much thirst, increasing and decreasing at stated hours in the day.” Fatigued travellers and those who have undergone privations are specially liable. He relates that on one occasion (1858) he treated 400 soldiers who declared they had



been bitten by these ticks at Miana. Natives, he says, are immune, a circumstance he explains by previous attacks. According to Dupré, the Persians treat the disease by interdicting meat, acid or fermented drinks, and by the administration of sugar, which they regard as a specific.

*Argas persicus* is found in the north of Persia, where it is called Guérib-guez, Malleh, and Keuch bheb-guez. Its habits are similar to those of the common bed bug, infesting old houses, living in the cracks of walls, floors, or furniture, and coming out at night to feed on men or beasts. Kotzebue says that it may so infest a village as to drive away the inhabitants.

Megnin, because he experienced no ill effects from the bite of a four-year-old *A. persicus*, denied the pathogenic properties of this tick. Tholazan, however, who while in Persia paid special attention to the point, believes that its evil reputation is well deserved.

ORNITHODORUS MOUBATA (*Argas moubata*, Murray).

Dr. Livingstone was the first to describe the tick disease of Portuguese South Africa. He met with it at Ambaca and Tete on the Zambesi. He says, "the effects of the bite are a tingling sensation of mingled pain and itching, which gradually ascends the limb until it reaches the abdomen, where it soon causes violent vomiting and purging. When these effects do not follow, as we found afterwards at Tete, fever sets in; and I was assured by intelligent Portuguese there that death has sometimes resulted from this fever."

Later Sir John Kirk referred to the same disease, which he found in the Zambesi valley as high up as Sescheke, above Victoria Falls. "The symptoms," he says, "appear soon after the bite and are sharp fever, vomiting and often delirium; in about two days these pass off, but there is no marked profuse perspiration as in malarial fever. After recovery the



patient has complete immunity from further attacks however he may be bitten, but it is doubtful whether this immunity lasts for any length of time in case of removal."

Dr. Dowson, R.N., in a letter accompanying specimens of the tick sent to the British Museum, says, "the Portuguese believe that the severity of the subsequent symptoms depends on the number of bites received. Severe fever and dysentery, with great swelling around the anus, are stated to have occurred. . . . A Dutch trader assured me that he was bitten by one of these *acari* on the toe and that the bite was very painful. A few hours later he was seized with most violent abdominal pain, vomiting and purging. The stools contained blood. He was ill for three days afterwards, but said there was no fever at all."

Dr. Daniels, writing to me from British Central Africa, says, "I have come across tick fever. Usually several ticks must bite; they produce a small lump, which remains for two or three days. In from five to ten days the subject of the bites gets an attack of abdominal pain with vomiting and purging. The stools are somewhat dysenteric. This lasts for nearly a week and is accompanied by fever and rigors. After that fever continues often for three or four weeks. Some people are not susceptible; others get only one attack; a few may have several, but in time they also become immune. The case I saw, an adult, was in the second week of the illness and the purging had stopped. The temperature ranged from 100° F. to 102.3° F. Three blood examinations were negative. There were no physical signs."

In Tete the tick is called *Kufu* or *Bu* by the natives, *Tampan* or *Garrapato* by the Portuguese.

Mr. Pocock, the distinguished arachnologist of the British Museum, considers the Tete tick to be identical with *Ornithodoros moubata* found by Welwitsch in Angola. It has been confounded with *O. savignyi* of Egypt, Somaliland and British East Africa, but it



differs from this allied but non-pathogenic species in several minute anatomical details. *O. moubata* extends across Africa along the Zambesi valley and its tributaries. In habit it resembles the common bed bug, it inhabits old houses, hiding during the day in cracks and moving about actively during the night in search of the blood of man or beast. In some districts the natives protect themselves from the pest by plastering the walls and floors of their huts with mud and cow-dung, a practice adopted by the Boers, the Bechuanas and nearly all the cow-keeping native tribes. They frequently smoke their huts to drive the ticks from their lodgment in the thatch. The Portuguese at Tete have a great dread of the Garrapato, and always warn new arrivals not to place their beds on the ground, and to be careful to have the inside of their mosquito nets carefully searched for the tick before retiring for the night.

#### LEECHES.

In the grass and jungle lands of many tropical and subtropical countries land leeches, probably of several species, often occur in great abundance; so much so that in some circumstances they may prove to be something more than a nuisance. The *Hæmaphysa ceylonica* is one of the most active, as well as best known, of these. Before feeding it is about an inch in length and about the thickness of a knitting-needle. It clings to a leaf or twig awaiting the passing of some animal, on which it springs with remarkable activity; it at once attaches itself to the skin, and proceeds to make a meal on the blood. Animals are sometimes killed in this way; men even have been known to succumb to the repeated small bleedings by these pests. It is necessary, therefore, when passing through jungle lands in which leeches abound to have the feet and legs carefully protected. The bite is not infrequently the starting-point for a troublesome sore.

In the south of Europe and in the north of Africa



the horse-leech, *Hæmopsis sanguisuga*, sometimes gets into the gullet and nostrils of men as well as of animals. It has occasionally caused death by entering and occluding the air-passages. In Formosa I heard of and saw several instances of a similar form of parasitism, both in men and monkeys. To what particular species the leech in these cases belonged I do not know. Doubtless when very young they were taken in unperceived with foul drinking water, and, wandering around the soft palate, found their way into the nose. Occasionally, in the cases I refer to, the animal would protrude from the nares and wander over the upper lip. For a long time they contrived to elude all attempts at capture. By dipping the face in cold water they could generally be persuaded to show themselves. In one instance the leech dropped out spontaneously. In another—an American naturalist who had been travelling much in the interior of Formosa, and who had suffered from severe headache and profound anæmia, the result of repeated epistaxis—I succeeded in removing the leech by attaching through a speculum a spring forceps to its hinder end, and afterwards injecting salt and water. It would be well, therefore, to bear in mind that in tropical countries persistent headache, associated with recurring epistaxis, may be caused by a leech in the nostril.



## SECTION VII.—LOCAL DISEASES OF UNCERTAIN NATURE.

### CHAPTER XL.

#### CLIMATIC BUBO—GOUNDOU—AINHUM.

##### CLIMATIC BUBO.

SCHEUBE (*Arch. für klinische Med.*, vol. 64, translated in *Journ. of Tropical Medicine*, June-July, 1899) has applied the term climatic bubo to a type of non-venereal adenitis not uncommon in tropical climates. So far as available statistics show, the disease is specially prevalent among the crews of war-ships on the eastern coast of Africa. It occurs also in the Straits of Malacca, in China, where I have seen a fair number of cases both in landsmen and in sailors, in the West Indies, Japan, the Mediterranean and, probably, in many other places, including, perhaps, in a minor degree, Europe. It appears to be epidemic at times in certain places, and to prevail in groups of individuals living under similar hygienic conditions. Thus, Ruge reports thirty-eight cases in the German squadron blockading the Zanzibar coast in 1888-89; Godding (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, September 26th, 1896) notes its frequency in the British fleet, also on the East African coast; and Skinner (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, January 9th, 1897) mentions forty-nine cases which occurred in a regiment and battery of artillery, twenty-eight in Calcutta, thirteen in Hong-kong, four in England, two in Allababad, and two in Malta.

The disease generally commences with fever of a remittent type in association with inflammatory



swelling, usually of a sub-acute character, of the groin glands. The oblique inguinal glands are those most frequently affected, but at times it is the crural glands that are attacked. Sometimes both groins are affected, sometimes only one, sometimes one groin is attacked after the other. The affected glands slowly or more rapidly enlarge to the size of a hen's egg, or even larger. After several weeks, it may be months, the swelling slowly subsides. Occasionally the periglandular connective tissues inflame, the integuments become adherent, and suppuration ensues. If the suppurating glands be freely incised, or excised, the parts readily heal; but if they are left alone, or inefficiently treated, fistulous tracks form and may take a very long time to heal.

Hitherto no satisfactory explanation of this type of adenitis has been forthcoming. No special bacterium has been demonstrated in the tissues. There are no adequate reasons for supposing, as has been conjectured, that the disease has any connection with plague, or that it is a form of pestis minor. Most probably the adenitis depends on some virus which has been introduced through an overlooked wound or insect bite on the legs or genitals.

Treatment should consist in rest and soothing applications during the more acute stage. After pain and tenderness have subsided graduated elastic pressure should be applied. Concurrent malaria would call for quinine; syphilis—for mercury or the iodides.

#### GOUNDOU OR ANAKHRE (*Gros Nez*) (Fig. 111).

On December 10th, 1882, Professor A. MacAlister read a paper before the Royal Irish Academy on what were termed the horned men of Africa. In the *British Medical Journal* of December 10th, 1887, Surgeon-Major J. J. Lamprey gave further details, illustrated with drawings, on the same subject. He had seen three such cases on the West Coast of



Africa, all of them Fantees; one came from the Wassan territory, one from the Gamin territory, the third was a visitor to Cape Coast Castle. Dr. W. Renner (*Journ. Trop. Med.*, Jan., 1900) also reports and illustrates a case from the Sierra Leone River.

In the *Archives de Médecine Navale*, January, 1895, Maclaud calls attention to what is manifestly the same affection, which, according to him, occurs

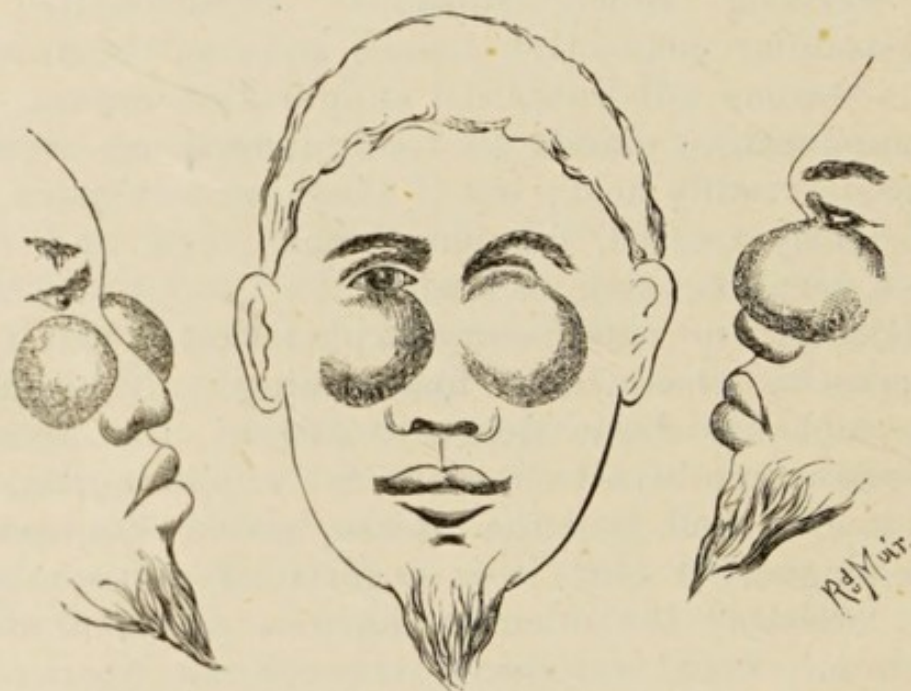


Fig. 111.—Goundou or Anakhre. (Maclaud.)

in a considerable proportion—one or two per hundred—of the inhabitants of certain villages on the Ivory Coast. The natives call it *goundou* and also *anakhre*. Maclaud says it is confined to the riverain districts of the lower Camoe; according to the information he received, if found elsewhere it is only in individuals who had previously resided in this district. Lamprey's and Renner's observations prove that *goundou* has a considerably wider distribution.

According to Maclaud, the disease usually commences soon after childhood, although adults may also be attacked. The earliest symptoms are severe and more or less persistent headache which, after a time, is associated with a sanguino-purulent discharge from the nostrils, and the formation of symmetrical



swellings the size of a small bean at the side of the nose. Apparently the swelling affects the nasal

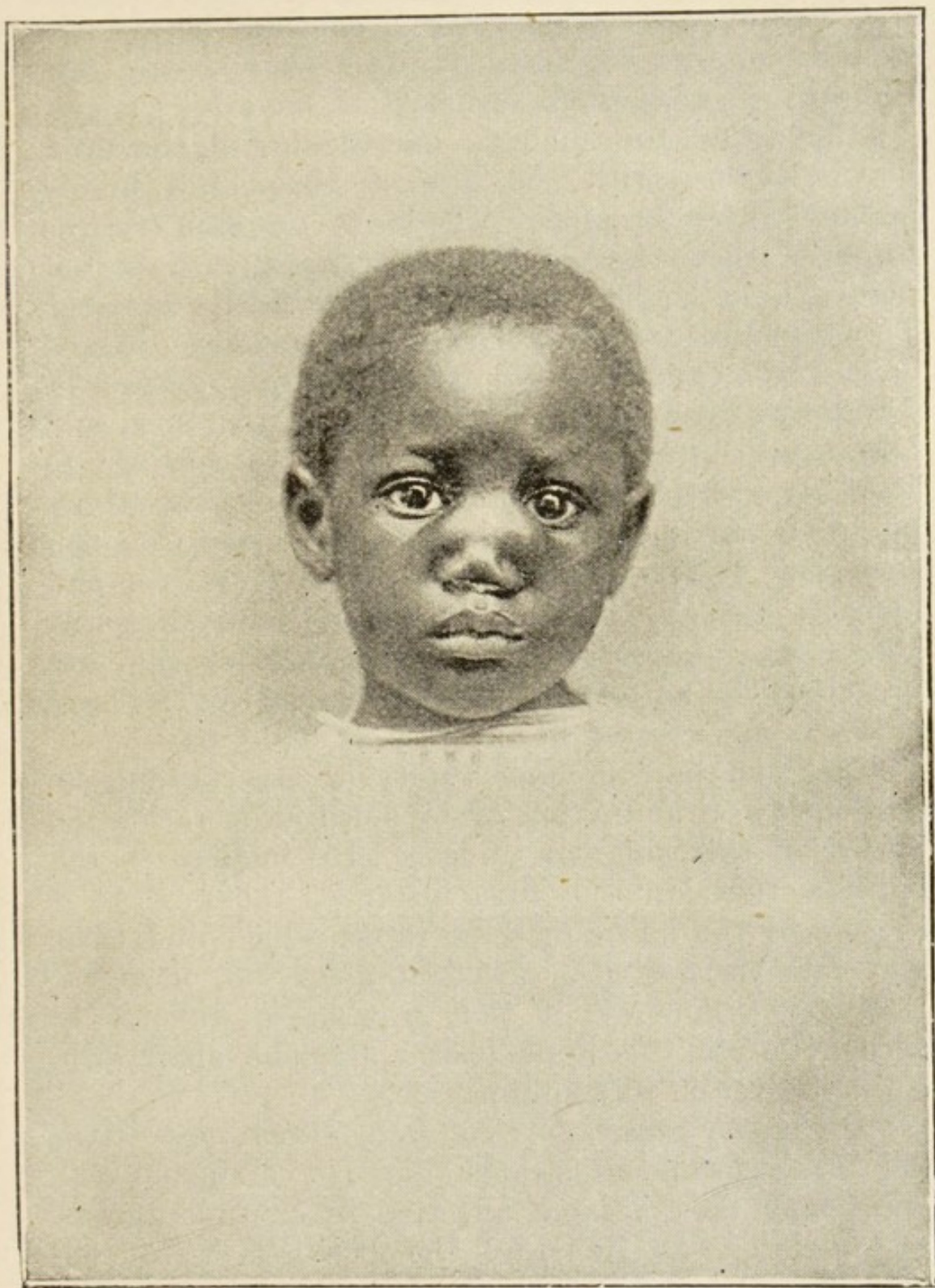


Fig. 112.—Goundon in a West Indian Child. (*Dr. Henry Strachan.*)

process of the superior maxilla. The cartilages are not involved. Although Maclaud does not refer to



this point, it may be assumed that the nasal ducts remain patent. After continuing for six or eight months, the headache and discharge subside. Not so the swellings; these persist and continue slowly and steadily to increase until in time they may attain the size of an orange, or even of an ostrich's egg. As they grow, the tumours, encroaching on the eyes, may interfere with the line of vision and finally destroy these organs. There is no pain in the tumours themselves. The superjacent skin is not involved, being healthy-looking and freely movable. The tumours are oval, with the long axes directed downwards and slightly from within outwards. Lamprey's drawings give a more elongated form and horizontal direction. They look, according to Maclaud, when of moderate dimensions, something like two half-eggs laid alongside the nose, one on each side. The nostrils are bulged inwards, and more or less obstructed; but, in the later stages at all events, there is no discharge, neither can any breach of the mucous surface be detected. The hard palate is not affected in any way.

Maclaud had no opportunity of ascertaining by *post-mortem* examination or by surgical operation the nature of this singular disease. He inclines to the opinion that, in the first instance, the process is started by the larvæ of some insect which find their way into the nostrils. I would point out, however, that the symmetry of the growths is difficult to account for on this hypothesis. Maclaud observed a similar affection in a chimpanzee.

Dr. Henry Strachan (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, Jan. 27th, 1894) records and illustrates (Fig. 112) an instance of what may be the same affection in a West Indian negro child. In this case the swellings were congenital, and had only increased in proportion to the child's growth. They were hard, smooth, bony masses, somewhat of the shape and size of an elongated pigeon's egg, and sprang from the nasal process of the superior maxillary and nasal bones. For



æsthetic reasons they were removed by the chisel, and were found to consist of compact bone with a cancellous core. Dr. Strachan states that he had seen two similar cases, and had often noted a "ridge" in this part of the face of West Indian negroes. He suggests that the condition may be an example of atavism, referable to some tribal peculiarity of the original West African stock.

Dr. Chalmers, Assistant Colonial Surgeon, Accra, has given (*Lancet*, January 6th, 1900) an admirable and well-illustrated account of this affection as seen on the Gold Coast, where it is fairly common and is known as "henpurge." He confirms Strachan as to the anatomical characters of the swellings, which he regards as the result of an osteoplastic periostitis due to yaws. He affirms that the morbid process begins during, or soon after, an attack of yaws, and is correlated in some way to an anatomical arrangement of the blood-vessels of the parts, an arrangement which, he gives the reader to infer, is peculiar to the negro of this part of Africa.

AINHUM (Fig. 113).

This is a disease of a very peculiar character, affecting the toes, particularly the little toes, of negroes, East Indians, and other dark-skinned races.

It commences as a narrow groove in the skin almost invariably on the inner and plantar side of the root of the little toe. It may occur on one foot only, or in both feet simultaneously, or it may affect one foot after the other. The groove, once started, deepens and extends gradually round the whole circumference of the toe. As the groove deepens—it may be, though not necessarily, with some amount of ulceration—the distal portion of the member is apt to swell to a considerable size, as if constricted by a ligature. There is little or no pain, although there may be inconvenience from the liability to injury to which the dangling and now everted toe is exposed. In the course of years the groove slowly deepens and finally



the toe drops off or is amputated. The groove may either correspond with a joint or it may be formed over the continuity of a phalanx. In rare instances, after the two distal phalanges have dropped off or been amputated, the disease recurs in the stump and the proximal phalanx in its turn is thrown off. Of

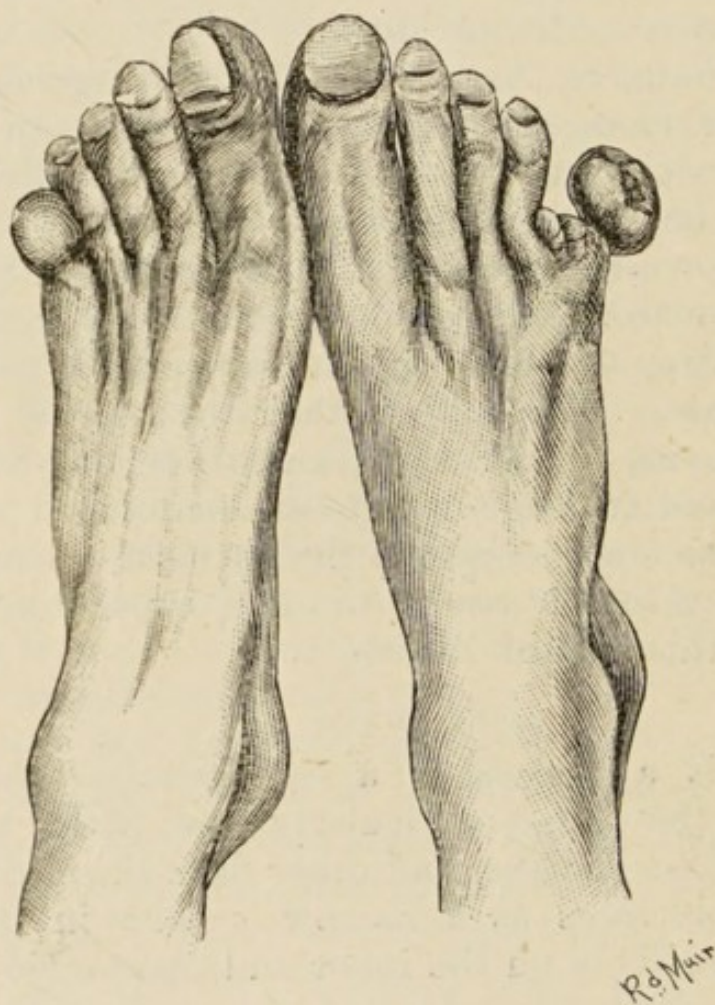


Fig. 113.—Ainhum.

the other toes the fourth is the one which is most frequently affected; very rarely are the third, or second, or great toes attacked. In the Army Medical Museum at Washington, U.S.A., there is a wax model representing a case of this, or a similar affection, in which all the toes had been thrown off and the disease was making progress in the leg. Ainhum is very rare in women or children, being most common in adult males. It runs its course in from one to ten or even more years.



On section it is found, as a rule, though not invariably, that the panniculus adiposus of the affected toe is much hypertrophied, that the bone is infiltrated with fatty matter, and that the other tissues are correspondingly degenerated. Sometimes the bone is thinned, or even altogether absorbed. At the seat of constriction a line of hypertrophy of the epithelial layers, and of atrophy of the papillary layer of the skin, together with a band of fibrous tissue more or less intimately connected with the derma, surround, in whole or in part, the narrow pedicle.

Nothing is known as to the true nature and cause of this disease, to which the European and white-skinned races are not, but to which the African races, particularly the negroes of the West Coast, are specially liable. Some have suggested that it is a trophic lesion depending upon some nervous affection. The occurrence of severe loin pains, which Dupouy says he remarked at the commencement in some of his cases, as well as the tendency of the affection to run in families, as noted by Da Silva Lima, affords a certain amount of support to this view. Others suggest that it is a manifestation of leprosy; others that it is a form of sclerodermia; others, again, and on equally inadequate grounds, that it is produced artificially by intentional ligation or by the wearing of toe rings. My own impression is that it is provoked, at all events in the first instance, by wounds—so easily inflicted on bare feet in walking through grass or jungle. The fold of skin in which the lesion of ainhum commences is very liable, especially in the splayed-out toes of the negro, to be wounded in this way. If we examine the under surface of the joint flexures of the toes in many individuals of this race, even of those not affected with ainhum, we often find the skin, particularly at the proximal joint of the little toe, thick, rough, scaling, and sometimes even ulcerated. One can understand that continual irritation of this sort, produced and kept up by wounds from sharp grasses and so forth, would in time give



rise, especially in the dark-skinned races so prone to keloid, to fibrotic changes in the derma, which might very well end in a sort of linear cicatricial contraction and ultimately in slow atrophying strangulation of the affected member. The disease is said, however, to have been seen in those who wear shoes; but, unless it could be shown that such individuals had always worn shoes, this objection to the explanation offered would not apply. I have seen a negro in whom the entire integument of the little toe was involved in a sclerodermia, and the part in consequence was shrunken and hide-bound, whilst the little toe of the other foot was affected with well-marked ordinary ainhum; the process was diffuse, as it were, on the one side, localised on the other.

The tail in certain species of monkey is liable to a similar disease. I have had under observation for some time a pet monkey in which the part corresponding to the distal vertebra dropped off in consequence of an ainhum-like linear constriction. Two months later the next vertebra was similarly amputated, and now a third groove is forming a little higher up the tail.

**Treatment.**—It has been suggested that division of the constricting fibrous band would delay the evolution of the disease. In the early stage this might be tried. When troublesome the affected toe should be amputated.



# INDEX.

- Abdominal diseases, 287  
 Abortive plague, 183  
 Abscess of the liver, 374  
 Advice to new-comers in the tropics, 123  
 Adynamic remittent fever, 72  
*Ædes*, 31  
 Estivo-autumnal parasite, 63  
 ——— tertian temperature chart, 68  
 ——— three parasites, 64  
 Ætiology of malaria, 113  
 ——— influence of trees, etc., 118  
 African fevers, 56  
 — hæmoglobinuric fever, 78  
 — lethargy, 280  
 — tick fever, 218  
 Ague, 53  
 — cake, 109  
 — fit, time of onset, 55  
 — Quotidian, 56  
 — Quartan, 56  
 — Tertian, 56  
 — Urine in, 55  
 Ainhum, 655  
 — ætiology, 657  
 — Author's views on, 657  
 — duration, 656  
 — in tail of monkey, 658  
 — onset, 655  
 — Section of, 656  
 — symptoms, 655  
 — treatment, 658  
 Algide, Malarial, pernicious attacks, 76.  
 Amblyopia, Malarial, 74, 75  
 — Quinine, 75  
 — diagnosis from malarial, 74  
*Amœba coli*, 324, 331, 393, 395  
 — *diaphana*, 333  
 — *dysentericæ*, 332  
 — Appearances of, 331  
 — Examination for, 330, 335, 336  
 — *coli*, Gasser on, 333  
*Amœba dysentericæ coli*, Celli and Fiocca on, 333  
 — *guttula*, 333  
 — *oblonga*, 333  
 — *reticularis*, 333  
 — *vermicularis*, 333  
 Amœboid condition of malignant parasites, 64  
 — movement, 38  
 Amœbulæ, 27  
*Amphistomum hominis*, 598  
 — characters 598  
 Anakhre, 651  
*Anguillula stercoralis*, 354  
 Animal parasites and associated diseases, 480  
 Ankylostomiasis, 220, 581, 585  
 — a progressive anæmia, 587  
 — convalescence, 593  
 — Daniels on morbid anatomy, 590  
 — diagnosis, 588  
 — from malaria, 589  
 — history, 585  
 — its importance, 585  
 — in all cases of anæmia, 586  
 — leading to permanent degenerations, 589  
 — pathological anatomy and pathology, 589  
 — post-mortem, 590  
 — prophylaxis, 593  
 — by guarding water supply, 594  
 — rate of progress, 588  
 — symptoms, 586  
 — treatment, 591  
 — Precautions in use of thymol, 591  
 — with male fern, 591  
 — with other drugs, 592  
 — with thymol, 591  
*Ankylostomum duodenale*, 259, 267, 575, 577, 581  
 — adult form, 584  
 — embryo, 584



- Ankylostomum duodenale*, geographical distribution, 582  
 — — — male and female characters, 583  
 — — — nomenclature, 581  
 — — — Ova of, 578  
 — — — parasite, 582  
 — — — — habitat, 582  
 — — — reproduction and mode of infection, 584  
*Anopheles*, 30, 31, 122, 144  
 — *claviger*, 30  
 — Evolution of the crescent parasite in, 24  
 Anti-choleraic inoculations of Ferran, 312  
 — — — of Haffkine on himself, 314  
 — — — — on lower animals, 312  
 — — — — on man, 313  
 — — — — statistics, 313  
 — — — — symptoms, 313  
 — — — Powell's results, 314  
 Anti-pyrim in malaria, 140  
 Anti-typhoid inoculation, 224  
 Aperients in malaria, 139  
 Aphasia, Malarial, 73, 130  
 Aphthæ, Tropical, 353  
 Apoplexy from pernicious malaria, 129  
 — Heat, 73  
 Ardent fever, 73  
*Argas moubata*, 646  
 — *persicus*, 645  
 — — — geographical distribution, 645  
 — — — habits, 646  
 — — — symptoms, 645  
*Ascaris lumbricoides*, 575, 577, 578  
 — — — characters of ova, 577  
 — — — common in children, 578  
 — — — mode of infection, 579  
 — — — symptoms, 579  
 — — — treatment, 581  
 — — — with santonin, 581  
*Aspergillus*, 634  
 Asylum beriberi, 263  
 Atypical agues, 56
- Bacillus coli communis*, 324  
 — *dysenteriae*, 324  
 — *leprae*, 437  
 — *pyocyaneus*, 334  
 — *megma*, 437  
 — *tuberculosis*, 437, 438  
 — *typhosus*, 244  
*Bacterium coli commune*, 334, 394, 395  
 — — — Toxin of, in dysentery, 334  
 — *dysenteriae*, 334
- Bagdad boil, 476  
*Balantidium coli*, 394  
 Barbers, 250  
 Bastianelli on the staining reaction of crescents, 15  
 Bats, Dionisi's discovery of malaria parasites in, 29  
 Benign malarial fever, Clinical forms of, 70  
 — — — parasites, Kinds of, 50  
 — — — quartan parasite, 51, 86  
 — — — tertian chart, 62  
 — — — fever, 63  
 — — — Leucocytes in, 98  
 — — — flagellated body, 63  
 — — — infection, 61, 37  
 — — — parasite, 7, 22, 51, 61, 86  
 — — — compared with quartan, 61  
 — — — — evolution, 8  
 Beriberi, 154, 250  
 — a germ disease, 264  
 — a place disease like malaria, 262  
 — ætiology, 261  
 — and alcoholic neuritis, 267  
 — — Author's theory of, 267  
 — cardiac attacks, 260  
 — climatic conditions, 261  
 — Definition of, 250  
 — Diagnosis of, 271  
 — Dropsical cases of, 255  
 — — — and acute nephritis in, 256  
 — — — and hyperæsthesia in, 257  
 — — — — Oedema in, 257  
 — — — — Urine in, 257  
 — Dry variety of, 261  
 — Erroneous diagnosis in, 258  
 — — Theories of causation of, 266  
 — — Evidences of grave heart implication in, 271  
 — Fat starvation theory of, 265  
 — generated by a germ living in surroundings, 264  
 — Geographical distribution of, 250  
 — germ a saprophyte, 267  
 — Great variety in degree or symptoms of, 257  
 — Heart and circulation in, 255  
 — historical, 250  
 — hydrops, 261  
 — Hyperæsthesia in, 272  
 — in asylums, 263  
 — Influence of overcrowding in, 262  
 — its uncertain course, 259  
 — Knee-jerk in, 272  
 — Larval form of, 272  
 — Mixed, 257, 261  
 — Modes of death in, 269



- Beriberi, Morbid anatomy of, 268  
 — Mortality in, 271  
 — nitrogen starvation theory, 265  
 — Nomenclature and classification of, 261  
 — not communicable from man to man, 264  
 — œdema, 272  
 — Other germs in, 265  
 — paralysis of the diaphragm, 271  
 — paraplegic cases, 252  
 — — — — — anæsthesia, 252  
 — — — — — atrophy, 252  
 — — — — — peripheral neuritis, 254  
 — — — — — symptoms, 253  
 — — — — — tenderness, 253  
 — Pekelharing and Winkler's views, 265  
 — possibly caused by a toxin, 264  
 — post-mortem appearances, 268  
 — previous history of patients, 259  
 — prognosis, 270  
 — progress of the cases, 260  
 — serous effusions, 271  
 — sex, age, and occupation, 261  
 — ship, 262  
 — toxin, 267  
 — treatment by bleeding, 274  
 — — — — — by removal, 273  
 — — — — — diet, 273  
 — — — — — medicinal, 272  
 — — — — — of cardiac cases, 273  
 — — — — — on board ship, 275  
 — vomiting, 271  
 — wet, 261  
 Beriberia atrophica, 261  
 Bignami on foetal malaria, 106  
 Bilharzia disease, 540  
 — *hæmatobia*, 540, 575  
 — — — — — characters of ova in bowel, 547  
 — — — — — — — — in bladder, 547  
 — — — — — — — — extracorporeal life, 542  
 — — — — — — — — free embryo, 542  
 — — — — — — — — Anatomy of, 542  
 — — — — — — — — changes of shape, 542  
 — — — — — — — — female, 541  
 — — — — — — — — life history, 542  
 — — — — — — — — male, 540  
 — — — — — — — — ova, 541, 542  
 Bilious remittent fever, 53, 71, 72  
 — — — — — common in tropical countries, 72  
 — — — — — symptoms caused by malaria, 95  
 Bicho, 348, 349  
 Black death, 185  
 Black fever, 219  
 — — — — — pigment, 38  
 — — — — — in lymphocytes, 41  
 — — — — — spores of Ross, 29  
 — — — — — Grassi's views, 29  
 — — — — — water fever, 78  
 Blastophores, 28  
 Blood films, Stains for, 34, 45  
 — — — — — in malaria, 88  
 — — — — — preparation of film of malarial, Author's method, 44  
 — — — — — — — — Macleod's method, 45  
 Blotting-paper cells, 48  
 Blue-bottle fly, Larvæ of, 603  
 Boils, 609  
 — — — — — auto-inoculation, 609  
 — — — — — cause, *Torula pyogenica*, 609  
 — — — — — epidemic, 610  
 — — — — — pathology, 609  
 — — — — — treatment, 610  
 — — — — — abortive, 611  
 Bombay fever, 245  
*Boophilus bovis* (cattle tick), 4  
 Borax-methylene blue stain, 45  
*Bothriocephalus latus*, 599  
 — — — — — *mansoni*, 600, 601  
 — — — — — habitat, 601  
 Brassy bodies, malignant parasite, 65  
 — — — — — — — — tertian, 68  
 Bright's disease, 111  
 Brownian movement, 43  
 Buboes, 185  
 Bubonic plague, 167  
 — — — — — Abortion in, 182  
 — — — — — ætiology, 169  
 — — — — — and open wounds, 175  
 — — — — — and overcrowding, 175  
 — — — — — and pneumonia, 182  
 — — — — — and rats (Rennie), 177  
 — — — — — and trade routes, 179  
 — — — — — and wounds, 176  
 — — — — — — — — from flies, 176, 177  
 — — — — — — — — Atmospheric temperatures in, 178  
 — — — — — — — — bacterium, 167  
 — — — — — — — — buboes, 181  
 — — — — — — — — Clemow on the marmot, 178  
 — — — — — — — — communicated to lower animals, 176  
 — — — — — — — — conditions favouring naturally acquired, 175  
 — — — — — — — — convalescence, 182, 183  
 — — — — — — — — conveyed by water or food, 176  
 — — — — — — — — death, 183  
 — — — — — — — — definition, 167  
 — — — — — — — — elevation, 179  
 — — — — — — — — experiment on contagion, 174  
 — — — — — — — — experimental, 171



- Bubonic plague, extension of epidemics, 179  
 — face, 180  
 — feeding experiments, 174  
 — filth, 175  
 — fleas of the newly dead rat, 178  
 — follows trade routes, 169  
 — gangrenous patches, 181  
 — geographical distribution, 167  
 — geological constitution of soil, 178  
 — hæmorrhages, 182  
 — history, 167  
 — incubation period, 179  
 — influence of age, sex and occupation, 178  
 — inoculability in lower animals, 172  
 — in man, 171  
 — insect bites, 182  
 — intensification and attenuation of virus, 173  
 — micro-organism of Kitasato, 169  
 — organism associated with streptococcus and staphylococcus, 170  
 — pain, 181  
 — place infection, 179  
 — post-mortem of guinea-pig, 172, 173  
 — Pringle on rats anticipating, 177  
 — prodromal stage, 179  
 — pulse, 181  
 — pyæmia, 182  
 — quarantine, 178  
 — rigor, 180  
 — Rocher on other animals, 177  
 — secondary adenitis, 182  
 — stage of adenitis, 181  
 — fever, 180  
 — invasion, 180  
 — symptoms, 179  
 — temperature, 180  
 — typhoid stupor, 180  
 — vermin, 175  
 — vomiting, 181  
 — where found, 170  
 — Yersin on virulence of virus, 174
- Cachexia, 37  
 — aqueuse, 581  
 — Malarial, 55, 105  
 — Malignant tertian, 69  
 Calabar swelling, 561  
 — Thompsonstone on, 561  
 Calcutta fever, 245  
 Carbol thionine, 45  
 Carbol fuchsine stain, 48  
 Carbonic acid in malarial fever, 55  
 Caribi, 348  
 Cattle fever, Texas, 29  
 Cause of intermittency in malaria, 52  
 — of remittency in malaria, 52  
 Celli's experiments with malarial toxin, 100  
 Cerebral capillaries, Malaria pigment in, 75  
 — embolism malaria, 75  
 — pernicious attacks, 72  
 Cestodes, 599  
 Ceylon sore mouth, 353  
 Charcot-Leyden crystals, 393  
 Chart of hæmoglobinuric fever, 80  
 Chechexia, 60  
 Chigger, 637  
 — cocoon, 638  
 — distribution, 637  
 — eggs, 638  
 — habits, 637  
 — in hands, feet, and face, 640  
 — in sole of foot, 639  
 — larva, 638  
 — leading to secondary infection, 639  
 — treatment, 640  
 Cholera, 287  
 — algide stage, 303, 305  
 — ambulatory cases, 304  
 — and water supply, 290  
 — Broad Street well, 291  
 — Buchner's view on mixed infection, 298  
 — comma bacillus culture characters, 297  
 — description, 295  
 — discovery of, Koch on, 294, 298  
 — first cases, 308  
 — flagella, 295  
 — found in every case of the disease, 294, 295  
 — growth, 296  
 — Haffkine on, 300  
 — injection of a virulent culture, 307  
 — is it the germ of cholera, 297  
 — Jablotny on, 299  
 — Kanthack and Stephens on, 309  
 — Klein on bacteriological diagnosis, 309, 310  
 — Koch upon lower animals, 299, 307, 309  
 — Lewis's saliva, 298  
 — stains, 296  
 — toxin, 307, 308  
 — conditions of infection complex, 293  
 — cramps, 302  
 — death, 303, 304



- Cholera, definition, 237  
 — diagnosis, 308  
 — — from cholera nostras, 308  
 — — from mushroom poisoning, 308  
 — — from pernicious malarial fever, 308  
 — — from ptomaine poisoning, 308  
 — — from trichinosis, 308  
 — disease carried by man, 288  
 — epidemic in Hamburg, 291  
 — — South London, 292  
 — European epidemics, ætiology, 288  
 — Finkler - Prior bacillus of cholera nostras, 298  
 — Germ of, 293  
 — — — early views, 293  
 — history and geographical distribution, 287  
 — hyperpyrexia, 305  
 — intravenous injection of saline solution, 317  
 — isolation secures immunity, 289  
 — jaundice, 305  
 — local conditions favouring its presence, 293  
 — Macnamara on, 293  
 — morbid anatomy and pathology, 305  
 — mortality, 310  
 — onset, 301  
 — personal prophylaxis, 314  
 — — — boiling of water, 315  
 — Pettenkofer's views, 299  
 — post-mortem, 305  
 — — muscular contractions, 305  
 — premonitory diarrhœa, 301  
 — prodromata, 302  
 — quarantine a failure, 310  
 — — Great Britain's system of, 311  
 — — — incubation period, 312  
 — — — in good health, 310  
 — — — in Indian religious festivals, 311  
 — — — of Indian troops, 312  
 — — — Ordinary, increases risk, 311  
 — — — prevention, 310  
 — rice water stools, 302, 308  
 — relapse, 305  
 — sequelæ, 305  
 — sicca, 304  
 — stage of collapse, 302  
 — — — of reaction, 303, 304, 303  
 — stools, 302  
 — symptoms, 301  
 — treatment, 315  
 — — antiseptic, 316  
 — — convalescents, 317
- Cholera treatment, cramps, 316  
 — — — drugs, 315  
 — — — eliminative, 316  
 — — — stage of reaction, 317  
 — — — — premonitory diarrhœa, 315  
 — — — symptomatic and expectant, 316  
 — — temperature, 302  
 — — typhoid, 303, 317  
 — — unequal diffusion in the endemic and epidemic areas, 289  
 — — urine, 304  
 — — variability of the microbe, 299  
 — — vibrio, 311  
 — — virus contained in the dejecta, 293  
 — — vomiting, 302  
 — — water-borne disease, entering by the stomach, 290
- Choleraic diarrhœa, 304  
 — malaria attack, 76
- Cholerine, 304
- Chylocele, 504, 511
- Chylous ascites, 504  
 — diarrhœa, 530  
 — dropsy of the tunica vaginalis and of the peritoneum, 530
- Chyluria, 504, 516  
 — Microscopical character of, 517  
 — Physical characters of, 517
- Classification of malaria parasites, Mannaberg's, 50  
 — — — — only provisional, 52  
 — — of parasites, Principles of, 49
- Claviger*, *Anopheles*, 30
- Climatic bubo, 650  
 — — diagnosis, 651  
 — — geography, 650  
 — — symptoms, 650  
 — — treatment, 651
- Clinical classification of malaria parasites, 51  
 — differences between malaria parasites, 50  
 — forms of benign malarial fever, 70  
 — phenomena of malarial fever, 53
- Coccidia, 3
- Coko, 455, 456
- Colitis, 319
- Comatose malaria, Pernicious, 73
- Continued malarial fever, 57
- Contrast staining with eosine, 47
- Convulsive seizures, malaria, 75
- Corpuscles, Zone of scattered, 36  
 — — Zone of heaped up, 36, 39
- Coup de soleil, 234
- Craw-craw, 563  
 — filaria like *F. nocturna*, 564



- Craw-craw, incubation, 564  
 — Nielly on, 565  
 — O'Neil on filaria, 564  
 — treatment, 565  
 Crescent body, 13, 14, 16  
 — — Development of, 15  
 — — Mannaberg on the evolution of, 15  
 — derived spheres, 42, 43  
 — effects of quinine, 66  
 — — on exflagellation, 66  
 — Female, 15  
 — Flagellated body formation from the, 16  
 — form of malignant quotidian parasite, 67  
 — forming parasite, 63  
 — — parasites, hæmoglobinuric fever, 85  
 — infection, Flagellated body frequent in, 39  
 — Male, 15  
 — Malignant tertian, 68  
 — Twin, 15  
 — unaffected by drugs, 44  
 Crescents, 27, 37, 48, 92  
 — Bastianelli on the staining reaction of, 15  
 — not a fever form, 65  
 — time of appearance, 65  
 Crisis, 68, 69  
 Crombie's classification of fevers, 245  
*Culex*, 31, 122  
 — and *Anopheles*, points of distinction, 31  
 — *ciliaris*, 115  
 — ova, larvæ, 31  
 — *pipiens*, 30  
*Cyclops quadricornis* and guinea-worm, 556  
  
 Delhi boil, 476  
 Dengue, 195  
 — ætiology, 196  
 — along trade routes, 195  
 — characters of the eruption, 199  
 — complications and sequelæ, 201  
 — convalescence, 201  
 — defervescence, 198  
 — definition, 195  
 — desquamation, 200  
 — diagnosis; relapses, 203  
 — differs from influenza, 195  
 — epistaxis, 198  
 — geographical distribution and mode of spread, 195  
 — germ, 196  
 — incubation period, 202  
 — influences of meteorological conditions, 196  
 — in high temperatures, 196  
 Dengue, initial eruption, 198  
 — — fever and eruption, 197  
 — interval, 199  
 — morbid anatomy, 203  
 — mortality, 202  
 — muscles atrophy, 201  
 — pains, 201, 204  
 — pandemic, 195  
 — pernicious form, 203  
 — relapses, 202  
 — rheumatoid pains, 201  
 — roseolar eruption, 199  
 — sudden rise and extension, 196  
 — symptoms, 197  
 — terminal fever and eruption, 199  
 — treatment, 204  
 — usually a coast disease, 197  
 — variability of epidemic type, 202  
*Dermatobia cyaniventris*, 643  
 — *noxialis*, 643  
 Dermatoze parasitaire, 565  
 Development of the crescent body, 15  
 Dhoobie itch, 625  
 — — a trichophyton infection, 626, 627  
 — — an epiphytic skin disease, 625  
 — — definition, 626  
 — — diagnosis, 627  
 — — from *Microsporon furfur*, 626  
 — — — — *minutissimum*, 626, 627  
 — — parasites, 626  
 — — prophylaxis, 628  
 — — treatment, 627  
 Diagnosis of bilious remittent from yellow fever, 128  
 — of hæmoglobinuric from yellow fever, 127  
 — of liver abscess from malaria, 126, 127  
 Diarrhœa alba, 353  
 Dionisi's discovery of malarial parasites in bats, 29  
 Diseases of the skin caused by vegetable parasites, 614  
*Distomum buski*, 598  
 — *conjunctum*, 571  
 — — characters, 571  
 — — eggs, 571  
 — *crassum*, 575, 598  
 — *hæmatobium*, 540  
 — *hepaticum*, 575  
 — *heterophyes*, 599  
 — *pulmonale*, 567  
 — *ringeri*, 567  
 — — Ova of, 568, 569  
 — *sinense*, 571, 575  
 — — characters, 571



- Distomum sinense*, eggs, 572  
 ——— may be fatal, 573  
 ——— pathology, 573  
 ——— *westermanni*, 567  
*Dochmius duodenalis*, 581  
 Dog fleas, 557  
*Drepanidium ranarum*, 4  
 Duration of the fit in malarial fever, 55  
 Dysentery, 127, 318, 381  
 ——— a colitis, 330  
 ——— abscess, 395  
 ——— of liver, 322  
 ——— absence of fever, 320  
 ——— acute stage, 321  
 ——— ætiology, 330  
 ——— Alcohol in, 340  
 ——— Amœbic, 330  
 ——— and colitis, 335  
 ——— Anomalous types of, 328  
 ——— ——— Corney on, 328  
 ——— ——— Daniels on, 328  
 ——— ——— post-mortem, 328  
 ——— bacteria, 334  
 ——— Catarrhal, 320  
 ——— cause of sprue, 324  
 ——— of liver abscess, 324  
 ——— Celli on *Bacterium coli commune*, 334  
 ——— Chronic, 321  
 ——— ——— Author's treatment of, 345  
 ——— ——— Hillier's treatment of, 346  
 ——— ——— indigestion, 324  
 ——— ——— lesions in, 329  
 ——— ——— treatment by silver nitrate injections, 345  
 ——— ——— other methods, 346  
 ——— ——— ulceration of the gut, 323  
 ——— definition, 318  
 ——— diagnosis, 318  
 ——— Durham's micrococcus, 335  
 ——— epidemics, 318  
 ——— examination for bilharzia, 328  
 ——— exciting causes, 337  
 ——— Gangrenous, 325, 321  
 ——— ——— stools, 321  
 ——— geographical distribution, 318  
 ——— germ is water-borne, 336  
 ——— griping, 320  
 ——— group of symptoms, 325  
 ——— hæmorrhage, 322  
 ——— healing process, 328  
 ——— hepatitis, 322  
 ——— history, 320  
 ——— influence of age, sex, and occupation, 337  
 ——— inspection of stools, 338  
 ——— intussusception, Symptoms of, 322  
 ——— like malaria, 318  
 ——— Liver in, 329  
 ——— ——— abscess, absence of pyogenetic bacteria, 335  
 Dysentery, liver abscess, Peculiar, 336  
 ——— ——— post-mortem, 329  
 ——— mesenteric glands, 329  
 ——— microscopical examination, 338  
 ——— morbid anatomy and pathology, 324  
 ——— mortality, 323  
 ——— onset, 319  
 ——— pathology, 325  
 ——— pathognomonic symptoms, 322  
 ——— perforation, 322  
 ——— peritonitis, 322  
 ——— Polypoid growths in, 329  
 ——— post-mortem, 326  
 ——— predisposing causes, 327  
 ——— primary lesion, 327  
 ——— ———, Theories of, 327  
 ——— probably several diseases, 324  
 ——— prophylaxis, 347  
 ——— rectal examination, 338  
 ——— relapse, 325  
 ——— relapsing, 321  
 ——— sequelæ more dangerous than the disease, 323  
 ——— significance of amœba, 332  
 ——— ——— of the concurrence of dysentery liver abscess, *Amœba coli*, and absence of pus bacteria in liver abscess, 335  
 ——— sometimes amœba cannot be found, 332  
 ——— sporadic forms, 323  
 ——— stools, 320  
 ——— subacute, 321  
 ——— symptoms, 319  
 ——— ——— Author's classification of, 319  
 ——— ——— Endless variety of, 319  
 ——— tenderness, 322  
 ——— tenesmus, 320  
 ——— thickening, 322  
 ——— tubular sloughs, 327  
 ——— types of cases, 320  
 ——— treatment, 338  
 ——— ——— by bathing, 347  
 ——— ——— by ipecacuanha, 341  
 ——— ——— Author's method, 341  
 ——— ——— ——— *sine emetina*, 342  
 ——— ——— by istra, 344  
 ——— ——— by Japanese hot box, 344  
 ——— ——— by *Monsonia orata*, 344  
 ——— ——— by opium, 341  
 ——— ——— by other drugs, 343  
 ——— ——— by simaruba, 343  
 ——— ——— method of giving, 343  
 ——— ——— cinnamon, 344  
 ——— ——— food and clothing, 347



- Dysentery treatment, food in acute dysentery, 339  
 ——— importance of rest, 339  
 ——— in bed, 339  
 ——— of hepatitis, 347  
 ——— of post-dysenteric constipation, 346  
 ——— of tenesmus, 344  
 ——— relief of pain, 344  
 ——— Rhein's specific remedy, 343  
 ——— with aperient sulphates, 341, 342  
 ——— with bismuth and opium, 343  
 ——— with calomel, 341  
 ——— ——— ——— in croupous form, 342  
 ——— with drugs, 340  
 ——— with malarial element, 340  
 ——— with scorbutic element, 340  
 ——— ulceration, Description of, 326  
 ——— Location of, 327  
 ——— Ulcerative, 321  
 ——— stools, 321  
 ——— symptoms, 321
- Eberth's bacillus, 224  
 ——— saprophyte, 224
- Egyptian chlorosis, 581, 585
- El Becho, 348
- Elephantiasis arabum, 481  
 ——— clinical characters of the swelling, 521  
 ——— Diminished liability to filaria in, 508  
 ——— dressing of operation, 527  
 ——— explanation of absence of filaria, 506  
 ——— græcorum, 414  
 ——— Inflammation necessary for, 507  
 ——— Limited skin area of, 528  
 ——— Lymph stasis in, 506  
 ——— macroscopic anatomy, 522  
 ——— of arms, 528  
 ——— of legs, 522  
 ——— ——— scrotum and right arm, 521  
 ——— ——— treatment, 522  
 ——— of mamma, 530  
 ——— of scrotum, 523  
 ——— ——— accompanying hydroceles, 525  
 ——— ——— diagram, 524  
 ——— ——— importance, 525  
 ——— ——— mortality from operation, 528  
 ——— ——— treatment, 525  
 ——— ——— before operation, 525  
 ——— of vulva, 529  
 ——— ——— and mammæ, 528
- Elephantiasis, operation, 526  
 ——— parts affected, 520  
 ——— Pathology of, 505  
 ——— pedunculated groin, 530  
 ——— Permanent, 522  
 ——— prevalence, 520  
 ——— reasons for regarding as filarial, 505  
 ——— recurrent erysipelatoid attacks, 320  
 ——— scrotal tumour anatomy, 524  
 ——— Sequence of events in, 508  
 ——— weight of tumours, 523
- Elephantoid fever, 519
- Empty zone, 36
- Endemic chyluria, 481  
 ——— hæmaturia, 540  
 ——— ——— ætiology, 540  
 ——— ——— cause of urinary calculus, 544  
 ——— ——— definition, 540  
 ——— ——— diagnosis, 547  
 ——— ——— difficulties, 548  
 ——— ——— examination of urine, 544  
 ——— ——— female parasite, characters, 541  
 ——— ——— geographical distribution, 540  
 ——— ——— history, 540  
 ——— ——— male parasite, characters, 540  
 ——— ——— ovum, 541  
 ——— ——— pathological anatomy, 545  
 ——— ——— ——— of bladder mucosa, 545  
 ——— ——— ——— of bladder muscular coats, 546  
 ——— ——— ——— prevention, 549  
 ——— ——— ——— in the matter of drinking water, 550  
 ——— ——— ——— prognosis, 548  
 ——— ——— ——— rectum involved, 545  
 ——— ——— ——— symptoms, 543  
 ——— ——— ——— treatment, 548  
 ——— ——— ——— during hæmaturia, 549  
 ——— ——— ——— palliative, 549  
 ——— hæmoptysis, 567  
 ——— ——— diagnosis, 570  
 ——— ——— geographical distribution, 567  
 ——— ——— parasite, 570  
 ——— ——— parts affected, 569  
 ——— ——— pathological anatomy, 569  
 ——— ——— prophylaxis, 570  
 ——— ——— sputum, 568  
 ——— ——— symptoms, 567  
 ——— ——— treatment, 570
- Epidemic dropsy, 276  
 ——— ——— ætiology, 278  
 ——— ——— anæmia, 278  
 ——— ——— and dropsical beriberi, 279



- Epidemic dropsy, circulation and respiration, 278  
 — definition and description, 276  
 — diarrhoea and vomiting, 277  
 — exanthem, 278  
 — fever, 277  
 — history and geographical description, 276  
 — identification, 278  
 — liver, spleen, and kidneys, 278  
 — morbid anatomy, 278  
 — nervous symptoms, 277  
 — special symptoms, 277  
 — treatment, 279  
 — gangrenous rectitis, 348  
 — — Ackers on, 348  
 — — cause, 349  
 — — geography, 348  
 — — onset, 348  
 — — treatment, 349  
 — — by *Spigelia anthelmintica*, 349  
 Epidemics of bubo, 184  
 Exflagellation, Conditions favouring and retarding, 19  
 — Marshall on, 19  
 — Ross on, 19
- Fæces, microscopical examination for ova, 575  
 — — diagnosis of ova, 576  
 — — Technique of, 576  
*Febris undulans*, 206  
 Female crescent, 15  
 — gametocytes, 59  
 Fever, Double continued, 245, 247  
 — — Chart of, 247  
 — — diagnosis, 248  
 — — treatment, 248  
 — Non-malarial remittent, 246  
 — — Quinine in, 246  
 — Simple continued, 245  
 Filaria and elephantiasis, 482  
 — author's four species, 481  
 — *bancrofti*, 481, 482, 490, 500, 502  
 — chronic swellings in groin and scrotum, 512  
 — chyluria, 516  
 — — and lymph varix, 516  
 — — constitutional effects, 518  
 — — Exciting causes of, 518  
 — — pathology, 516  
 — — recovery and relapse, 518  
 — — retention of urine, 518  
 — — symptoms, 516  
 — — treatment, 518  
 — cutaneous and deeper lymphatic varices, 513
- Filaria, Cysts of adult, 314  
 — — Abercrombie's case, 514  
 — death of parents, 505  
 — definitive host, 499  
 — *demarquaii* and *Filaria ozardi*, 481, 486, 533, 534  
 — — and *Filaria magalhãesii*, 533  
 — — characters, 533  
 — Demonstration of, in blood, 482  
 — — of living, 484  
 — — technique, 482  
 — description of embryonic form, 485  
 — disappearance from blood, 504  
 — disease originates in injury of lymphatics, 502  
 — — dissection of lymphatics, 503  
 — *diurna*, 481, 486, 532  
 — — diagnosis from *Filaria nocturna*, 532  
 — — relation to *Filaria loa*, 533  
 — during the day, 489  
 — effects of obstruction, 503  
 — elephantoid fever, 510  
 — embryos, 506, 514  
 — — not present in elephantiasis, 505  
 — fang, 488  
 — female, 500  
 — geographical distribution and prevalence, 482  
 — human definitive host, 497  
 — in blood from organs, 490  
 — — of man, 481  
 — in brain, 491  
 — in chyluria, 481  
 — infection of man, 497  
 — in lung, 491  
 — in proboscis of mosquito, 497  
 — in sections of organs, 490  
 — intermediary host, 499  
 — *loa*, 559  
 — — and Calabar swellings, 561  
 — — characters, 560  
 — — geography, 559  
 — — intermediate host unknown, 561  
 — — in the eye, 561  
 — — long lived, 560  
 — — relation to Calabar swelling, 562  
 — — resembling *Filaria nocturna* and *Filaria diurna*, 560  
 — — tail of race, 560  
 — — treatment, 562  
 — Low upon, 495  
 — lymph scrotum, 514, 515  
 — — symptoms, 514  
 — — treatment, 515  
 — lymphangitis diagnosis, 510  
 — — and elephantoid fever, 510



- Filaria*, lymphangitis, symptoms, 510  
 — — — treatment, 511  
 — — lymphatic trunks thickened, 513  
 — — — varix, 504  
 — — lymphorrhagia, 515  
 — — *magalhãesii*, 481, 538  
 — — — Characters of, 539  
 — — — their pathological importance, 481  
 — — male, 500  
 — — *medinensis*, 551  
 — — metamorphosis, 494, 497, 498  
 — — — Bancroft on, 497  
 — — — Colquhoun on, 499  
 — — — technique, 499  
 — — [microscopical examination, 485  
 — — morbid anatomy and pathology, 502  
 — — Mosquito intermediate host of, 491  
 — — *nocturna*, 20, 21, 122, 480, 481, 482, 485, 486, 488, 490, 499, 509, 557  
 — — — anatomy, 487  
 — — — nomenclature, 481  
 — — — not generally pathogenetic, 502  
 — — — orchitis, 519, 532  
 — — — treatment, 532  
 — — ova, 506  
 — — *ozzardi*, 481, 486, 534  
 — — — and *Filaria perstans*, 535  
 — — — author's observations on parental forms, 536  
 — — — Characters of, 534  
 — — — embryos like *Filaria perstans*, 534  
 — — — parental form, Daniels on, 535  
 — — — parental forms, 500, 501  
 — — — *perstans*, 286, 481, 486, 533, 536  
 — — — and *nocturna*, 537  
 — — — characters, 537  
 — — — of embryo, 537  
 — — — embryo V spot, 537  
 — — — geographical range, 536  
 — — — like *Filaria demarquaii* and like *Filaria ozzardi*, 537  
 — — — male and female, 583  
 — — — parental form, 537  
 — — — — Author's observations on, 538  
 — — — pathology, 538  
 — — — Structure of, 488  
 — — permanent preparations, 485  
 — — post mortem, 490  
 — — prophylaxis, 532  
 — — *recondita*, 557  
 — — *sanguinis hominis*, 481  
 — — — Method of staining, 484  
 — — *sanguinis hominis*, Sheath of, 485, 499  
 — — — shown in section of mosquito muscle, 1st day, 493  
 — — — shown in section of mosquito muscle, 7th day, 494  
 — — — shown in section of mosquito muscle, 12th day, 495  
 — — — shown in section of mosquito muscle, 16th day, 496  
 — — — synovitis, 519  
 — — table of comparative dimensions, 535  
 — — — of geographical distribution, 483  
 — — tail spot, 488  
 — — thoracic duct, 504  
 — — types of disease, 502  
 — — V-shaped patch, 487  
 — — V spot, 488  
 — — varicose groin glands, 515  
 — — *volvulus*, 563  
*Filaria sanguinis*, 480  
*Filarial* abscess, 509  
 — — Cause of, 509  
 — — discrimination, 496  
 — — diseases, 509  
 — — —, Enumeration of, 509  
 — — ecdysis, 492  
 — — — artificial method, 492  
 — — elephantiasis, Author on cause of, 507, 508  
 — — mosquito, Dissection of, 493  
 — — periodicity, 488  
 — — regularity, Mackenzie on, 489  
 — — varicose groin glands, 511  
 — — — — associated conditions, 511  
 — — — — diagnosis, 512  
 — — — — diagnosis from hernia, 512  
 — — — — operation, 513  
 — — — — pathological anatomy, 512  
 — — — — symptoms, 511  
 — — — — treatment, 513  
*Filariasis*, 480  
 — — history, 480  
*Flagella*, 11, 12, 17, 20, 21, 22, 43, 48, 59  
 — — Breaking through of, 18  
*Flagellated* body evolution from the tertian parasite, 17  
 — — — from the quartan parasite, 17  
 — — — formation from the crescent, 16  
 — — bodies, 13, 38, 39, 40, 48  
 — — Examination of blood for, 39



- Flagellated bodies, frequent in  
crescent infection, 39  
Fragmented plasmodia, 42  
Framboesia, 455
- Gametocyte, gamete, 42  
— male hyaline spheres, female  
granular spheres, 27  
Garrapato, 647, 648  
General disease of undetermined  
nature, 250  
Germinal rods of Ross, 28  
Globi, 440  
Golden rule in tropical practice, 398  
Goundou, 651  
— symptoms, 652, 653  
Granular sphere effects of impreg-  
nation, 24  
Grassi on *Anopheles*, 22  
Grassi's views on malaria, 30  
Gros nez, 651  
Guinea worm, 551  
— — abscess, 558  
— — anatomy, Features of fe-  
male, 551  
— — biological peculiarities  
explained, 558  
— — cretified, 558  
— — Effects of cold water on  
parturition of, 553  
— — embryo, Description of,  
555  
— — in body cavity of  
cyclops, 556  
— — Fedtschenko on mode of  
infection, 557  
— — geographical distribution,  
551  
— — habits, 522  
— — intermediary host, 556,  
558  
— — male, 557  
— — metamorphosis, 557  
— — — Duration of, 557  
— — mode of infection, 557  
— — parasite, 551  
— — premature death of para-  
site, 558  
— — Section of, 553  
— — treatment, 558  
— — — Emily on, 559
- Hæmadipsa ceylonica*, 648  
*Hæmamœbida*, 1, 3, 24, 51  
— Ross's classification, 51  
*Hæmatoxyline* and eosine stain, 47  
*Hæmaturic* fever, 78  
*Hæmocytozoa*, 138  
*Hæmoglobin* infarcts, 84  
*Hæmoglobinuria*, Malarial, 85  
*Hæmoglobinuric* fever, 53  
— Blood corpuscles in, 98  
— Calomel in, 141  
— Causes of death in, 83
- Hæmoglobinuric* fever, crescent-  
forming parasites, 85  
— — Employment of quinine  
in, 141  
— — immunity in native Afrie-  
ans, 82  
— — kidneys, 84  
— — liable to recurrence, 80  
— — liver, 84  
— — mixed infection of para-  
sites, 85  
— — parasitology, 84  
— — — Poikilocytosis in, 97  
— — precautions, 142  
— — recurrent fever chart, 81  
— — Sambon on parasite of, 85  
— — severe forms, 83  
— — suppression of urine, 83,  
142  
— — symptoms, 82  
— — Tannic acid in, 141  
— — transfusion of blood, 142  
— — Treatment of, by Quen-  
nec with chloroform, 141  
— — — with oxygen, 142  
— — — with salicylate of  
soda, 141  
— — urine, 82, 84, 98, 122, 128  
*Hæmopsis sanguisuga*, 649  
*Hæmosporidia*, 3  
*Halteridium*, 4, 5, 22, 24, 29  
Heat apoplexy, 73, 234  
— asphyxia, 234  
— exhaustion, 229, 230  
— — ætiology, 230  
— — definition, 230  
— — symptoms, 231  
— — treatment, 231  
— stroke, 229  
— — ætiology, 229, 230  
— — Alcohol in, 242  
— — Chevers on drunkenness  
in, 230  
— — Clothing in, 242  
— — Prevention of, 242  
— — Rooms in, 243  
*Helminthiasis*, 573  
*Helminthoma elastica*, 513  
Henpurg, 655  
Hill diarrhœa, 350  
— — ætiology and pathology,  
352  
— — and sprue, 351  
— — definition, 350  
— — distinctive features, 351  
— — geographical and seasonal  
distribution, 350  
— — stools, 351  
— — symptoms, 350  
— — treatment, 351, 352  
— — — by Crombie, 352  
Hosts, intermediary, Blood-eating  
arthropodes as, 644  
Hyaline sphere, 23







- Leprosy, Gerlach on destruction of nerve terminals, 433
- glands, 429
  - heredity, 445
  - — Hansen on, 446
  - history, 414
  - how acquired, 445
  - Indian statistics, 417
  - in earlier stages not a striking disease, 419
  - in Isle of Pines, 419
  - in New Caledonia, 419, 443
  - in Sandwich Islands, 418, 443
  - in temperate countries, 417
  - isolation of lepers, 449
  - Leloir on sweating in, 422
  - loss of sight, 434
  - Loyalty Islands, 419
  - lymphatic glands, 441
  - macular eruption, 423
    - — Characters of, 423
    - — Duration of, 424
    - — Seats of, 425
  - main-en-griffe, 433, 435
  - Mexico, 425, 436
  - natural and temporary amelioration, 451
  - nerve, 425, 429, 431, 435
    - — macular stage, 429
    - — prodromata, 429
  - neuritis, 432, 438
  - nodular, 424, 425, 427, 434, 440
    - — fever, 425
    - — essential element, 425
    - — onset, 425
    - — prodromata, 425
    - — situation, 428
  - occupation, 443
  - of eyes, 428
  - of face, 426
  - of nerve trunks, 429
  - of nerves, ulnar and others, 432
  - of nervous system, 430
  - of nose, 428
  - of skin, 434
  - of testes, 441
  - other lesions, 440
  - ovum infection, 446
  - parasites not inherited, 445
  - paresis, 420
  - pathological anatomy, 436
  - perforating ulcer, 436
  - period of incubation, 420, 421
    - — specific deposit, 420, 425
  - pigmentation, 424
  - prevention, 449
  - primary exanthem, 423
    - — a macular stage, 420
    - — infection, 420
  - prodromata, 420, 421
  - prognosis, 442
    - — of nerve cases, 442
    - — of nodular cases, 442
- Leprosy, recent introduction, 418
- Rise of modern knowledge of, 416
  - sequelæ, 420
  - sex, 443
  - social and hygienic conditions, 443
  - Sticker on initial lesion, 421
  - stringent measures of the Middle Ages, 415
  - sudden appearance of bullæ, 430
  - symptoms, 419
  - terminations, 420
  - thickening of nerves, 432
  - treatment, 450
    - — by drugs, 451
    - — by inoculation of erysipelas, 454
    - — by necrotomy, 453
    - — by nerve stretching, 453
    - — by thyroidin, 453
    - — by tracheotomy, 453
    - — by Unna, 452
    - — Danielssen on, 453
    - — for perforating ulcer, 453
    - — lesions, 420
    - — of leprous neuritis, 453
    - — — nodules on the cornea, 453
    - — with chaulmoogra oil, 451
    - — with iodide of potassium, 452
    - — with tuberculin, 452
  - trophic changes, 432
  - Tuberculous, 425
  - ulceration, 420
  - ulcers, 428, 434
  - vaccination, 450
  - White, 441
- Leucocytes, 34, 93
- Leucoderma, 441
- Lichen tropicus, 604
- Liver, Abscess of, 374
- — adhesions, 392
  - — ætiology, 375
  - — *Amœba coli* as cause of, 396, 397
    - — — in walls of abscess, 393
  - — and alcoholism, 380
  - — and *Amœba coli*, 393
  - — and dysentery, 386, 391
  - — and empyema, 390
  - — ascites, 387
  - — Author's conclusions on causes of, 380
  - — Causes of death in, 391
  - — characters of expectorated liver pus, 390
  - — characters of pus, 392, 401
  - — chronological relation to dysentery, 387



- Liver, Abscess of, common in Europeans, 378
- — — complexion, 384
  - — — cough, 385
  - — — course, 381
  - — — decubitus, 385
  - — — definition, 374
  - — — diagnosis, 397
  - — — common mistakes, 397
  - — — from basic pneumonia, 397, 398
  - — — from hectic fever, 398
  - — — from leucocythæmia, 397, 399
  - — — from malaria, 398
  - — — from other forms of suppuration, 399
  - — — from pernicious anæmia, 399
  - — — from scurvy, 397, 399
  - — — from ulcerative endocarditis, 398
  - — — Digestive organs in, 385
  - — — Duration of, 388
  - — — encystment, 394
  - — — explanation of absence of pyogenic micro-organisms, 394
  - — — Exploring in, 399, 408
  - — — Exposure as cause of, 379
  - — — Fever in, 383
  - — — Friction in, 387
  - — — Geographical distribution of, 374
  - — — hepatitis, 391
  - — — incidence of symptoms, 388
  - — — influence of age and length of residence, 380
  - — — of malaria, 380
  - — — local bulging, 387
  - — — œdema, 387
  - — — morbid anatomy, 391
  - — — mortality, 390
  - — — natives more liable to dysentery, 378
  - — — Number and size of, 392
  - — — œdema of feet, 387
  - — — Operations for, 402, 406
  - — — Apparatus for, 405
  - — — Author's, 404
  - — — Godlee's, 402
  - — — Macleod's, 403
  - — — with no adhesions, 402
  - — — with pneumo-thorax, 403, 406
  - — — organisms concerned, 381
  - — — pain, 384
  - — — in right shoulder, 385
  - — — in right shoulder, Cause of, 385
- Liver, Abscess of, pain in right shoulder, Character of, 385
- — — types of, 384
  - — — pathology, 395
  - — — author's view, 395
  - — — Budd's theory, 396
  - — — Macleod on objection to author's view, 396
  - — — objection to author's view, 396
  - — — persistent fever after operation, 407
  - — — physical signs, 382, 386
  - — — pneumonia, 387
  - — — post-mortem, 376
  - — — predisposing conditions, 379
  - — — prognosis in early operations, 409
  - — — pulmonary inflammation and abscess, 392
  - — — Pus burrowing of, 387, 392
  - — — pyogenic organisms, 393
  - — — characters of, 392
  - — — question of return to the tropics, 409
  - — — race and sex, 378
  - — — rare in European women, 378
  - — — Rees on natives of Nigeria, 378
  - — — relation to dysentery, 374, 375
  - — — Macleod, 377
  - — — statistics, 375
  - — — rheumatic-like pains, 384
  - — — rigors, 383
  - — — rupture, 388
  - — — into blood-vessel, 390
  - — — into bowel, 390
  - — — into lung, 389
  - — — into lung, Symptoms of, 389
  - — — into pericardium, 390
  - — — into peritoneum, 390
  - — — into pleura, 390
  - — — into stomach, 390
  - — — Rendu's table of, 389
  - — — sudden, 398
  - — — through skin, 390
  - — — splenic enlargement, 386
  - — — sterile, Calmette on, 397
  - — — supplemental causes, 380
  - — — sweating, 384
  - — — symptoms, 381
  - — — Variety of, 382
  - — — treatment, 399
  - — — after operation, 407
  - — — by aspiration, 400
  - — — by hepatic phleb-otomy, Harley on, 401
  - — — of abscess discharging through lung, 408



Liver abscess, treatment of rigor,  
400

— — — of sepsis, 407  
— — — when ruptured into  
serous cavity, 409

— — — varicosity of epigastric  
and hæmorrhoidal veins,  
387

— — — wasting, 384

Local diseases of uncertain nature,  
650

Loeffler's methylene blue stain, 45

Low fever, 245, 249

*Lucilia macellaria*, 641

— — — in nostrils, 642

Lymph scrotum, 504, 514

Lymphatic varix, 481, 505, 506

— — — pathology, 503

Macrophages, 93

Madura foot, 616, 617

Main-en-griffe (leprosy), 433, 435

Maladie de Carrion, 469

Malaria, a communicable disease,  
121

— — — acclimatisation, 122

— — — individual differences of  
susceptibility, 123

— — — personal differences, 122

— — — precautions of old resi-  
dents, 122

— — — racial susceptibility, 123

— — — ætiology, 113, 121

— — — altitude, 116

— — — atmospheric temperature,  
115

— — — circumstances favouring  
infection, 113

— — — earth disturbance, 119

— — — effects of decomposing  
vegetable matter, 116

— — — of floods, 117

— — — endemic fluctuations, 115

— — — epidemic fluctuations, 115

— — — influence of houses and  
lodging, 118

— — — of latitude and sea-  
son, 114

— — — of local conditions,  
114

— — — of moisture, 116

— — — of mosquito, 116

— — — — — pools, 117

— — — of rainfall, 117

— — — of subsoil moisture,  
117

— — — of trees, 118

— — — of winds and atmo-  
spheric diffusion, 118

— — — history of Hong Kong, 119

— — — other conditions neces-  
sary, 116

Malaria, ætiology, parasite, 113

— — — time of day in relation to  
infection, 119

— — — algide attack, Pathology of, 77  
— — — — — Treatment of, 140

— — — alimentary canal, 90

— — — amblyopia, 74, 75

— — — Anarcotine in, 143

— — — and hæmoglobinuria, 85

— — — Antipyrin in, 140

— — — Aperients in, 139

— — — aphasia, 75, 130

— — — apoplectic-like form, 75

— — — Arsenic in, 142

— — — bearing mosquito, 31

— — — bilious symptoms, Cause of, 95

— — — black pigment, 109

— — — spores, 120

— — — blood of the splenic vein and  
liver, 93

— — — cachexia, 55, 105

— — — — — and abortion, 106

— — — — — associated with functional  
lesion, 108

— — — — — with organic lesion,  
108

— — — — — cardiac degeneration, 112

— — — — — cirrhosis, Atrophic, 110

— — — — — definition, 105

— — — — — delayed development of  
the body, 106

— — — — — enlarged spleen, 105

— — — — — Drink in, 144

— — — — — Food in, 144

— — — — — hæmorrhages, 107, 108

— — — — — — — post - mortem,  
110

— — — — — hepatic enlargement, 110

— — — — — hepatitis, Chronic, 110

— — — — — herpetic eruptions, 107

— — — — — hypertrophic cirrhosis,  
110

— — — — — interstitial affections, 108

— — — — — melanoglossia, 106

— — — — — neuroses, 107

— — — — — pathology, 108

— — — — — pathological anatomy, 108

— — — — — pigmentation, 105

— — — — — poisoning compared with  
opium poisoning, 107

— — — — — practical considerations,  
111

— — — — — pulmonary affections, 108

— — — — — siderosis, 110

— — — — — skin affections, 107

— — — — — symptoms, 105

— — — — — toxin, 108

— — — — — acquired tolerance,  
106

— — — — — Treatment of, 143, 144

— — — — — without fever, 105

— — — Cause of fever and periodicity  
in, 99

— — — of nephritis, 111



- Malaria, cerebral embolism, 75  
 — choleraic attack, 76  
 — circumstances favouring clinical manifestation, 120  
 — — — infection, 113  
 — continued fever, 57  
 — convulsive seizures, 75  
 — crescent, 15, 138  
 — — body characteristic, 65  
 — — Mannaberg on evolution, 15  
 — — Marshall on exflagellation, 19  
 — cultivation of land, 145  
 — — of eucalyptus globulus, 146  
 — — of sunflowers, etc., 146  
 — — of trees and plants, 146  
 — Daniels on relation to Bright's disease, 111  
 — definition, 1  
 — destruction and reparation of blood in first attacks and relapses, 89  
 — diagnosis from cerebro-spinal meningitis, 128  
 — — from lymphangitis, 128  
 — — from Mediterranean fever, 128  
 — — from other types of paroxysmal fevers, 128  
 — — from post-malarial fever, 128  
 — — from splenic leucocythæmia, 128  
 — — from tuberculous disease, 128  
 — — from typhoid fever, 128  
 — — from typhoid fever, Value of Widal's test in, 129  
 — — from ulcerative endocarditis, 128  
 — Diagnostic signs of, 125  
 — diminished hæmoglobin value, 89  
 — — volume of blood, 89  
 — Disturbance of the soil in, 146  
 — dose of quinine, 132  
 — double fever, 57  
 — Drainage in, 145  
 — Duncan's experiments in prophylaxis, 147, 148  
 — dysenteric attack, 77  
 — Euchinin in, 143  
 — extravascular pigment, 93  
 — fever, Anticipating, 57  
 — — cachexia, 55  
 — — Clinical phenomena of, 53  
 — — cold stage, 54  
 — — Continued, 57  
 — — Double, 57  
 — — febrogenetic agent, 99  
 — — first attacks, 70, 122  
 — — — invasion, 113  
 — Malaria fever, free pigment, 99  
 — — — general statements, 70  
 — — — hæmoglobin solvent, 100  
 — — — hot stage, 54  
 — — — intermittency explained, 103  
 — — — intermittent, 100, 133  
 — — — microscopical examination, 69  
 — — — mixed infection, 57  
 — — — parasite, Variation in life-span of, 101  
 — — — — "anticipating," 101  
 — — — — "postponing," 101  
 — — — periodicity, 100  
 — — — Influence of physiological rhythm on, 101  
 — — — pernicious attacks, 72  
 — — — — cerebral, 73  
 — — — — algide, 73  
 — — — — hyperpyrexial, 73  
 — — — postponing, 57  
 — — — premonitory stage, 53  
 — — — pyrogenetic agent, 100  
 — — — quotidian, 383  
 — — — relapses, 70  
 — — — relation of the phenomena of the fit to the stages of the parasite, 57  
 — — — remittent, 57, 102  
 — — — rhythmical immunity, 102  
 — — — rigor, 101  
 — — — subintrans, 57  
 — — — Terms employed in, 56  
 — — — Typhoid state in, 71  
 — — flagellated body, 138  
 — — flooding of land, 145  
 — — free parasite, 93  
 — — — pigment, 93  
 — — gastric attacks, 76  
 — — geographical range, 113  
 — — germ conveyed in water, 114  
 — — Hæmatoblasts in, 99  
 — — hæmoglobin dissolving substance freed in rigor, 97  
 — — — solvent, 100  
 — — hæmoglobinaemia, 95  
 — — — cause of hæmoglobinuria, 96  
 — — — deposit of yellow pigment, 96  
 — — — how produced, 96  
 — — hæmoglobinuria, 85  
 — — hæmolysis, 88, 96, 160  
 — — hepatic enlargement, Treatment of, 143  
 — — hepatitis diagnosis from absence of liver, 111  
 — — immunity of ships' crews, 118  
 — — — rhythmical, 102  
 — — indications of salubrity, 109  
 — — infection, Spontaneous cure of, 85



- Malaria, influence of meteorological conditions on relapse, 120  
 ——— of age, 121  
 ——— of occupation, 121  
 ——— of sex, 121  
 ——— inherited experience, 124  
 ——— inoculation experiments, 49  
 ——— iron and arsenic in treatment, 132  
 ——— Kidneys in, 90  
 ——— Latent, 120, 138  
 ——— Lemon decoction in, 148  
 ——— Leucocytes in, 98  
 ——— in benign tertians, 98  
 ——— in crescent-forming fever, 98  
 ——— in pernicious attacks, 98  
 ——— in quartans, 98  
 ——— mononuclear in, 98  
 ——— polynuclear in, 98  
 ——— Liver in, 90  
 ——— location of dwelling-houses, 145  
 ——— Lungs in, 90  
 ——— Lymphatic glands in, 93, 94  
 ——— Maccallum's discovery, 22  
 ——— malignant infection, 50, 63  
 ——— parasite, Amœboid condition of, 64  
 ——— ——— brassy bodies, 65  
 ——— ——— characters in common, 64  
 ——— ——— characters of fever, 66  
 ——— ——— chart, 67  
 ——— ——— crescent body characteristic, 65  
 ——— ——— Forms of, 50  
 ——— ——— geographical distribution, 69  
 ——— ——— multiple infection, 64  
 ——— ——— pigmented stage, 65  
 ——— ——— pyrexial stage, 66  
 ——— ——— quotidian infection, 66  
 ——— ——— crescent form, 67  
 ——— ——— fever, 67  
 ——— ——— pigmented, 50, 66, 86  
 ——— ——— sporulation, 67  
 ——— ——— unpigmented, 50, 51, 66, 86  
 ——— ——— rigor stage, 66  
 ——— ——— segmenting form, 69  
 ——— ——— sporulating stage, 65  
 ——— ——— tertian infection, 51, 67  
 ——— ——— brassy body, 68  
 ——— ——— cachexia, 69  
 ——— ——— crescent, 68  
 ——— ——— crisis, 68  
 ——— ——— fever, 68  
 ——— ——— hot stage, 68
- Malaria, malignant parasite, tertian parasite, 67, 86  
 ——— ——— ——— rigor, 68  
 ——— ——— ——— sporulating body, 68  
 ——— marrow, 90  
 ——— melanin, 6, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 25, 39, 40, 41, 97, 108, 111  
 ——— Methylene blue in, 143  
 ——— mixed infection, 70  
 ——— morbid anatomy and pathology, 88  
 ——— ——— macroscopic, 90  
 ——— ——— microscopic, 90, 125, 127, 130  
 ——— moribund free plasmodia, 42  
 ——— mosquito, 1, 21, 27, 29, 30, 59, 113, 115, 116, 118, 121, 122, 146, 157  
 ——— ——— *Culex*, 491  
 ——— ——— distinction between male and female, 31  
 ——— ——— malaria theory, 19  
 ——— ——— ——— author's hypothesis, 20  
 ——— ——— ——— early views, 19  
 ——— ——— nets, 147  
 ——— ——— on ships, 114  
 ——— ——— Study of, indispensable, 121  
 ——— native experience to be consulted, 146  
 ——— neuritis of Strachan, 258  
 ——— of tropical Africa, 66  
 ——— oligocythæmia explanation, 94, 108  
 ——— on shipboard, 114  
 ——— orchitis, 519  
 ——— paralysis, 75  
 ——— parasite and associated fevers, 49  
 ——— ——— anticipating, 101  
 ——— ——— classification, 49  
 ——— ——— Complete cycle of, in man and birds, 27  
 ——— ——— Dionisi's discovery of in bats, 29  
 ——— ——— endogenous cycle, 27  
 ——— ——— exogenous cycle, 27  
 ——— ——— extracorporeal cycle, 10  
 ——— ——— ——— phase, possibility of another, 28  
 ——— ——— flagellated body, 11  
 ——— ——— in mosquito, 22  
 ——— ——— ——— encysted or zygote stage, 24  
 ——— ——— ——— sporozoite or infective stage, 26  
 ——— ——— inoculation experiments, 3, 49  
 ——— ——— intracorporeal cycle, 6  
 ——— ——— Koch's discovery of parasite in monkey, 29  
 ——— ——— latent phase, 9, 103



- Malaria parasite, life-history, 1  
 ———— Mannaberg's classification of, 50  
 ———— Morphological distinctions between, 50  
 ———— morphology, 1  
 ———— mosquito cycle, 10  
 ———— periodicity effects of physiological rhythm, 101  
 ———— postponing, 101  
 ———— quartan (see *Quartan*)  
 ———— quotidian (see *Quotidian*)  
 ———— spores, 7  
 ———— structure, 7  
 ———— Table of characters of, 86  
 ———— tertian (see *Tertian*)  
 ———— three phases, 6  
 ———— transference to the human host, 27  
 ———— variation in life-span of, 101  
 ———— periodicity, Lessons from author's theory of, 104  
 ———— in diagnosis, 100, 126  
 ———— permanent psychical disturbance, 75  
 ———— pernicious attacks, algide, 76  
 ———— diagnosis from apoplexy, 129  
 ———— from cholera, 129  
 ———— from croupous pneumonia, 130  
 ———— from dysentery, 129  
 ———— from heat stroke, 129  
 ———— from puerperal fever, 129  
 ———— microscopical examination, 129  
 ———— phagocytosis in spleen, 92  
 ———— physiological depression favouring, 120  
 ———— pigment, 84, 90  
 ———— compared with other pigments, 92  
 ———— explanation, 94  
 ———— in cerebral capillaries, 75  
 ———— nature of, Source of, 91  
 ———— ochre or yellow, 94, 95, 96, 108, 109, 110  
 ———— Chemical properties of, 95, 111  
 ———— not peculiar to malaria, 94, 95  
 ———— plasmodium (see also *Plasmodium*), 122, 510  
 ———— polycholia, 95  
 ———— post-mortem, 75, 89  
 ———— prophylactic use of methylene blue, 148  
 ———— prophylactics, 148  
 ———— precautions, 147  
 ———— pyrogenetic agent, 100
- Malaria, quartan parasite (see *Quartan*)  
 ———— Quinine in, 131  
 ———— amblyopia, 133  
 ———— and arsenic as prophylactics, 147  
 ———— deafness, 133  
 ———— form in which to administer, 133  
 ———— hypodermic injections of, 134  
 ———— in pregnancy, 133  
 ———— in puerperal state, 133  
 ———— intravenous injection of, 137  
 ———— milk as a vehicle for, 134  
 ———— mode of action of, 137  
 ———— precautions, 136  
 ———— solubility and equivalent value of salts of, 135  
 ———— test, 125  
 ———— tetanus, 136  
 ———— toxic effects, 132  
 ———— ways of exhibiting, 131  
 ———— when and in what doses to give in ordinary cases, 131  
 ———— urticaria, 133  
 ———— relapses, 113  
 ———— resting phase, 120  
 ———— rigor, 57, 101  
 ———— hæmoglobin dissolving substance freed, 97  
 ———— sequelæ, 112  
 ———— size and shape of blood corpuscles, 97  
 ———— Spleen in, 90  
 ———— splenic abscesses, 110  
 ———— enlargement, 109  
 ———— leukæmia, 112  
 ———— tumour in district indicative of endemicity, 109  
 ———— liability to rupture, 109  
 ———— to spontaneous rupture, 110  
 ———— tumours, localised hæmorrhages, 110  
 ———— spontaneous recovery, 102  
 ———— sudden delirium, 75  
 ———— syncopal attack, 77  
 ———— Terms employed in, 56  
 ———— tertian parasite (see *Tertian*)  
 ———— toxin, 57, 58, 100  
 ———— Celli's experiments with, 100  
 ———— treatment, 131  
 ———— by Warburg's tincture, 137  
 ———— of bilious remittent, 138  
 ———— of dysenteric attacks, 140  
 ———— of grave fever, 138  
 ———— of hyperpyrexia, 139  
 ———— of splenic tumour, 143



- Malaria, treatment with drugs, 142  
 ——— with phenocol hydrochloride, 143  
 ——— Walcheren expedition, 118  
 ——— with syphilitic and tubercular disease, 112  
 Male gametocyte, 59  
 Malta fever, 206  
 ——— aetiology, 210  
 ——— agglutinating reaction, 212  
 ——— and malaria, 209  
 ——— and sepsis, 209  
 ——— and typhoid, 207  
 ——— behaviour of the temperature, 208  
 ——— Birt and Lamb on prognosis, 212  
 ——— definition, 206  
 ——— diagnosis, 212, 213  
 ——— from typhoid, 212  
 ——— geographical distribution, 206  
 ——— history, 207  
 ——— immunity, 211  
 ——— incubation period, 210  
 ——— influence of age and residence, 210  
 ——— of season, 211  
 ——— of social conditions, 211  
 ——— inoculation of man, 210  
 ——— of other animals, 210  
 ——— local causes, 211  
 ——— *Micrococcus melitensis*, 206, 210, 244  
 ——— not infectious, 211  
 ——— pains, 208  
 ——— pathological anatomy and pathology, 209  
 ——— rheumatic-like affections, 208  
 ——— sequelæ, mortality and types, 209  
 ——— serum test, 212  
 ——— spleen, 209  
 ——— symptoms, 207  
 ——— treatment, 213  
 ——— dietetic, 214  
 ——— precautions, 213  
 ——— purges, 213  
 ——— quinine, 213  
 ——— salicylates, 213  
 ——— sponging, 213  
 Mbu fever, 20  
 Mediterranean fever, 206  
 Megalocytes, 59, 97  
 Metschnikoff on the phagocytic action of lymphocytes, 41  
 Microgametes (flagella), 27  
 Miner's anæmia, 581  
 Mixed leprosy, 437  
 Monilethrix, 637  
 Monilia, 634  
 Mosquito (see *Malaria*)  
 Mountain fever, 469  
 Mozambique ulcer, 607  
*Musca vomitoria*, Larvæ of, 603  
 Mycetoma, 614  
 ——— atrophy of leg, 618  
 ——— black variety, 619, 622  
 ——— black grains, 622  
 ——— Kanthack on fungus, 623  
 ——— Carter upon, 614, 615  
 ——— classification, 619  
 ——— Cunningham on the endarteritis, 624  
 ——— on the fungus, 624  
 ——— definition, 614  
 ——— discharge from sinuses, 618  
 ——— endarteritis obliterans, 620  
 ——— enlargement of foot, 618  
 ——— histology, pathology, and aetiology, 620  
 ——— history and geographical distribution, 614  
 ——— Kanthack on tissue changes, 621  
 ——— on pigment, 621  
 ——— like actinomyces, 616, 621  
 ——— melanoid variety, 619  
 ——— microscopical anatomy, 620  
 ——— mode of entrance of fungus, 625  
 ——— morbid anatomy, 619  
 ——— nocardia, 622  
 ——— ochroid, 619, 622  
 ——— onset, 616  
 ——— particles in discharge, 616  
 ——— pathological significance of fungus, 624  
 ——— reasons against identity, 623  
 ——— in favour of identity, 623  
 ——— red variety, 619  
 ——— relationship of the white to the black variety, 623  
 ——— sinuses, 617  
 ——— symptoms, 616  
 ——— treatment, 625  
 ——— by amputation, 625  
 ——— white variety, 619, 620  
 ——— cultivation, 622  
 ——— ray fungus, 621  
 Myiasis, 641  
 Myxopods, 27  
 Nakra, 218  
 Nasha fever, 215, 218  
 ——— aetiology, 218  
 ——— Roy and Bose on, 219  
 ——— symptoms, 218  
 ——— treatment, 219  
 Nematodes, 575, 597  
 Nerve leprosy, 429  
 Nodular leprosy, 425  
 Normal blood, Appearance of, 24



- Ochromyia anthropophaga*, 644  
*Oligocythæmia*, 88  
 Oriental sore, 476  
     — — aetiology, 478  
     — — characters of ulcer, 477  
     — — definition, 476  
     — — duration, 477  
     — — geographical and seasonal distribution, 476  
     — — histology, 478  
     — — inoculation by Jews of Bagdad, 479  
     — — Micro-organism of, by Cunningham, 478  
     — — — by Riehl, 478  
     — — parasite probably conveyed by flies, 479  
     — — Sanitary improvements in, 477  
     — — Situation of, 478  
     — — Symptoms of, 477  
     — — treatment, 479  
*Ornithodoros moubata*, 646  
     — — Daniels on symptoms, 647  
     — — Dowson on symptoms, 647  
     — — geography, 648  
     — — habits, 648  
     — — Kirk on symptoms, 646  
 Oroya Fever, 469  
 Ovals, 48  
*Oxyuris vermicularis*, 575  
  
 Parangi, 455, 456  
 Parasites, endocorpuseular, of lower animals, 4  
     — of the circulatory and lymphatic systems, 480  
     — of the connective tissue, 551  
     — of the liver, 576  
     — of the lungs, 567  
*Pemphigus contagiosus*, 611  
     — — aetiology and pathology, 613  
     — — definition, 611  
     — — diagnosis from chicken-pox, 613  
     — — — from ringworm, 613  
     — — geographical distribution, 611  
     — — inoculation experiments, 612  
     — — like impetigo contagiosa, 612  
     — — morbid process, 612  
     — — situation, 612  
     — — symptoms, 612  
     — — treatment, 613  
     — leprosus, 430  
*Pencillium*, 634  
*Pentastomum constrictum*, 573  
     — — encysted in the liver, 573  
     — — larval form, 574  
 Perforating ulcer, leprous, 436  
 Periodicity of fever in liver abscess, 126  
*Periplaneta orientalis*, 601  
 Pernicious attacks, Clinical forms of, 70  
     — — Comatose, 73  
 Pestis, 167  
     — ambulans, 183, 184  
     — siderans, 183  
     — — death, 183  
 Phagocytes, 92, 103  
 Phagocytosis, 40  
 Piedra, 636  
     — distribution, 636  
     — microscopically, 636  
     — symptoms, 636  
     — treatment, 637  
 Pigment, Movements of, 17, 18  
 Pigmented body, 38  
     — leucocyte, 40  
     — — source of the pigment, 92  
     — lymphocytes, 41  
 Pigment dot, 92  
 Pinta, 632  
     — caused by various fungi, 634  
     — definition, 632  
     — diagnosis, 634  
     — epiphytes, 635  
     — geographical distribution, 632  
     — mycelium, 634  
     — pathology, 634  
     — spores, 634  
     — symptoms, 633  
     — treatment, 636  
     — types of disease, 633  
*Pirosoma bigeminum*, 4, 29, 85, 614  
 Plague, bacillus test, 187  
     — — culture characters, 171  
     — — physical characters, 170  
     — brain in, 185  
     — cutaneous hæmorrhages, 184  
     — destruction of vermin, 188  
     — — in anticipation, 190  
     — diagnosis, 186  
     — diffusion by railways, 189  
     — disinfection of fabrics, 188  
     — general sanitation, 189  
     — hæmorrhages, 185  
     — Haffkine's inoculations, 191  
     — immunisation of horses, 194  
     — — of rabbits, 193  
     — in Africa, 168  
     — in America, 169  
     — in Australia, 169  
     — in China, 169  
     — in community, 188  
     — in England, 168  
     — in India, 168  
     — inspection of the dead, 189  
     — killing of bacilli, 188  
     — Lustig's injections, 192  
     — leather gloves, 191  
     — mortality, 184  
     — of Justinian, 168



- Plague, pathological anatomy and pathology, 184  
 — post-mortem muscular contractions, 185  
 — — — kidneys, 185  
 — — — liver, 185  
 — — — lymphatics, 186  
 — — — spleen, 185  
 — prophylaxis, 187  
 — — personal, 190  
 — quarantine, 187  
 — — for convalescents, 187  
 — — from an infected place, 187  
 — segregation of "contacts," 189  
 — — of "suspects," 189  
 — serum therapy, 193  
 — treatment, 192  
 — — of the dead, 188  
 — wounds, 190  
 Plasmodium as a means of diagnosis, 43  
 — malarial, 1, 2  
 — — histology, 3  
 — — zoological affinities, 3  
 Pneumonic plague, 183  
 — — dangerous, 183  
 — — symptoms, 183  
 Potos, 412  
 — complications, 412  
 — fever, 412  
 — like infantile biliary cirrhosis, 412  
 — onset, 412  
 — pathological anatomy and pathology, 413  
 — post-mortem, 413  
 — symptoms, 412  
 — treatment, 413  
 Preparation of film of malarial blood, Author's method, 45  
 — — — — Macleod's method, 45  
 Prickly heat, 604  
 — — eruption, 605  
 — — — Pearce on, 604  
 — — — treatment, 605  
 Primitive bodies of Plehn, 10  
 Proteosoma, 4, 5, 21, 22, 27, 29, 31, 122  
 Proteus, 333  
 Protozoa, 15, 324  
 — in liver pus, 394  
 Psilosis, 353  
 — linguae, 353  
*Pulex irritans*, 638  
 — *penetrans*, 637  
 Pyæmic abscess, 395  
  
 Quartan ague, 50, 56  
 — — chart, 61  
 — infection, 37  
 — parasite, Absence of, in Calcutta, 60  
 Quartan parasite, common in Madras, 60  
 — — — in Sierra Leone, 60  
 — — — compared with tertian, 59  
 — — — daisy form, 59  
 — — — Degeneration of, 59  
 — — — fever, 60  
 — — — in England, 60  
 — — — in Europe, 60  
 — — — geographical distribution, 60  
 — — — spheres, 59  
 — — — sporocyte, 59  
 Quartana duplex, 52  
 — triplex, 52  
 Quinine amblyopia, 74  
 — — diagnosis from malarial, 74  
 — — Bearing of, on microscopical diagnosis, 44  
 Quotidian ague, 56  
 — flagellated form, 59  
 — infection, 58  
 — parasite, 58  
 — — pigmented, 58  
 — — unpigmented, 58  
 — periodicity, Value of, 126  
 — pigment granules, 59  
 — spores, 58  
 — sporulating parasite, 58  
  
 Recurrent hæmoglobinuric fever chart, 81  
 Relapses, 184  
 Remittent fever, 226  
 Remittents, 51, 70, 71, 125  
 Residual bodies, 28  
*Rhabdonema intestinale*, 354, 594  
 — — filariform larva, 596  
 — — geographical distribution, 596  
 — — rhabditic forms, 597  
 — — treatment, 597  
 Rhabdonemiasis, 594  
*Rhipicephalus sanguineus*, 644  
 Rigor stage, 39, 53, 63, 69  
 Ringer, excretion of urea in malarial fever, 55  
 Romanowsky's staining method, 45, 48  
 Rosette body, 27, 38, 39  
 Ross, discoveries in malaria, 21  
 — on ex-flagellation, 19  
  
 Sand fleas, 637  
 Screwworm, 641  
 — — characters, 642  
 — — eggs, 641  
 — — habits, 641  
 — — treatment, 643  
 Seriousness of malarial attacks, 78



- Serpiginous ulceration of the genitals, 471
- Shima mushi, 215
- Ship beriberi, 262  
— malaria, 114
- Single-layer zone, 36, 38
- Siriasis, 229, 234  
— aetiology, 235  
— cause of death, 239  
— convalescence, 239  
— definition, 234  
— diagnosis, 240  
— — from malaria, 240  
— — from pontine hæmorrhage, 240  
— geographical distribution, 234  
— high fever, 239  
— hyperpyrexia, 241  
— morbid anatomy, 239  
— mortality, 239  
— nervous distribution, 239  
— nomenclature, 234  
— pathology, 240  
— post mortem, 239  
— prodromata, 237  
— Sambon on, 236  
— symptoms, 237  
— theories of solar heat, 236  
— treatment, 240  
— Wood on symptoms, 237
- Skin diseases, 604  
— — caused by animals, 637  
— — — by bacteria, 606  
— — non-specific, 604
- Sleeping sickness of the Congo, 280  
— aetiology, 285  
— — and beriberi, 286  
— — and *Filaria perstans*, 286  
— — convulsions, 282  
— — definition, 280  
— — diagnosis, 286  
— — duration, 284  
— — enlargement of the lymphatics, 284  
— — geographical distribution, 280, 281  
— — increasing somnolence, 282  
— — intensely itchy papulovesicular eruption, 284  
— — Mott on pathology, 285  
— — onset, 281  
— — pathological anatomy, 284  
— — symptoms, 281  
— — transverse section of vessel, 285  
— — treatment, 286  
— — wasting, 282
- Spent pigments, 48
- Spermophilus guttatus*, 299
- Spheres, 16, 37, 40, 48  
— Hyaline granular, 17
- Spleen in malarial fever, 55
- Spores, 103
- Sporozoa, 1, 3
- Sporozoites, 26, 27, 29
- Sporulating body, 57
- Spring tertian, 61
- Sprue, 353  
— a chronic entero-colitis, 354  
— aetiology, 354  
— author's view of pathology, 362  
— and *Amœba coli*, 354  
— and *Rhabdonema intestinale*, 354  
— clothing and general management, 367  
— death, 358  
— definition, 353  
— diagnosis, 362  
— — from syphilis, 362  
— diarrhoea, 357  
— — acute, 357  
— — chronic, 357  
— drugs, 367  
— — Begg on santonin, 368  
— — carbonate of lime, 368  
— — for painful mouth, 368  
— dyspepsia, 356  
— gastric cases, 359  
— geographical distribution, 353  
— history, course and termination, 357  
— hyperactivity of digestive glands, 361  
— incomplete, 359  
— intestinal atrophy, 359  
— — cases, 359  
— latency, 354  
— like syphilis, 354  
— mesenteric glands, 361  
— morbid anatomy, 360  
— mouth lesions, 355  
— nomenclature, 353  
— pathology, 361  
— post-mortem, 360  
— — chronic catarrhal changes, 362  
— — of alimentary canal, 360  
— — of pancreas, 360  
— prognosis, 362  
— protopathic, 357  
— secondary to acute entero-colitis, 358  
— — to dysentery, 358  
— sections of bowel, 360  
— stools, 357  
— symptoms, 355  
— — of typical case, 355  
— — Three principal, 355  
— — variability, 355  
— tendency to relapse, 353  
— termination, 353  
— tongue, 355, 356  
— treatment, 362  
— — by milk cure, 363



- Sprue, treatment by nutrient enemata and suppositories, 366  
 — by Salisbury cure, 366  
 — by Salisbury cure, Duration of, 366  
 — clothing, 363  
 — Duration of, 364  
 — early and thorough, 362  
 — Effects of, 363  
 — in bed, 363  
 — of inadequate assimilation, 365  
 — of persisting symptoms, 364  
 — of relapses, 364  
 — other ways of giving milk, 365  
 — with meat and warm water, 366  
 — with meat juice and underdone meat, 365  
 — types, 357  
 — vomiting, 357  
 — when to send the patient to Europe, 367  
 — without diarrhoea, 359  
 Spruw, 353  
 Stained tertian rosettes, 47  
 Staining of malarial blood, 44  
 — the flagellated body, 47  
 Stains for blood films, 45  
*Staphylococcus*, 395  
 — *albus*, 324  
 — *aureus*, 324  
 State of Chinese cities, 222  
 Sterile bodies, 42  
 Streptococci in dysentery, 334  
*Streptococcus*, 395  
*Streptothrix maduræ*, 622  
*Strongylus subtilis*, 597  
 — eggs, 597  
 Successful microscopical preparation, Characters of, 36  
 Sun stroke, 231  
 — traumatism, 230, 232  
 — morbid anatomy, 233  
 — pathogenesis, 233  
 — sequelæ, 233  
 — sudden death, 232  
 — treatment, 233  
 — types of cases, 232  
 Syncopal heat stroke, 231  
 Syphilis and leprosy, 442  
 Syringomyelia, 441, 442  
  
*Tænia davainea*, 601  
 — *echinococcus*, 599  
 — *madagascariensis*, 600, 601  
 — intermediate host, the cockroach, 601  
 — *murina*, 600  
 — *nana*, 600  
 — cysticercus, 600  
  
*Tænia nana*, geographical distribution, 600  
 — Grassi on intermediate host, 600  
 — ova, 600  
 — *saginata*, 599  
 — *solium*, 599  
 Tampan, 647  
 Temperature of malarial fever, 53, 54  
 Tertian ague, 50, 56  
 — and quartan parasites periodicity, Value of, 126  
 — parasite, hypertrophy of corpuscles, 62  
 — pigment, 62, 63  
 — rosette, 63  
 — segmentation, 63  
 — spores, 63  
 — sporocyte, 63  
 — stained, 46  
 Tertiana duplex, 52  
 Texas cattle fever, 4, 29, 644  
 Thayer's observations on plasmodium, 43  
 Thermic fever, 234  
 Tick fever, 647  
 Tinea imbricata, 628  
 — Baker on distribution, 629  
 — cause a lepidophyton, 628, 631  
 — trichophyton, 628, 631  
 — definition, 628  
 — diagnosis, 631  
 — fungus, 630  
 — geographical distribution, 629  
 — prophylaxis, 631  
 — symptoms, 629  
 — treatment, 631  
 Toxin of plasmodium malarie, 56  
 Travelling vermicula, 22, 24  
 Treatment of bilious remittent, 138  
 — of hæmoglobinuric fever, 140  
 — Bastianelli's rules, 141  
 — Koch's experience, 140  
 Trematodes, 598  
*Trichocephalus dispar*, 259, 267, 575, 577, 578  
 — characters of ova, 575  
 — ova, 575, 578  
 Trichomycosis nodosa, 637  
 Trichorexis nodosa, 637  
 Tropical abscess, 395  
 — diarrhoea, 352  
 — liver, 369  
 — and hepatitis, 370, 373  
 — associated with dysentery, 373  
 — Carlsbad treatment, 373  
 — causes, 369  
 — chronic, 372



- Tropical liver, diet, 372  
 ——— First stage of, 370  
 ——— in Europeans, 369  
 ——— Second stage of, 370  
 ——— treatment, 371  
 ——— sloughing phagedæna, 606  
 ——— ——— ætiology, 607  
 ——— ——— definition, 606  
 ——— ——— geographical distribution, 606  
 ——— ——— symptoms, 607  
 ——— ——— treatment, 608  
 ——— typhoid, 215  
 Trypanosoma, 138  
 Tunnel disease, 581  
 Tuntun, 581  
 Twin crescents, 15  
 Types of crescent body, 14  
 ——— of plasmodia, 49  
 Typho-malarial fever, 129, 215, 225  
 ——— ——— clinical diagnosis, 227  
 ——— ——— diagnosis, 227  
 ——— ——— dormant malaria, 226  
 ——— ——— meaning of term, 225  
 ——— ——— Microscope in, 227  
 ——— ——— not specific, 225  
 ——— ——— prognosis and management, 228  
 ——— ——— Quinine in, 129, 226  
 ——— ——— Serum test in, 227  
 ——— ——— symptoms, 226  
 ——— ——— types of cases, 227  
 Typhoid fever in the tropics, 221  
 ——— ——— ——— ætiology, 222  
 ——— ——— ——— and malaria, 222  
 ——— ——— ——— artificial immunisation, 224  
 ——— ——— ——— artificial immunisation, statistics, 225  
 ——— ——— ——— geographical distribution, 223  
 ——— ——— ——— native immunity, 223  
 Ulcerating granuloma of the pudenda, 471  
 ——— ——— Advance of, 471  
 ——— ——— ætiology, 474  
 ——— ——— age and sex, 471  
 ——— ——— diagnosis, 474  
 ——— ——— from malignant ulcers, 474  
 ——— ——— ——— syphilitic ulcers, 474  
 ——— ——— ——— geographical distribution, 471  
 ——— ——— ——— histology, 473  
 ——— ——— in male and female, 472, 473  
 ——— ——— onset, 471  
 ——— ——— symptoms, 471  
 ——— ——— treatment, 475  
 Ulcerating granuloma of the pudenda, treatment by Conyers, 475  
 Unclassed fevers of the tropics, 244  
 Urea in malarial fever, 55  
 Urethral fever, 128  
 ——— ——— from lymphangitis, 128  
 ——— ——— ——— Mediterranean fever, 128  
 ——— ——— ——— post-malarial fever, 128  
 ——— ——— ——— tuberculous disease, 128  
 Urine in ague, 55  
 Vacuoles, 42  
 ——— distinguished from plasmodia, 39  
 Varicose groin glands, 504  
 Verruga, 464  
 ——— peruana, 468  
 ——— ——— eruption, 568  
 ——— ——— geographical distribution, 468, 469  
 ——— ——— in domestic animals, 469  
 ——— ——— initial fever, 468  
 ——— ——— like malaria, 468  
 ——— ——— like yaws, 468  
 ——— ——— spontaneous hæmorrhage, 468  
 ——— ——— treatment, 470  
 ——— ——— tumours of mucous surfaces, 469  
 Veneo-salivary gland, 26, 27  
 Ver du Cayor, 644  
 ——— ——— larvae, 644  
 ——— ——— macaque, 643  
 ——— ——— eggs, 643  
 ——— ——— larva, 643  
 Vitiligo, 441  
 Washerman's itch, 625  
 Widal's serum test, 228  
 Yaw, the, 457  
 ——— characteristics of typical, 457  
 ——— Involution of, 460  
 ——— Nicholls on, 457  
 ——— not sensitive, 460  
 Yaws, 455, 457, 458  
 ——— ætiology, 464  
 ——— age, sex, occupation, race, 464  
 ——— and lupus vulgaris, 463  
 ——— Charlouis on first lesion, 456  
 ——— concurrent syphilis, 462  
 ——— contagion and heredity, 464  
 ——— contrast with syphilis, 465  
 ——— definition, 455  
 ——— diagnosis, 465  
 ——— distribution, 461



- Yaws duration and recurrence, 461  
 — eruption, 457  
 — evolution of large yaws, 459  
 — foot, 460  
 — general health, 462  
 — geographical distribution, 455  
 — incubation, 456  
 — initial fever, 456  
 — local treatment, 467  
 — morbid anatomy and pathology, 465  
 — mortality, 463  
 — Nicholls on, 456, 457  
 — nomenclature of West Indian, 461  
 — onychia, 460  
 — Paulet on first lesion, 456  
 — persistent, 462  
 — prevalence in Fiji, 455  
 — prophylaxis, 466  
 — question of primary sore, 463  
 — — sequelæ, 462  
 — relationship to syphilis, 462, 465  
 — stage of furfuraceous desquamation, 457  
 — symptoms, 456  
 — treatment, 466  
 — — with drugs, 467  
 — tumours on the skin, 465  
 — ulceration, 460  
 Yellow fever, 149  
 — — a place disease, 152  
 — — a ship disease, 151  
 — — ætiology, 150  
 — — *Bacillus icteroides*, 156  
 — — black vomit, 159  
 — — cases in France and England, 149  
 — — causes of endemicity, 153  
 — — clump reaction, 162  
 — — conditions of soil required, 157  
 — — convalescence, 159  
 — — dampness favours, 151  
 — — death, 159  
 — — definition, 149  
 — — diagnosis, 162  
 — — — from bilious remittent, 162  
 — — — from hæmoglobinuric fever, 162  
 — — effects of latitude, 153  
 — — eruptions, 158  
 — — follows the line of communication, 151  
 — — frost stops epidemic, 151  
 — — geographical distribution, 149  
 — — — limits, Reasons for, 150  
 — — germ, 154  
 — — — *Bacillus icteroides* of Sanarelli, 154, 156  
 Yellow fever germ, clump reaction, 155, 162  
 — — — *Cryptococcus zanthogenicus* of Freire, 154  
 — — — cultures, 155  
 — — — injected into animals, 155  
 — — — — into men, 155  
 — — — stained, 155  
 — — — Sternberg on, 154  
 — — — *Tetragenus febris flava* of Finlay, 154  
 — — — germs portable in fomites and merchandise, 152  
 — — — require intermediary nidus, 150  
 — — — hæmorrhage, 159  
 — — — icterus of the scleræ, 158  
 — — — immunity acquired by prolonged residence or previous attack, 153  
 — — — incubation period, 153  
 — — — influence of atmospheric temperature, 150  
 — — — initial fever, 156  
 — — — in the intemperate, 160  
 — — — man-of-war disinfection, 165  
 — — — pathological anatomy, 161  
 — — — — blood, 161  
 — — — — brain, 161  
 — — — — intestines, 161  
 — — — — kidneys, 162  
 — — — — liver, 162  
 — — — — of skin, 161  
 — — — — stomach, 161  
 — — — period of calm, 156, 157, 159  
 — — — of reaction, 156  
 — — — post-mortem, 155, 159  
 — — — prevention of the spread to the East, 166  
 — — — prognosis and mortality, 160  
 — — — prophylaxis, 164  
 — — — — by sanitation, 165  
 — — — race as influencing susceptibility, 153  
 — — — relapse, 160  
 — — — rigor, 156  
 — — — Sanarelli on immunisation, 155  
 — — — Sanarelli's serum, 166  
 — — — secondary fever, 160  
 — — — ship disinfection, 165  
 — — — sometimes epidemic, 152  
 — — — stage of depression, 158  
 — — — — reaction, 159  
 — — — Sternberg on the temperature, 160  
 — — — symptoms, 156  
 — — — termination, 160  
 — — — treatment, 162  
 — — — — by feeding, 163



- Yellow fever, treatment by nutrient  
 enemata, 164  
 — — — by stimulants, 163  
 — — — of returning appetite,  
 164  
 — — — of vomiting, 163  
 — — — Sternberg's, 164  
 — — — with antipyretics,  
 163  
 — — — with baths, 163  
 — — — urea, 158  
 — — — urine, 158  
 — — — usually a sea-coast dis-  
 ease, 151
- Yellow fever virus latent, 154
- Zone of free hæmoglobin. 37  
 — — — Diagnostic value  
 of, 40  
 — — — heaped-up corpuscles, 36,  
 39  
 — — — rouleaux, 37, 39  
 — — — scattered corpuscles, 36
- Zygote, 28  
 — stage, Growth and changes  
 during, 25
- Zygotoblasts, 28  
 Zygotomeres, 28



